Cengage

Tenth Edition

Theory & Practice of Group Counseling

Gerald Corey

Theory & Practice of Group Counseling

Tenth Edition

Gerald Corey

Distinguished Visiting Professor of Counseling,
University of Holy Cross, New Orleans

Diplomate in Counseling Psychology,
American Board of Professional Psychology

Cengage

Australia • Brazil • Canada • Mexico • Singapore • United Kingdom • United States

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

This is an electronic version of the print textbook. Due to electronic rights restrictions, some third party content may be suppressed. Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. The publisher reserves the right to remove content from this title at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it. For valuable information on pricing, previous editions, changes to current editions, and alternate formats, please visit www.cengage.com/highered to search by ISBN#, author, title, or keyword for materials in your areas of interest.

Important Notice: Media content referenced within the product description or the product text may not be available in the eBook version.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Theory & Practice of Group Counseling,
Tenth Edition
Gerald Corey

SVP, Higher Education Product Management: Erin Joyner

VP, Product Management, Learning Experiences: Thais Alencar

Product Director: Jason Fremder

Product Manager: Ali Balchunas

Content Manager: Manoj Kumar, Lumina Datamatics Limited

Digital Delivery Quality Partner: Laura Ruschman

Product Marketing Manager: Ian Hamilton

IP Analyst: Deanna Ettinger

IP Project Manager: Chandrakumar Kumaresan, Integra Software Services

Production Service: Lumina Datamatics Limited

Designer: Erin Griffin

Cover and Interior Image Source: imageBROKER / Alamy Stock Photo

© 2016, © 2012, © 2008 Cengage Learning, Inc. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

WCN: 02-300

No part of this work covered by the copyright herein may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, except as permitted by U.S. copyright law, without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.

For product information and technology assistance, contact us at
Cengage Customer & Sales Support, 1-800-354-9706
or support.cengage.com.

For permission to use material from this text or product, submit all requests online at **www.copyright.com.**

Library of Congress Control Number: 2021924511

ISBN: 978-0-357-62295-7

Cengage
200 Pier 4 Boulevard
Boston, MA 02210
USA

Cengage is a leading provider of customized learning solutions with employees residing in nearly 40 different countries and sales in more than 125 countries around the world. Find your local representative at: **www.cengage.com.**

To learn more about Cengage platforms and services, register or access your online learning solution, or purchase materials for your course, visit **www.cengage.com**.

Notice to the Reader
Publisher does not warrant or guarantee any of the products described herein or perform any independent analysis in connection with any of the product information contained herein. Publisher does not assume, and expressly disclaims, any obligation to obtain and include information other than that provided to it by the manufacturer. The reader is expressly warned to consider and adopt all safety precautions that might be indicated by the activities described herein and to avoid all potential hazards. By following the instructions contained herein, the reader willingly assumes all risks in connection with such instructions. The publisher makes no representations or warranties of any kind, including but not limited to, the warranties of fitness for particular purpose or merchantability, nor are any such representations implied with respect to the material set forth herein, and the publisher takes no responsibility with respect to such material. The publisher shall not be liable for any special, consequential, or exemplary damages resulting, in whole or part, from the readers' use of, or reliance upon, this material.

Printed in the United States of America
Print Number: 01 Print Year: 2022

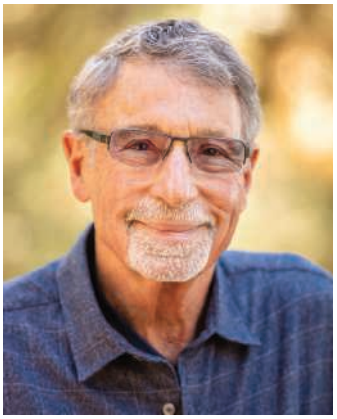
Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To Marianne Schneider Corey—my wife of 57 years, best friend, valued colleague, and coauthor—who has contributed immensely to the quality of my life and my work.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

About the Author



GERALD COREY, EdD, ABPP, is professor emeritus of Human Services and Counseling at California State University at Fullerton and Distinguished Visiting Professor of Counseling at University of Holy Cross, New Orleans. He received his doctorate in counseling from the University of Southern California. He was awarded an honorary doctorate in Humane Letters in 1992 from National Louis University. He is a Diplomate in Counseling Psychology, American Board of Professional Psychology; a licensed psychologist in California; and a National Certified Counselor. He is a Fellow of the American Psychological Association (Division 17, Counseling Psychology; and Division 49, Group Psychotherapy); a Fellow of the American Counseling Association; and a Fellow of the Association for Specialists in Group Work. He received the Lifetime Achievement Award from the American Mental Health Counselors Association in 2011; the Eminent Career Award from ASGW in 2001; the Outstanding Professor of the Year Award from California State University at Fullerton in 1991; and the Thomas Hohenshil National Publications Award, which was presented at the American Counseling Association's Virtual Conference in 2021. He is the author or coauthor of 16 textbooks in counseling currently in print, along with more than 70 journal articles and numerous book chapters. His book, *Theory and Practice of Counseling and Psychotherapy*, has been translated into Arabic, Indonesian, Portuguese, Turkish, Korean, and Chinese. *Theory and Practice of Group Counseling* has been translated into Korean, Chinese, Spanish, and Russian. *Issues and Ethics in the Helping Professions* has been translated into Korean, Japanese, and Chinese. With his colleagues, he has conducted workshops in the United States, Germany, Ireland, Belgium, Scotland, Mexico, Canada, China, and Korea—with a special focus on training in group counseling.

The following eight books, by Gerald Corey and colleagues, are published with Cengage Learning:

- *Theory and Practice of Group Counseling*, Tenth Edition (and *Student Manual*) (2023)
- *Theory and Practice of Counseling and Psychotherapy*, Enhanced Tenth Edition (and *Student Manual*) (2021)
- *Becoming a Helper*, Eighth Edition (2021, with Marianne Schneider Corey)
- *Issues and Ethics in the Helping Professions*, Tenth Edition (2019, with Marianne Schneider Corey and Cindy Corey)
- *Groups: Process and Practice,* Tenth Edition (2018, with Marianne Schneider Corey and Cindy Corey)
- *I Never Knew I Had a Choice*, Eleventh Edition (2018, with Marianne Schneider Corey and Michelle Muratori)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- *Group Techniques*, Fourth Edition (2015, with Marianne Schneider Corey, Patrick Callanan, and J. Michael Russell)
- *Case Approach to Counseling and Psychotherapy*, Eighth Edition (2013)

The following seven books are published by the American Counseling Association:

- *Clinical Supervision in the Helping Professions*: *A Practical Guide*, Third Edition (2021, with Robert Haynes, Patrice Moulton, and Michelle Muratori)
- *Personal Reflections on Counseling* (2020)
- *The Art of Integrative Counseling*, Fourth Edition (2019)
- *Counselor Self-Care* (2018, with Michelle Muratori, Jude T. Austin, and Julius A. Austin II)
- *ACA Ethical Standards Casebook,* Seventh Edition (2015, with Barbara Herlihy)
- *Boundary Issues in Counseling: Multiple Roles and Relationships,* Third Edition (2015, with Barbara Herlihy)
- *Creating Your Professional Path: Lessons from My Journey* (2010)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Brief Contents

Part One

Basic Elements of Group Process: An Overview 2

Chapter One Introduction to Group Work 3

Chapter Two Group Leadership 12

Chapter Three Ethical and Professional Issues in Group Practice 34

Chapter Four Early Stages in the Development of a Group 56

Chapter Five Later Stages in the Development of a Group 77

Part Two

Theoretical Approaches to Group Counseling 98

Chapter Six The Psychoanalytic Approach to Groups 99

Chapter Seven Adlerian Group Counseling 130

Chapter Eight Psychodrama in Groups 153

Chapter Nine The Existential Approach to Groups 182

Chapter Ten The Person-Centered Approach to Groups 208

Chapter Eleven Gestalt Therapy in Groups 235

Chapter Twelve Cognitive Behavioral Approaches to Groups 265

Chapter Thirteen Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy in Groups 294

Chapter Fourteen Choice Theory/Reality Therapy in Groups 308

Chapter Fifteen Solution-Focused Brief Therapy and Motivational Interviewing in Groups 328

Part Three

Integration and Application 354

Chapter Sixteen Comparisons, Contrasts, and Integration 355

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Contents

Preface xv

Part One

Basic Elements of Group Process: An Overview

Chapter One
Introduction to Group Work 3

Increased Interest in Group Work 4
Overview of the Counseling Group 5
Other Types of Groups 7
Group Counseling in a Multicultural Context 9

Chapter Two
Group Leadership 12

The Group Leader as a Person 12
Special Problems and Issues for Beginning Group Leaders 15
Group Leadership Skills 18
Special Skills for Opening and Closing Group Sessions 22
Becoming a Diversity-Competent Group Counselor 26
Developing Your Group Leadership Style 28
The Role of Research in the Practice of Group Work 30

Chapter Three
Ethical and Professional Issues in Group Practice 34

Rights of Group Participants 35
Psychological Risks in Groups 40
Ethics of Group Leaders' Actions 41
Socializing Among Group Members 42
Impact of the Leader's Values on the Group 42
Religious and Spiritual Values in Group Counseling 43
Ethical Issues in Multicultural Group Counseling 44
Uses and Misuses of Group Techniques 47
Group Leader Competence 47
Teaching Group Counseling Virtually 52

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

My Journey Toward Becoming a Group Work Specialist 53
Liability and Malpractice 54

Chapter Four
Early Stages in the Development of a Group 56

Stage 1: Pregroup Issues—Formation of the Group 57
Stage 2: Initial Stage—Orientation and Exploration 64
Stage 3: Transition Stage—Dealing With Reluctance 69
Concluding Comments 76

Chapter Five
Later Stages in the Development of a Group 77

Stage 4: Working Stage—Cohesion and Productivity 77
Characteristics of an Effective Working Group 80
Therapeutic Factors of a Group 80
Summary of the Working Stage 87
Stage 5: Final Stage—Consolidation and Termination 87
Effective Ways of Terminating a Group 89
Summary of the Final Stage 90
Stage 6: Postgroup Issues—Evaluation and Follow-Up 91
Evaluating the Process and Outcomes of a Group 92
The Follow-Up Group Session 92
Concluding Comments 93
References and Suggested Readings for Part One 94

Part Two
Theoretical Approaches to Group Counseling

Chapter Six
The Psychoanalytic Approach to Groups 99

Introduction 99
Key Concepts 100
Role and Functions of the Group Leader 107
Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures 108
Developmental Stages and Their Implications for Group Work 112
Contemporary Trends in Psychoanalytic Group Theory 118
Group Theories in Action: A Psychodynamic Application 122
Applying the Psychoanalytic Approach to Group Work in Schools 123
Applying the Psychoanalytic Approach With Multicultural Populations 124

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Evaluation of the Psychoanalytic Approach to Groups 124
References and Suggested Readings 127

Chapter Seven
Adlerian Group Counseling 130

Introduction 130
Key Concepts 132
Role and Functions of the Group Leader 138
Stages of the Adlerian Group 138
Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures 144
Group Theories in Action: An Adlerian Application 145
Applying the Adlerian Approach to Group Work in Schools 145
Applying the Adlerian Approach With Multicultural Populations 147
Evaluation of the Adlerian Approach to Groups 147
References and Suggested Readings 151

Chapter Eight
Psychodrama in Groups 153

Introduction 153
Key Concepts 157
Role and Functions of the Psychodrama Group Leader 161
The Basic Elements of Psychodrama 161
Phases of the Psychodrama Process 163
Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures 168
Group Theories in Action: A Psychodrama Application 172
Applying Psychodrama to Group Work in Schools 173
Applying Psychodrama With Multicultural Populations 174
Evaluation of Psychodrama 175
References and Suggested Readings 180

Chapter Nine
The Existential Approach to Groups 182

Introduction 182
Key Concepts 186
Role and Functions of the Group Leader 196
Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures 197
Phases of an Existential Group 198
Group Theories in Action: An Existential Application 199
Applying the Existential Approach to Group Work in Schools 199
Applying the Existential Approach With Multicultural Populations 200
Evaluation of the Existential Approach to Groups 201
References and Suggested Readings 206

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter Ten
The Person-Centered Approach to Groups 208

Introduction 208
Key Concepts 212
Role and Functions of the Group Leader 217
Stages of a Person-Centered Group 219
Person-Centered Expressive Arts in Groups 220
Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures 224
Group Theories in Action: Person-Centered Application 225
Applying the Person-Centered Approach to Group Work in Schools 226
Applying the Person-Centered Approach With Multicultural Populations 227
Evaluation of the Person-Centered Approach to Groups 228
Self-Reflection and Discussion Questions 230
References and Suggested Readings 233

Chapter Eleven
Gestalt Therapy in Groups 235

Introduction 235
Key Concepts 239
Role and Functions of the Group Leader 245
Stages of a Gestalt Group 246
Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures 247
Group Theories in Action: Gestalt Therapy Application 256
Applying Gestalt Therapy to Group Work in Schools 257
Applying Gestalt Therapy With Multicultural Populations 258
Evaluation of the Gestalt Approach to Groups 259
References and Suggested Readings 263

Chapter Twelve
Cognitive Behavioral Approaches to Groups 265

Introduction 265
Key Concepts 268
Role and Functions of the Group Leader 269
Stages of a Cognitive Behavioral Group 270
Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures 276
Group Theories in Action: A CBT Application 284
Applying the Cognitive Behavioral Approach to Group Work in Schools 285
Applying the Cognitive Behavioral Approach With Multicultural Populations 285
Evaluation of the Cognitive Behavioral Approaches to Groups 287
References and Suggested Readings 291

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter Thirteen
Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy in Groups 294

Introduction 294
Key Concepts 296
Role and Functions of the Group Leader 298
Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures 298
Group Theories in Action: REBT Application 302
Applying Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy to Group Work in Schools 302
Applying Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy With Multicultural Populations 303
Evaluation of Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy in Groups 304
References and Suggested Readings 307

Chapter Fourteen
Choice Theory/Reality Therapy in Groups 308

Introduction 308
Key Concepts 311
Role and Functions of the Group Leader 314
Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures 314
Group Theories in Action: A Reality Therapy Application 319
Applying Reality Therapy to Group Work in Schools 320
Applying Reality Therapy With Multicultural Populations 321
Evaluation of Choice Theory/Reality Therapy in Groups 323
References and Suggested Readings 326

Chapter Fifteen
Solution-Focused Brief Therapy and Motivational Interviewing in Groups 328

Solution-Focused Brief Therapy 328
Motivational Interviewing 328
Introduction 330
Key Concepts of SFBT 331
Role and Functions of the Group Leader 333
The Process of the Solution-Focused Group 334
Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures 336
Group Theories in Action: A Solution-Focused Brief Therapy Application 340
Applying SFBT to Group Work in Schools 340
Applying Solution-Focused Brief Therapy With Multicultural Populations 341
Motivational Interviewing 342
Evaluation of Solution-Focused Brief Therapy and Motivational Interviewing in Groups 347
References and Suggested Readings 352

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Part Three

Integration and Application

Chapter Sixteen

Comparisons, Contrasts, and Integration 355

Introduction 355
The Goals of Group Counseling: Various Perspectives 356
Role and Functions of the Group Leader: Various Perspectives 358
Degree of Structuring and Division of Responsibility: Various Perspectives 360
The Use of Techniques: Various Perspectives 362
Group Work in a Multicultural Context: Various Perspectives 364
Applications of an Integrative Model 366
Summary and Review Tables 372

Name Index 373

Subject Index 381

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Preface

Group counseling is an increasingly popular therapeutic intervention in a variety of settings. Although many textbooks deal with groups, very few present an overview of various theoretical models and describe how these models apply to group counseling. This book outlines the basic elements of group process, deals with ethical and professional issues special to group work, and presents an overview of the key concepts and techniques of 10 approaches to group counseling. The book also attempts an integration of these approaches and encourages students to develop a framework that leads to their own synthesis. The textbook addresses the key knowledge and skills areas for the group counseling competencies identified by the Council for Accreditation of Counseling Related Educational Programs (2016) in *CACREP Standards*.

Theory and Practice of Group Counseling is written in a clear and simple style, and you will have no difficulty understanding the theoretical concepts and their relationship to group practice. Many of you may have taken a course in counseling theories before your group counseling course, and that background will certainly be useful in understanding and applying the material in this book.

This book is for graduate or undergraduate students in any field involving human services. It is especially suitable for students enrolled in any of the courses under the general designation of "Theory and Practice of Group Counseling." The book is also for practitioners who are involved in group work or for students and trainees who are interested in leading various types of groups. This book is also useful for psychiatric nurses, ministers, social workers, psychologists, marriage and family therapists, addiction counselors, rehabilitation counselors, community agency counselors, school counselors, licensed professional clinical counselors, and mental health professionals who lead groups as a part of their work.

Overview of the Book

The tenth edition continues to emphasize the practical applications of the theoretical models to group work. The central purpose is to help you to develop your own synthesis of various aspects of these approaches. The book also includes two detailed chapters on the stages of a group's development, providing a guide for leaders in the practice of counseling.

Part One (Chapters 1 through 5) treats the basic elements of group process and practice that you'll need to know regardless of the types of groups you may lead or the theoretical orientation you may hold. Chapter 1, *Introduction to Group Work*, presents an overview of the various types of groups and discusses some general principles that can be applied in working with the reality of cultural diversity in groups. Chapter 2, *Group Leadership*, deals with basic concerns of group leadership, such as the personal characteristics of effective leaders, the problems they face, the different styles of leadership, the range of specific skills required for effective leading, and the components of an effective multicultural group counselor. An updated section on the role of research in group counseling addresses the issues of combining research with the practice of group work, evidence-based practice in group work, and the advantages of practice-based evidence as an alternative to evidence-based practice. Chapter 3, *Ethical and Professional Issues in Group Practice*, addresses important ethical issues that you will inevitably encounter as you lead groups, and it emphasizes the rights of group members and the responsibilities of group leaders. An updated and expanded section addresses spiritual and religious values in group counseling. Both the "Best Practice Guidelines," developed by the Association for Specialists in Group Work (2008), and the "Ethical Guidelines for Group Therapists," developed by the American Group Psychotherapy Association (2002), are presented in the *Student Manual* (available in the Online Student Resources). In Chapter 4, *Early Stages in the Development of a Group*, and Chapter 5, *Later Stages in the Development of a Group*, you are introduced to the major developmental tasks confronting a group as it goes through its various stages from the formation of a group to its termination, including evaluation and follow-up. The central characteristics of the stages that make up the life history of a group are examined,

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

with special attention paid to the major functions of the group leader at each stage. These chapters also focus on the functions of the members of a group and the possible problems that are associated with each stage in the group's evolution. There are many new references and suggested readings for Part One.

Part Two (Chapters 6 through 15) examines 10 theoretical approaches to group counseling. Most of the revisions for this edition are found in Part Two. Particular attention has been paid to providing the most current research available for each of the approaches discussed, and new examples illustrate key concepts. These chapters are designed to provide you with a good overview of a variety of theoretical models underlying group counseling, so that you can see the connection between theory and practice. Each of these theoretical orientations has something valid to offer you as a future group leader.

To provide a framework that will help you integrate the theoretical models, these 10 chapters have a common structure. Each chapter begins with a biographical sketch of a key figure (or figures) associated with the theory. All of the theory chapters describe the key concepts of the theory and their implications for group practice. This is followed by a discussion of the role and functions of the group leader according to the particular theory and, when applicable, the stages of development of that particular group process. Next are discussions of how each theory is applied to group practice; the major techniques employed within the framework of each theory; concepts and techniques that have applicability to group work in the school; and how the approach can be applied with diverse client populations. The necessity for flexibility and a willingness to adapt techniques to fit the cultural background of group members is emphasized in each chapter. New to the tenth edition is a section titled "Group Theories in Action," which is based on a recent video of my work with members of a group that shows how specific techniques of an approach can be woven into the group process. Each chapter also contains my evaluation of the major strengths and limitations of the theoretical approach presented. Five "Self-Reflection and Discussion Questions" designed to actively involve you in the material you have read are included at the end of each theory chapter. In addition, annotated resources are suggested to guide those who wish to pursue a more in-depth study of the approach.

Part Three (Chapter 16) focuses on the practical application of the theories and principles covered in Parts One and Two, making these applications more vivid and concrete. Chapter 16, *Comparisons, Contrasts, and Integration*, is designed to help you pull together the various methods and approaches, realizing commonalities and differences among them. The chapter concludes with a description of an "integrative model of group counseling" that combines concepts and techniques from all the approaches that have been examined; this discussion is focused on helping you attempt your own personal integration. The model I present integrates "thinking," "feeling," and "doing" perspectives, with varying emphases at each stage of a group's development. My rationale is to show which aspects of each theory I draw on at the various stages of the group, as well as to offer a basis for blending what may look like diverse approaches to the practice of group work. I strive to give you some guidance in thinking about ways to develop your own synthesis of the various group approaches.

New to the Tenth Edition

In this tenth edition, several chapters in Part Two have been significantly updated to reflect recent trends, and other chapters have received minor revisions. Relatively minor revisions were made in the chapters in Part One.

All the chapters in this tenth edition begin with a list of learning objectives, which is a new feature. Throughout this edition, careful attention has been given to updating sources to reflect the newest literature on each topic.

Revisions to Part One, *Basic Elements of Group Process: An Overview*, include updated research on the beneficial aspects of group work; an expanded treatment of confidentiality with minors; a new section on ethical issues related to online therapy groups; an expanded section on the role of religious and spiritual values in group work; additional discussion on having culturally sensitive conversations in a group; new material on the Council for Accreditation of Counseling and Related Educational Programs (CACREP, 2016) standards pertaining to group work competencies; and an added section on teaching group counseling virtually. The chapters on both the early and later stages of a group's development have been revised.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The revisions found in Part Two, *Theoretical Approaches to Group Counseling*, are based on the recommendations of expert reviewers of each of the separate theories, who provided suggestions for updating the various approaches in line with current trends, new studies, and recent developments in the practice of the approach. Each of the theory chapters has been revised to reflect contemporary trends in practice and to include the most current literature available. New to this tenth edition is the video program *Group Theories in Action*, in which I lead a group, demonstrating some techniques associated with each of the theories and illustrating how selected techniques can be applied to a therapeutic group. Segments of the group session are discussed in the chapter text, so those who have not seen the video are able to see how each approach or theory can be applied to group counseling.

Specific changes made in the theory chapters for this tenth edition are detailed here:

Chapter 6, The Psychoanalytic Approach to Groups: increased emphasis on the role of the relationship in analytic group therapy; new research on the significant role of early experiences on adult functioning; current perspectives on the concepts of resistance, transference, and countertransference as applied to group work; an expanded discussion on the contemporary relational approach to psychodynamic therapy; and a revised discussion of brief psychodynamic therapy.

Chapter 7, Adlerian Group Counseling: revised material on how goals influence behavior; many additional examples to make key concepts clearer; and sample dialogues to illustrate interventions.

Chapter 8, Psychodrama in Groups: reframing of psychodrama as a form of experiential learning; addition of several examples of participants' experiences in psychodrama; revised section on applying psychodrama in school settings; and inclusion of recent studies supporting psychodrama.

Chapter 9, The Existential Approach to Groups: increased emphasis on the role of group members as active agents of change; and inclusion of meta-analytic studies identifying the factors related to therapeutic effectiveness.

Chapter 10, The Person-Centered Approach to Groups: new material on translating the core conditions in action; expanded discussion of the role of empathy, positive regard, and therapist congruence pertaining to effective group practice; more emphasis on diversity of styles in person-centered facilitation; and possible future developments of person-centered theory.

Chapter 11, Gestalt Therapy in Groups: increased emphasis on relational Gestalt therapy; updated discussion of how resistance is viewed in Gestalt therapy; revision of material on the evolution of various styles of practicing Gestalt therapy; and expanded discussion of working in the here-and-now.

Chapter 12, Cognitive Behavioral Approaches to Groups: identification of trends in contemporary cognitive behavioral theory; more emphasis on the role of the therapeutic relationship and collaboration; revised material on the role of homework in group practice; increased coverage on relapse prevention; updated and expanded information on mindfulness and acceptance approaches; discussion of future directions for this approach; and expanded treatment of culturally responsive aspects of current practice.

Chapter 13, Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy in Groups: revised discussion on the use of some techniques; a streamlined discussion of key concepts and techniques; and more emphasis on the diverse styles of rational emotive behavior therapy in practice.

Chapter 14, Choice Theory/Reality Therapy in Groups: new material on the application of reality therapy in school counseling; and additional discussion of how the past is addressed in reality therapy.

Chapter 15, Solution-Focused Brief Therapy and Motivational Interviewing in Groups: increased emphasis on clients being actively involved in the therapeutic process; a new discussion of the role of Milton Erickson in influencing the development of solution-focused therapy; more on how SFBT differs from traditional therapies; common factors between SFBT and motivational interviewing; an expanded explanation of how questions guide therapy and ways to use these techniques flexibly in an integrative approach; the current understanding of the stages of change model; and a revised discussion on applying these therapies with multicultural populations.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Instructor Resources

Additional instructor resources for this product are available online. Instructor assets include an Instructor's Manual, PowerPoint® slides, and a test bank powered by Cognero®. Sign up or sign in at www.cengage.com to search for and access this product and its online resources.

Alignment With CACREP Standards

CACREP Core Curriculum Standards* for group counseling courses are reflected throughout this tenth edition of *Theory and Practice of Group Counseling.* Chapter numbers relevant to the CACREP standards appear in parentheses following the standards listed.

After reading and studying *Theory and Practice of Group Counseling*, students will be able to demonstrate knowledge in these areas:

1. Understand, list, and discuss approaches used for various types of group work, including task groups, psychoeducational groups, focus groups, counseling groups, and therapy groups (Chapter 1)
2. Understand, list, and be able to recognize the therapeutic factors of group work (Chapters 1, 4, and 5)
3. Discuss principles of group dynamics, including group process components, developmental theories, group members' roles and behaviors, and therapeutic factors of group work (Chapters 4 and 5)
4. Understand and be able to demonstrate various types of group leadership styles and approaches (Chapter 2)
5. Understand the personal characteristics of group workers that have an impact on members: knowledge of personal strengths, weaknesses, biases, values, and their effect on others (Chapter 2)
6. Review the special skills for opening and closing group sessions (Chapter 2)
7. Review and discuss current research literature pertaining to group work (Chapter 2)
8. Understand and discuss ethical and legal considerations pertaining to group work (Chapter 3)
9. Understand the process components involved in the typical stages of a group's development (Chapters 4 and 5)
10. Understand the major facilitative and debilitative roles that group members may take (Chapters 4 and 5)
11. Understand and discuss group counseling methods, including group counselor orientations and behaviors, appropriate selection criteria and methods, and methods of evaluation of effectiveness (Chapters 3, 4, and 5)
12. Understand theories of group counseling and be able to compare and contrast the different theories studied (Chapters 6–16)
13. Understand group counseling methods and techniques (Chapters 6–16)
14. Review, understand, and discuss professional preparation standards for group leaders (Chapter 3)
15. Understand the value of participating in an experiential group (Chapter 3)
16. Understand and address issues of diversity and multiculturalism in group work (Chapters 1–3; Chapters 6–16)
17. Understand what is involved in becoming a diversity-competent group counselor (Chapter 2)

This textbook, along with a course in group counseling, will assist students in demonstrating competency in the following leadership skills:

1. Observing and identifying group process
2. Encouraging participation of group members
3. Attending to, acknowledging, confronting and responding empathically to group member behavior—actions/behaviors of the group members
4. Attending to, acknowledging, confronting and responding empathically to group member statements (paraphrase and reflection)

*Council for Accreditation of Counseling Related Educational Programs. (2016). *CACREP Standards.*

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

5. Attending to, acknowledging, confronting, and responding empathically to group themes (linking and summarizing)
6. Eliciting information from and imparting information to group members
7. Engaging in appropriate self-disclosure
8. Demonstrating awareness and understanding of one's own cultural values
9. Demonstrating sensitivity to diversity factors as they influence group process
10. Demonstrating understanding of multicultural factors as they influence group membership and group participation
11. Maintaining group focus; keeping a group on task
12. Giving and receiving feedback in a group
13. Using confrontation/blocking appropriately; working cooperatively with a coleader and group members
14. Engaging in ethical practice

Acknowledgments

Many of the revisions that have become a part of this textbook since its original edition in 1981 have come about in the context of discussions with students, colleagues, and professors who use the book. Those students and professionals whom I teach continue to teach me in return, and most of my ideas are stimulated by interactions with them. I especially want to recognize the influence on my life and my books of my wife and colleague, Marianne Schneider Corey, with whom I work professionally. Her critiques and feedback have been especially valuable in preparing these revisions, and many of the ideas in the book are the product of our many hours of discussions about group work. I would also like to thank the copy editor, Kay Mikel.

Gerald Corey

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Part 1

Basic Elements of Group Process: An Overview

Chapter 1 Introduction to Group Work

Chapter 2 Group Leadership

Chapter 3 Ethical and Professional Issues in Group Practice

Chapter 4 Early Stages in the Development of a Group

Chapter 5 Later Stages in the Development of a Group

References and Suggested Readings for Part One

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 1

Introduction to Group Work

Learning Objectives

1. Define these terms: group psychotherapy, psychoeducational groups, group counseling, task-facilitation groups.
2. Explain the rationale for asking group members to share their fears and concerns about being in a group at the first group meeting.
3. Understand how counselors design groups to meet the needs of specific populations over the life span.
4. Describe how psychoeducational groups can be designed to help people develop specific skills or progress through difficult life transitions.
5. Identify the key factors necessary to the success of brief group therapy.
6. Understand the rationale for orientation and preparation of members for a group.
7. Explain why it is necessary to view group counseling in a multicultural context.
8. Evaluate several basic ideas of multicultural perspectives on group work.
9. Analyze the process for becoming a culturally skilled group worker.
10. Identify some guidelines for serving multicultural populations in a group.

Today, more than ever, mental health practitioners are being challenged to develop new strategies to prevent and treat psychological problems. Although there is still a place in community agencies for individual counseling, limiting the delivery of services to this model is no longer practical. Group counseling offers real promise for meeting today's challenges. Group counseling enables practitioners to work with several clients at the same time, a decided advantage in these managed care times. In addition, the group process has unique learning advantages. Group counseling may well be the treatment of choice for many populations. If group work is to be effective, however, practitioners need a theoretical grounding along with the skill to use this knowledge creatively in practice.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Increased Interest in Group Work

In conducting workshops around the United States, and in other countries as well, my colleagues and I have found a surge of interest in group work. Professional counselors are creating an increasing variety of groups to fit the special needs of a diverse clientele in many different settings. In fact, the types of groups that can be designed are limited only by one's imagination. This expanded interest underscores the need for broad education and training in both the theory and the practice of group counseling. This book provides fundamental knowledge applicable to the many kinds of groups you will be leading.

Groups can be used for therapeutic or educational purposes or for a combination of the two. Some groups focus primarily on helping people make fundamental changes in their ways of thinking, feeling, and behaving. Groups with an educational focus help members learn specific coping skills. This chapter provides a brief overview of various types of groups and the differences among them.

All human services counselors will be expected to be able to use group approaches with diverse client populations and for a variety of purposes. In a psychiatric hospital, for example, you may be asked to design and lead groups for patients with specific problems, for patients who are about to leave the hospital and reenter the community, or for patients' families. Insight groups, remotivation groups, assertion training groups, bereavement groups, and recreational/vocational therapy groups are commonly found in these hospitals.

If you work in a community mental health center, a college counseling center, or a day-treatment clinic, you will be expected to provide therapeutic services in a wide range of group settings. Your client population will most likely be diverse with respect to age, ability/disability, presenting issues, socioeconomic status, level of education, race or ethnicity, sexual orientation, and cultural background. Community agencies are increasing their use of groups, and it is not uncommon to find groups for women's issues and for men's issues, consciousness-raising groups, groups for children of alcoholics, support groups, parent education groups, groups for cancer patients, groups for individuals with eating disorders, groups for people who have experienced trauma and crisis, groups for older adults, HIV/AIDS support groups, and groups aimed at reducing substance abuse.

Your theoretical approach may be based primarily on a single system. Increasingly, however, group practitioners are becoming more integrative as they draw on techniques from various theoretical approaches (Norcross & Goldfried, 2019). The numerous pathways toward integration are characterized by the practitioner's desire to increase therapeutic effectiveness and applicability by looking beyond the confines of single theories and the techniques associated with them (Norcross & Alexander, 2019; Norcross & Beutler, 2019).

Groups have particular advantages for school counseling. School-based groups are designed to deal with students' educational, vocational, social, and emotional problems. If you work in a school, you may be asked to form a career exploration group, a self-esteem group, a group for children of divorce, a behavior-modification group, an educational group teaching interpersonal skills, or a personal growth group. Elementary school counselors are now designing therapeutic groups as well as psychoeducational groups. On the high school level, groups are helping students who are in drug rehabilitation, who have been victims of crime, or who are going through a crisis or recovering from a trauma.

Counseling groups in K–12 school settings include a wide array of topics and formats. These groups are a mainstay of the psychological services offered by schools. Groups for children and adolescents occupy a major place in a comprehensive, developmental school counseling program because of their efficacy in delivering information and treatment. Steen, Henfield, and Booker (2014) state that integrating counseling with psychoeducational interventions has been successful in both personal-social and academic development groups in school settings. This combination of group counseling methods provides school counselors with the opportunity to facilitate self-awareness and to present skills information. Many school counseling groups are aimed at enhancing personal and social development and at the same time have a psychoeducational purpose (such as teaching study skills, how to interact with peers, or setting goals). Steen, Henfield, and Booker describe a group counseling model designed to help K–12 school counselors integrate students' academic and personal-social development into their group work. Riva and Haub (2004) maintain that "the real benefit of school-based treatment is that it can potentially reach many students before they need remedial counseling for more serious mental health problems" (p. 318).

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

There is considerable evidence for the effectiveness of group psychotherapy with a broad range of psychological problems and populations. The efficiency of group therapy has been enhanced by brief and time-limited frameworks for various settings (Brabender, 2020). Group work is a beneficial and cost-effective approach to treatment, and meta-analyses reveal that group therapy is as effective as individual therapy (Burlingame et al., 2004). Barlow (2008) contends that groups can be used effectively for both prevention and educational purposes: "Through ever-growing research and continuing improvements in clinical application, groups remain a powerful intervention tool across the life span, positively impacting childhood, adult, and geriatric disorders" (p. 244). Group approaches are flexible and can be designed to help people with almost any need.

The group approach has become popular in part because it is frequently more effective than individual counseling. Group members not only gain insight but also practice new skills both within the group and in their everyday interactions outside the group. In addition, members of the group benefit from the feedback and insights of other group members as well as those of the practitioner. Groups offer many opportunities for modeling, and members can learn how to cope with their problems by observing others with similar concerns. Group members also have the opportunity to rehearse their newly acquired skills within the group.

Even practitioners with advanced degrees in a helping profession often have had little exposure to the theory and techniques of group work. Many professionals find themselves thrust into the role of group leader without adequate preparation, training, or supervision. It is not surprising that some of them become anxious when faced with this challenge. Although this book is not intended to be an exclusive means of preparing competent group leaders, it provides practitioners with the fundamental knowledge and skills necessary to cope with the demands of effective group leadership.

Overview of the Counseling Group

A **counseling group** consists of a group facilitator and a limited number of members and has a specific focus, which may be educational, problem oriented, or revolve around personal growth. Group work emphasizes interpersonal communication of conscious thoughts, feelings, and behavior within a here-and-now time frame. Group work may have preventive as well as remedial aims; however, group members typically do not require extensive personality reconstruction, and their concerns generally relate to the developmental tasks of the life span. Group counseling tends to be growth oriented in that the emphasis is on discovering internal resources of strength. The participants may be facing situational crises and temporary conflicts, struggling with personal or interpersonal problems of living, experiencing difficulties with life transitions, or trying to change self-defeating behaviors. The group provides the empathy and support necessary to create the atmosphere of trust that leads to sharing and exploring these concerns. Counselors assist group members in developing their existing skills in dealing with interpersonal problems so members will be better able to handle future problems of a similar nature.

The group counselor uses verbal and nonverbal techniques as well as structured exercises. The role of the group counselor is to facilitate interaction among the members, help them learn from one another, assist them in establishing personal goals, and encourage them to translate their insights into concrete plans that involve taking action outside of the group. (Chapter 2, *Group Leadership*, describes the skills competent group leaders use to accomplish these tasks.) Group counselors perform their role largely by teaching members to focus on the here-and-now and to identify the concerns they want to explore in the group.

Goals

Ideally, the group members will decide the specific goals of the group experience for themselves. Here are some possible goals for members of counseling groups:

- Increase awareness and self-knowledge and develop a sense of one's unique identity
- Recognize the commonality of members' needs and problems and develop a sense of connectedness
- Learn how to establish meaningful and intimate relationships
- Discover resources within their extended family and community as ways of addressing their concerns

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Increase self-acceptance, self-confidence, self-respect, and achieve a new view of oneself and others
- Learn how to express one's emotions in a healthy way
- Develop concern and compassion for the needs and feelings of others
- Find alternative ways of dealing with normal developmental issues and of resolving certain conflicts
- Increase self-direction, interdependence, and responsibility toward oneself and others
- Become aware of one's choices and make choices wisely
- Make specific plans for changing certain behaviors
- Learn more effective social skills
- Learn how to challenge others with care, concern, honesty, and directness
- Clarify one's values and decide whether and how to modify them

Advantages

The group re-creates the participants' everyday world, especially if the membership is diverse with respect to age, interests, background, socioeconomic status, and type of problem. As a microcosm of society, the group provides a sample of reality—members' struggles and conflicts in the group are similar to those they experience outside of it—and the diversity that characterizes most groups also results in unusually rich feedback for and from the participants, who can see themselves through the eyes of a wide range of people.

The group offers understanding and support, which foster the members' willingness to explore problems they have brought with them to the group. The participants achieve a sense of belonging, and through the cohesion that develops, group members learn ways of being intimate, of caring, and of challenging. In this supportive atmosphere, members can experiment with new behaviors. As they practice these behaviors in the group, members receive encouragement and learn how to bring their new insights into their life outside the group experience.

Ultimately, it is up to the members themselves to decide what changes they want to make. They can compare the perceptions they have of themselves with the perceptions others have of them and then decide what to do with this information. Group members are able to get a picture of the kind of person they would like to become, and they come to understand what is preventing them from becoming that person.

Value for Specific Populations

Group counseling can be designed to meet the needs of specific populations such as children, adolescents, college students, or older adults. Examples of these counseling groups are described in *Groups: Process and Practice* (M. Corey et al., 2018), which offers suggestions on how to set up various groups and the techniques to use for dealing with the unique problems of each of them. A brief discussion follows that explains the value of counseling groups for some specific populations.

Counseling Groups for Children

In schools, group counseling is often suggested for children who display behaviors or attributes such as excessive fighting, inability to get along with peers, violent outbursts, poor social skills, or lack of supervision at home. Small groups can provide children with the opportunity to express their feelings about these and related problems. Identifying children who are developing serious emotional and behavioral problems is extremely important. If these children can receive psychological assistance at an early age, they stand a better chance of coping effectively with the developmental tasks they must face later in life.

Counseling Groups for Adolescents

Group counseling is especially suited for adolescents because it gives them a place to express conflicting feelings, to explore self-doubts, and to come to the realization that they share these concerns with their peers. Adolescents can openly question their values and modify those that need to be changed. In the group, adolescents learn to communicate with their peers, benefit from the modeling provided by the leader, and can safely experiment with reality and test their limits. Because of the opportunities for interaction available in the group situation, the participants can express their concerns and be heard, and they can help one another on the road toward self-understanding and self-acceptance.

Counseling Groups for College Students

Students encounter a range of developmental tasks during their undergraduate and graduate years. Counseling groups are a valuable vehicle for meeting

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the developmental needs of both traditional and nontraditional students. Today's college students have had a variety of significant life experiences, including some who are returning from military deployments in foreign countries. Those who seek services at college counseling centers are increasingly older and more diverse in their life experiences, making group work more challenging (McCeneaney & Gross, 2009).

Many college counseling centers offer groups designed for relatively healthy students who are experiencing personal and interpersonal relationship problems. The main purpose of these groups is to provide participants with an opportunity for growth and a situation in which they can deal with career decisions, intimate relationships, identity problems, educational plans, and feelings of isolation on an impersonal campus. Theme or issue groups, which are time-limited and focus on a developmental issue or address a specific problem that the participants have in common, are popular in university counseling centers. These groups promote well-being by assisting people in dealing effectively with developmental tasks (Drum & Knott, 2009).

Counseling Groups for Older People

Counseling groups can be valuable for older adults in many of the same ways they are of value to adolescents. As people grow older, they often experience isolation. Like adolescents, older people often feel unproductive, unneeded, and unwanted. Many older people accept myths about aging that become self-fulfilling prophecies. An example is the misconception that older people cannot change or that once they retire they will most likely be depressed. Counseling groups can do a lot to help older people challenge these myths and deal with the developmental tasks that they face while retaining their integrity and self-respect. The group format can assist people in breaking out of their isolation and offer older people the encouragement necessary to find meaning in their life so that they can live fully and not merely exist.

Other Types of Groups

Although this book focuses on counseling groups, the practice of group work has broadened to encompass psychotherapy groups, psychoeducational groups, support groups, and task groups as well as counseling groups. Many of these groups share some of the procedures, techniques, and processes of counseling groups. They differ, however, with respect to specific aims, the role of the leader, the kind of people in the group, and the emphasis given to issues such as prevention, remediation, treatment, and development. Let's take a brief look at how psychotherapy groups, psychoeducational (structured) groups, and task groups differ from counseling groups.

Group Psychotherapy

A major difference between group *therapy* and group *counseling* lies in the group's goals. Counseling groups focus on growth, development, enhancement, prevention, self-awareness, and releasing blocks to growth, whereas therapy groups focus on issues such as remediation, treatment, and personality reconstruction. **Group psychotherapy** is a process of reeducation that includes both conscious and unconscious awareness and both the present and the past. Some therapy groups are primarily designed to correct emotional and behavioral disorders that impede one's functioning or to remediate in-depth psychological problems. The goal may be either a minor or a major transformation of personality structure, depending on the theoretical orientation of the group therapist. Because of this goal, therapy groups tend to be longer term than other kinds of groups. The people who make up the group may be suffering from severe emotional problems, deep personal conflicts, effects of trauma, or psychotic states. Many of these individuals are in need of remedial treatment rather than developmental or preventive work.

Group therapists are typically clinical or counseling psychologists, licensed professional counselors, licensed marriage and family therapists, or clinical social workers. They use a wide range of verbal modalities (which group counselors also use), and some employ techniques to induce regression to earlier experiences, to tap unconscious dynamics, and to help members reexperience traumatic situations so that catharsis can occur. As these experiences are relived in the group, members become aware of and gain insight into past decisions that interfere with current functioning. The group therapist assists members in developing a corrective emotional experience and in making new decisions about the world, others, and themselves.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Psychoeducational Groups

Psychoeducational groups, or groups structured by some central theme, are gaining in popularity. **Psychoeducational groups** feature the presentation and discussion of factual information and skill building through the use of planned skill-building exercises. Psychoeducational groups serve a number of purposes: imparting information, sharing common experiences, teaching people how to solve problems, teaching social skills, offering support, and helping people learn how to create their own support systems outside of the group setting. These groups can be thought of as educational and therapeutic groups in that they are structured along the lines of specific content themes. Psychoeducational groups are finding a place in many settings, and they appear to be increasingly used in community agencies and in schools.

Psychoeducational groups are designed to help people develop specific skills, understand certain themes, or progress through difficult life transitions. Although the topics do vary according to the interests of the group leader and the participants, these groups have a common denominator of providing members with increased awareness of some life problems and tools to better cope with them. The intervention strategies used in psychoeducational groups are largely based on the transmission of information basic to making changes and teaching a process for bringing about these changes. The goal is to prevent an array of educational deficits and psychological disturbances.

Many psychoeducational groups are based on a learning theory model and use behavioral procedures. Chapter 12, *Cognitive Behavioral Approaches to Groups*, provides detailed descriptions of these groups, including social skills training groups, stress management groups, and cognitive therapy groups. Psychoeducational groups are well suited to populations of all ages, and they are described in detail in *Groups: Process and Practice* (M. Corey et al., 2018). Here are a few examples of psychoeducational groups for various developmental levels:

- A group for elementary school children of divorce
- An anger management group for children
- A substance abuse group
- A women's group and a men's group
- A domestic violence group
- A women's support group for survivors of incest
- A successful aging group
- A bereavement group for older adults

All of these groups contain certain content themes that provide structure for the sessions, encourage sharing and feedback among the members, are designed to increase self-awareness, and are aimed at facilitating change in members' daily lives. These groups can be designed for just about every client group and can be tailored to the specific needs of the individuals represented.

Task-Facilitation Groups

Task-facilitation groups assist task forces, committees, planning groups, community organizations, discussion groups, study circles, learning groups, team building, program development consultation, and other similar groups to correct or develop their functioning. These groups address the application of principles and processes of group dynamics that can foster accomplishment of identified work goals. Increasingly, human services workers are being asked to help improve program planning and evaluation within organizations.

Oftentimes those involved in task groups want to get down to business quickly, yet focusing exclusively on the task at hand (content) can create problems for the group. A leader's failure to attend to here-and-now factors is likely to result in a group that becomes overly focused on content concerns, with process issues relegated to a minor role. If interpersonal issues within the group are ignored, cooperation and collaboration will not develop, and it is likely that group goals will not be met. It is essential that group leaders recognize that process and relationships are central to achieving the goals of a task group.

It is the leader's role to assist task group participants in understanding how attention to this interpersonal climate directly relates to achieving the purpose and goals of the group (Hulse-Killacky et al., 2001). The balance between content and process in task groups is best achieved by attending to the guiding principles of warm-up, action, and closure. When this is done effectively, task groups are likely to be more successful and productive.

Task groups are commonly used by school counselors who assemble a group of school personnel to develop a plan to assist students. The team works together to determine how services can best be implemented. Rather than focusing on individual

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

growth, task groups in school settings are concerned with accomplishing common goals to assist a range of students (Falls & Furr, 2009).

Task groups have many uses in community intervention. Many of the problems people face are the result of being disenfranchised as individuals or as members of the community. One of the tasks of professionals engaged in community work is to assist individuals and the community in acquiring access to valued resources in moving toward a greater degree of empowerment. Group workers need to understand how sociopolitical influences impinge on the experiences of individuals from diverse racial and ethnic groups.

Working with the community usually means working with a specific group or in a situation in which competing or collaborating groups are dealing with an issue or set of issues in a community. Most of the work in community change is done in a small group context, and skills in organizing task groups are essential.

Brief Group Work

Strictly speaking, brief groups are not a type of group. Many of the groups already described are characterized by a time-limited format. Brief groups tend to have a preset time for termination and a process orientation. In the era of managed care, brief interventions and short-term groups have become a necessity. Economic pressures and a shortage of resources have resulted in major changes in the way mental health services are delivered. Managed care also has influenced the trend toward developing all forms of briefer treatment, including group treatment. Brief group therapy is well suited to the needs of both clients and managed care, and these treatments can be effective as well as economical (Hoyt, 2011). In **brief group work**, the group therapist sets clear and realistic treatment goals with members, establishes a clear focus within the group structure, maintains an active therapist role, and works within a limited time frame. Brief group work is popular in both community agencies and school settings because of the realistic time constraints and the ability of a brief format to be incorporated in educational or therapeutic programs.

Most of the empirical evidence on the effectiveness of group counseling has been based on studies of time-limited, closed groups; evidence from meta-analytic studies strongly supports the value of these groups. In general, the evidence for the efficacy of brief group therapy is quite positive (Shapiro, 2010). Brief interventions and time limitations are especially relevant for a variety of counseling groups, structured groups, and psychoeducational groups. The realistic time constraints in most settings demand that practitioners employ briefer approaches with demonstrated effectiveness. Because brief group work makes unique demands on group practitioners, it is essential that those who lead these groups have had training and supervision in brief group interventions. Shapiro believes the future of brief group treatment rests with the training group leaders receive: "We need to reestablish group training programs and more adequate supervision in brief groups and include personal group participation in our clinical and counseling training programs" (p. 506).

Group Counseling in a Multicultural Context

In a pluralistic society, the reality of cultural diversity is recognized, respected, and encouraged. Within groups, the worldviews of both the group leader and the members also vary, and this is a natural place to acknowledge and promote pluralism. Multicultural group work involves attitudes and strategies that cultivate understanding and appreciation of diversity in culture, ethnicity, race, gender, class, ability/disability, language, religion, sexual orientation, and age. We each have a unique multicultural identity, but as members of a group, we share a common goal—the success of the group. To that end, we want to learn more about ourselves as individuals and as members of diverse cultural groups.

DeLucia-Waack (1996) states that the multicultural context of group work requires attention to two tasks: (1) the application and modification of theories and techniques of group work to different cultures in ways that are congruent with cultural beliefs and behaviors, and (2) the development of the theory and practice of group work that makes full use of the diversity among members as a way to facilitate change and growth. Multiculturalism is inherent in all group work, and our uniqueness as individuals is a key factor in how groups operate.

In addition to understanding the range of clients' cultural similarities and differences, group counselors

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

must be willing and able to challenge the culturally encapsulated view of a group's structure, goals, techniques, and practices. A fundamental step for group counselors is reexamining the underlying culturally learned assumptions of all the major theories in light of their appropriateness in a multicultural context. Comas-Diaz (2019) believes that effective psychotherapy recognizes the crucial role of awareness, respect, acceptance, and appreciation of cultural diversity. However, most traditional therapy models are grounded in a monocultural framework wherein mainstream cultural values overshadow the multicultural worldviews that may be present among group members.

In their discussion of *multicultural intentionality* in group counseling, Ivey et al. (2008) state that it is no longer adequate to mainly look to internal dynamics within the individual as a source of problems. Instead, it is essential that we examine ourselves as contextual/cultural beings. We must expand our awareness of issues pertaining to gender, sexual orientation, degree of physical and emotional ability, spirituality, and socioeconomic status. It is not necessary to discard traditional theories and techniques of counseling, but we must conceptualize them in ways that recognize the environmental influences on individual distress.

Perspectives on Multicultural Group Counseling

The term *multicultural* refers to the complexity of culture as it pertains to delivery of services. From a broad perspective, **multicultural counseling** focuses on understanding not only racial and ethnic minority groups (African Americans, Asian Americans, Latinx, Native Americans, and White ethnics) but also people with physical disabilities; older people; gay, lesbian, bisexual, and transgender individuals; and a variety of special needs populations. The changing demographics of American society make it imperative that multicultural counseling address differences between counselor and client in areas such as gender, social class, language, sexual identity, ability/disability, and race and ethnicity (Lee, 2019).

Multicultural counseling challenges the notion that problems are found exclusively within the person. Going beyond this stance of "blaming the victim," the multicultural approach emphasizes the social and cultural context of human behavior and deals with the self-in-relation. It is essential that group workers recognize that many problems reside outside the individual. For example, prejudice and discrimination are realities in the social environment whose effects go far beyond working with individuals. If group workers hope to make culturally effective interventions, they will, at times, need to assume nontraditional roles that may include advocate, change agent, consultant, adviser, and facilitator of indigenous support or healing systems (Atkinson, 2004).

According to Pedersen (1991, 1997), the multicultural perspective provides a conceptual framework that both recognizes the complex diversity of a pluralistic society and suggests bridges of shared concern that link all people, regardless of their differences. This enables group counselors to look both at the unique dimensions of a person and at how this person shares themes with those who are different. Such a perspective respects the needs and strengths of diverse client populations, and it recognizes the experiences of these clients. Mere knowledge of certain cultural groups is not enough; it is important to understand the variability within groups. Individuals must be seen in the context of their cultural identities, the degree to which they have become acculturated, and their level of multicultural self-awareness.

Pedersen (1997, 2000) emphasizes the importance of understanding both group and individual differences in making accurate interpretations of behavior. Whether practitioners pay attention to cultural variables or ignore them, culture will continue to influence both group members' and group leaders' behavior as well as the group process. Group counselors who ignore culture will provide less effective services. For group counselors to successfully lead multicultural groups, it is essential that they be invested in becoming *culturally competent.* Group workers must become aware of their worldview, value diversity, learn about different worldviews, acquire and incorporate cultural knowledge as a part of their interventions, increase their multicultural skills, and adapt to diversity and to the cultural context of clients (Comas-Diaz, 2019). Leaders also need to have a good understanding of the diversity of cultural worldviews and the potential impact of differing worldviews on relationships, behaviors, and the willingness of members to actively participate in group work (DeLucia-Waack & Donigian, 2004).

Pedersen (2000) reminds us that culture is complicated, not simple; it is dynamic, not static. The tapestry of culture that is woven into the fabric of all

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

helping relationships need not be viewed as a barrier, however. In his workshops, Pedersen typically says that multiculturalism can make your job as a counselor easier and more fun; if you adopt a perspective that cultural differences are positive attributes that add richness to relationships, a multicultural perspective can also improve the quality of your life.

Some Guidelines for Serving Multicultural Populations

Adequate preparation is one of the best ways to increase the chances of a successful group experience for all members. Reflecting on these guidelines may increase your effectiveness in serving diverse client populations:

- Learn more about how your own cultural background influences your thinking and behaving. Become familiar with some of the ways in which you may be culturally encapsulated. Take specific steps to broaden your base of understanding both of your own culture and of other cultures.
- Identify your basic assumptions—especially as they apply to diversity in culture, ethnicity, race, gender, class, religion, and sexual identity—and think about how your assumptions are likely to affect your practice as a group counselor.
- Recognize that all encounters are multicultural.
- Move beyond the perspective of looking within individuals for the sources of their problems, and strive to adopt a self-in-relation perspective. Take into account the environmental and systemic factors that often contribute to an individual's struggles.
- Respect individual differences and recognize that diversity enhances a group.
- Learn to pay attention to the common ground that exists among people of diverse backgrounds. Acknowledge our share universal concerns.
- Realize that it is not necessary to learn everything about the cultural background of your clients before you begin working with them. Allow them to teach you how you can best serve them.
- Spend time preparing clients for a successful group experience, especially if some of their values differ from the values that form the foundation of group work. Teach clients how to adapt their group experience to meet the challenges they face in everyday life.
- Recognize the importance of being flexible in applying the methods you use with clients. Do not be wedded to a specific technique if it is not appropriate for a given group member.
- Remember that practicing from a multicultural perspective can make your job easier and can be rewarding for both you and your clients.

In your journey toward becoming a culturally skilled group counselor, you will probably need to think about ways of adapting your theoretical approach and techniques to better serve individuals from diverse cultural backgrounds. Chapter 2, *Group Leadership*, deals with what it takes to become a diversity-competent group counselor. Chapter 3, *Ethical and Professional Issues in Group Practice*, introduces you to a range of issues that may arise in multicultural group counseling. The last two chapters in Part One describe the early and later stages in the development of a group.

Part Two addresses some of the major strengths and limitations of 10 major theories from a multicultural perspective. The general principles of effective multicultural group counseling discussed here provide some background for understanding the more detailed discussion later in the book. As you study the 10 theories explored in Part Two, carefully consider the underlying value issues that are likely to have a clear impact on your practice. The direct application of many contemporary models of therapy may be inappropriate for some clients. However, many concepts and techniques drawn from the various therapeutic schools do have cultural relevance. As a group practitioner, you will use a range of key concepts and techniques associated with the various theoretical systems. It is important to develop selection criteria that will enable you to systematically integrate those tools that best meet the needs of diverse client populations.

Video

Watch Gerald Corey's *Group Theories in Action*, video via the Cengage eBook. The group session discussed in this chapter is based on an integrative approach to group counseling.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 2

Group Leadership

Learning Objectives

1. Identify the characteristics and functions of effective group counselors.
2. Identify key issues and special problems faced by beginning group counselors.
3. Describe ways of creating safety and trust in a group.
4. Differentiate between facilitative and inappropriate self-disclosure by the group leader.
5. List and define the various group leadership skills.
6. List specific skills and tasks in opening group sessions.
7. List specific skills and tasks in closing group sessions.
8. Understand the role of diversity issues in the therapeutic relationship.
9. Explain what is involved in becoming a diversity-competent group counselor.
10. Explain the difference between evidence-based practice and practice-based evidence.

This chapter focuses on the influence of the group leader as a person and as a professional. After discussing the personal characteristics of effective leaders, I analyze the skills and techniques that are necessary for successful leadership and the specific functions and roles of group leaders. I provide enough information about these crucial topics to enable you to benefit fully from the discussion in the following three chapters, which deal with the ethics of group practice and the stages in a group's development. The topics covered here also represent an important prelude to the theory chapters in Part Two.

The Group Leader as a Person

Group leaders can acquire extensive theoretical and practical knowledge of group dynamics and be skilled in diagnostic and technical procedures yet still be ineffective in stimulating growth and change in the members of their groups. Leaders bring their personal qualities, values, and life experiences, as well as their assumptions and biases, to every group. To promote growth in the members' lives, leaders need to live growth-oriented lives

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

themselves. To inspire others to break away from deadening ways of being, leaders need to be willing to seek new experiences themselves. In short, group leaders are an influential force in a group when they model effective behavior rather than merely describe it.

Group leaders do not have to be problem-free. The issue is not whether leaders have personal problems but whether they are willing to make a serious attempt to live the way they encourage members to live. More important than being a finished product is the willingness to continually examine whether one's life reflects life-giving values. The key to success as a group leader is a commitment to the never-ending journey toward becoming a more effective human being.

Personality and Character

Group counseling techniques cannot be divorced from the leader's personal characteristics and behaviors. Some personal characteristics of group leaders facilitate the group process and are vital for effective group leadership whereas others may inhibit the group process. As you read about these characteristics, evaluate your own strengths and acknowledge areas that need improvement.

Presence Being emotionally present means being moved by the joy and pain that others experience. If leaders recognize and give expression to their own emotions, they can become more emotionally involved with others. Leaders who can draw on their own experiences are able to empathize with and be compassionate toward group members. Presence also has to do with "being there" for the members, which involves genuine caring and a willingness to enter their psychological world. Leaders who feel fragmented or preoccupied with other matters when they come to a group session cannot be present for group members.

Personal Power Personal power involves self-confidence and an awareness of one's influence on others. If group leaders do not feel a sense of power in their own lives (or if they do not feel in control of their destiny), it is difficult for them to facilitate members' movement toward empowerment. In short, it is not possible to give to others what you do not possess. Personal power does not mean domination and exploitation of others; these are abuses of power. Truly powerful leaders use the effect they have on group participants to encourage members to get in contact with their own unused power, not to foster their dependency. Group leaders promote a sense of empowerment by encouraging group members to become *client colleagues.* If members risk change, the bulk of the credit belongs to them.

Courage Effective group leaders show courage in their interactions with group members and do not hide behind their special role as counselors. They show courage by taking risks in the group and by admitting their mistakes. Courageous group leaders are vulnerable, challenge members in respectful ways, act on their intuitions and beliefs, discuss their thoughts and feelings about the group process with members, and willingly share their power with group members. Leaders can model important lessons to members by being themselves and not hiding behind pretense. When members push themselves to leave familiar and secure patterns, they often report being anxious and scared. Group leaders can demonstrate, through their own behavior, their willingness to move ahead in spite of sometimes being imperfect and fearful.

Willingness to Challenge Oneself One of the leader's central tasks is to promote members' self-exploration. Self-awareness entails the willingness to take an honest look at oneself, and group leaders must show that they are willing to question themselves. This essential characteristic includes awareness not only of one's needs and motivations but also of personal conflicts and problems, of defenses and vulnerabilities, of areas of unfinished business, and of the potential influence of all of these on the group process. Group practitioners who are self-aware are able to work therapeutically with the transferences that emerge within the group setting, both toward themselves and toward other members. Furthermore, group leaders are aware of their own potential countertransferences and take responsibility for their own reactions.

Sincerity and Authenticity One of the leader's most important qualities is a sincere interest in the well-being and growth of others. Because sincerity

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

involves being direct, it can also involve telling members what may be difficult for them to hear. For a group leader, caring means challenging the members to look at parts of their lives that they are denying and discouraging any form of dishonest behavior in the group. The client's best interest is paramount, and useful feedback requires sincerity and respect on the part of the leader.

Authenticity is a form of sincerity. Authentic group leaders do not live by pretenses and do not hide behind defenses or facades. Authenticity entails the willingness to appropriately disclose and share feelings and reactions to what is going on in the group, but indiscriminately sharing every fleeting thought, perception, feeling, fantasy, and reaction is inappropriate. For instance, even though a leader might initially be attracted to a member, it would not be wise to disclose this reality at the initial session. Such "holding back" does not imply inauthenticity; rather, it shows respect and consideration for members at this early stage of the group.

Sense of Identity If group leaders are to help others discover who they are, leaders need to have a clear sense of their own identity. This means knowing what you value and living by these standards, not by what others expect. It means being aware of your own strengths, limitations, needs, fears, motivations, and goals. It means knowing what you are capable of becoming, what you want from life, and how you are going to get what you want. Being aware of your cultural heritage is a vital component of this sense of identity.

Belief in the Group Process and Enthusiasm The leader's deep belief in the value of the group process is essential to the success of the group. Practitioners who lead groups simply because they are expected to do so, without being convinced that group interventions make a difference, are unlikely to inspire group members. A leader's lack of enthusiasm is generally reflected in members' lack of excitement about coming to group sessions and in members' inability to do significant work. The enthusiasm group leaders bring to their groups has an infectious quality. If leaders radiate life, the chances are slim that they will consistently be leading "stale groups." Leaders need to show that they enjoy their work and like being with their group members.

Inventiveness and Creativity Group counselors should avoid getting trapped in ritualized techniques and programmed presentations. It may not be easy to approach each group with new ideas, but inventive and creative leaders remain open to new experiences and to worldviews that differ from their own. One of the main advantages of group work is that it offers many opportunities for being inventive.

Stamina Leading a group can be demanding as well as energizing. Group leaders need stamina and the ability to withstand pressure to remain vitalized throughout the course of a group. Leaders of very challenging groups are bound to feel their energy being drained, and unrealistically high expectations can affect stamina. Leaders who expect immediate change are often disappointed in themselves and may be too quick to judge themselves. Faced with the discrepancy between their vision of what the group *should* be and what actually occurs, leaders may lose their enthusiasm and begin to blame not only themselves but also the group members for the lack of change within the group. It is crucial for group leaders to be aware of their own energy level and to have sources other than the group for psychological nourishment.

Commitment to Self-Care Staying alive both personally and professionally does not happen automatically; it is the result of your commitment to acquiring habits of thinking and action that promote wellness. Self-care is not a luxury but an ethical mandate, and you need to commit to developing effective self-care strategies. Self-care consists of the actions you take to improve your health and better meet the many challenges of being an effective counselor. Self-care protects you from burnout, empathy fatigue, impairment, and other conditions that can detract from your effectiveness. Self-care is best viewed as an ongoing preventive activity for all mental health practitioners. Engaging in self-care activities helps us successfully meet the demands of our professional work. It is essential that you become attuned to the warning signals that you are being depleted and take steps to nurture and sustain yourself. You cannot provide nourishment to group members if you don't nourish yourself. By taking care of yourself, you are modeling an important lesson in self-care for group members. If you have a pattern of putting others' needs before

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

your own, you increase the likelihood of burnout. By proactively engaging in taking care of yourself on all levels, you will sustain your energy and be able to continue to help others.

Portrait of Highly Effective Therapists In *Master Therapists*, Skovholt and Jennings (2004) describe their qualitative research project on the personality characteristics of 10 master therapists—those considered the "best of the best" among mental health professionals. Skovholt and Jennings's investigation yielded a portrait of highly effective therapists that includes the following dimensions:

- A drive to master, yet a sense of never arriving
- An ability to deeply enter the world of another without losing a sense of self
- The ability to provide an emotionally safe environment for clients while challenging them
- The ability to draw on their therapeutic power to help others while maintaining a sense of humility
- Integration of their personal and professional selves with clear boundaries between each dimension
- The ability to give to others while taking care of themselves
- The ability to accept feedback about themselves without becoming destabilized by this feedback

Other specific one-word characteristics associated with this portrait of the master therapist include being alive, congruent, committed, determined, intense, open, curious, tolerant, vital, reflective, self-aware, generous, mature, optimistic, analytic, fun, discerning, energetic, robust, inspiring, and passionate (pp. 133–134). Certainly, these 10 master therapists did not possess all of these traits all of the time, but this research sheds light on the personal characteristics of therapists who are considered outstanding by their professional colleagues. The researchers also described how these characteristics are manifested in a therapist's professional work.

A Concluding Comment

As you review the characteristics of effective group leaders, consider these personal qualities on a continuum. As you examine your own courage, self-awareness, and clear sense of identity, be aware that it will be easier for you to facilitate members' self-exploration as your self-awareness increases. The challenge is for you to take an honest look at your personal qualities and make an assessment of your ability as a person to inspire others. Your own commitment to living up to your potential is key; the most effective way to lead others is to model your own beliefs through your actions. Experiencing your own therapy (either individually or in groups) is one way to remain open to looking at the direction of your life. You will never be the perfectly integrated group leader who has "arrived." After all, once you have arrived, there is no place to go!

The personal dimensions described in the preceding pages are essential, but they are not sufficient for successful leadership. The specialized knowledge and skills identified by the Association for Specialists in Group Work (ASGW, 2000) in "Professional Standards for the Training of Group Workers" are central to effective group leadership. These leadership skills are examined in greater detail later in the chapter.

Special Problems and Issues for Beginning Group Leaders

Through my work in training and supervising group leaders and providing in-service workshops, I have come across a number of topics that have special relevance for beginning leaders. These issues must be faced by all group leaders regardless of their experience, but they are especially significant for those who are relatively inexperienced.

You may wonder whether you have what it takes to be an effective leader. My advice is to be patient with yourself and not to demand that you immediately become the "perfect group leader." Most practitioners (including me) questioned their competence when they began leading groups, and they may still have difficulty at times. Self-doubts are less of a problem if you are willing to continue to seek training and to work under supervision.

Initial Anxiety

Before you lead your first group, you will no doubt be anxious about getting the group started and about keeping it moving. You will probably be asking

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

yourself questions like these with a certain degree of trepidation:

- What do the participants really expect of me?
- Will I be able to get the group started? How?
- Will I run out of things to say or do before the end of the session?
- What if members of my group perceive my inexperience as incompetence?
- Should I take an active role, or should I wait for the group to start on its own?
- Should I have an agenda, or should I let the group members decide what they want to talk about?
- Do I possess the cultural competence to lead this group?
- What techniques are best during the early stages of the group?
- What if nobody wants to participate? Or what if too many people want to participate?
- Will I be able to help those who want to get involved?
- Will the group members want to come back?

It is essential for group counselors to identify and examine their internal dialogue. Even the most effective group leaders may find themselves slipping into distorted ways of thinking and engaging in negative thoughts when the group seems to have stalled. It is not easy to erase self-defeating thought patterns, yet it is possible to question the assumptions we make and the conclusions we form. As cognitive therapy teaches us, by being willing to continually challenge our core beliefs, we can avoid being controlled by negative internal dialogues.

Beginning leaders are encouraged to recognize that their doubts and concerns are normal. Moderate anxiety is beneficial and can lead to honest self-appraisal. Anxiety can be counterproductive, however, if it begins to feed on itself and is allowed to freeze us into inactivity. It is a good practice for beginning leaders to voice their questions and concerns and to explore them in the course of the training sessions. Their willingness to do this can allay some unnecessary anxiety, and they may discover that their peers share their concerns. Students frequently say that their peers appear to be so much more knowledgeable, skilled, talented, and self-confident than they themselves are. When they hear their peers express anxieties and feelings of inadequacy, these students realize that those who appear to be extremely self-confident are also struggling with self-doubts. Exploring their concerns with peers and a supervisor can help beginning leaders distinguish between realistic and unrealistic anxiety and thus defuse unwarranted and counterproductive anxiety.

Self-Disclosure

Regardless of their years of experience, group leaders may struggle with decisions about self-disclosure. For beginning leaders, the issue is of even greater concern. Although *what* to reveal and *when* are factors in determining the appropriateness of self-disclosure, the problem centers on *how much* to reveal. It is not uncommon to err at either extreme, disclosing too little or disclosing too much.

Too Little Self-Disclosure If you maintain stereotyped role expectations and keep yourself mysterious by hiding behind your professional facade, you can lose your personal identity in the group and allow very little of yourself to be known. The reasons for functioning in a role (rather than as a person who has certain functions to perform) are many. One may be the fear of appearing unprofessional or of losing the respect of the members. Another may be the need to keep a distance or to maintain a "doctor-patient" relationship.

In addition to being unwilling to share your personal life, you may be hesitant to disclose how you feel in the group or how you are affected by certain members. To avoid sharing your own reactions to what is occurring within the group, you might limit your interventions to detached observations. Such "professional" aloofness may be expressed by too frequently making interpretations and suggestions, asking questions rather than making personal statements, acting as a mere coordinator, or providing one structured exercise after another to keep the group going.

The most productive form of sharing is disclosure that is related to what is going on in the group. For instance, if you have a persistent feeling that most members are not very motivated and are not investing themselves in the session, you are likely to feel burdened by the constant need to keep the meetings alive all by yourself, with little or no support from the participants. Disclosing how you are affected by this lack of motivation is generally very useful and appropriate.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Too Much Self-Disclosure At the other end of the continuum are the problems associated with excessive self-disclosure. Most beginning group leaders (and many experienced ones) have a strong need to be approved of and accepted by group members. It is easy to make the mistake of "paying membership dues" by sharing intimate details to prove that you are just as human as the members. There is a fine line between appropriate and inappropriate self-disclosure. It is a mistake to assume that "the more disclosure, the better." The readiness of the members, the impact sharing personal details is likely to have on them, and the degree to which your disclosures are relevant to the here-and-now process of the group should go hand in hand with self-disclosure.

You may be inclined to submit to group pressure to share more of yourself. Members often say to leaders: "We don't know much about you. Why don't you say more about yourself? We talked about ourselves, and now we'd like to see you open up too!" The members can exert more subtle, but no less strong, pressures for you to "become a member" of the group you are leading. In an attempt to avoid getting lost in a professionally aloof role, you may try too hard to be perceived as a friend and a fellow group member. If you decide to share personal concerns, it should be for the benefit of the group members. The place to explore your own concerns (and thus serve your own needs) is in a group in which you are a participant yourself. Group leading is demanding work, and you can make this work even more difficult by confusing your role and functions with those of the participants.

Appropriate and Facilitative Self-Disclosure Appropriate, facilitative self-disclosure is an essential aspect of the art of group leading. It is *not* necessary to disclose details of your past or of your personal life to make yourself known as a person or to empathize with the participants. A few words can convey a great deal, and nonverbal messages—a look or a gesture—can express feelings of identification and understanding. Appropriate disclosure does not take the focus away from the client and is never a contrived technique to get group members to open up. Your sensitivity to how people respond can teach you a lot about the timeliness and value of your disclosures. Timeliness is a critical factor; something that is inappropriate to disclose during the early stages of a group could be very useful when disclosed at a later stage. Beginning group leaders are advised to err on the side of caution rather than on the side of uninhibited and unexamined self-disclosure.

Yalom and Leszcz (2020) stress that a leader's self-disclosure must be instrumental in helping the members attain their goals. They caution against indiscriminate leader disclosures and call for selective and timely disclosure that provides members with acceptance, support, and encouragement. Yalom and Leszcz believe that group leaders who disclose here-and-now reactions rather than detailed personal events from their past tend to facilitate the movement of the group. Group leaders' observations and personal reactions to members or to what is happening in the group at a given point in time can have a therapeutic impact. When done in a sensitive and caring manner, this is a powerful way to model giving interpersonal feedback in the group.

Hill and Knox (2002) reviewed the empirical evidence of the effectiveness of therapist self-disclosure and emphasize that it is critical for therapists to understand how their disclosures affect their clients and to use self-disclosures appropriately. Hill and Knox provide the following guidelines for using self-disclosure in practice:

- Therapists need to monitor the frequency and purpose of their disclosures.
- Therapists might consider disclosing for the purpose of normalizing experiences, modeling, strengthening the therapeutic alliance, validating reality, or offering alternative ways to think or act.
- Therapists should avoid self-disclosure that is used to meet their own needs, takes the focus off the client's experiencing, interferes with the flow of the session, burdens the client, blurs the boundaries in the relationship, or contaminates the transference.
- It is important for therapists to observe how clients react to the disclosures, to ask clients how they react to sharing personal material, and to decide how to intervene next.
- Clients react differently to therapist disclosure, so it is important to determine what clients need from the therapist.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Group Leadership Skills

It is a mistake to assume that anyone with certain personal qualities and a desire to help will be an effective group leader. Successful leadership requires specific group leadership skills and the appropriate performance of certain functions. Like most skills, leadership skills are learned and need to be practiced. Think about your own skill level as you read about these essential group leadership skills. (These skills are addressed in more detail in the theory chapters in Part Two.)

Active Listening Active listening involves paying total attention to the speaker and being sensitive to what is being communicated at both the verbal and nonverbal levels. Your ability to hear what is being communicated improves as your expertise improves. Many leaders make the mistake of focusing too intently on the content and, in doing so, don't pay enough attention to how group members express themselves. Being a skilled group leader entails picking up the subtle cues provided by members through their style of speech, body posture, gestures, voice quality, and mannerisms. Group leaders need to listen well to members, but it is just as important that leaders teach members how to listen actively to one another.

Restating In a sense, restating (or paraphrasing) is an extension of listening. It means recasting what someone said into different words so that the meaning is clearer to both the speaker and the group. Effective restating zeroes in on the core of a person's message, bringing it into sharper focus and eliminating ambiguity. By capturing the essence of a member's message and reflecting it back, the leader helps the person continue the self-exploration process at a deeper level.

Restating is not an easy skill to master. Some group leaders confine themselves to simply repeating what was said, which adds little new meaning and does not clarify the message. Others overuse the technique and sound mechanical and repetitive. The value of accurate and concise restating is twofold: It tells participants that they have been heard, and it helps members struggling with their own feelings and thoughts see these issues more clearly.

Clarifying Clarifying, too, is an extension of active listening. It involves responding to confusing and unclear aspects of a message by focusing on underlying issues and helping members sort out conflicting feelings. Members often say that they have ambivalent feelings or are feeling many things at once; clarification can help sort out these feelings so that members can focus more sharply on what they are experiencing. The same procedure applies to thinking. In clarifying, the group leader stays within the individual's frame of reference while at the same time helping the group member put things into perspective; this, in turn, may lead to a deeper level of self-exploration on the part of the member.

Summarizing The skill of pulling together the important elements of a group interaction or part of a session is known as summarizing. This ability is particularly useful when making a transition from one topic to another. Rather than merely proceeding from issue to issue, identifying common elements can increase learning and maintain continuity.

Summarizing is especially needed at the end of a session. It is a mistake for a group leader to end a session abruptly, with little attempt to pull the session together. One of the leader's functions is to help members reflect on and make sense of what has occurred in their group. Summarizing encourages participants to think about what they have learned and experienced in a session and about ways of applying it to their everyday lives. At the end of the session, group leaders may offer their own brief summary or ask each member in turn to summarize what has taken place, what the highlights of the session were, and how each member responded to the interaction.

Questioning Questioning is probably the technique that inexperienced group leaders tend to overuse most often. Asking members question after question can have a negative impact on group interaction. There are several problems with the ineffective use of questioning. Members feel as if they have been subjected to the "third degree," and the questioner probes for personal information while remaining safe and anonymous behind the interrogation.

Not all questioning is inappropriate, but closed questions—those that require a simple "yes" or "no" response—are generally not helpful. "Why" questions

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

usually lead to intellectual ruminating or put members on the defensive, neither of which is helpful. Instead, use open-ended questions that elicit alternatives and new areas of self-investigation. These questions can be of real value. For example, "What are you experiencing right now?" "What is happening with you at this moment?" and "How are you dealing with your fear in this group?" are questions that can help participants become more focused and feel their emotions more deeply. It is important for leaders to ask questions that explore issues in greater depth.

Group leaders need to develop skills in raising questions at the group level as well as questioning individual members. Examples of process questions that can be productively addressed to the group as a whole include the following: "How are others being affected by Simone's work right now?" "Where is the group with this topic now?" "I'm noticing that many of you are silent. I wonder what is not being said." "How much energy is in the group at this time?" Questions at the group level can assist members in expanding their focus and reflecting on what is happening in the group in the here-and-now.

Interpreting Leaders interpret when they offer possible explanations for a participant's thoughts, feelings, or behavior. By offering tentative hypotheses concerning certain patterns of behavior, interpreting helps the individual see new perspectives and alternatives. Interpreting requires a great deal of skill. Interpreting too soon, presenting an interpretation in a dogmatic way, or encouraging members to become dependent on the leader to provide meanings and answers are common mistakes. One way of interpreting is for leaders to share their hunches with members, asking them to reflect on how accurate these hunches are. The leader needs to have enough experience with members to base interpretations on knowledge gathered about the members. Timing is especially important. Interpretations not only have to be made at a time when the person is likely to be willing to consider them but also need to be expressed in a tentative way that gives the person a chance to assess their validity. Although an interpretation may be technically correct, it may be rejected if the leader is not sensitive to the client's willingness or unwillingness to accept it.

In addition to making interpretations for individuals, group leaders need to be skilled at making whole-group interpretations. An example of this is a leader pointing out how many members may be invested in attempting to draw a particular member out. At times, a group may be characterized by members who probe others for information. A leader could interpret such behavior as an avoidance pattern on the part of the group as a whole.

Confronting Confrontation can be a powerful way of challenging members to take an honest look at themselves. However, when handled poorly, confrontation also has the potential of being detrimental both to the person being confronted and to the group process. Many leaders shy away from confrontation because they fear its possible repercussions: blocking the group interaction, hurting someone, or becoming the target of retaliation. Confrontation can easily be seen as an uncaring attack. Skilled group counselors confront behavior inconsistencies in a way that gives the person ample opportunity to consider what is being said. Skillful confrontation specifies the behavior or the discrepancies between verbal and nonverbal messages that are being challenged so that no labeling can possibly occur.

As is true of most of these skills, confronting is a skill leaders need to learn in challenging individual members and the group as a whole. For example, if the group seems to be low in energy and characterized by superficial discussions, the leader might challenge the members to assess what they see going on in their group and determine whether they want to change what they notice about their functioning as a group.

Reflecting Feelings Reflecting feelings is the skill of responding to the essence of what a person has communicated. The purpose is to let members know that they are being heard and understood. Although reflection entails mirroring certain feelings that the person has expressed, it is not merely a bouncing-back process. Reflection is dependent on attention, interest, understanding, and respect for the person. When reflection is done well, it fosters further contact and involvement; feeling understood and achieving a clearer grasp of one's feelings are very reinforcing and stimulate the person to seek greater self-awareness.

Supporting Supporting means providing group members with encouragement and reinforcement,

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

especially when they are disclosing personal information, exploring painful feelings, or taking risks. A leader can provide support by being fully present at the appropriate time. This full presence requires a combination of skills: listening actively to what is being said and what is being conveyed nonverbally, being psychologically present with the individual, and responding in a way that encourages the member to continue working and to move forward.

The essence of this skill is in knowing when it will be facilitative and when it will be counterproductive. Some group leaders make the mistake of being overly supportive, or of supporting too soon. If leaders limit themselves to a style that is almost exclusively supportive, they deprive members of potentially valuable challenges. Leaders who offer support too quickly when someone is exploring painful material tend to defuse the intensity of the experience and pull group members away from their feelings.

Empathizing The core of the skill of empathy lies in leaders' ability to sensitively grasp the subjective world of the participant and yet retain their own separateness. To empathize effectively, leaders need to care for the group members. A background that includes a wide range of experiences can help leaders identify with others.

Facilitating Facilitation skills involve opening up clear and direct communication among the members and helping them assume increasing responsibility for the direction of the group. Facilitating is aimed at enhancing the group experience and enabling members to reach their goals.

Initiating Good initiating skills on the leader's part help the group work more effectively. These skills include using catalysts to get members to focus on meaningful work, knowing how to employ various techniques that promote deeper self-exploration, and providing links for various themes being explored in the group. Providing appropriate direction can give the group a focus and keep it moving, but too much direction can lead to passivity on the part of members. Initiating is a key skill in structuring a group session and in working with the group as a whole.

Setting Goals Productive goal setting is at the core of group counseling. Note that group leaders do not set goals for members; they help group members select and clarify their own specific goals. Although goal setting is especially important during the initial stages of a group, throughout the group's life leaders need to encourage participants to take another look at their goals, to modify them if necessary, and to determine how effectively they are accomplishing them. Leaders who don't develop the intervention skills of challenging members to formulate concrete goals often find that their groups are characterized by aimless and unproductive sessions.

Evaluating Evaluating is an ongoing process that continues for the duration of a group. After each session, the leader assesses what is happening in the group as a whole and within individual members. Leaders teach participants how to evaluate themselves and how to appraise the movement and direction of their group. For example, if at the end of a session most participants agree that the session was superficial, they can be challenged to find the reasons for the unsatisfactory outcome and to decide what they are willing to do to change the situation. Members also need to be taught how to evaluate what they have learned at the end of their group experience.

Giving Feedback The purpose of feedback is to provide a realistic assessment of how a person appears to others. Skilled group leaders provide specific and honest feedback based on their observation of and reaction to members' behaviors and encourage members to give feedback to one another. One of the great advantages of groups is that participants can tell each other their reactions to what they observe. Productive feedback is presented in a way that is acceptable to members and worthy of serious consideration. Feedback that is specific and descriptive rather than global and judgmental is the most helpful.

Suggesting Suggestion is a form of intervention designed to help participants develop an alternative course of thinking or action. It can take many forms, a few of which are giving information and advice, giving "homework assignments," asking members to think of experiments they might try inside and outside of the group, and encouraging members to look at a situation from a different perspective. Giving information and providing appropriate suggestions for alternative plans of action can hasten the progress

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

members make in a group. Suggestions need not always come from the leader; members can make suggestions for others to consider, especially during later stages of the group.

The overuse of persuasion, suggestions, and advice entails some dangers. One is that members can be led to believe that simple solutions exist for complex problems. Another is that members may remain dependent on other people to suggest what they should do in the face of future problems instead of learning how to solve their own problems. There is a fine line between suggesting and prescribing, and the skill consists in using suggestions to enhance an individual's movement toward independence.

Protecting Without assuming a parental attitude toward the group, leaders need to be able to safeguard members from unnecessary psychological or physical risks associated with being in a group. Although the very fact of participating in a group does entail certain risks, leaders can step in when they sense that psychological harm may result from a series of group interactions. For example, intervention is called for when a member is being treated unfairly or when an avalanche of feelings from the group is directed toward one person.

Disclosing Oneself When leaders reveal personal information, they usually have an impact on the group. The skill consists of knowing what, when, how, and how much to reveal. If the leader shares appropriately, the effects on the group are likely to be positive. If the leader shares too much too soon, the effects are likely to be adverse because members may not yet be able to handle such disclosure. The most productive disclosure is related to what is taking place within the group.

Modeling Group members learn by observing the leader's behavior. If leaders value honesty, respect, openness, risk-taking, and assertiveness, they can foster these qualities in the members by demonstrating them in the group. From a leader who shows respect by really listening and empathizing, members learn a direct and powerful lesson in how respect is shown behaviorally. In short, one of the best ways to teach more effective skills of interpersonal relating is by direct example. Leaders can also teach members how to model for one another.

Linking One way of promoting interaction among group members is to look for themes that emerge in a group and then to connect the work that members do to these themes. This is a most important skill to teach in a group and to foster involvement on the part of many members. Group leaders with an interactional bias—that is, those who develop the norm of member-to-member rather than leader-to-member communication—rely a great deal on linking. They encourage members to address others in the group directly rather than looking at the leader and talking about others who are present. Members often have shared concerns, and through effective linking they can be helped to work through their problems. By being alert for common concerns, the leader can promote interaction and increase the level of group cohesion. Through linking several members together, the leader is also teaching members how to take responsibility for involving themselves in the work of others. When members learn how to bring themselves into group interactions, they become more independent of the leader and are also likely to feel a greater sense of belongingness by being connected to others.

Blocking Sometimes a leader must intervene to stop counterproductive behaviors within the group. Blocking is a skill that requires sensitivity, directness, and the ability to stop the activity without attacking the person. The attention should be on the specific behavior and not on the character of the person, and labeling should be avoided. For example, if a member is invading another member's privacy by asking probing and highly personal questions, the leader will point to this behavior as being unhelpful, without referring to the person as a "peeping tom" or an "interrogator." When members judge or criticize others, pressure others to take a specific course of action or to express feelings in a group, or habitually ask questions of others, the group leader may need to block this behavior. Other behaviors that group leaders need to watch for and block when necessary include making excuses to justify failure to make changes, breaking confidences, invading a member's privacy, perpetually giving advice, storytelling, gossiping, offering support inappropriately, and making inaccurate or inappropriate interpretations. Whatever the behavior, blocking must be carried out firmly, but sensitively.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Terminating Group leaders need to learn when and how to terminate their work with individuals as well as with the group. The skills required in closing a group session or ending a group successfully include providing members with suggestions for applying what they've learned in the group to their daily lives, preparing the participants to deal with the problems they may encounter outside of the group, providing for some type of evaluation and follow-up, suggesting sources of further help, and being available for individual consultation should the need arise.

Don't Overwhelm Yourself!

It is not unusual for beginning group counselors to feel somewhat overwhelmed when they consider all these skills. My hope is that you will be patient with yourself and not expect mastery all at once. By systematically learning certain principles and practicing certain skills, you can expect to gradually refine your leadership style and gain the confidence you need to use these skills effectively. Participating in a group as a member is the optimal way for developing these skills; you can learn a lot by observing experienced people. Of course, you also need to practice these skills by leading groups under supervision. Feedback from group members, your coleader, and your supervisor is essential to the refinement of your leadership skills. Seeing yourself in action on videotape is a great source of feedback that enables you to identify specific areas you most need to strengthen.

Like all skills, group leadership skills exist in degrees, not on an all-or-nothing basis. They may be developed only minimally, or they may be highly refined and used appropriately. Through training and supervised experience, you can continue to improve your leadership skills. The *Student Manual for Theory and Practice of Group Counseling* (Corey, 2023) has a checklist and self-evaluation of the 22 skills discussed here. This inventory is useful for rating yourself on your leadership skills and can be used in rating your coleader. Of course, your coleader can rate you on each of the skills too. This instrument can provide topics for you and your coleader to discuss in your meetings.

Table 2.1 presents an overview of the group leadership skills discussed in the preceding pages.

Special Skills for Opening and Closing Group Sessions

Opening a group session effectively sets the tone for the rest of the session. Unfortunately, many leaders lack the skills necessary to effectively open or close a group session. For example, some leaders simply select one member and focus on that person while the other group members wait their turn. When a group session begins poorly, it may be difficult to accomplish any sustained work during the rest of the meeting.

The way each session is closed is as important as the way it is initiated. I have observed group leaders who simply allowed the time to elapse and then abruptly announced, "Our time is up; we'll see you all next week." Because of the leader's failure to summarize and offer some evaluation of the session, much of the potential value of the meeting was lost. Effectively opening and closing each session ensures continuity from meeting to meeting. Continuity makes it more likely that participants will think about what occurred in the group when they are outside of it, and they will be more likely to try to apply what they have learned to their everyday lives. Together with encouragement and direction from the leader, effective summarizing and evaluation facilitate the members' task of assessing their own level of participation at each session.

Procedures for Opening a Group Session

With groups that meet on a weekly or regular basis, group leaders have a variety of options for opening the session.

1. Participants can be asked to briefly state what they want to get from the session. My preference is for a quick "go-around" in which each group member identifies issues or concerns that could be explored during the session. Before focusing on one person, it is good to give all members a chance to at least say what they want to bring up during the meeting. In this way, a tentative agenda can be developed, and if a number of people are concerned with similar themes, the agenda can incorporate the involvement of several members.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Table 2.1 Overview of Group Leadership Skills

Skill	Description	Aims and Desired Outcomes
Active listening	Attending to verbal and nonverbal aspects of communication without judging or evaluating	To encourage trust and client self-disclosure and exploration
Restating	Paraphrasing what a participant has said to clarify its meaning	To determine that the leader has correctly understood the client's statement; to provide support and clarification
Clarifying	Grasping the essence of a message at both the feeling and thinking levels; simplifying client statements by focusing on the core of the message	To help clients sort out conflicting and confused feelings and thoughts; to arrive at a meaningful understanding of what is being communicated
Summarizing	Pulling together the important elements of an interaction or session	To avoid fragmentation and give direction to a session; to provide for continuity and meaning
Questioning	Asking open-ended questions that lead to self-exploration of the "what" and "how" of behavior	To elicit further discussion; to get information; to stimulate thinking; to increase clarity and focus; to provide for further self-exploration
Interpreting	Offering possible explanations for certain thoughts, feelings, and behaviors	To encourage deeper self-exploration; to promote full use of potentials; to bring about awareness of self-contradictions
Confronting	Challenging members to look at discrepancies between their words and actions or between their nonverbal and verbal messages; pointing to conflicting information or messages	To encourage honest self-investigation; to promote full use of potentials; to bring about awareness of self-contradictions
Reflecting feelings	Communicating understanding of the content of feelings	To let members know that they are being heard and understood beyond the level of words
Supporting	Providing encouragement and reinforcement	To create an atmosphere that encourages members to continue desired behaviors; to provide help when clients are facing difficult struggles; to create trust
Empathizing	Identifying with clients by assuming their frames of reference	To foster trust in the therapeutic relationship; to communicate understanding; to encourage deeper levels of self-exploration
Facilitating	Opening up clear and direct communication within the group; helping members assume increasing responsibility for the group's direction	To promote effective communication among members; to help members reach their own goals in the group
Initiating	Promoting participation and introducing new directions in the group	To help members work more effectively; to increase the pace of the group process
Setting goals	Planning specific goals for the group process and helping participants define concrete and meaningful goals	To give direction to the group's activities; to help members select and clarify their goals
Evaluating	Appraising the ongoing group process and the individual and group dynamics	To promote better self-awareness and understanding of group movement and direction
Giving feedback	Expression of concrete and honest reactions based on observation of members' behaviors	To offer an external view of how the person appears to others; to increase the client's self-awareness
Suggesting	Offering advice and information, direction, and ideas for new behavior	To help members develop alternative courses of thinking and action
Protecting	Safeguarding members from unnecessary psychological risks in the group	To warn members of possible risks in group participation; to reduce these risks

(continued)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Table 2.1 (*continued*)

Skill	Description	Aims and Desired Outcomes
Disclosing oneself	Revealing one's reactions to here-and-now events in the group	To facilitate deeper levels of group interaction; to create trust; to model ways of revealing oneself to others
Modeling	Demonstrating desired behavior through actions	To provide examples of desirable behavior; to inspire members to fully develop their potential
Linking	Connecting the work that members do to common themes in the group	To promote member-to-member interactions; to encourage the development of cohesion
Blocking	Intervening to stop counterproductive group behavior	To protect members; to enhance the flow of group process
Terminating	Preparing the group to close a session or end its existence	To help members assimilate, integrate, and apply in-group learning to everyday life

Source: The format of this chart is based on Edwin J. Nolan, 1978, "Leadership Interventions for Promoting Personal Mastery," *Journal for Specialists in Group Work*, 3(3), 132–138.

2. Members can be given a chance to express any thoughts they may have had about the previous session or to bring up for consideration any unresolved issues from an earlier meeting. Unresolved issues among members themselves or between members and the leader can make progressing with the current agenda most difficult. The hidden agenda will interfere with productive work until it has surfaced and been dealt with effectively.
3. Participants can be asked to report on the progress or difficulties they experienced during the week. Ideally, they have been experimenting with other ways of behaving outside of the group, they are getting involved in carrying out "homework assignments," and they are working on concrete, action-oriented plans. If these desirable activities have not yet taken place, time can be profitably used at the beginning of a session to share successes or to bring up specific problems.
4. In an open group (one where membership changes somewhat from week to week), it is a good idea to encourage those members who have been part of the group for a while to share with newcomers what the group has meant to them. Those who are just joining the group can say something about what they hope to get from the experience and perhaps share any of their anxieties pertaining to coming to the group.
5. In addition to facilitating member involvement in opening a session, group leaders may want to make some observations about the previous meeting or relate some thoughts that have occurred to them since the group last met.

One way to open a group session is through the use of a structured exercise that assists members in identifying the concerns they want to explore. Depending on how, when, and why they are used, structured exercises may either enhance interaction and provide a focus for work or promote member dependence on the leader for continuing to provide direction. In their eagerness to get a group moving and keep it moving, some leaders rely too much on exercises and structured activities. Exercises that relate to the overall plan of the group and are appropriately applied in a timely manner can be useful tools for promoting change. However, lacking proper application, exercises can be counterproductive to the group process and to an individual's growth.

Structured exercises can be very useful during the initial and the final stages of a group or as a way to open a meeting. At the beginning of a group, it may help to use certain exercises designed to assist members in clarifying their personal goals, in dealing with their expectations and fears, and in building trust. These exercises could consist of asking members to work in pairs on some selected topic, for example, what they hope to get from a group session.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Procedures for Closing a Group Session

Before closing a session, it is essential to allow time for integrating what has occurred, for reflecting on what has been experienced, for talking about what the participants may do between now and the next session, and for summarizing. The leader may also find it useful to check with the group around the midpoint of the session and say something like "I'm aware that we still have an hour left before we close today; I want to see if there are any matters you want to bring up before we close" or "I'd like each of you to give me an idea of how you feel about this session; so far, have you gotten what you wanted from it?" Assessments don't have to be made routinely in the middle of a session, but doing so from time to time can encourage members to evaluate their progress. If members are not satisfied with either their own participation or what is going on in the session, there is still time to change the course of the group before the session ends.

Generally, members do not automatically evaluate the degree of their investment in the group or the extent of the gains they have made. The leader can do a great deal to guide participants into reflecting on the time limitations of their group and on whether they are satisfied with their participation. Members also need guidance in appraising how fully their goals are being achieved and how effectively the group is operating. If this periodic appraisal is done well, members have a chance to formulate plans for changes in the group's direction before it is too late. Consequently, they are less likely to leave the group feeling that they didn't get what they had hoped for when they joined.

The leader's closing skills bring unity to the group experience and consolidate the learning that has occurred during a session. Here are some steps group leaders can take toward the end of each weekly session to help members evaluate their participation and bridge the gap between the group and their daily life.

1. Group leaders should strive to close the session without closing the issues raised during the session. It may not be therapeutic to wrap up a concern or solve a problem too quickly. Many leaders make the mistake of forcing resolution of problems prematurely. Being task-oriented, they feel uncomfortable allowing members the time they need to explore and struggle with personal problems. In such instances, the leader's intervention has the effect of resolving quite superficially what may be complex matters that need to be fully explored. It is good for members to leave a session with unanswered questions; this can motivate them to think more about their concerns and to come up with some tentative solutions on their own. Leaders need to learn the delicate balance between bringing temporary closure to a topic at the end of a session and closing the exploration of an area of personal concern completely.
2. Summarizing can be effective at the end of each session. It is helpful to ask members to summarize both the group process and their own progress toward their goals. Comments can be made about common themes and issues that have emerged. The group leader can add summary comments, especially as they pertain to group process, but it is even better to teach members how to integrate what they have learned for themselves.
3. Participants can be asked to tell the group how they perceived the session, to offer comments and feedback to other members, and to make a statement about their level of investment in the session. By doing this regularly, members share in the responsibility of deciding what they will do to change the group's direction if they are not satisfied with it.
4. It is helpful to focus on positive feedback too. Individuals who get involved should be recognized and supported for their efforts by both the leader and other participants.
5. Members can report on their homework assignments, in which they tried to put into practice some of their new insights, and they can make plans for applying what they have learned to problem situations outside the group.
6. Participants can be asked whether there are any topics or problems they would like to put on the agenda for the next session. Doing this can add to a sense of ownership and responsibility

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

for and to the group and to the members' own change process. Besides linking sessions, asking members to participate in setting an agenda prompts them to think about ways of exploring these concerns in the next meeting—that is, to work between sessions.

7. Group leaders may want to express their own reactions to the session and make some observations. These reactions and comments about the direction of the group can be very useful in stimulating thought and action on the part of the members.
8. In a group with changing membership, it is good to remind members a week before that certain members will be leaving the group. Those who are terminating need to talk about what they have gotten from the group and what it is like for them to be leaving. Other members will most likely want to give feedback to the terminating member.

In summary, the leader interventions I have described illustrate that careful attention to opening and closing group sessions facilitates learning. It has the effect of challenging members to recognize their role in determining the direction a group is moving as well as determining the outcomes of the group.

Becoming a Diversity-Competent Group Counselor

Special knowledge and skills are required for dealing with culturally diverse groups. If you are open to the values inherent in a diversity perspective, you will find ways to avoid getting trapped in provincialism, and you will be able to challenge the degree to which you may be culturally encapsulated. Take an inventory of your current level of awareness, knowledge, and skills that have a bearing on your ability to function effectively in multicultural situations by reflecting on these questions:

- Are you aware of how your own culture influences the way you think, feel, and act?
- What could you do to broaden your understanding of both your own culture and other cultures?
- Are you able to identify your basic assumptions, especially as they apply to diversity in culture, ethnicity, race, gender, class, ability, religion, language, and sexual identity?
- How are your assumptions likely to affect the manner in which you function as a group counselor?
- Can you be flexible in applying the techniques you use in your groups, depending on the specific makeup of the membership?
- How prepared are you to understand and work with individuals from different cultural backgrounds in a group?
- Is your academic program preparing you to work with diverse client populations in different kinds of groups?
- What life experiences have you had that will help you to understand and make contact with group members who have a different worldview from yours?
- Can you identify any areas of cultural bias or any of your assumptions that could inhibit your ability to work effectively with people who are different from you? If so, what steps might you take to critically evaluate your biases and assumptions?

Cultural competence embodies the knowledge and skills required to work effectively in any cross-cultural encounter (Comas-Diaz, 2019). However, knowledge and skills alone are not enough for effective group work. Becoming a diversity-competent group counselor demands self-awareness and an open stance on your part. You need to be willing to modify strategies to fit the needs and situations of the individuals within your group. It is clear that no one "right" technique can be utilized with all group members, irrespective of their cultural background. It is important to realize that it takes time, study, and experience to become an effective multicultural group counselor. Acquiring multicultural competence is an ongoing journey.

Developing cultural competence enables practitioners to appreciate and manage diverse worldviews (Comas-Diaz, 2019). It is your responsibility as a group counselor to have a general understanding of your members' cultural values. For example, an Afrocentric approach to group counseling involves understanding the worldview, set of social standards, and ethical values that reflect African American culture.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Understanding the values associated with the spiritual and communal nature of African American people is basic to effective group work with African Americans, and this perspective may be helpful with many other cultural groups as well. Effective multicultural practice in group work with diverse populations requires cultural awareness and sensitivity, a body of knowledge, and a specific set of skills.

D. W. Sue et al. (1992) and Arredondo et al. (1996) have developed a conceptual framework for multicultural counseling competencies in three areas: (1) awareness of beliefs and attitudes, (2) knowledge, and (3) skills. What follows is a brief summary of the multicultural competencies identified by D. W. Sue et al. (1992, 1998, 2019), Arredondo et al. (1996), and the ASGW's (2012) *Multicultural and Social Justice Competence Principles for Group Workers.*

Beliefs and Attitudes Diversity-competent group leaders recognize and understand their own values, biases, ethnocentric attitudes, and assumptions about human behavior. They do not allow their personal values or problems to interfere with their work with clients who are culturally different from them. They are aware of their negative and positive emotional reactions toward other racial and ethnic groups that could interfere with establishing collaborative relationships within the group and seek to understand the world from the vantage point of group members. Rather than assuming that their cultural heritage is superior, they are able to accept and value cultural diversity.

Competent multicultural group leaders welcome the range of value orientations and diverse assumptions about human behavior and acknowledge the worldviews of group members. They respect clients' religious and spiritual beliefs and values and are comfortable with differences between themselves and others in gender, race, ethnicity, culture, sexual orientation, abilities, age, and beliefs. They value bilingualism and do not view another language as an impediment to counseling.

Effective multicultural group leaders monitor their functioning through consultation, supervision, and continuing education. They realize that group counseling may not be appropriate for all clients or for all problems. If it becomes evident that group counseling is not an appropriate venue for treatment for a member or a more homogeneous support group seems warranted, they refer the client to the appropriate form of treatment.

Knowledge Diversity-competent group practitioners understand their own racial and cultural heritage and know how it affects them personally and professionally. They understand that the institutional barriers of oppression, racism, discrimination, and stereotyping may prevent minorities from accessing the mental health services available in their community. They strive to understand the worldview of their clients and possess knowledge about the historical background, traditions, family structures, hierarchies, and values of the groups with whom they are working. They are knowledgeable about communication style differences and adjust their style to foster the group process for the members they serve. They understand that some of the values underlying the therapeutic process may differ from the cultural and family values of some cultural groups. Furthermore, these practitioners are knowledgeable about community characteristics and resources. They know how to help clients make use of indigenous support systems. They are willing to seek out educational, consultative, and training experiences to enhance their ability to work with diverse client populations. The greater their depth and breadth of knowledge of culturally diverse groups, the more likely they are to be effective group leaders.

Skills and Intervention Strategies Multicultural counseling is enhanced when practitioners use methods and strategies and define goals that are consistent with the life experiences and cultural values of their clients. Group leaders modify and adapt their interventions in a group to accommodate cultural differences and are able to exercise institutional intervention skills on behalf of their clients. They become actively involved outside of the group setting (community events, celebrations, and neighborhood groups) when it is appropriate for certain cultural populations. They recognize that some helping strategies may be culture-bound and do not force their clients to fit within one counseling approach. They are able to send and receive both verbal and nonverbal messages accurately and appropriately. They consult regularly with other professionals regarding matters of culture to determine whether or where referral may be necessary. Diversity-competent group counselors

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

take responsibility in educating the members of their groups about the way the group process works, including matters such as goals, expectations, legal rights, and alternative resources for continued growth.

Recognize Your Limitations Although it is unrealistic to expect that you will have an in-depth knowledge of all cultural backgrounds, it is important that you have a comprehensive grasp of the general principles for working successfully amid cultural diversity. Do not become overwhelmed by all that you do not know or feel guilty over your limitations or parochial views. You will not become more effective by expecting that you must be completely knowledgeable about the cultural backgrounds of all the members of your groups, by thinking that you should have a complete repertoire of skills, or by demanding perfection as a multicultural group worker. Instead, recognize and appreciate your efforts toward becoming a more effective person and professional. The first step is to become more comfortable in accepting diversity as a positive value and in taking actions to increase your ability to work with a range of clients.

Ivey et al. (2008) write about the notion of multicultural intentionality, or the ability of a group leader to work effectively with many types of individuals with diverse cultural backgrounds. To the key components of awareness, knowledge, and skills, they add the characteristics of humility, confidence, and recovery skills as critical to becoming a diversity-competent group counselor. These attributes imply that group counselors do not have to possess all the answers, that they can learn from their mistakes, and that they can develop confidence in their ability to become flexible with challenging situations. The ability to recover from mistakes gracefully is more important than not making any mistakes.

Expressing empathy on both cognitive and affective levels is an important skill for all counseling professionals, but to practice competently and effectively with diverse group members, it is also essential to strive for **cultural empathy**—the ability to place yourself in the other's culture (Comas-Diaz, 2019). You can develop cultural empathy by engaging in self-reflection, exploring your own worldview, challenging ethnocentrism, developing openness toward cultural differences, and recognizing power dynamics. If you truly respect the members in your group, you will patiently attempt to enter their world as much as possible. It is not necessary that you have the same experiences as your clients, but it is important that you attempt to be open to a similar set of feelings and struggles. Modeling cultural empathy will benefit all group members.

Group members can inform and teach you and other group members the relevant aspects of their culture that will help you all interact effectively with each other. It is helpful to assess a client's degree of acculturation and identity development, especially if individuals have lived in several cultures. Although they often have allegiance to their own home culture, they may also find certain characteristics of their new culture attractive and experience conflicts in integrating the two cultures. These core struggles can be productively explored in a group context if you and the other members respect this cultural conflict.

As you study the contemporary theories and apply them to group counseling, strive to think about the cultural implications of the techniques that grow out of them. Consider which techniques may be more appropriate with specific client populations and in specific contexts. Even more important, think about ways to adapt the techniques you will be learning to a group member's cultural background. Perhaps most important of all, consider how you might acquire the personal characteristics required to become a diversity-competent group counselor.

In the *Student Manual for Theory and Practice of Group Counseling* (Corey, 2023), you will find a checklist for becoming a diversity-competent group counselor. Use this checklist to assess your current level of skill development in the multicultural competencies. The ASGW's (2012) *Multicultural and Social Justice Competence Principles for Group Workers* is available online at www.asgw.org/. I recommend that you download this document and take some time to think about how these principles might apply to your group work.

Developing Your Group Leadership Style

There are as many styles of group counseling as there are leaders, and even leaders who subscribe to a primary therapeutic model, such as behavior therapy or solution-focused brief therapy, show considerable variation in the way they lead groups. As a group leader, you bring your background of experiences

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and your personality, worldview, biases, and unique talents and skills to the groups you lead. You also bring your theoretical preferences to your work.

One determinant of your leadership style is whether you lead short- or long-term groups. As a group leader, your role in short-term groups is quite different from the leadership role in long-term therapy groups. Most likely you will be expected to set up and conduct a variety of short-term groups, which means you will need to be active, directive, conscious of time limitations, and concerned with assisting members in identifying specific problem areas dealing with their current life situation. Brief groups require a more structured style so that members can attain specific goals. For example, you will be more concerned with present issues than with exploring the members' past. In conducting short-term groups, the leader needs to pay particular attention to pregroup screening and preparation of potential members prior to the group, maintain a focus on a particular set of themes during the sessions, strive to develop group cohesion quickly, remind members of the time limits on the group's duration, and do follow-up work once the group ends. Leaders need to be more active in brief group work than in long-term groups, both in setting up the group and in conducting group sessions.

Whether you work mostly with short- or long-term groups, it is important to know yourself and to develop a style that fits your personality. The key is to develop a leadership style that expresses your uniqueness as a person. If you attempt to copy someone else's style, you can lose much of your potential effectiveness as a group leader. You will be influenced, of course, by supervisors, coleaders, and the leaders of groups and workshops you attend as a participant. But it is one thing to be influenced by others and another to deny your own uniqueness by copying others' therapeutic styles, which may work well for them but may not be suited to you.

The theoretical stance that you are challenged to develop must be closely related to your values, beliefs, and personal characteristics. You may advocate an approach that emphasizes thinking, or one that stresses experiencing and expressing feelings, or one that focuses on action-oriented methods. Or your approach may integrate the thinking, feeling, and acting dimensions. Regardless of the approach you favor, your theoretical preferences will no doubt influence your style, especially with regard to the aspects of the group interaction on which you choose to focus.

One way to build a foundation for a personal leadership style is to know the diverse range of theories of group counseling and their implications for styles of leading. Leading a group without an explicit theoretical rationale is somewhat like flying an airplane without a map and instruments. Theory can be viewed as a set of general guidelines that provide direction and guidance in examining your basic assumptions about human beings, in determining your goals for the group, in clarifying your role and functions as a leader, in explaining the group interactions, and in evaluating the outcomes of the group.

Developing a theoretical stance involves more than merely accepting the tenets of any one theory. It is an ongoing process in which group leaders keep questioning the "what," "how," and "why" of their practice. It is wise to take a critical look at the key concepts of the various theories and also to consider the theorists behind them because a theory is generally a personal expression of the person who developed it. It is important to remain open and to seriously consider the unique contributions as well as the limitations of different approaches. If you settle on one theory and do not recognize its limitations, you are likely to misuse it and to assume that it is an axiom and a set of proven facts rather than a tool for inquiry. If your theoretical perspective causes you to ignore all others, you may force your clients to fit its confines instead of using it to understand them. If you embrace a theory in its entirety, the theory may not serve the diverse needs of your group.

Many group workers align their practice with one particular theoretical orientation on the grounds that their theory of choice provides a good explanation of human behavior and provides them with a unified and consistent basis for intervening in their groups. I have no quarrel with practitioners who have carefully evaluated a theory and identify with a particular orientation. However, some adopt a theory without knowing why they prefer the approach, and these practitioners rarely have an open stance toward incorporating alternative perspectives. Most therapists today base their practice on some form of psychotherapeutic integration rather than identifying with a single theoretical orientation (Norcross & Alexander, 2019).

As you study the 10 theoretical models of group counseling presented in Part Two, the commonalities

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and differences among these models and the ways in which the various perspectives can shape your style as a group leader will become clear. As you study each theory, reflect on the applications for developing short-term groups. Given the managed care emphasis on being both efficient and effective, today's group leaders need to learn as much as possible about short-term groups. Among all of the theories described, the psychoanalytic approach is most geared to long-term therapy groups, although short-term psychodynamic groups are being developed today. Most of the other theoretical approaches covered in Part Two lend themselves well to brief interventions and to time-limited groups.

The Role of Research in the Practice of Group Work

Effective group workers appreciate the role research can play in enhancing practice. Ideally, theory informs your practice, and practice refines your approach. Research can help you come to a better understanding of the specific factors that contribute to successful outcomes for groups. Applied research can help you identify factors that interfere with group effectiveness as well as confirm the efficacy of your interventions. Clinical work can be greatly aided by research findings and can inform research (Stockton & Morran, 2010). Even if practitioners do not have the time or the expertise required to conduct their own research, they can work with researchers to integrate research findings into their group practice.

Many group workers are either unwilling or unable to devote time to devising evaluative instruments as part of their clinical practice, and too often research findings are not integrated into clinical practice. Some practical considerations that can limit practitioners' active participation in research include the constant pressure to meet clinical demands, a lack of time, a lack of financial remuneration for doing research, and a lack of the skills and knowledge required to conduct research (Lau et al., 2010).

The Guiding Principles of Group Work (ASGW, 2021) addresses the importance of research on group work with the following standard:

> Specialists in group work seek to establish empirical support for group work and group interventions, intentionally attending to the intersections of equity, diversity, accessibility for individual members and the culture of the group as a whole. They attend to efficacy research as well as process research. They are active consumers of current research (e.g., journals, conferences, continuing education.) and strive to use evidence-based approaches to improve practice. (F.1)

Familiarity with research on group work is becoming an essential part of practice. You will likely be expected to gather evaluation data that will support the value of your group services. Accountability is now being stressed in all settings, and especially by managed health care companies. Many schools and agencies are requiring some form of evaluation of the effectiveness of a group. As a practitioner, it is essential that what you do in your groups be informed by research on the process and outcomes of groups. Part of your development as a group practitioner involves thinking of ways to make evaluation a basic part of your group practice.

Collaboration between practitioners and researchers can benefit both parties as well as the field of group work (Lau et al., 2010). To develop genuinely collaborative relationships, it is critical that researchers invite contributions from group practitioners regarding meaningful research questions and study design. The researcher's focus on evaluating treatment will benefit from complementary input by the clinician who has experience in actual group work. Lau et al. (2010) suggest replacing classical empirical research aimed at systematically evaluating treatments under controlled conditions with qualitative research methods and case studies. This "effectiveness research" would emphasize clinical aspects of group work done in real-world situations. Increasing cooperation between clinicians and researchers will likely result in more useful and relevant research results (Lau et al., 2010). In a similar vein, Castonguay et al. (2013) state that the key issue for practice-oriented research is what can be done to facilitate collaboration of clinicians and researchers in designing and conducting studies in which they are willing to invest their time and energy.

The History of Group Work Research

Both consumers and funding agencies have increasingly demanded that practitioners provide evidence for the value of their therapeutic strategies. In recent

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

years, the focus of group studies has shifted from an emphasis on process research to an examination of outcome studies. Although research on group counseling has improved, many research studies of group work suffer from serious methodological problems. Future group research needs to inform practice, and, at the same time, research needs to be guided by the expertise of clinicians who conduct groups. Castonguay et al. (2013) note that "clinicians are more likely to engage in designing, implementing, and disseminating studies if there is clear evidence that the merit and impact of these studies will be fairly considered and duly recognized by scholars, researchers, and policy makers" (p. 122). Lau et al. (2010) propose a community-based research paradigm that involves clinicians as full partners with researchers. In this context, clinicians define research priorities, determine the type of evidence that will have an impact on their practice, and develop strategies for translating and implementing research findings into group practice.

Researchers know little about how group processes mediate change in participants, how members influence group processes, and what dimensions of psychological functioning are most amenable to change in small groups. Quite simply, although researchers know that group treatments can be effective, they do not know much about why this is so. There are no simple explanations, and Lambert's (2011, 2013) review of psychotherapy research revealed that it is the similarities rather than the differences among models that account for the effectiveness of psychotherapy.

Group Practitioners' Perceptions of Research in Group Work

A Canadian survey of group psychotherapists was conducted by Ogrodniczuk et al. (2010) to evaluate practitioners' perceptions of the role of research in group therapy. Contrary to popular belief, this survey revealed that difficulties integrating research findings into the practice of group work are not due to a lack of interest or unfamiliarity with research. A substantial number of group therapists have a high level of appreciation for research, and a large proportion of respondents to this survey indicated past and current participation in research.

Survey respondents stated that without effective communication the results from even the best of studies will have only a slight impact on practice. They suggested that research findings be communicated in a brief manner and that findings emphasize the practical implications for those who conduct groups in the real world. Practitioners' dissatisfaction with reports of research findings seems to be a significant factor in the poor integration of research and clinical practice.

Respondents indicated that current research tends to ignore the complexities that are a part of group psychotherapy. They were critical of the lack of emphasis on qualitative research and the heightened emphasis of empirical studies evaluating the different brands of therapy used in a group. Clinicians in this survey wanted to see more qualitative research and case studies in the professional journals.

Stockton and Morran (2010) note that a key reason research findings often are not integrated into clinical practice is due to the constraints of experimental research that limit the applicability of findings to a real-world context. Although experimental studies may have internal validity, they may have little practical value to group workers. Ogrodniczuk et al. (2010) conclude, "by increasing dialogue with clinicians about research that has relevance to them, by engaging clinicians in the process of generating new knowledge, and by utilizing communication methods that would fit with the needs of clinicians, it would appear possible to achieve a meaningful synthesis of science and practice in the group therapy field" (p. 174).

Evidence-Based Practice in Group Work

In recent years a shift has occurred toward promoting the use of specific interventions for specific problems or diagnoses based on empirically supported treatments (APA Presidential Task Force on Evidence-Based Practice, 2006). Increasingly, clinicians who practice in a behavioral health care system are encountering the concept of evidence-based practice (Norcross et al., 2008). **Evidence-based practice (EBP)** is "the integration of the best available research with clinical expertise in the context of patient characteristics, culture, and preferences" (APA Presidential Task Force on Evidence-Based Practice, 2006, p. 273). This idea encompasses more than simply basing interventions on research. Group therapists are being asked to provide convincing evidence that the particular forms of group therapy they practice actually work with the particular types of members in their

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

groups (Klein, 2008). Norcross and Beutler (2019) note that EBP reflects a pragmatic commitment to "what works, not on what theory applies" (p. 535). Yalom and Leszcz (2020) believe that it is critical for group therapists to acquire an open, self-critical, inquiring attitude toward clinical and research evidence: "We can all be evidence-based group therapists regardless of our theoretical models. Ultimately, it is the therapist more than the model that produces benefits" (pp. 665–666).

The APA Presidential Task Force on Evidence-Based Practice (2006) has broadened the concept of EBP to consider the best research evidence in light of therapist and client factors. Psychotherapy is a collaborative venture in which clients and clinicians can develop ways of working together that are likely to result in positive outcomes. The involvement of an active, informed client is crucial to the success of therapy services. Based on their clinical expertise, therapists make the ultimate judgment regarding particular interventions, and they make these decisions in the context of considering the client's values, needs, and preferences. For group leaders to base their practices exclusively on interventions that have been empirically validated may seem to be the ethical and competent path to take, yet some view this as being overly restrictive.

Critique of the Evidence-Based Practice Model Many group practitioners believe that relying on EBP is mechanistic and does not take into full consideration the relational dimensions of the therapeutic process. These clinicians do not think matching techniques that have been empirically tested with specific problems is a meaningful way of working. Practitioners with a relationship-oriented approach (such as person-centered therapy and existential therapy) emphasize understanding the world of the client and healing through the therapeutic relationship. Norcross et al. (2006) remind us that many aspects of treatment—the therapy relationship, the therapist's personality and therapeutic style, the client, and environmental factors—contribute to the success of psychotherapy and must be taken into account in the treatment process. Evidence-based practices tend to emphasize only one of these aspects—interventions based on the best available research.

The therapist's clinical expertise is a critical element in forming a collaborative relationship with clients. In addition, client characteristics, culture, personal values, and preferences are critical aspects in the therapeutic relationship. There is substantial research to support the position that the *client* actually accounts for more of the treatment outcome than either the relationship or the method employed by the therapist (Duncan et al., 2010). Bohart and Wade (2013) argue that clients are at the center of the healing process and make the single strongest contribution to outcomes. From Bohart and Wade's perspective, "if clients really do play a central role in therapy outcome, then more research needs to focus on how clients do this" (p. 246).

Delivering brief, standardized services that can be operationalized by reliance on a treatment manual are preferred by health care insurance providers. However, relying exclusively on standardized treatments for specific problems raises a host of practical and theoretical issues. One of these issues is the reliability and validity of these empirically based techniques. Human change is complex and difficult to measure unless researchers operationalize the notion of change at such a simplistic level that the change may be meaningless. Although the goal of EBP is to enhance the effectiveness of delivering services, Norcross et al. (2006) warn that the move toward evidence-based practices has the potential for misuse and abuse by third-party payers who could selectively use research findings as cost-containment measures rather than to improve the quality of services delivered. Norcross and his colleagues show that there is a great deal of controversy and discord when it comes to EBP. They stress the value of informed dialogue and respectful debate as a way to gain clarity and to make progress.

Another Approach: Practice-Based Evidence (PBE) Many group practitioners do not think matching techniques that have been empirically tested with specific problems is a meaningful way of working with the problems presented by group members. Duncan et al. (2004) have suggested a different way to incorporate data to improve treatment decisions. They argue that the most useful strategy is to examine data generated during treatment to inform the process and outcome of treatment, an approach referred to as **practice-based evidence (PBE)**. Significant improvements in client retention and outcome have been shown where therapists regularly and purposefully collect data on the client's experience of the alliance and progress in treatment.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Miller et al. (2010) emphasize the importance of enlisting the client's active participation in the therapeutic venture. They argue that you do not need to know ahead of time what approach to use for a given diagnosis. What is most important is to systematically gather and use formal client feedback to inform, guide, and evaluate treatment. Monitoring the progress of each group member through systematic data collection on how each member is experiencing the group can help leaders make adjustments to their interventions and enhance the group process. Members could complete a brief form at the end of each group session, and their ratings on specific items could be tallied as a way to get a sense of the progress of the group as a whole.

Jensen et al. (2012) recommend that group clinicians integrate PBE into their therapy groups. They point to the benefits of taking the pulse of groups through the use of systematic measures to gather client-generated data to supplement clinical judgment. Collecting data directly from members about their group experience is a significant part of developing PBE. This approach can help therapists assess the value of a group for its members throughout the life of the group as well as provide a tool to aid evaluation of the group experience during the termination phase. Group practitioners have an ethical responsibility to determine how well a group is working and need to be willing to use the feedback they receive from group participants to refine their interventions.

Developing a Research Orientation

Yalom and Leszcz (2020) claim that group trainees need to know more than how to implement techniques in a group—they also need to know how to learn. Faculty should teach and model a basic research orientation characterized by an open, self-critical, inquiring attitude toward clinical and research evidence. Stockton and Morran (2010) believe that promoting students' positive attitudes toward research can motivate them to be good research consumers as well as clinician members of research teams. Stockton and Morran point out that most students enrolled in a master's program receive only basic research training and thus may not feel adequately prepared to understand the research literature, or to apply research findings to their clinical practice, or to become involved in research projects. Stockton and Morran recommend including more research coursework and research team participation as a part of master's degree programs.

Yalom and Leszcz (2020) believe that a research orientation enables group therapists, throughout their career, to remain flexible and responsive to new evidence. Practitioners who lack a research orientation will not have a basis to critically evaluate new developments in the field of group work. Without a consistent framework to evaluate evidence of the efficacy of innovations in the field, practitioners run the risk of being unreasonably unreceptive to new approaches. Whether you conduct research with your groups is less important than your willingness to keep informed about the practical applications of research on group work. At the very least, you need to be up-to-date with the research implications for practice.

In learning how to become a group practitioner, it is necessary to progress from a beginner to a skilled clinician in stages. Likewise, a developmental approach can be useful for teaching students about group research. Rex Stockton (Stockton & Toth, 1997) advocates an apprenticeship model in which students improve their clinical skills through practice, consultation, supervision, and discussion with mentors and peers. Likewise, they can learn about group research techniques through the same kind of exposure, practice, consultation, and collaboration with those who are doing research.

Group counselors are advised to make systematic observation and assessment a basic part of their group work practice. Instead of thinking exclusively in terms of rigorous empirical research, practitioners can begin to consider alternatives to traditional scientific methods. One such alternative is evaluative research. In group work, pure research should not be seen as the only type of inquiry that has value. Practitioners and researchers can choose to do good field research as well (Morran & Stockton, 1985).

Video

Watch Gerald Corey's *Group Theories in Action*, video via the Cengage eBook. The group session discussed in this chapter is based on an integrative approach to group counseling.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 3

Ethical and Professional Issues in Group Practice

Learning Objectives

1. Identify the major ethical issues pertaining to being a member of a group.
2. Define and describe the role of informed consent in a group.
3. Identify critical issues involved in working with involuntary groups.
4. Define and explore the role of confidentiality in a group.
5. Describe and clarify the impact of the leader's values on the group.
6. Understand the ethical issues pertaining to multicultural group counseling.
7. Explain some key uses and misuses of group techniques.
8. Explain what is involved in becoming a competent group counselor.
9. Explain the concepts of legal liability and malpractice in group work.
10. List several risk management strategies for practicing group work.

Professional group leaders must be willing to examine both their ethical standards and their level of competence. Among the ethical issues discussed in this chapter are the rights of group members, including informed consent and confidentiality; the psychological risks involved in groups; personal relationships with clients; socializing among members; the impact of the group leader's values; addressing spiritual and religious values of group members; working effectively and ethically with diverse clients; and the uses and misuses of group techniques. Competence of the group leader is also a central ethical issue in group work. Special attention is given to ways of determining competence, professional training standards, and adjuncts to academic preparation of group counselors. Also highlighted are ethical issues unique to training group workers using an online platform and my journey toward becoming a group work specialist. The final section outlines issues of legal liability and malpractice.

As a responsible group practitioner, you are challenged to clarify your thinking about the ethical and professional issues discussed in this chapter. Although you are obligated to be familiar with, and bound by, the ethics codes of your professional organization, these codes provide only a general framework from which to operate. You must learn how to apply these principles in practical situations. The Association for Specialists in Group Work's (2021) "Guiding Principles for Group Work" is reproduced in the *Student Manual* that accompanies this textbook. You may want to refer to these guidelines often, especially as you study Chapters 1 through 5.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Rights of Group Participants

My experience has taught me that those who enter groups are frequently unaware both of their basic rights as participants and of their responsibilities. As a group leader, you are responsible for helping prospective members understand their rights and responsibilities. This section provides a detailed discussion of these issues.

A Basic Right: Informed Consent

If basic information about the group is discussed at the initial session, the participants are likely to be far more cooperative and active. A leader who does this as a matter of policy demonstrates honesty and respect for group members and fosters the trust necessary for members to be open and active. **Informed consent** is an ongoing process that begins with presenting basic information about a group to potential group members to assist them in making decisions about whether or not to enter and how to participate in a group. Members have a right to receive basic information *before* joining a group, and they have a right to expect certain other information *during* the course of the group. Discussing informed consent is not a one-time event, and group leaders will revisit this topic as necessary throughout the stages of the group.

It is a good policy to provide a professional disclosure statement to group members that includes written information on a variety of topics pertaining to the nature of the group, including therapists' qualifications, techniques often used in the group, the rights and obligations of group members, and the risks and benefits of participating in the group. Potential members should also receive information about alternatives to group treatment; policies regarding appointments, fees, and insurance; and the nature and limitations of confidentiality in a group. However, group leaders should exercise care to avoid overwhelming members with too much information at one time. A lengthy informed consent process may unintentionally create a legalistic environment rather than provide a basis for trust and creative collaboration.

Pregroup Disclosures Group participants have a right to expect the following information before they make a decision to join the group:

- A clear statement regarding the purpose of the group
- A description of the group format, procedures, and ground rules
- An initial interview to determine whether this particular group with this particular leader is at this time appropriate to their needs
- An opportunity to seek information about the group, to pose questions, and to explore concerns
- A discussion of ways the group process may or may not be congruent with the cultural beliefs and values of group members
- A statement describing the education, training, and qualifications of the group leader
- Information concerning fees and expenses including fees for a follow-up session if that is offered and information about length of the group, frequency and duration of meetings, group goals, and techniques being employed
- Information about the psychological risks involved in participating in a group
- Knowledge of the circumstances in which confidentiality must be broken for legal, ethical, or professional reasons
- Clarification of what services can and cannot be provided within the group
- A clear understanding of the division of responsibility between leader and participants
- A discussion of the rights and responsibilities of group members

Clients' Rights During the Group Here is a list of what members have a right to expect during the course of the group:

- Guidance concerning what is expected of them
- Notice of any research involving the group and of any audio- or videotaping of group sessions
- Assistance from the group leader in translating group learning into action in everyday life

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Opportunities to discuss what one has learned in the group and to bring some closure to the group experience so participants are not left with unnecessary unfinished business
- A consultation with the group leader should a crisis arise as a direct result of participation in the group, or a referral to other sources if further help is not available from the group leader
- The exercise of reasonable safeguards on the leader's part to minimize the potential risks of the group; respect for member privacy with regard to what the person will reveal as well as to the degree of disclosure
- Observance of confidentiality on the part of the leader and other group members
- Freedom from having values imposed by the leader or other members
- The right to be treated as an individual and accorded dignity and respect

It is critical for group leaders to stress that participation in a group carries certain responsibilities as well as rights. These responsibilities include attending regularly, being prompt, taking risks, being willing to talk about oneself, giving others feedback, maintaining confidentiality, and defining one's personal goals for group participation. Some of these group norms may pose problems for certain members because of their cultural background. It is essential that the expectations for group members be clear from the outset and that members be in agreement with these expectations. Of course, part of the group process involves the participation of members in developing norms that will influence their behavior in group sessions.

Issues in Involuntary Groups

When participation is mandatory, informed consent is as important as it is when working with voluntary groups. Group leaders must fully informing involuntary members of the nature and goals of the group, the procedures to be used, their rights and responsibilities, the limits of confidentiality, and what effect their level of participation in the group will have on critical decisions about them outside of the group. When groups are involuntary, every attempt should be made to enlist the cooperation of the members and encourage them to continue attending voluntarily. One way of doing this is to spend some time with involuntary clients helping them reframe the notion "I have to come to this group." They do have some choice in whether to attend or face the consequences of not taking part in the group. Involuntary members who choose not to participate in the group need to be prepared to deal with consequences such as being expelled from school, doing jail time, or being in juvenile detention.

Another alternative would be for the group leader to accept involuntary group members only for an initial limited period. There is something to be said for giving reluctant members a chance to see for themselves what a group is about and then eventually (say, after three sessions) letting them decide whether they will return. Group leaders can inform members that they will choose how to use their time in the group. The members can be encouraged to explore their fears and reluctance to fully participate in the group, as well as the consequences of not participating in the group. Ethical practice requires that group leaders fully explore these issues with clients who are sent to them.

Freedom to Leave a Group

Leaders should clearly state their policies pertaining to attendance, commitment to remaining in a group for a predetermined number of sessions, and leaving a particular session if they do not like what is going on in the group. If members simply drop out of the group, it is extremely difficult to develop a working level of trust or to establish group cohesion. The topic of leaving the group should be discussed during the initial session, and the leader's attitudes and policies need to be clear from the outset.

Group members have a responsibility to the leaders and to the other members to explain why they want to leave. It can be deleterious for members to leave without having been able to discuss what they considered threatening or negative in the experience. Group members who leave abruptly are likely to be left with unfinished business, and dropping out may damage group cohesion and the trust other members may have in the group process. The remaining members may think that they in some way "caused" the departure. It is a good practice for leaders to ask members to bring the matter up for exploration in a session if they are even thinking about withdrawing.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

It is critical that members be encouraged to discuss their departure, at least with the group leader.

If a group is counterproductive for an individual, that person has a right to leave the group. Ideally, both the group leader and the members will work cooperatively to determine the degree to which a group experience is productive or counterproductive. If, at a mutually agreed-upon time, members still choose not to participate in a group, they should be allowed to drop out without being subjected to pressure to remain by the leader and other members.

Freedom From Coercion and Undue Pressure

Group members can reasonably expect to be respected and not subjected to coercion and undue group pressure. However, some degree of group pressure is inevitable, and it is even therapeutic in many instances. People in a group are challenged to examine their self-defeating beliefs and behaviors and are encouraged to recognize what they are doing and determine whether they want to remain the way they are. Furthermore, in a counseling group, members are expected to speak up, to make personal disclosures, to take certain risks, to share their reactions to the here-and-now events within the group, and to be honest with the group. All of these expectations should be explained to potential group members during the screening and orientation session. Some individuals may not want to join a group if they will be expected to participate in personal ways. It is essential for group leaders to differentiate between destructive pressure and therapeutic pressure. Group members often need a certain degree of pressure to challenge them to take the risks involved in becoming fully invested in the group.

Right to Confidentiality

Confidentiality is a central ethical issue in group counseling, and it is an essential condition for effective group work. Group counselors have an obligation to educate group members about confidentiality, which is best arrived at through open discussion in the group rather than by dogmatic decree from the leader (MacNair-Semands, 2005). The legal concept of privileged communication is not recognized in a group setting unless there is a statutory exception. However, protecting the confidentiality of group members is an ethical mandate, and it is the responsibility of the leader to address this at the outset of a group and at various times during the life of the group (Wheeler & Bertram, 2019). The American Counseling Association's (ACA, 2014) *Code of Ethics* makes this statement concerning confidentiality in groups: "In group work, counselors clearly explain the importance and parameters of confidentiality for the specific group" (B.4.a.). The Association for Specialists in Group Work (ASGW, 2008) addresses the added complexity entailed in coming to a mutual understanding of confidentiality in diverse groups: "Group Workers maintain awareness and sensitivity regarding the cultural meaning of confidentiality and privacy. Group Workers respect differing views toward disclosure of information" (A.6.). Group facilitators define confidentiality and its limits (for example, legal and ethical exceptions and expectations; waivers implicit with treatment plans, documentation and insurance usage, inability to ensure confidentiality by other group members). Group facilitators have the responsibility to inform all group participants of the need for confidentiality, potential consequences of breaching confidentiality and that legal privilege does not apply to group discussions (unless provided by state statute) (ASGW, 2021) (C.6.c). As a leader, you are required to keep the confidences of group members, but you have the added responsibility of impressing on the members the necessity of maintaining the confidential nature of whatever is revealed in the group. This matter bears reinforcement along the way, from the initial screening interview to the final group session.

Although group leaders are themselves ethically and legally bound to maintain confidentiality, a group member who violates another member's confidences faces no legal consequences. If the rationale for confidentiality is clearly presented to each individual during the preliminary interview and again to the group as a whole at the initial session, there is less chance that members will treat this matter lightly. Confidentiality is often on the minds of people when they join a group, so it is timely to fully explore this issue. A good practice is to remind participants from time to time of the danger of inadvertently revealing confidences. My experience continues to teach me that members rarely gossip maliciously about others in their group. However, people do tend to talk more than they should outside the group and can unwittingly offer information about fellow members that

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

should not be revealed. If the maintenance of confidentiality is a matter of concern, the subject should be discussed fully in a group session.

In groups in institutions, agencies, and schools, where members know and have frequent contact with one another outside of the group, confidentiality becomes especially important and is more difficult to maintain. Clearly, there is no way to ensure that group members will respect the confidences of others. As a group leader, you cannot guarantee confidentiality in a group setting because you cannot control absolutely what the members do or do not keep private. Members have a right to know that absolute confidentiality in groups is difficult and at times even unrealistic (Lasky & Riva, 2006). However, you can discuss the matter, express your convictions about the importance of maintaining confidentiality, and have members sign contracts agreeing to it. Your own modeling and the importance that you place on maintaining confidentiality will be crucial in setting norms for members to follow. Ultimately, it is up to the members to respect the need for confidentiality and to maintain it.

Members have the right to know of any audio- or videotape recordings that might be made of group sessions, as well as the purpose for which they will be used. Written permission should be secured before recording any session. If the tapes will be used for research purposes or will be critiqued by a supervisor or other students in a group supervision session, the members have the right to deny permission.

Exceptions to Confidentiality Group leaders have the ethical responsibility of informing members of the limits of confidentiality within the group setting. For instance, leaders can explain to members when they are legally required to break confidentiality. Leaders can add that they can assure confidentiality on their own part but not on the part of other members. It is important to encourage members to bring up matters pertaining to confidentiality whenever they are concerned about them. The *ACA Code of Ethics* (ACA, 2014) identifies exceptions to confidentiality that members should understand:

> The general requirement that counselors keep information confidential does not apply when disclosure is required to protect clients or identified others from serious and foreseeable harm or when legal requirements demand that confidential information must be revealed. Counselors consult with other professionals when in doubt as to the validity of an exception. Additional considerations apply when addressing end-of-life issues. (B.2.a.)

It is a good policy for group workers to give a written statement to each member setting forth the limitations of confidentiality and spelling out specific situations that would require breaching confidences. Such straightforwardness with members from the outset does a great deal to create trust because members then know where they stand.

Of course, it is imperative that those who lead groups become familiar with the state laws that have an impact on their practice. Group leaders do well to let members know that legal privilege does not apply to group treatment, unless provided by state statute (ASGW, 2008 and ASGW, 2021). The American Group Psychotherapy Association (AGPA, 2002) states: "The group therapist is knowledgeable about the limits of privileged communication as they apply to group therapy and informs group members of those limits" (2.2.). Counselors are legally required to report clients' threats to harm themselves or others. This requirement also covers cases of child abuse or neglect, incest, child molestation, older adult abuse, and dependent-adult abuse. Taking an extreme case, if one of your group members convincingly threatens to seriously injure another person, you may have to consult your supervisor or other colleagues, warn the intended victim, and even notify the appropriate authorities. The threat need not involve others; clients may exhibit bizarre behavior that requires you to take steps to have them evaluated and possibly hospitalized.

If you lead a group at a correctional institution or a psychiatric hospital, you may be required to act as more than a counselor; for instance, you will probably have to record certain behaviors that members exhibit in the group. At the same time, your responsibility to your clients requires you to inform them that you are recording and passing on certain information. Generally speaking, you will find that you have a better chance of gaining the cooperation of group members if you are candid about a situation rather than hiding your disclosures and thereby putting yourself in the position of violating their confidences.

Confidentiality With Minors In a group for children in a school setting, care needs to be exerted

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

to ensure that what goes on within the group is not a subject for discussion in class or on the playground. If children begin to talk about other members outside of the group, this will certainly block progress and damage the cohesion of the group. As is the case for adults and adolescents, children require the safety of knowing they will be treated respectfully. School counselors have an ethical obligation to safeguard the confidentiality of minors to the extent that it is possible. On this matter, the American School Counselor Association's (ASCA, 2016) *Ethical Standards for School Counselors* provides this guideline for counselors:

> Communicate the aspiration of confidentiality as a group norm, while recognizing and working from the protective posture that confidentiality for minors in schools cannot be guaranteed. (A.7.e.)

The ASCA (2016) also addresses the obligation for confidentiality to both parents and minor students:

> School counselors recognize their primary ethical obligation for confidentiality is to the students but balance that obligation with an understanding of parents'/guardians' legal and inherent rights to be the guiding voice in their children's lives. (A.2.f.)

Group leaders must be careful in how they talk about children and adolescents to teachers and administrators. Those who do groups with children and adolescents need to explain what will be kept confidential and what may need to be shared with school personnel. This also applies to talking with parents. It is a good practice to require written permission from parents before allowing a minor to enter a group. It is useful to have this permission include a brief statement concerning the purpose of the group, along with comments regarding the importance of confidentiality as a prerequisite to accomplishing these purposes, and your intention not to violate any confidences. It is sometimes useful to provide parents with information about their child or adolescent if this can be done without violating confidences. To protect the privacy of what goes on in the group, group leaders may provide feedback to one or both parents in a session with the child or adolescent. In this way, the minor is fully aware of what is being disclosed and can participate in the discussion.

Do parents have a right to information that is disclosed by minors in a group? The answer to that question depends on whether the counselor is looking at it from a legal, ethical, or professional viewpoint. Counselors are ethically obliged to respect the privacy of minor clients and maintain confidentiality, but this obligation may be in conflict with laws regarding parental rights to be informed about the progress of treatment and to decide what is in the best interests of their children. School counselors have an ethical responsibility to ask for client permission to release information, and they should clearly inform students of the limitations of confidentiality and how and when confidential information may be shared. When school counselors are required to provide information to parents and school personnel, they must do so in a manner that will minimize intrusion into the child's or adolescent's privacy.

Group leaders have a responsibility in groups that involve children and adolescents to take measures to increase the chances that confidentiality will be kept. It is important to work cooperatively with parents and guardians as well as to enlist the trust of the young people. It is also useful to teach minors, in terms that they are capable of understanding, about the nature, purposes, and limitations of confidentiality. In summary, group leaders would do well to continue to remind members to bring up their concerns about confidentiality for discussion whenever the issue is on their mind.

Social Media in Group Work: Confidentiality and Privacy Considerations Confidentiality and privacy issues take on special considerations when group members and their therapists communicate with each other online. There is an increased risk of breach of confidentiality when members of a counseling group engage with each other on social media (Wheeler & Bertram, 2019). Group counselors must address the parameters of online behavior through informed consent and should establish ground rules regarding members' commitment to avoid posting pictures, comments, or any type of confidential information about other members online. Developing these rules needs to be part of the discussion about norms governing the group.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Breaches of confidentiality or privacy may occur when members share their own information online, especially if they struggle with poor boundaries. Others may lack the technological skills and knowledge to protect information that is intended to remain private. Group leaders need to educate members to share their experience with others outside the group by talking about their own experience rather than telling stories about other members or mentioning others in the group by name.

Online Therapy Groups

In early 2020, the coronavirus pandemic fostered an explosion of new ways to deliver group therapy, shifting from face-to-face groups to an online platform. Yalom and Leszcz (2020) contend that online group therapy can be effective and that early research data supports the efficacy of videoconferencing. They expect online group therapy to be on the scene long after the end of the current pandemic. Yalom and Leszcz put forth the following key points when evaluating online group therapy:

- Therapists must have the technological competence to deliver group therapy in an ethical manner online.
- Group leaders need to tailor the informed consent process to online platforms and provide group members with specific information about the benefits and risks of online therapy.
- As online groups increase in popularity, ethical and professional guidelines will need to be developed and revised to address new concerns that arise.
- Group leaders need to educate members about the importance of maintaining privacy and confidentiality in this setting. Some members may not be concerned about confidentiality, but others may have concerns about people outside of the group being able to observe and listen into a session.
- Group members need to recognize the importance of participating in the group without distractions from their personal settings.
- Practitioners leading online groups need to be flexible and adaptable when using this technology.
- Group therapists need to be more active online than is typical for leaders of in-person groups. Because individual members are in isolated settings, group cohesion and member-to-member discussions may be slow to develop.

Yalom and Leszcz (2020) believe that technology can increase human interaction. They conclude that the online format "represents a contemporary route to meaningful connection, and it is an irreplaceable resource when traditional in-person group work is not possible" (p. 578). Online group psychotherapy presents both challenges and possibilities. I agree that online groups could be a viable option when in-person groups are not feasible. However, for online groups to develop cohesion and advance to a working stage, considerable discussion is required to establish group norms that enable meaningful interpersonal work. Research is needed that explores the differences in how working alliances and cohesion are created in online groups. Further research is also needed on the impact online group therapy has on the group therapist's capacity for empathy and the therapist's self-confidence in providing online group therapy (Weinberg, 2020).

Psychological Risks in Groups

Groups can be powerful catalysts for personal change, but they also pose definite risks for group members. Ethical practice demands that group practitioners inform prospective participants of the potential risks involved in the group experience. The nature of these risks—which include life changes that cause disruption, hostile and destructive confrontations, scapegoating, and harmful socializing among members—and what the leader can do about them are the subject of this section. It is unrealistic to expect that a group will not involve risk, for all meaningful learning in life involves taking some kind of risk. It is the ethical responsibility of the group leader to ensure that prospective group members are aware of the potential negative outcomes that are associated with various risks and to take every precaution against them.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The *ACA Code of Ethics* (ACA, 2014) specifies that "in a group setting, counselors take reasonable precautions to protect clients from physical, emotional, or psychological trauma" (A.9.b.). This includes discussing the impact of potential life changes and helping group members explore their readiness to deal with these changes. A minimal expectation is that group leaders discuss with members the advantages and disadvantages of a given group, that they prepare the members to deal with any problems that might grow out of the group experience, and that they be alert to the fears and reservations that members might have.

It is also incumbent on group leaders to have a broad and deep understanding of the forces that operate in groups and how to mobilize those forces for ethical ends. Unless leaders exert caution, not only may members miss the benefits of a group but they also could be harmed by it psychologically. Group leaders must take precautionary measures to reduce unnecessary psychological risks by knowing members' limits, respecting their requests, developing an invitational style as opposed to an aggressive or dictatorial style, avoiding abrasive confrontations, describing behavior rather than making judgments, and presenting hunches in a tentative way.

Here are a few of the problems group leaders can warn members about and work toward minimizing:

1. Group leaders have an obligation to inform members that pain and struggle are often associated with making life changes; leaders need to educate members about the costs of changing (MacNair-Semands, 2005). As members become increasingly self-aware, they may make changes in their lives that, although constructive in the long run, can create turmoil along the way. For example, changes that individuals make may evoke resistance, even hostility, in their partners, with resulting strain on their relationship. Furthermore, family or friends may not appreciate the changes individuals are making and may prefer the way things were before counseling began.
2. Occasionally individual members may be singled out as scapegoats of the group. Other group members may "gang up" and blame this member for problems within the group. Clearly, the group leader must take firm steps to deal with these occurrences.
3. Confrontation, a valuable and powerful tool in any group, can be misused, especially when it is employed to destructively attack another. Intrusive interventions, overly confrontive leader tactics, and pushing members beyond their limits often produce negative outcomes. Here, again, leaders (and members as well) must be on guard against behavior that can pose a serious psychological risk for group participants. To lessen the risks of destructive confrontation, leaders can model confrontation that focuses on specific behaviors and avoid making judgments about members. They can teach members how to talk about themselves and the reactions they are having to the behavior pattern of particular members.
4. If safety is lacking in a group, members who have been subjected to social injustices may be revictimized when they explore their experiences in the group.

One way to minimize psychological risks in groups is for leaders to specify their responsibilities and members their commitment in a contract stating what they are willing to explore and do in the group. Accepting this contract reduces the chances that members will be exploited or will leave the group feeling that they have had a negative experience.

Another safeguard against unnecessary risk is the ability of leaders to recognize the boundaries of their competence and to restrict themselves to working only with those groups for which their training and experience have properly prepared them. Ultimately, the group leader is responsible for minimizing the inevitable psychological risks associated with group activity. To best assume this responsibility, the leader will undergo the supervised practice and coursework described later in this chapter.

Ethics of Group Leaders' Actions

Being a group practitioner demands sensitivity to the needs of the members of your group and to the impact your values and techniques can have on them. It also

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

demands an awareness of community standards of practice, the policies of the agency where you work, and the state laws that govern group counseling. In the mental health professions in general, there is a trend toward accountability and responsible practice. Graduate programs in counseling and social work are increasingly requiring coursework in ethics and the law.

Almost all of the professional organizations have gone on record affirming that their members should be aware of prevailing community standards and of the impact that conformity to or deviation from these standards will have on their practice. These organizations state explicitly that professionals will avoid exploitation of the therapeutic relationship, will not damage the trust that is necessary for a relationship to be therapeutic, and will avoid dual or multiple relationships if they interfere with the primary therapeutic aims. Typically, the ethics codes caution against attempting to blend social or personal relationships with professional ones and stress the importance of maintaining appropriate boundaries.

Group counselors need to be mindful about misusing their role and power to meet their personal needs at the expense of clients. To do so is to commit an ethical violation. The role of leaders is to help members meet their goals, not to become friends with their clients. Of course, leaders who develop sexual relationships with current group members are acting unethically, illegally, and unprofessionally. They not only jeopardize their license and their professional career, but they also degrade the profession at large. For a more complete discussion of these topics, see Herlihy and Corey (2015a, 2015b).

Socializing Among Group Members

Does socializing among group members hinder or facilitate the group process? This concern can become an ethical issue if members are forming cliques and gossiping about others in the group or if they are banding together and talking about matters that are best explored in the group sessions. If hidden agendas develop through various subgroups, it is likely that the progress of the group will come to an abrupt halt. Unless the hidden agenda is brought to the surface and dealt with, it is unlikely that many members will be able to use the group therapeutically or meet their personal goals.

Yalom and Leszcz (2020) state that a therapy group teaches people how to form intimate relationships but that it is not designed to provide these relationships. They also point out that members meeting outside of the group have a responsibility to bring information about their meeting into the group. Any type of out-of-group socialization that interferes with the functioning of the group is counterproductive and should be discouraged. This is especially true when some participants discuss issues relevant to the group but avoid bringing up these topics in the group itself. As Yalom and Leszcz explain, "It is not the subgrouping *per se* that is destructive to the group, but the conspiracy of silence that generally surrounds it" (p. 437).

In some cases, out-of-group contact and socialization can be beneficial. From the perspective of feminist group therapy, out-of-group socialization is not necessarily viewed as harmful. This is especially true if members are selected carefully and are able to manage out-of-group contact so that it works to their own best interests and to the good of the group as a whole. During out-of-group contact, members often have the opportunity to expand on their goals outside of the group.

One of the best ways for the group leader to prevent inappropriate and counterproductive socialization among group members is to bring this issue up for discussion. It is especially timely to explore the negative impact of forming cliques when the group seems to be stuck and is getting nowhere or when it appears that members are not talking about their reactions to one another. The members can be taught that what they do not say in the group itself might very well prevent their group from attaining any level of cohesion or achieving its goals.

Impact of the Leader's Values on the Group

In all controversial issues related to the group process, the leader's values play a central role. Your awareness of how your values influence your leadership style is in itself a central ethical issue. Value-laden issues are

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

often brought to a group—religion, spirituality, abortion, divorce, gender roles in relationships, end-of-life care, and family struggles, to name just a few. The purpose of the group is to help members clarify their beliefs and examine options that are most congruent with their own value system. Group counseling is not a forum in which leaders impose their worldview on the members; it is a way to assist members in exploring their own cultural values and beliefs. To practice effectively and to empower members of a group, group leaders must be able to keep their personal values separate from their work with group members. Kocet and Herlihy (2014) describe this process as **ethical bracketing**, the "intentional setting aside of the counselor's personal values in order to provide ethical and appropriate counseling to all clients, especially those whose worldviews, values, belief systems, and decisions differ significantly from those of the counselor" (p. 182).

If you become aware of a value conflict that interferes with your ability to respect a particular value of a member, you may need to seek consultation or supervision. It is critical that group counselors increase their awareness of how their personal reactions to members may inhibit the group process. They must monitor their countertransference and recognize the danger of stereotyping individuals on the basis of race, ethnicity, gender, age, religious or spiritual background, or sexual identity.

Members are best served if they learn to evaluate their own behavior to determine how it is working for them. If they come to the realization that what they are doing is not serving them well, it is appropriate for them to consider alternative ways of behaving that will enable them to reach their goals. A group is an ideal place for members to assess the degree to which their behavior is consistent with their own values. They can get feedback from others, yet it will be their responsibility to make their own decisions.

Religious and Spiritual Values in Group Counseling

Integrating spirituality and religion into the practice of group counseling and therapy has received increasing attention in the literature since the 1970s. Survey data of both practicing counselors and counselor educators indicate that spiritual and religious matters are therapeutically relevant, ethically appropriate, and potentially significant topics for the practice of counseling (Francis, 2016). It is crucial that group counselors approach the members of their groups in an open, accepting, nonjudgmental, and compassionate way. Cultural humility provides a framework for therapists to approach clients with an attitude of respect, curiosity, and a desire to understand their religious and spiritual experiences (Hook et al., 2019).

Some counselors support the inclusion of religious and spiritual interventions in group work (Christmas & Van Horn, 2012; Cornish & Wade, 2010). Even when such interventions are viewed as appropriate by group counselors, Cornish et al. (2012) found that religious and spiritual interventions were infrequently used in group counseling. Almost all survey participants found it appropriate to discuss both spiritual and religious topics when group members brought up these concerns, but they did not introduce these topics or ask group members about their spiritual or religious background and beliefs. In addition, counselors were twice as likely to comment on the therapeutic value of spiritual discussions over religious discussions.

Religious and spiritual values are a basic aspect of the lives of some group members, and they may feel that their needs are not being met if their values and concerns are ignored. When clients indicate that they are concerned about their religious beliefs or spiritual values, the therapist needs to be willing to address these matters as part of the therapeutic process. For many clients, spirituality or religion are core aspects of their sense of self, worldview, and value system. Both religion and spirituality can have a positive impact on physical and psychological wellness and can serve as significant coping resources during difficult life situations (Young & Cashwell, 2020). Meta-analytic studies suggest that attending to a client's religious and spiritual values and beliefs can significantly improve treatment outcome. In light of this research, it is recommended that therapists discuss religious and spiritual concerns as a part of conceptualization, intervention, treatment goals, and interpersonal processes (Hook et al., 2019).

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Counselors should not neglect the beliefs and concerns of people who identify as nonreligious (Sahker, 2016). These clients may need to express the pain they experience as a result of their choice, and a therapy group can provide the place to explore members' concerns. The assessment process is crucial in identifying any religious or spiritual concerns, both positive and negative, that clients may have.

To better understand how religion and spirituality are addressed in groups, Post et al. (2013) conducted a study in the university counseling setting. Counselors in this setting generally held the following views:

- Religious and spiritual concerns are appropriate topics of discussion for the groups they facilitate.
- Spiritual interventions are more appropriate than religious interventions, and spiritual interventions are used more frequently.
- When a client brings up a religious or spiritual concern, basic interventions rather than specific spiritual or religious interventions are most often used.

Addressing spiritual and religious values in group counseling encompasses particularly sensitive, controversial, and complex concerns. It is critical to be aware of and to have a clear sense of your own spiritual or religious attitudes, beliefs, values, and experiences if you hope to facilitate an exploration of these issues with members of your group. In this area, the group members should set the agenda. For a more comprehensive discussion of the role of religion and spirituality in group work, I recommend Young and Cashwell (2020).

Ethical Issues in Multicultural Group Counseling

Becoming Aware of Your Cultural Values

If group leaders ignore some basic differences in people, they can hardly be acting in the best interests of these clients, which is an ethical matter. If you hope to build bridges of understanding between yourself and group members who are different from you, it is essential that you guard against stereotyped generalizations about social and cultural groups.

Johnson et al. (1995) point out that group members bring their values, beliefs, and prejudices with them, which quickly become evident in a group situation. For Johnson et al., one goal of multicultural group counseling is to provide new levels of communication among members. This can be instrumental in assisting members in challenging their stereotypes by providing accurate information about individuals. Another goal of a diverse group is to promote understanding, acceptance, and trust among members of various cultural groups. For group leaders to facilitate this understanding and acceptance in a diverse group, it is essential that they be aware of their biases and that they have challenged their stereotypes. Group leaders need to model and attend to biases, both direct and indirect, in their groups.

The keys to enabling culturally sensitive conversations in a group are creating a warm and accepting environment, affirming another's experience, and being willing to have open discussions regarding differences. To develop a strong relationship with someone different from ourselves, we need to demonstrate acceptance and convey that we genuinely view them as valuable, strong, and resilient. It is also important to respect the uniqueness of the individual as well as their cultural group membership. Placing too much emphasis on characteristics of the cultural group ignores individual differences and may encourage stereotyping.

Social justice issues often surface when working with people from culturally diverse backgrounds (MacNair-Semands, 2007). Power and privilege dynamics operate in a group just as in the wider world, and the imbalance of power can be addressed and explored in group work. In any group, some members may come from power and others may have been denied power. These power dynamics should be discussed as they emerge in a group. Social inequalities often arise from an intolerance for differences that result in discrimination, oppression, and prejudice. If these issues are not acknowledged and explored in the group, members are deprived of an opportunity to explore cultural values and biases, to raise their awareness of these injustices, and to learn to confront them. An overarching theme is the centrality of multicultural competence as a basis for doing effective social justice–oriented group work.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

To deepen members' awareness of social justice as a basic value, group counselors create a climate within the group that encourages open discussion of cultural diversity and social justice considerations, especially issues of power and privilege.

Individuals can be invited to talk about their pain from the social injustices they have encountered. In these instances, group leaders have an opportunity and a responsibility to transform the group experience and work toward healing rather than perpetuating harmful interactions marked by sexism, racism, and heterosexism. Group practitioners can do this by assisting members in evaluating their attitudes about a range of diversity issues. The ASGW (2021) "Guiding Principles for Group Work" offers this guideline on the role of diversity, equity, and inclusion in the practice of group work:

> Group specialists practice with broad sensitivity to client differences, including but not limited to age, race, ethnicity, gender, disability, religion, sexual identity, social class, immigration status, and geographic location. Group facilitators seek awareness and knowledge of personal, professional, and societal structures that limit equity and inclusion for diverse group members. They continuously seek information regarding the cultural worldviews, traditions, and experiences of the diverse populations with whom they are working. (D.11.)

An essential aspect of training for group leaders is promoting sensitivity and competence in addressing diversity in all forms of group work. Ethical practice requires that multicultural issues be incorporated in the training of group counselors (Debiak, 2007). There is increased recognition that all group work is multicultural; thus, effective training of group counselors must address multicultural dimensions of counseling practice. Addressing diversity is an ethical mandate, and this practice is also a route to more effective group work.

Transcending Cultural Encapsulation

If you accept the idea that certain cultural values are superior, you limit yourself by refusing to consider alternatives. If you possess cultural tunnel vision, you are likely to misinterpret patterns of behavior displayed by group members who are culturally different from you. Unless you understand the values of other cultures, you are likely to misunderstand these clients. If you are able to appreciate cultural differences and do not associate such differences with superiority or inferiority, you can increase your psychological resourcefulness.

Cultural encapsulation, or provincialism, can afflict both group members and the group leader. As group counselors, we have to confront our own distortions as well as those of the members. Culture-specific knowledge about a client's background should not lead counselors to stereotype the client. Culturally competent group leaders recognize both differences among groups and differences within groups. It is essential that you avoid perceiving individuals as simply belonging to a group. Indeed, the differences between individuals within a group are often greater than the differences among the various groups (Pedersen, 2000). Not all Native Americans have the same experiences, nor do all African Americans, Asians, women, older people, or people with disabilities. It is important to explore individual differences among members of the same cultural group and not to make general assumptions based on an individual's group. Regardless of your cultural background, you must be prepared to deal with the complex differences among individuals in areas such as race, culture, ethnicity, sexual orientation, disability status, religion, socioeconomic status, gender, and age (Lee, 2019).

Certain practitioners may encounter resistance from some people of color because they are using traditional White, middle-class values to interpret these clients' experiences. Such culturally encapsulated practitioners are not able to view the world through the eyes of all of their clients. Wrenn (1985) defines the **culturally encapsulated counselor** as one who has substituted stereotypes for the real world, who disregards cultural variations among clients, and who dogmatizes technique-oriented definitions of counseling and therapy. Individuals operating within this monocultural framework maintain a cocoon by evading reality and depending entirely on their own internalized value assumptions about what is good for society and the individual. These encapsulated people tend to be trapped in one way of thinking, believing their way is the universal way. They cling to an inflexible structure that resists adaptation to alternative ways of thinking.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Western models need to be adapted to serve members who live by a different value system. Many clients from non-Western cultures, members of ethnic minorities, and women from nearly all cultural groups tend to value interdependence more than independence, social consciousness more than individual freedom, and the welfare of the group more than their own welfare. Western psychological thought emphasizes self-sufficiency, individualism, directness of communication, assertiveness, independence from family, and self-growth. However, many Asian Americans come from collectivistic cultures that value interconnectedness with family and community (Chung & Bemak, 2014). In Asian cultures, moreover, family roles tend to be highly structured, and "filial piety" exerts a powerful influence; that is, obligations to parents are respected throughout one's life, especially among the male children. The roles of family members are highly interdependent, and family structure is arranged so that conflicts are minimized while harmony is maximized. Traditional Asian values emphasize reserve and formality in most social situations, restraint and inhibition of intense feelings, obedience to authority, and high academic and occupational achievement. The family structure is traditionally patriarchal in that communication and authority flow vertically from top to bottom. The inculcation of guilt and shame are the main techniques used to control the behavior of individuals within a family (D. W. Sue et al., 2019).

These traditional values are shared by other cultural groups. For instance, Latinx emphasize *familismo*, which stresses interdependence over independence, affiliation over confrontation, and cooperation over competition. Parents are afforded a great deal of respect, and this respect governs all interpersonal relationships. The role of fate is often a pervasive force governing behavior. Latinx typically place a high value on spiritual matters and religion (Comas-Diaz, 1990). Torres-Rivera et al. (2014) suggest that the common topics of discussion among Latinx group members often include relationships, friendship, intimacy and love, sexuality, time, money, parenting, commitment and responsibility, decision making, power, rules, and morality.

The central point is that if the group experience is largely the product of values that are alien to certain group members, it is easy to see that these members will not embrace the group. Group counselors who practice exclusively with a Western perspective are likely to meet with a considerable amount of resistance from clients with a non-Western worldview. Culturally sensitive group practice can occur only when group leaders are willing to reveal the underlying values of the group process and determine whether these values are congruent with the cultural values of the members. Group members can also be encouraged to express their values and needs. The major challenge for group leaders is to determine what techniques are culturally appropriate for which individuals.

Being aware of how cultural values influence their own thinking and behavior will help group leaders work ethically and effectively with members who are culturally different from themselves. It is clear that ethical practice demands that group counselors possess the self-awareness, knowledge, and skills that are basic components of diversity-competent practitioners.

Prominent scholars in the multicultural counseling field have described multicultural competence and what is required to develop it. D. W. Sue et al. (2019) have long emphasized three dimensions of multicultural competence. The first dimension is concerned with the practitioner's attitudes and beliefs about race, culture, ethnicity, gender, and sexual orientation; the need to monitor personal biases; development of a positive view toward multiculturalism; and understanding how one's values and biases may get in the way of effective helping. The second dimension recognizes that culturally competent practitioners are knowledgeable and understand their own worldview, possess specific knowledge of the diverse groups with whom they work, and have a basic understanding of sociopolitical influences. The third dimension deals with skills, intervention techniques, and strategies necessary in serving diverse client groups. Part of multicultural competence entails recognizing our limitations and is manifested in our willingness to (1) seek consultation, (2) participate in continuing education, and, when appropriate, (3) make referrals to a professional who is competent to work with a particular client population.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Uses and Misuses of Group Techniques

In leading groups, it is essential that you have a clear rationale for each technique you use. This is an area in which theory is a useful guide for practice. As you will see, the 10 theories at the core of this book provide many therapeutic strategies and techniques to increase awareness, to accomplish change, or to promote exploration and interaction. Techniques can certainly be used ethically and therapeutically, but they also can be misused.

Some of the ways in which leaders can practice unprofessionally are using techniques with which they are unfamiliar, using techniques in a mechanical way, using techniques to serve their own hidden agenda or to enhance their power, or using specific techniques to pressure members. Many techniques that are used in a group do facilitate an intense expression of emotion. For example, guided fantasies into times of loneliness as a child can lead to deep psychological memories. Use of these techniques should be congruent with the overall purpose of the group, and leaders must be ready to deal with any emotional release.

Group leaders should avoid pushing members to "get into their emotions." Some group practitioners measure the efficacy of their group by the level of catharsis, and group leaders who need to see members experience intense emotions can exploit the group members. This expression of emotion can sometimes reveal the leader's needs rather than the needs of the members.

Techniques have a better chance of being used appropriately when there is a rationale underlying their use. Techniques are aimed at fostering the client's self-exploration and self-understanding. At their best, they are invented in each unique client situation, and they are a collaborative effort between the leader and members. Techniques assist the group member in experimenting with some form of new behavior. It is critical that techniques be introduced in a timely and sensitive manner, with respect for the client, and that they be abandoned if they are not working.

Effective group counselors incorporate a wide range of techniques in their therapeutic style. Much depends on the purpose of the group, the setting, the personality and style of the group facilitator, the qualities of particular group members, and the problems selected for intervention. It is of central importance to consider the role techniques will play in the service of the group members. Effective leaders continuously assess their group and decide *what* relationship style to adopt; *what* techniques, procedures, or intervention methods to use; *when* to use them; and with *which* clients. In creating and using techniques, keep the primary purpose of your group clearly in mind. Techniques are tools to help you and your members accomplish the group's goal.

In working with culturally diverse client populations, leaders may need to modify their interventions to suit clients' cultural and ethnic backgrounds. For example, it is inappropriate to quickly introduce techniques aimed at bringing out clients' feelings if some group members have been taught not to express feelings in public. If members are interested in exploring their cultural norms about expressing feelings in this public space, the entire group may benefit from this inquiry. Leaders can respect the cultural values of members and at the same time encourage them to think about how these values and their upbringing have a continuing effect on their behavior. In some cases, members may decide to modify certain behaviors because the personal price of retaining this behavior is too high. In other cases, members may not be interested in changing certain cultural values or behaviors. Leaders can help members examine the pros and cons of making changes. For a more detailed discussion of ethical considerations in using group techniques, see Corey, Corey, Callanan, and Russell (2015).

Group Leader Competence

Determining One's Own Level of Competence

How can leaders determine whether they have the competence to use a certain technique? Some leaders who have received training in the use of a technique may hesitate to use it (out of fear of making a mistake), whereas overly confident leaders without training may have no reservations about trying out

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

new methods. Leaders should have a clear theoretical and therapeutic rationale for any technique they use. Furthermore, it is useful for leaders to experience these techniques as members of a group. Whether you are competent to lead a specific group or type of group is an ongoing question that faces all professional group leaders. You will need to remain open to struggling with questions such as these:

- Am I qualified through education and training to lead this specific group?
- What criteria can I use to determine my degree of competence?
- How can I recognize the boundaries of my competence?
- If I am not as competent as I'd like to be, what specific actions can I take?
- How can I continue to upgrade my leadership knowledge and skills?
- What techniques can I effectively employ?
- With what kinds of clients do I work best?
- With whom do I work least well, and why?
- When and how should I refer clients?
- When do I need to consult with other professionals?

There are no simple answers to these questions. Different groups require different leader qualities. For example, you may be fully competent to lead a group of relatively well-adjusted adults or of adults in crisis situations yet not be competent to lead a group of seriously disturbed people. You may be well trained for, and work well with, adolescent groups, yet you may not have the skills or training to do group work with younger children. You may be successful leading groups dealing with domestic violence yet find yourself ill-prepared to work successfully with children's groups. In short, you need supervised experience to understand the challenges you are likely to face in working with different types of groups.

Most practitioners have had their formal training in one of the branches of the mental health field, which include counseling psychology, clinical psychology, clinical social work, community counseling, educational psychology, school counseling, couples and family counseling, nursing, pastoral psychology, rehabilitation counseling, mental health counseling, and psychiatry. Generally, however, those who seek to become group practitioners find that formal education, even at the master's or doctoral level, does not give them the practical grounding they require to effectively lead groups. Practitioners often find it necessary to take a variety of specialized group therapy training workshops to gain experience.

The American Group Psychotherapy Association (AGPA) and the Association for Specialists in Group Work (ASGW) both address competence in group work. For example, "the group psychotherapist must be aware of his/her own individual competencies, and when the needs of the patient/client are beyond the competencies of the psychotherapist, consultation must be sought from other qualified professionals or other appropriate sources" (AGPA, 2002, 3.1.). Professional competence is not arrived at once and for all; it is an ongoing developmental process for the duration of your career.

The ASGW (2008, section A) "Best Practice Guidelines" provide these general suggestions for enhancing your level of competence as a group worker:

- Remain current and increase your knowledge and skill competencies through activities such as continuing education, professional supervision, and participation in personal and professional development activities.
- Utilize consultation and/or supervision to ensure effective practice regarding ethical concerns that interfere with effective functioning as a group leader.
- Be open to getting professional assistance for personal problems or conflicts of your own that may impair your professional judgment or work performance.

Part of being a competent group counselor involves being able to explain to group members the theory behind your practice, telling members in clear language the goals of the group and how you conceptualize the group process, and relating what you do in a group to this model. As you acquire competence, you will be able to continually refine your techniques in light of your model. Competent group counselors possess the knowledge and skills that are described in the following section.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Professional Training Standards for Group Counselors

Effective group leadership programs are not developed by legislative mandates and professional codes alone. For proficient leaders to emerge, a training program must make group work a priority. Unfortunately, most master's programs in counseling require only one group course, and it is typical for this single course to cover both the didactic and experiential aspects of group process. This course often deals with both theories of group counseling and group process as well as providing students with opportunities to experience a group as a member. It is a major challenge to train group counselors adequately in a single course!

The Council for Accreditation of Counseling and Related Educational Programs (CACREP, 2016) identifies the following standards specifically devoted to group work in which students in counseling are to develop a set of competencies:

a. theoretical foundations of group counseling and group work,
b. dynamics associated with group process and development,
c. therapeutic factors and how they contribute to group effectiveness,
d. characteristics and functions of effective group leaders,
e. approaches to group formation, including recruiting, screening, and selecting members,
f. types of groups and other considerations that affect conducting groups in varied settings,
g. ethical and culturally relevant strategies for designing and facilitating groups, and
h. direct experiences in which students participate as group members in a small group activity, approved by the program, for a minimum of 10 clock hours over the course of one academic term.

The ASGW (2000) "Professional Standards for the Training of Group Workers" specifies two levels of competencies and related training. First is a set of *core knowledge* and *skill competencies*, which provides the foundation for *specialized* training. At a minimum, one group course should be included in a training program, and it should be structured to help students acquire the basic knowledge and skills needed to facilitate a group.

The ASGW (2000) training standards state that group leadership skills are best mastered through supervised practice that involves observation and participation in a group experience. Although a minimum of 10 hours of supervised practice is required, 20 hours is recommended as part of the core training. Furthermore, these training standards require that all counselor trainees complete core training in group work during their entry-level education.

Once counselor trainees have mastered the core knowledge and skill domains, they have the platform to develop a group work specialization in one or more of four areas: (1) task groups, (2) psychoeducational groups, (3) group counseling, or (4) group psychotherapy. (These areas are defined in Chapter 1, *Introduction to Group Work*.) The standards outline specific knowledge and skill competencies for these specialties and specify the recommended number of hours of supervised training for each.

The current trend in training group workers focuses on learning group process by becoming involved in supervised experiences. Certainly, completion of one graduate course in group theory and practice does not equip a counselor to effectively lead groups. Both direct participation in planned and supervised small groups and clinical experience in leading various groups under careful supervision are needed to provide leaders with the skills to meet the challenges of group work.

Ieva et al. (2009) investigated the impact on master's students who participated in experiential personal growth groups. The students' perceptions of their experience supported the following assumptions:

- Group process is a beneficial aspect of training.
- Experience in a personal growth group increases knowledge about groups and leadership skills.
- Experience in a personal growth group enhances students' ability to give and receive feedback.

All study participants reported some personal or professional progress as a result of their experience in a group. Areas of benefit included interpersonal learning, knowledge about group process, self-awareness, empathy for future clients, and

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

opportunities to learn by observing group process in action. Confidence in facilitating a group increased after having experience as a group member, and they believed their participation assisted them in developing their own personal leadership style. Not only did the counselors-in-training report benefiting both personally and professionally from participating in personal growth groups, but they thought this should be a requirement for all students in a master's level counseling program. Ieva et al. (2009) conclude that this study provides counselor educators with valuable information that can help them design and facilitate training experiences that are positive, beneficial, and ethically responsible.

Three Important Adjuncts to the Training of Group Counselors

If you expect to lead groups, you will want to be prepared for this work, both personally and academically. If your program has not provided this preparation, it will be necessary for you to seek in-service workshops in group processes. It is not likely that you will learn how to lead groups merely through reading about them and listening to lectures.

I recommend at least three experiences as adjuncts to a training program for students learning about group work: (1) participation in personal counseling, (2) participation in group counseling or a personal growth group, and (3) participation in a training and supervision group. Following is a discussion of these three adjuncts to the professional preparation of group counselors.

Personal Counseling for Group Leaders

Extensive self-exploration is necessary for trainees to identify countertransference feelings, to recognize blind spots and biases, and to use their personal attributes effectively in their group work. Group trainees can benefit greatly from the experience of being a client at some time. Group leaders need to demonstrate the courage and willingness to do for themselves what they expect members in their groups to do—expand their awareness of self and the effect of that self on others. Yalom and Leszcz (2020) emphasize the role of using ourselves as therapeutic agents, claiming that personal therapy is necessary for the maturation of the group therapist: "We urge every student entering the field not only to seek out personal therapy but to do so more than once during their careers" (p. 662).

What does research reveal on this subject? More than 90% of mental health professionals report positive outcomes from their own counseling experiences (Geller et al., 2005). In his synthesis of 25 years of research on the personal therapy of mental health professionals, Norcross (2005) states: "The cumulative results indicate that personal therapy is an emotionally vital, interpersonally dense, and professionally formative experience that should be central to the development of health care psychologists" (p. 840). Norcross points out that most mental health care practitioners strongly value experiential over didactic learning.

Increasing self-awareness is a major reason to seek personal counseling. In leading a group, you will encounter many instances of transferences, both among members and toward you. **Transference** is the unconscious process whereby members project onto you, the group leader, past feelings or attitudes that they had toward significant people in their lives. Of course, you can easily become entangled in your own feelings of **countertransference**, projecting your own conscious and unconscious emotional responses onto group members. You may have unresolved personal problems, which you can project onto the members of your group. Through personal counseling, you can become increasingly aware of personal triggers and can also work through some of your unfinished business that could easily interfere with your effectiveness in facilitating groups. If you are not actively involved in the pursuit of healing your own psychological wounds, you will probably have considerable difficulty entering the world of a client. Through being a client yourself, you can gain an experiential frame of reference to view yourself as you are. This experience will increase your compassion for your clients and help you learn ways of intervening that you can use in the groups you facilitate.

Self-Exploration Groups for Group Leaders

Being a member of a variety of groups can prove to be an indispensable part of your training as a group leader. By experiencing your own cautiousness, resistances, fears, and uncomfortable moments in a group, by being confronted, and by struggling with your problems in a group context, you can

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

experience what is needed to build a trusting and cohesive group.

In addition to helping you recognize and explore personal conflicts and increase self-understanding, a personal growth group can be a powerful teaching tool. One of the best ways to learn how to assist group members in their struggles is to participate yourself as a member of a group. A survey of 82 master's-level counseling programs suggests that experiential group training is alive, evolving, and an accepted method for training group leaders (Shumaker et al., 2011). In a study of graduate students that addressed group leaders' perceptions of their training and experiences, Ohrt et al. (2014) reported that participants expressed appreciation for opportunities to gain practice and to have responsibilities. Although initially hesitant about being required to be in a group, participants gained valuable knowledge about group dynamics, leadership in action, effectively managing conflicts, and seeing the stages of a group unfold.

Yalom and Leszcz (2020) state that a substantial number of training programs require both personal therapy and a group experience for trainees. Some of the benefits of participating in a therapeutic group that they suggest are experiencing the power of a group, learning what self-disclosure is about, coming to appreciate the difficulties involved in self-sharing, learning on an emotional level what one knows intellectually, recognizing their own strengths as well as weaknesses, learning about their countertransference responses, and learning about the role of the leader. "Personal participation is the most vital way to teach and to learn group process" (p. 655).

The CACREP (2016) standards require students to gain at least 10 hours of experience in a small group as a group member. This requirement is typically met by structuring an experiential group as part of a group counseling course. In an experiential learning environment that involves extensive self-disclosure and multiple relationships between instructors and students, students need to know they can trust their instructor's skills, ethics, and professionalism. Students engaged in experiential training must be willing to engage in self-disclosure, to become active participants in an interpersonal group, and to engage themselves on an emotional as well as a cognitive level.

If a self-exploration group or an experiential group is a program requirement, students must be made aware of this requirement at an orientation meeting during the admissions process or prior to their enrollment in a program. Shumaker et al. (2011) surveyed experiential group training in counseling master's programs and recommended systematic instructor self-reflection, informed consent of students, and self-disclosure training as "the most promising and critical safeguard elements dedicated to promoting a positive experiential group experience" (p. 127).

Participation in Experiential Training Workshops

I have found training workshops most useful in helping group counselors develop the skills necessary for effective intervention. The trainees learn a great deal about their response to feedback, their competitiveness, their need for approval, their concerns over being competent, and their power struggles. In working with both university students learning about group approaches and with professionals who want to upgrade their group skills, I have found an intensive weekend or weeklong workshop to be an effective format. In these workshops, the participants all have ample opportunity to lead their small group for a designated period with the benefit of direct supervision. After a segment in which a participant leads the group, my colleagues and I who are supervising their group offer feedback to those who led the group, provide a commentary on the process, and facilitate discussion of what happened in the group by the entire group.

Experiential and Didactic Training for Group Counselors

Training programs differ on whether participating in a group is optional or required. My own bias is clear on the importance of doing personal work in a group as a prerequisite to becoming a group counselor. To be sure, requiring participation in a therapeutic group as part of a training program can present some practical and ethical problems of its own. A controversial ethical issue in the preparation of group workers involves combining experiential and didactic training methods.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

I consider an experiential component to be essential when teaching group counseling courses. Admittedly, there are inherent problems in teaching students how groups function by involving them on an experiential level. Such an arrangement entails their willingness to engage in self-disclosure, to become active participants in an interpersonal laboratory, and to engage themselves on an emotional level as well as a cognitive one. Time and again, however, my colleagues and I hear both students and professionals who participate in our group training workshops comment on the value of supervised experience in which they have both leadership and membership roles. Through this format, group process concepts come alive. Trainees experience firsthand what it takes to create trust and what resistance feels like. They often say that they have gained a new appreciation of the group experience from a member's perspective.

In talking with many other counselor educators throughout the country who teach group courses, I find that it is common practice to combine the experiential and didactic domains. Sometimes students colead a small group with a peer and are supervised by the instructor. Of course, this arrangement is not without problems, especially if the instructor also functions in the roles of facilitator and supervisor. Many of my colleagues believe the potential risks of experiential methods are offset by the benefits to students who become personally involved in experiential group work. These educators believe the experiential component helps students acquire the skills necessary to function as effective group leaders. Clearly, instructors need to be aware of the potential drawbacks inherent in multiple roles and relationships in teaching group courses, and they need to develop safeguards to minimize risk.

Students may fear that their grade will be influenced by their participation (or lack of it) in the experiential part of the class. In grading and evaluating students in group courses, the professionalism of the instructor is crucial. Ethical practice requires instructors to spell out their grading criteria clearly. The criteria may include the results of written reports, oral presentations, essay tests, and objective examinations. Most group counselor educators agree that students' performance in the experiential group should not be graded, yet students can be expected to attend regularly and to participate. Clear guidelines need to be established so that students know what their rights and responsibilities are at the beginning of the group course.

There is potential for abuse when using experiential approaches in training group leaders, but this does not warrant the conclusion that all such experiences are inappropriate or unethical. I view it as a mistake to conclude that group work educators should be restricted to the singular role of providing didactic information about groups. The task of educators is to provide the best training available. I am convinced that teaching group process by involving students in personal ways is the best way for them to learn how to eventually set up and facilitate groups. I am in agreement with Stockton et al. (2014) that there is a fine line between offering experiential activities and safeguarding against gaining information that could be used in evaluating students. Faculty who use experiential approaches are often involved in balancing multiple roles, which requires consistent monitoring of boundaries. Stockton et al. emphasize that group work educators need to exert caution and offer training that is both ethical and efficacious.

Teaching Group Counseling Virtually

In recent years, training programs have begun to offer group counseling courses through online formats. I was scheduled to teach intensive in-person classes in group counseling at the University of Holy Cross in New Orleans, Louisiana, in the fall of 2020 and in the spring of 2021. The coronavirus pandemic changed this plan, and these courses were taught virtually instead of in person. I admit that I had mixed feelings about teaching group counseling online. I was somewhat skeptical about the effectiveness of this method of teaching, but I was willing to challenge my ambivalence.

Alexander Becnel and I developed a model for teaching group counseling through an intensive online format. Both master's and doctoral students enrolled in the group counseling course, and

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

practitioners who wanted continuing education credit were also invited to join some of the sessions. The classes met via videoconference for six or eight sessions over two weekends, with each session lasting three and a half hours. In addition to our videoconference meetings, students were required to complete online discussion boards, reflection papers, a counseling group proposal, and a recorded group theory presentation. Students were also required to participate in an experiential group outside of class, and a doctoral student facilitated this group for 10 one-hour sessions. This experiential group fulfilled the CACREP requirement of students participating in a small group as a group member.

One of the challenges of teaching group counseling online is keeping the students engaged during class. It is easy for students to become distracted when they are learning from the comfort of their homes. To help students stay focused, we incorporated a variety of teaching techniques that included live demonstrations, videos of group counseling, and guest speakers. Our videoconferencing software enabled us to break out students into small discussion groups that provided ample opportunities for students to ask questions. Students particularly appreciated these breakout groups as an opportunity to make connections with classmates and to share ideas with their peers.

Other areas of concern when teaching group counseling online are confidentiality and privacy. As with many counseling courses, there is the potential for students to share personal stories and private details in class discussion. To ensure privacy for our students and to encourage them to participate fully in class, our class meetings were never audio- or videotaped, and we stressed this point at the beginning of each session. Also emphasized was the importance of students being in a private setting so other people could not observe or listen to the sessions.

The overwhelming majority of students reported having a positive learning experience through this format, as evidenced by student evaluations and informal feedback from students. Although I prefer to teach group counseling classes in person, my beliefs about the value of teaching group counseling online have changed. I see new possibilities for combining an online format with in-person sessions even in group counseling courses.

My Journey Toward Becoming a Group Work Specialist

I want to share some highlights of what I found helpful in becoming a teacher and practitioner of group counseling. In my doctoral studies in the mid-1960s, I had no formal coursework in group counseling. My experiences as a participant in many different kinds of groups after getting my doctorate increased my interest in becoming a group practitioner, in teaching group courses, in training and supervising group workers, and in writing textbooks on group counseling.

During my 30s and 40s I availed myself to a wide range of different groups, a few of which included overnight marathon groups, traditional weekly therapy groups, and various residential workshops done in a group format. I participated in many personal growth workshops and encounter groups, which lasted in length from a weekend to 10 days. My early experiences as a group member provided insights and were instrumental in leading me to make significant changes in my personal life. This encouraged me to continue seeking out various groups aimed at personal and professional development. Although my main motivation for participating in these group workshops was not to learn techniques or to acquire skills in conducting groups, I received indirect benefits that I was able to apply to my professional work. This led to finding ways to incorporate group work into my teaching and professional practice. I learned significant lessons about organizing and facilitating groups from my experience as a group member even though I had concerns about the way some of the groups I attended were set up or conducted. These experiences were important in learning how to design different kinds of therapeutic groups, and they helped me to think about ethics in group practice. Many of the specific dimensions of group facilitation that I address in this book came about as a result of the experiential learning and training I acquired beyond my doctoral program.

My own journey into group work has convinced me of how crucial it is for those who want to facilitate groups to open themselves to the experience of being in groups as a member. Certainly, coursework

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

in group counseling is crucial, as is supervision when we begin to lead groups; but what we can learn about ourselves personally by being a member of a group can pay dividends in our professional work. For a more detailed description of my journey into group work, both from a personal and a professional perspective, see *Personal Reflections on Counseling* (Corey, 2020).

Liability and Malpractice

Malpractice is the failure to render professional services or to exercise the degree of skill that is ordinarily expected of other professionals in a similar situation. Malpractice is a legal concept involving alleged negligence that results in injury or loss to the client. **Professional negligence** can result from departing from the standard of care and commonly accepted practices of others in the profession, or from failing to exercise proper care in fulfilling one's responsibilities. Although the topics of professional liability and malpractice are not strictly a part of ethical practice, these are legal dimensions with implications for group practitioners. Group leaders are expected to practice within the code of ethics of their particular profession and also to abide by legal standards in providing care for the members of their group. Practitioners are subject to civil penalties if they fail to exercise due care and act in good faith. If group members can prove that personal injury or psychological harm was caused by a leader's failure to render proper service, either through negligence or ignorance, the leader is open to a malpractice suit. Practitioners involved in a malpractice action may need to justify the techniques they use. If their therapeutic interventions are consistent with those of other members of their profession in their community, they are on much firmer ground than if they employ uncommon techniques.

Group leaders need to keep up to date with the laws of their state as they affect their professional practice. Ignorance is not a sufficient excuse. Those leaders who work with groups of children and adolescents, especially, must know the law as it pertains to matters of confidentiality, parental consent, the right to treatment or to refuse treatment, informed consent, and other legal rights of clients. Such awareness not only protects the group members but also protects group leaders from malpractice suits arising from negligence or ignorance.

The best way to protect yourself from a malpractice suit is to take preventive measures, which means not practicing outside the boundaries of your competence. Following the spirit of the ethics codes of your professional organization is also important. The key to avoiding a malpractice suit is maintaining reasonable, ordinary, and prudent practices. Here are some prudent guidelines for ethical and professional standards of practice:

- Be willing to devote the time it takes to adequately screen, select, and prepare the members of your group.
- Develop written informed consent procedures at the outset of a group. Give the potential members of your groups enough information to make informed choices about group participation. Do what you can to demystify the group process.
- Present information to your clients in clear language and be sure they understand the information.
- Treat your clients with respect by attending carefully to your language and your behavior.
- * The best protection against malpractice liability is to be concerned mainly with providing quality care to group members.
- Provide an atmosphere of respect for diversity within the group.
- Become aware of local and state laws that limit your practice, as well as the policies of the agency for which you work. Inform members about these policies and about legal limitations (such as exemptions to confidentiality, mandatory reporting, and the like).
- Emphasize the importance of maintaining confidentiality before the group begins and at various times during the life of a group.
- If social media is part of group work, establish with members the importance of maintaining boundaries, confidentiality, and the privacy of others in the group.
- If delivering group therapy online, informed consent takes on special considerations. Group

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

leaders are expected to discuss ways to maintain both privacy and confidentiality in online group work.

- If you facilitate online therapy groups, training is necessary.
- Restrict your practice to client populations for which you are prepared by virtue of your education, training, and experience.
- Be alert for symptoms of psychological debilitation in group members, which may indicate that their participation should be discontinued. Be able to put such clients in contact with appropriate referral resources.
- Do not promise the members of your group anything that you cannot deliver. Help them realize that their degree of effort and commitment will be key factors in determining the outcomes of the group experience.
- In working with minors, secure the written permission of their parents, even if this is not required by state law.
- Consult with colleagues or supervisors whenever there is an ethical or legal concern. Document the nature of these consultations.
- Make it a practice to assess the general progress of a group, and teach members how to evaluate their progress toward their personal goals; keep adequate clinical records on this progress.
- Learn how to assess and intervene in cases in which clients pose a threat to themselves or others.
- Avoid blending professional relationships with social ones. Avoid engaging in sexual relationships with either current or former group members.
- Remain alert to ways in which your personal reactions might inhibit the group process, and monitor your countertransference. Avoid using the group you are leading as a place where you work on personal problems.
- Continue to read the research, and use group interventions and techniques that are supported by research as well as by community practice.
- Support your practice, whenever possible, with evidence-based procedures.
- Have a theoretical orientation that serves as a guide to your practice. Be able to describe the purpose of the techniques you use in your groups.

As you read about the stages of group development in Chapters 4 and 5, reflect on the issues raised in this chapter as they apply to the tasks and challenges you will face as a group leader during various group phases. Realize that there are few simple answers to the ethical aspects of group work. Learn how to think through the ethical considerations that you will face as a group practitioner. Being willing to raise questions and think about an ethical course to follow is the beginning of becoming an ethical group counselor. The 10th edition of the *Student Manual for Theory and Practice of Group Counseling* (Corey, 2023) contains a number of resources that will help you develop your awareness of ethical group practice. I encourage you to consult these resources frequently as you begin to formulate your own ideas about ethical practice in group work. For a more comprehensive discussion of ethical issues in group work, see Corey et al. (2019, Chap. 12).

Video

Watch Gerald Corey's *Group Theories in Action*, video via the Cengage eBook. The group session discussed in this chapter is based on an integrative approach to group counseling.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 4

Early Stages in the Development of a Group

Learning Objectives

1. Describe five practical concerns in the formation of a group.
2. Identify several multicultural considerations in preparing members for a group experience.
3. Identify and define the key characteristics of a group during the initial stage.
4. Identify several group leader functions during the early stage of a group.
5. List member functions and possible problems during the initial stage.
6. Understand a framework for effective ways to establish trust in a group.
7. Identify and define the key characteristics of a group during the transition stage.
8. Describe guidelines for dealing with conflict in a group.
9. Explore ways of effectively dealing with defensiveness and reluctant behaviors.
10. List possible problems during the transition stage.

Chapters 4 and 5 provide a road map of the stages through which a group progresses. This map is based on my own experience, as well as on the experience and writings of others, and describes the essential issues that characterize the development of a group.

The stages described in this chapter don't correspond to discrete and neatly separated stages in the life of a real group. There is considerable overlap between the stages, and groups do not conform precisely to a preordained time sequence that theoretically separates one stage from the next. Also, the content of the group process varies from group to group, and different aspects of the process may be stressed depending on the theoretical orientation of the leader, the purpose of the group, and the population that makes up the group. Despite these differences, we can identify a general pattern for the evolution of a group.

A clear understanding of the stages of group development, including an awareness of the factors that facilitate group process or interfere with it, will maximize your ability to help the members of your groups reach their goals. By learning about the problems and potential crises of each stage, you will know when and how to intervene. As you gain a picture of the systematic evolution of groups and become aware of

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the developmental tasks that must be successfully met if a group is to move forward, you can predict problems and intervene therapeutically. Finally, knowledge of the developmental sequence of groups will give you the perspective you need to lead group members in constructive directions and reduce unnecessary confusion and anxiety.

This chapter begins with an examination of the leader's concerns in forming a group. Stage 1, the *formation stage*, includes getting prepared, announcing the group, screening and selecting the members, and preparing them for a successful experience. Stage 2, the *orientation phase*, is a time of exploration during the initial sessions. Stage 3, the *transition stage*, is characterized by dealing with conflict, defensiveness, and resistance.

Chapter 5 continues with Stage 4, the *working stage*. In this stage, members deal with significant personal issues and translate insight into action, both in the group and outside of it. In Stage 5, the *consolidation stage*, the focus of members is on applying what has been learned in the group and putting it to use in everyday life. I conclude with an examination of postgroup concerns in Stage 6, which includes *evaluation* and *follow-up* issues. The description of these stages is based largely on observations of the way in which groups typically evolve.

Stage 1: Pregroup Issues—Formation of the Group

For a group to be successful, leaders need to devote considerable time to planning. Ideally, planning begins with drafting a written proposal containing the basic purposes of the group, the population to be served, a clear rationale for the group—namely, the need for and justification of that particular group—ways to announce the group and recruit members, the screening and selection process for members, the size and duration of the group, the frequency and time of meetings, the group structure and format, the methods of preparing members, whether the group will be open or closed, whether membership will be voluntary or involuntary, and the follow-up and evaluation procedures.

It cannot be overstated that leader preparation in this formative phase is crucial to the outcome of a group. Thinking about the kind of group you want to lead and preparing yourself psychologically is time well spent. If your expectations are unclear, and if the purposes and structure of the group are vague, the members will surely flounder needlessly. Unfortunately, students may be thrust into an internship at a community mental health center and find they are leading groups that are not well planned. Because of their role as interns in the agency, students may find it difficult to speak up about their concerns. If you find yourself in this kind of situation, address your concerns both to your supervisor at your university and to your field supervisor at your agency. Even if the situation does not change, it is worthwhile to have made your concerns known.

Announcing a Group and Recruiting Members

How a group is announced influences the way it will be received by potential members and the kind of people who will be attracted to it. It is imperative that you say enough to give prospective members a clear idea about the group's rationale and goals.

When recruiting potential members for a group, I am in favor of making direct contact with the population that is most likely to benefit from the group. For example, if you are planning a group at a school, make personal visits to several classes to introduce yourself and to tell the students about the group. You could also distribute a brief application form to anyone who wanted to find out more about the group.

Screening and Selecting Group Members

The ACA's (2014) ethical standard pertaining to screening group members reads as follows:

> Counselors screen prospective group counseling/therapy participants. To the extent possible, counselors select members whose needs and goals are compatible with goals of

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

> the group, who will not impede the group process, and whose well-being will not be jeopardized by the group experience. (A.9.a.)

The ASGW (2021) *Guiding Principles for Group Work* address the scope of screening members for a group. Standard C 7 provides the following information on member screening:

> Group specialists screen prospective group members appropriate to the type of group being offered and the modality being used. Group facilitators identify group members whose needs and goals are compatible with the goals of the group. Group facilitators ensure equity in the group screening processes and avoid having potential group members being screened out of the group solely on the basis of race, gender, ethnicity, religion, disability, values, worldview, et cetera. They make every effort to provide appropriate and accessible referrals for those who are screened out, particularly those who belong to underserved populations.

As you screen and select group members, ask yourself these two questions: "How can I decide who is most likely to benefit from this group?" and "Who is likely to be disturbed by group participation or be a negative influence for the other members?" If you are leading an open group, you should ask this question as well: "How might this potential member fit with members already in the group?"

The setting in which leaders work may make it difficult to screen members individually, but there are other ways of accomplishing this. For example, in agency settings, clients are often court-ordered to a group, which makes screening impractical. Even in these instances, however, the group leader can still attempt to meet with each client for a pregroup interview rather than a formal screening session. If screening is not possible, the initial group meeting can be structured as an information session that emphasizes preparing people for a group experience.

Once potential members have been recruited, the leader must determine who (if anyone) should be excluded. Careful screening will lessen the psychological risks of inappropriate participation in a group. During the screening session, the leader can spend some time exploring any fears or concerns potential members have about participating in a group.

The leader can help members make an assessment of their readiness for a group and discuss the potential life changes that might come about. Members can benefit from knowing that there is a price for remaining the same as well as for making substantive changes. If individuals go into a group unaware of the potential impact of their personal changes on others in their life, their motivation for continuing is likely to decrease if they encounter problems with their family.

Screening should be a two-way process, and potential members should have an opportunity at the private screening interview to ask questions to determine whether the group and the leader are right for them. Group leaders should encourage prospective members to be involved in the decision concerning the appropriateness of their participation in the group. It is sometimes difficult to determine which candidates will benefit from a group. During the private interview, individuals may be vague about what they hope to get from the group. They may be frightened, tense, and defensive, and they may approach the personal interview as they would a job interview, especially if they are anxious about being admitted to the group.

Of course, the leader also may have real reservations about including some people who are determined to join the group. Some people can quite literally drain the energy of the group, leaving little energy for productive work. Also, the presence of certain people can make group cohesion difficult to attain. This is especially true of individuals who have a need to monopolize and dominate, of hostile or aggressive clients with a need to act out, and of people who are extremely self-centered and who seek a group as an audience.

The purpose of screening is to prevent potential harm to group members, not to make the leader's job more pleasant. Some leaders screen out people based on their own personal dislike or countertransference issues, even though these individuals might benefit from a group experience. Some individuals may appear to be reluctant or defensive, but this alone is not a sufficient reason to rule them out of participating in a group. The basic question for the selection of a group member is this: "Will the group be productive or counterproductive for this individual?" If the answer is "counterproductive," the person should not be placed in the group because doing so is likely to result in a negative experience for the individual.

According to Burlingame et al. (2019), people who probably should be excluded from a group include those who are actively psychotic or organically impaired, those severely limited in

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

interpersonal skills and impervious to feedback, and those who are unable or unwilling to abide by a contract. Others who should generally be excluded from most groups are people who are in a state of extreme crisis, who are suicidal, who have sociopathic personalities, who are highly suspicious, or who are lacking in ego strength and are prone to fragmented and bizarre behavior. Yalom and Leszcz (2020) contend that individuals should not be placed in a therapy group if they are likely to fail at the main tasks of a group, such as self-exploration, self-disclosure, and respect for the group and its members.

It is difficult to say categorically that a certain kind of person should be excluded from all groups; the type of group will determine who may benefit from the group experience. For example, a person struggling with alcoholism might be excluded from a therapeutic group but be an appropriate candidate for a homogeneous group of individuals who suffer from addiction problems, be it addiction to alcohol, to other drugs, or to food.

The screening session is an opportunity for the leader to evaluate candidates and to determine what they want from the group experience. It is also a chance for prospective members to get to know the leader and to develop a feeling of confidence. The manner in which this initial interview is conducted has a lot to do with establishing the trust level of the group. During this interview, I stress the two-way exchange, hoping that potential members will feel free to ask the questions that will help them determine whether they want to join this group at this particular time. Here are some questions I consider in screening:

- Does this person appear to want to do what is necessary to be a productive group member?
- Has the decision to join the group been made by the person?
- Will this person be able to attend to the group tasks?
- What does this potential member want to accomplish by being in a group?
- Is the individual open and willing to share something personal?
- How is a prospective member likely to fit with other members so that the group can work?

The selection of members to ensure optimum group balance is a challenging task. In psychotherapy groups, Yalom and Leszcz (2020) argue that clients may end up discouraged and will not be helped if careful selection criteria are not employed. They note, however, that exclusion criteria differ for each type of group and that most individuals will fit into some kind of a group.

It is easier to identify those who should be excluded from a therapy group than it is to identify those who should be included. Citing clinical studies, Yalom and Leszcz (2020) list the following as poor candidates for a heterogeneous interpersonal therapy group: brain-damaged people, paranoid clients, individuals with a range of somatic complaints, those who are addicted to drugs or alcohol, acutely psychotic individuals, people who are in the midst of a life crisis, and antisocial individuals. From their perspective, groups are useful for people who have interpersonal problems such as loneliness, an inability to establish or maintain intimate contacts, feelings of being unlovable, fears of being assertive, and dependency. Individuals who lack meaning in life, who suffer from diffuse anxiety, who are searching for an identity, who fear success, and who are compulsive workers might also profit from a group experience. Yalom and Leszcz contend that the client's level of motivation to work is the most important criterion for inclusion in a therapy group: "Members must have a capacity and willingness to examine their interpersonal behaviors, to self-disclose, to reflect psychologically on themselves and others, to give and receive feedback, and to have some capacity and willingness to engage with the other group members" (p. 296).

You have a responsibility to determine whether a prospective member is suitable for a given group; this decision will protect both the prospective member and the group itself. Perhaps the most important consideration is to choose people who are likely to work well together, even though the group may be a heterogeneous one. At times, you may have to inform prospective members that a particular group could be harmful to them. If you decide that certain individuals are not appropriate for your group, provide the reasons for your decision and make appropriate referrals.

Practical Concerns in the Formation of a Group

Open Versus Closed Groups

As a result of managed health care policies, many groups tend to be short term, solution oriented, and characterized by changing membership. Whether the group will be open

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

or closed may be determined, in part, by the population and the setting. But this issue needs to be discussed and decided before the group meets, or at the initial session. There are some distinct advantages to both kinds of groups. In a closed group, no new members are added for the predetermined duration of the life of the group. This practice offers stability, which makes continuity possible, and fosters cohesion among group members. If too many members drop out of a closed group, however, the group process is drastically affected.

In an open group, new members replace those who are leaving, and this can provide new stimulation. A disadvantage of the open group is that new members may have a difficult time becoming part of the group because they are not aware of what has been discussed before they joined. Another disadvantage is that changing group membership can have adverse effects on the cohesion of the group. Therefore, if the flow of the group is to be maintained, the leader needs to devote time and attention to preparing new members and helping them become integrated.

Voluntary Versus Involuntary Membership Should groups be composed only of members who are there by their own choice, or can groups function even when they include involuntary members? There are a number of obvious advantages to working with a group of clients who are willing to invest themselves in the group process. Attending a group because one has been "sent" there by someone often minimizes the chance of success. However, many of the negative attitudes that involuntary candidates have about groups can be changed by adequately preparing members for a group.

In many agencies and institutions, practitioners are expected to lead groups with an involuntary clientele. It is important for these counselors to learn how to work within this restriction rather than hold to the position that they can be effective only with a voluntary population. Involuntary members often learn that a group counseling experience can help them make some of the changes they want. By presenting the group experience in a favorable light, the leader can help involuntary members see the potential benefits of the experience and the chance of productive work taking place will be increased.

Group practitioners must be prepared to identify group members who are unwilling to participate and to confront their reluctance. By acknowledging this hesitancy, leaders communicate that they understand and respect these fears about participation without dismissing group members' feelings. This process also allows the leader to educate the group members about expressing themselves and to establish a climate of trust. The key to successful participation lies in thorough member orientation and preparation and in the leader's belief that the group process has something to offer to these individuals. Group leaders can acknowledge understandable negative reactions and also illuminate constructive opportunities for the group to change in a more productive direction.

It may take more time and work to achieve a level of trust in an involuntary group. One place to start in working with people who do not initiate treatment is to address the attitude of being an involuntary member. Even in "involuntary" situations, individuals do have choices. Members might not know how groups function or what they might gain from participating. Thus they may bring a cynical attitude to the group. Leaders can teach these members how to utilize the group process to achieve personal goals. A direct technique for use in a session is to encourage questions about how the group will function. Some members may assume the session will be recorded and perhaps used against them. You can help establish trust in this situation by being honest about your role in the group and about how much of what goes on in the session you will report.

A basic approach for working with involuntary groups is to inform members that, although they must attend the sessions, they will have a significant impact on how the time is used. You can then point out some possibilities. Members who come to a group who are reluctant to get involved may find value in participating in a group if they have some voice in using the group time. Also, members should have an immediate opportunity to evaluate the group. A variety of problematic behaviors can often be lessened when members are encouraged to assume some responsibility for how the group functions.

Homogeneous Versus Heterogeneous Groups Homogeneous groups are composed of people who, for example, are similar in age, such as a group for children, for adolescents, or for older adults. Other homogeneous groups may be based on a common interest or problem. Short-term groups are usually characterized by homogeneous membership. The unitary focus in a homogeneous group tends to

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

foster group cohesion, and common problem areas of group members promote sharing experiences and learning from one another.

Although homogeneous membership can be more appropriate for certain target populations with definite needs or with short-term groups, heterogeneous membership has some definite advantages for many personal growth groups, whether short or long term. A heterogeneous group represents a microcosm of the social structure that exists in the everyday world and offers participants the opportunity to experiment with new behaviors, develop social skills, and get feedback from many diverse sources. If a simulation of everyday life is desired, it is well to have a range of ages, races, cultural and ethnic backgrounds, gender and sexual identity, and a variety of concerns.

Meeting Place Another pregroup concern is the setting. Privacy, a certain degree of attractiveness, and a place that allows for face-to-face interaction are crucial. A poor setting can set a negative tone that will adversely affect the cohesion of the group, so every effort should be made to secure a meeting place that will facilitate in-depth work.

Group Size The desirable size for a group depends on factors such as the age of the clients, the type of group, the experience of the group counselors, and the type of problems explored. Another element to be taken into consideration is whether the group has one leader or more. For ongoing groups with adults, about eight members with one leader seems to be a good size. Groups with children may be as small as three or four. In general, the group should have enough members to afford ample interaction so that it doesn't drag and yet be small enough to give everyone a chance to participate frequently without, however, losing the focus of the group.

Frequency and Length of Meetings How often groups should meet and for how long depends on the type of group and, to some extent, on the experience of the leader. Once a week is a typical format for most counseling groups. With children and adolescents, it is usually better to meet more frequently for shorter sessions. For adults who are functioning relatively well, a 2-hour group each week is long enough to allow for some intensive work. Outpatient groups often meet for a 90-minute session, whereas inpatient groups may have shorter sessions. Groups do not necessarily have to meet weekly, even though this is typical.

Short-Term Versus Long-Term Groups It is wise to set a termination date at the outset of a closed group so members have a clear idea of their commitment. The duration varies from group to group, depending on the type of group, the population, and the requirements of the agency. Many community agencies have policies that limit groups to a relatively short duration. For brief group therapy, length of treatment is a defining characteristic. Time-limited groups have a specific focus, and interventions must be as efficient as possible.

Some closed groups have long-term goals that require longer commitments from members. This is particularly true of psychodynamic groups that aim for deeper work. In private practice, groups can be either short or long term. Some of these groups last for 12 to 20 weeks, some for 30 to 50 weeks, and some for more than a year. Many college and high school groups typically run for the length of a semester (about 15 weeks). The group should meet long enough to allow for cohesion and productive work yet not so long that it seems to drag on interminably.

The Uses of a Pregroup Meeting or the Initial Session

Once group membership has been established, the leader's attention turns to this question: "What is the group leader's responsibility in preparing members to get the maximum benefit from their group experience?" My bias is that systematic preparation is essential and that it begins at the private screening interview and continues during the first few sessions. Preparation may consist of exploring some of the following with members: their expectations, fears, goals, and misconceptions; the basics of group process; the psychological risks associated with group membership and ways of minimizing them; the values and limitations of groups; guidelines for getting the most from the group experience; and the necessity of confidentiality. This preparation can be done through a preliminary meeting of all those who will be joining the group.

In addition to the private interview with each person before the group is formed, I use the initial session as a group screening device. The initial

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

session is a good place to talk about the purposes of the group, to let members know how they will be using group time, to explore many of the possible issues that might be considered in the group, to discuss the ground rules and policies, and to begin the getting-acquainted process. Because I prefer to have people decide early if they are ready for a group and willing to become active members, I encourage participants to consider the first session as an opportunity to help them make this decision.

Structuring the group, including the specification of norms and procedures, should be accomplished early in the group's life. Although structuring begins at the private intake session, this process continues the first time the group actually meets. In fact, structuring is an ongoing process that is a vital part of the early phases of a group. Some group members expect a low degree of structure, and others prefer a group that is highly structured with clearly defined tasks.

Multicultural Considerations in Preparing Members for a Group Experience

Screening, selecting, and orienting members to group procedures are especially critical in working with individuals from diverse cultural groups. Many group members hold values and expectations that make it difficult for them to participate fully in a group experience. In some cultures, individuals are not encouraged to express their feelings openly, to talk about their personal problems with people they do not know well, or to tell others what they think about them. For example, the open participation and exchange of views in therapy groups may conflict with the values of some Latinx who consider the expression of intense emotions to be private and only shared within their family. In addition, Latinx may approach people carefully and cautiously because of their experiences with oppression, discrimination, and marginalization (Torres Rivera et al., 2014). Some African American clients may experience difficulty in a group if they are expected to make deeply personal disclosures too quickly. In general, group counselors need to be aware of the heritage, values, and background of African American clients and incorporate them into group work (Steen, Shi, & Hockersmith, 2014). Many Asian cultures stress self-reliance, and these clients may avoid seeking outside help. Asian clients may remain quiet regarding their personal problems or turn to family members for help (Chung & Bemak, 2014).

Because group counseling goals tend to be based on values in an individualistic culture, Asians, Latinx, and African Americans from collectivistic cultures may be uncomfortable. The goals, structure, and techniques used in a group should be modified to make the group work culturally appropriate. Group leaders need to be aware that reluctance or hesitation to participate fully in a group may be more the result of cultural background than of an uncooperative attitude.

Many group members, regardless of their cultural background, may hesitate to reveal personal matters for fear of being judged and of being rejected. In a group situation, members are generally expected to abide by the norms of openness, honesty, and directness, and they are expected to make themselves emotionally vulnerable. Depending on one's cultural background, some group norms may be very demanding and may go against the grain of a member's personal and cultural value system.

Members need to know the purpose of the group, how the group experience can be of personal value to them, and how they can get the most from a group experience. Adequate preparation of members is one of the best ways to increase the chances of a successful group experience for all members.

Guidelines for Orientation and Preparation of Members

Although I believe strongly in the value of systematic and complete preparation of group members, I also see the danger of overwhelming participants with an abundance of information before a group even begins or during the first few meetings. Early in the group, I typically ask members to talk about any fears or reservations they might have. I also explore a few common risks of participating in a group. However, if the leader puts forth a long list of risks, some members may develop new concerns or even fears that may become self-fulfilling prophecies. In addition, too much structure imposed by the leader can stifle any initiative on the part of the members. During the early phase of a group, a certain amount of psychoeducation about how groups work and how members can get the most from a group can be most useful. The risks inherent in overpreparation should be

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

balanced against those that accompany insufficient preparation. Excessive floundering and useless conflict during the group's later stages are often the result of a failure to acquire basic skills and a lack of understanding of the group process.

I begin my preparation program at the time of screening each potential member, and I devote most of the first group meeting (what I call the pregroup meeting) to orientation about group process. During the pregroup meeting and continuing into the initial group sessions, I view my role as helping members examine and decide on their level of commitment. We focus on what they want to get from participating in a group, and I assist them in defining clear, specific, and meaningful personal goals. After they have decided on some personal goals that will guide their work in the group, they are asked to refine these goals by developing a contract. (The chapters in Part Two describe ways to help members define personal goals and formulate contracts.)

The primary purpose of a pregroup meeting is for the leader to outline the aims of the group in detail and to clarify what the participants will be doing. Participants have an opportunity to meet one another and to get additional information prior to committing to join the group. The pregroup meeting is an excellent time to introduce the basic aspects of informed consent. Confidentiality is one area that needs to be discussed at the first meeting. Members will not feel free to explore issues in a meaningful way if they don't have the assurance that what they say will be held in confidence, by both the leaders and the other members. Group leaders must state directly and openly any limitations of confidentiality. They should inform members of the circumstances under which they are required to divulge material that is brought up in the group, such as the legal requirement to report cases of suspected child abuse or incest or to report situations involving potential harm to the client or others. It is a good idea to provide a written statement that members sign to indicate their understanding and agreement with the limitations of confidentiality.

At the pregroup meeting I ask members to raise any questions they have about the group and encourage members to talk about their expectations, their reasons for being in the group, their fears or concerns about participating, and their hopes. I also provide some guidelines on what members can do to maximize the benefit of the group in enabling them to make the changes they desire in their life. Especially important is a discussion regarding the rationale for appropriate self-disclosure. Members are told that it is their decision to select the personal themes they want to explore in the group. They also hear that it is critical that they be willing to share persistent reactions they are having to here-and-now group interactions. My purpose is to teach them that the group will function only if they are willing to express what they are thinking and feeling about being in the group. In fact, their reactions provide the direction in which we typically proceed during the first few sessions. I also encourage members to bring up any questions or concerns they have about group process. When it is not possible to schedule a pregroup session, the first group meeting can be structured to provide this orientation.

At the end of the first session, individuals can be asked to think about whether they still want to participate in the group. If a person has reservations about joining a group or the leader has reservations about admitting a member, another interview can be arranged to explore these reservations. Members are asked to give some thought to the personal issues they are willing to bring up for exploration before they come to each session. Although members may have a specific agenda when they come to a group meeting, I encourage them to remain flexible and to be willing to work on other concerns that may emerge spontaneously as others are interacting in the group.

Group members are typically asked to keep a journal and to spontaneously write about the range of reactions they have while they are in the group as well as reactions to what they experience between the sessions. They are encouraged to bring into the group a summary of what they have been writing in their journals. In this way, they are taught about the value of continuing work that was begun during a session. Group members uniformly comment about the value of the writing they do throughout the life of a group.

Chapter 1 of the *Student Manual* that accompanies this book contains suggestions on "Ways of Getting the Most From Your Group Experience." These guidelines serve as one method of teaching members how to become active participants.

Summary of Pregroup Issues

Member Functions and Possible Problems Before joining a group, individuals need to have the knowledge necessary to make an informed

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

decision concerning their participation. Potential members should be active participants in deciding whether a group is right for them. Here are some issues that pertain to the role of members at this stage:

- Members should have adequate knowledge about the nature of the group and understand the impact the group may have on them.
- Members need to determine whether a particular group is appropriate for them at this time.
- Members can profit by preparing themselves for the upcoming group by thinking about what they want from the experience and identifying personal themes that will guide their work in a group.

Problems can arise if members are coerced into a group, do not have adequate information about the nature of the group, or are passive and give no thought to what they want or expect from the group.

Leader Functions These are the main tasks of group leaders during the formation of a group:

- Identify the general goals and specific purposes of the group.
- Develop a clearly written proposal for the formation of a group.
- Conduct pregroup interviews for screening and orientation purposes.
- Make decisions concerning the selection of members.
- Prepare psychologically for leadership tasks and meet with a coleader (if appropriate).
- Arrange for a preliminary group session to get acquainted, present ground rules, and prepare members for a successful group experience.
- Make provisions for informed consent and explore with participants the potential risks and benefits involved in a group experience.

Final Comments Many groups that flounder at an early developmental stage do so because the foundations were poorly laid at the outset. What is labeled "resistance" on the part of group members is often the result of the leader's failure to give members adequate orientation. The nature and scope of pregroup preparation are determined largely by the type of group, yet common elements can be addressed in most groups, such as member and leader expectations, basic procedures of the group, misconceptions about groups, and the advantages and limitations of group participation. This preparation can begin at the individual screening and can be continued during the initial session. Although building pregroup preparation into the design of a group takes considerable effort, the time involved pays dividends as the group evolves. Many potential barriers to a group's progress can be avoided by careful planning and preparation. Yalom and Leszcz (2020) point to research that confirms the value of pregroup preparation in creating an effective group. Adequate preparation provides clients with a cognitive structure that facilitates effective group participation.

Stage 2: Initial Stage—Orientation and Exploration

Characteristics of the Initial Stage

The initial stage of a group is a time of orientation and exploration: determining the structure of the group, getting acquainted, and exploring the members' expectations. During this phase, members learn how the group functions, define their own goals, clarify their expectations, and look for their place in the group. At the initial sessions members tend to keep a "public image"; that is, they present the dimensions of themselves they consider socially acceptable. This phase is generally characterized by a certain degree of anxiety and insecurity about the structure of the group. Members are tentative because they are discovering and testing limits and are wondering whether they will be accepted.

Typically, members bring to the group certain expectations, concerns, and anxieties, and it is vital that they be allowed to express them openly. At this time, the leader needs to clear up any misconceptions and, if necessary, demystify groups.

Primary Tasks of the Initial Stage: Inclusion and Identity

Finding an identity in the group and determining the degree to which one will become an active group member are the major tasks of the initial stage.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Members often ask themselves these questions at the initial sessions:

- Will I be accepted or rejected by this group?
- How much do I want to reveal of myself?
- How much do I want to risk?
- Can I trust people in this group?
- Do I fit in and belong here?
- Whom am I drawn to, and whom do I feel distant from?
- Can I be myself and, at the same time, be a part of the group?

The Foundation of the Group: Trust

Establishing trust is vital to the continued development of the group. Without trust, group interaction will be superficial, little self-exploration will take place, constructive challenging of one another will not occur, and the group will operate under the handicap of hidden feelings.

It is a mistake to assume that people will "naturally" trust one another as soon as they enter a group—and why should they trust without question? How do they know that the group will offer a more accepting and safer climate than society at large? My view is that people make a decision whether to trust a group and that this decision depends, in part, on the leader's ability to demonstrate that the group is a safe place where members can reveal themselves. By encouraging members to talk about any factors that inhibit their trust, the leader supports the therapeutic atmosphere necessary for openness and risk-taking on the part of the members.

Ways of Establishing Trust The leader's success in establishing a basic sense of trust and security depends in large part on how well members have been prepared for the group. Careful selection of members and efforts to make sure that the group is appropriate for them are very important, and so is the way in which the leader presents the ground rules of the group. Leaders who show that they are interested in the welfare of individual members and of the group as a whole engender trust. Talking about matters such as the rights of participants, the necessity of confidentiality, the diversity that exists within the group, and the need for respecting others demonstrates that the leader has a serious attitude toward the group and values the rights of the individual. If the leader cares, chances are that the members will also care enough to invest themselves in the group to make it successful.

Trust building is not the exclusive province of group leaders, however. Although leaders can engender trust by their attitudes and actions, the level of trust also depends in large part on the members—individually and collectively. Members usually bring to the group some fears as well as their hopes. Participants will trust the group more if they are encouraged to expose their fears because talking about them is likely to reveal that others share their fears. If some members, for example, are concerned about not being able to express themselves effectively, and others expresses similar concerns, almost invariably a bond is established among these members.

Silences, hesitation, and awkwardness are characteristically part of the beginning session. The more unstructured the group, the greater the anxiety and ambiguity about how one is to behave in a group. The members are floundering somewhat as they seek to discover how to participate. More often than not, in these initial sessions, the issues raised tend to be safe ones, and there is some talking about other people and there-and-then material. This is one way that members go about testing the waters. It is as though they are saying, "I'll show a part of myself—not a deep and sensitive part—and I'll see how others treat me." As the sessions progress, members generally find it easier to raise issues and participate in the discussion.

Ways of Maintaining Trust Another characteristic of this initial phase is the tendency for some participants to jump in and give helpful advice as problems are brought up. It is the leader's task to make sure that these "problem-solving interventions" do not become a pattern; they may cause enough irritation in other members to precipitate a confrontation with those who are quick to offer remedies for everyone's troubles.

The group's atmosphere of trust is also affected by the negative feelings members often experience at the initial stage toward certain other members or toward the leader and over the fact that the group is not proceeding in the way they anticipated. This is an important turning point in a group, and trust can be lost or enhanced depending on the manner in

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

which this conflict is addressed. If conflict is brought out into the open and negative feelings are listened to nondefensively, there is a good chance that the situation producing these feelings can be changed. Members need to know that it is acceptable to have and express a range of feelings. Only then can the group move ahead to a deeper level of work.

As members reveal more of themselves, the group becomes cohesive; in turn, this emerging cohesion strengthens the trust that exists in the group and creates the right atmosphere for members to try new ways of being in the group. When the members trust one another, they also trust the feedback they receive, which they can use as they try to implement these newly acquired behaviors in their daily lives.

Initially, members often question their ability to trust the group leaders, the other members, and even themselves. To create a climate of trust, I typically ask members to share what they are thinking and feeling, especially as it pertains to what they are aware of in this group. I also mention to members that it does not make sense to open up too quickly without a foundation of trust. I tell members that it is up to them to decide what to talk about and how far to pursue a topic. During the early phase of a group, I am not likely to make interventions that lead to in-depth exploration of what members are saying. Rather than focusing immediately on the first member who speaks, I ensure that all members have a chance to briefly introduce themselves.

If members are to lower their defenses and reveal themselves, they need assurance that the group is a safe place to do this. Helping to build trust in the group is a vital task at the early stages of a group. My main aim is to give members opportunities to express their reactions about the level of trust in the group and to talk about ways that they can feel safe and move into personally meaningful work.

Role of the Group Leader at the Initial Stage

Modeling When you lead a group, you set the tone and shape the norms by the attitudes and behaviors you model in the group. It is important to state your own expectations for the group openly during the first session and to model interpersonal honesty, respect, and spontaneity. You need to be aware of your own behavior and of the impact you have on the group and to practice the skills that create a therapeutic milieu. To be effective as a leader, you must be psychologically present in the group and genuinely believe in what you are doing.

You can create a therapeutic climate by modeling empathy and expressing understanding of the world from the internal vantage point of the members. Another key characteristic is your sensitivity in attending and responding not only to what is said but also to the subtle messages conveyed beyond words. This applies to individual members as well as to the group as a whole. Finally, the people who make up your group need to sense that you have respect and positive regard for them.

Helping Identify Goals Another main task of the group leader is to help the participants get involved. You can do a lot to motivate and inspire people to want to get the most from their group. It is during the initial phase that this process needs to take place if the members are to derive the maximum benefit from the group. At this stage, you do it mostly by helping members identify, clarify, and develop meaningful goals. General group goals will vary depending on the purpose of the group, but group process goals apply to most groups. Some examples of process goals are staying in the here-and-now, making oneself known to others, challenging oneself and others, taking risks both in the group and in daily life, giving and receiving feedback, listening to others, responding to others honestly and concretely, dealing with conflict, dealing with feelings that arise in the group, expressing one's feelings and thoughts, deciding what to work on, acting on new insights, and applying new behavior both in and outside of the group.

In addition to establishing these group process goals, members may need help in establishing their own personal goals. It is important for leaders to help members see the relationship between group process goals and their individual goals so that they can invest in both. Typically, people in the early stages of a group have vague ideas about what they want. These unclear expectations need to be translated into specific, concrete goals with regard to the desired changes and to the efforts the person is willing to make to bring about changes. It is clear that cultural factors need to be considered in helping members identify their personal goals. It is important for you to help members clearly identify why they are in a group. You can provide this assistance by focusing members on where they are now and where they

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

want to go. It is important that members fully realize that group counseling involves change. They should be made aware of the possible consequences of change, not only for themselves but also for others in their life.

One of the leader's basic tasks, and a most challenging one, is to bring hidden agendas out into the open. For example, some members may have hidden goals that are at cross-purposes with group goals. They may have a need to be the center of attention, or they may sabotage intimacy in a group because of their discomfort with getting close to others. If the leader allows these personal goals to remain hidden, they are bound to undermine the effectiveness of the group.

The ASGW (2021) *Guiding Principles for Group Work*, addresses developing individual goals as a collaborative process.

"Group specialists continually assist members in developing individual goals and respect group members as co-equal partners in the group experience. Group facilitators actively support the empowerment of group members to assume ownership of the group." (D 10)

Division of Responsibility A basic issue that group leaders must consider is responsibility for the direction and outcome of the group. Is a nonproductive group the result of the leader's lack of skill, or does the responsibility rest with the group members?

One way of conceptualizing the issue of leader responsibility is to think of it in terms of a continuum. At one end are leaders who assume a large share of the responsibility for the direction and outcomes of the group. These leaders tend to function in active and directive ways. They see their role as that of the expert, and they actively intervene to keep the group moving in ways that they deem productive. At the other end of the responsibility continuum are leaders who place the bulk of the responsibility on the members for both individual outcomes and the outcomes of the group as a whole.

Both styles of leadership have certain advantages and disadvantages. A disadvantage of an active leadership style is that it does not encourage members to assume the responsibility that is rightfully theirs. A disadvantage of a passive leadership style is that it does not foster a collaborative relationship between the leader and the members. Ideally, you will discover a balanced style, accepting a rightful share of the responsibility but not usurping the members' responsibility. Consider your own personality in determining how much responsibility to assume and what, specifically, this responsibility will include. How you deal with the balance of responsibility has implications for other group process matters as well.

Structuring Like responsibility, structuring exists on a continuum. The leader's theoretical orientation, the type of group, and the membership population are some factors that determine the amount and type of structuring employed. Providing therapeutic structuring is particularly important during the initial stage when members are typically confused about what behavior is expected in the group and are therefore anxious. Structure can be either useful or inhibiting in a group's development. Too little structure results in members' becoming unduly anxious, which inhibits their spontaneity. Too much structuring and direction can foster dependent attitudes and behavior. The members may wait for the leader to "make something happen" instead of taking responsibility for finding their own direction.

In my own groups, the type of structure provided in the initial stage is aimed at assisting members to identify and express their fears, expectations, and personal goals. For example, members participate in dyads, go-arounds, and structured questions as ways of making it easier for them to talk to one another about their life issues. After talking to several people on a one-to-one basis, they feel more comfortable talking openly to the entire group. From the outset, I try to help them become aware of what they are thinking and feeling in the here-and-now and encourage them to express their reactions. My interventions are aimed at promoting a high degree of interaction within the group, as opposed to creating the norm of having a few individuals do prolonged work while other members merely observe. This type of structuring is designed to let members assume increased responsibility for getting the most out of the group. As they learn basic norms, they tend to take the initiative rather than waiting for my direction.

Research has shown the value of an initial structure that builds supportive group norms and highlights positive interactions among members. The leader must carefully monitor and assess this therapeutic structure throughout the life of a group rather than waiting to evaluate it during the final stage. Structuring that offers a coherent framework for understanding the experiences of individuals and the group process will be of the most value. When

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

therapeutic goals are clear, when appropriate member behaviors are identified, and when the therapeutic process is structured to provide a framework for change, members tend to engage in therapeutic work more quickly (Dies, 1983). Leader direction during the early phases of a group tends to foster cohesion and the willingness of members to take risks by making themselves known to others and by giving others feedback. Group cohesion is a key element for a productive group experience. Once cohesion is established, therapeutic interventions that involve risk-taking on the part of members can be introduced, and these exercises often result in catharsis and insights (Stockton et al., 2014; Yalom & Leszcz, 2020).

In summary, although many variables are related to creating norms and trust during the early phase of development, the optimum balance between too much and too little direction from the leader is one of the most important. The art is to provide structuring that is not so tight that it robs group members of the responsibility of finding their own structure. Involving group members in a continual process of evaluating their own progress and that of the group as a whole is one effective way of checking for the appropriate degree of structure. Members need to be taught specific skills of monitoring group process if they are to assume this responsibility.

Working in the Here-and-Now During the initial stage of a group, I pay attention to here-and-now reactions and teach members the importance of sharing these reactions with one another. For a group to achieve a genuine level of trust, it is essential that members express persistent reactions that pertain to what is going on in the context of the group. If members keep their reservations to themselves, the group cannot deal with their concerns.

I find that members usually are not ready to take the risk of dealing with significant personal issues outside the group until they first deal with their reactions to one another in the room. When members bring up either a present or past problem situation outside of the group, I ask them to explore how this might be played out in the context of the present group. Although I place value on expressing here-and-now reactions, members are also asked to reflect on how their present reactions in the group might reflect how they feel and behave away from the group.

Summary of the Initial Stage

Stage Characteristics The early phase of a group is a time for orientation and determining the structure of the group. These are some of the distinguishing events of the initial stage:

- Participants test the atmosphere and get acquainted.
- Members learn what is expected, how the group functions, and how to participate in a group.
- Members display socially acceptable behavior; risk-taking is relatively low and exploration is tentative.
- Group cohesion and trust are gradually established if members are willing to express what they are thinking and feeling.
- Members are concerned with whether they are included or excluded, and they are beginning to define their place in the group.
- A central issue is trust versus mistrust.
- There are periods of silence and awkwardness; members may look for direction and wonder what the group is about.
- Members are deciding whom they can trust, how much they will disclose, how safe the group is, and how much to get involved.
- Members are learning the basic attitudes of respect, empathy, acceptance, caring, and responding—all attitudes that facilitate trust building.

Member Functions and Possible Problems Early in the course of the group, these specific member roles and tasks are critical to shaping the group:

- Taking active steps to create a trusting climate
- Learning to express one's feelings and thoughts, especially as they pertain to interactions in the group
- Being willing to express fears, hopes, concerns, reservations, and expectations concerning the group
- Being willing to make oneself known to others in the group
- Being involved in the creation of group norms
- Establishing personal and specific goals that will govern group participation

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Learning the basics of group process, especially how to be involved in group interactions

To ensure trust and group cohesion, group leaders must be ready to address these problems during early sessions:

- Members who wait passively for "something to happen."
- Members who do not reveal distrust or fears pertaining to the group and thus entrench their own resistance.
- Members who keep themselves vague and unknown, making meaningful interaction difficult.
- Members who adopt a problem-solving and advice-giving stance with other members.

Leader Functions The major tasks of group leaders during the orientation and exploration phase of a group are these:

- Teaching participants some general guidelines and ways to participate actively that will increase their chances of having a productive group
- Developing ground rules and setting norms
- Teaching the basics of group process
- Assisting members in expressing their fears and expectations and working toward the development of trust
- Modeling the facilitative dimensions of therapeutic behavior
- Being open with members and being psychologically present for them
- Clarifying the division of responsibility
- Helping members establish concrete personal goals
- Dealing openly with members' concerns and questions
- Providing a degree of structuring that will neither increase member dependence nor promote excessive floundering
- Assisting members to share what they are thinking and feeling about what is occurring within the here-and-now group context
- Teaching members basic interpersonal skills such as active listening and responding
- Assessing the needs of the group and facilitating in such a way that these needs are met

Exercises and activities designed to develop leadership skills for each of the stages of a group are included in the *Student Manual for Theory and Practice of Group Counseling* (Corey, 2023).

Stage 3: Transition Stage—Dealing With Reluctance

Before a group can begin doing a deeper level of work, it typically goes through a somewhat challenging transition phase. During this stage, members deal with their anxiety, defensiveness, conflict, and ambivalence about participating in the group. If a level of trust has been established during the initial stage, members are usually willing to express certain feelings, thoughts, and reactions that they may not have been willing to verbalize during earlier sessions, and the leader helps members learn how to begin working on the concerns that brought them to the group.

During the transition stage, members learn to monitor their thoughts, feelings, and actions and begin to express them verbally. Leaders can help members recognize and accept their reluctance and at the same time encourage members to challenge their tendencies toward avoidance. For members to progress to a deeper level of exploration, they must talk about any anxiety and defensiveness they may be experiencing. Members' struggles need to be respected, understood, and explored.

The reluctance or defensive behavior of members should not be forcefully challenged by the leader, but it is a mistake to bypass or ignore this behavior. Some groups remain stuck at the transition stage because reluctant behavior is unnoticed, ignored, or poorly dealt with by the group leader. Teaching members how to challenge themselves is a basic task at this time. However, it is also essential that members learn how to respectfully challenge one another in a caring and constructive fashion. Members show respect by explaining how they are affected by the behaviors of another member rather than by giving advice or judging that person.

During the initial stage, members generally address their fears or reservations about participating

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

in the group. However, there is a more extensive and more specific discussion of how these fears are manifested within the group during the transition stage. This discussion enables members to feel the support and safety that is required for the intense work they are getting ready to do.

Characteristics of the Transition Stage

Anxiety The transition stage is generally characterized by increased anxiety and defensiveness. These feelings normally give way to genuine openness and trust in the stages that follow. Participants may articulate their anxieties in the form of statements or questions such as these, directed to themselves or to the group:

- I wonder whether these people really understand me and whether they care.
- I don't know how much I have in common with the people in here. I'm not sure that I will be understood.
- What good will it do to open up in here? Even if it works, what will it be like when I attempt to do the same outside of this group?
- What if I lose control? What if I cry?
- I see myself standing before a door but afraid to open it for fear of what I'll find behind it. I'm afraid to open the door because once I open it I'm not sure I'll be able to shut it again.
- How close can I get to others in this group? How much can I trust these people with my inner feelings?

Anxiety grows out of the fear of letting others see beyond the level of a person's public image. Anxiety also results from the fear of being judged and misunderstood, from the need for more structure, and from a lack of clarity about goals, norms, and expected behavior in the group situation. As the participants increase their trust in the other members and the leader, they become increasingly able to share parts of themselves, and this openness lessens their anxiety about letting others see them as they are.

Dealing With Fears and Ambivalence As a group moves into a transition stage, members typically express fears about getting involved and are reluctant to delve into personal concerns. Some members keep their fears about becoming involved in the group to themselves, whereas others are willing to express their fears and challenge them. Whether the fears are expressed or not, they tend to give rise to some ambivalence—the desire to reveal oneself is balanced by a reluctance to expose oneself. Here are some typical expressions of ambivalence:

- I tend to isolate at times. Part of me wants to let others know me in here, yet another part of me wants to pull back and check things out quietly.
- I'm afraid to get involved because I may look foolish, and people will judge me negatively.
- If I say what I really think and feel, I'm afraid the people in here will not accept or like me.
- If I see myself as I really am, I may not like what I find.
- Right now my life is rather comfortable; if I become too involved in the group, I may open up more than I can handle.
- I'm somewhat afraid of disclosing myself to others, not only because of what they may think but also because of what I might find out about myself.
- I want to protect myself by not letting myself care. If I get too close to people in the group, I'll feel a real loss when it ends.

Recognizing and Dealing With Conflict Before conflict can be dealt with and constructively worked through, it must be recognized. Too often both the members and the leader want to bypass conflict out of the mistaken assumption that it is something to be feared and avoided at all costs. If conflict exists and is ignored in a group, what originally produced the conflict festers and destroys the chance for genuine contact and cohesion. When conflict is recognized and dealt with in such a way that those who are involved can retain integrity, the foundations of trust between the parties are established. Recognizing that conflict is often inevitable and that it can strengthen trust is likely to reduce the probability that members and the leader will try to dodge the conflicts that are a natural part of a group's development.

Ignoring conflicts and negative reactions requires energy, and that energy can be better employed to

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

develop an honest style of facing and working through conflicts that arise. As a group evolves, members continue to discover whether the group is a safe place to disagree, to have and express the full range of feelings, and to experience interpersonal conflict. They are testing the degree to which they can be accepted when they are not living up to social expectations. The way conflict is recognized, accepted, and worked through is critical to the progress of the group. If it is poorly handled, the group will probably not reach a productive stage of development. If it is dealt with openly and with concern, the members discover that their relationships are strong enough to withstand an honest level of challenge.

Certain group behaviors tend to elicit negative reactions that reflect conflict:

- Remaining aloof and being more of an observer
- Talking too much and actively interfering with the group process through questioning, giving abundant advice, or in other ways distracting people from their work
- Dominating the group, using sarcasm, belittling the efforts that are being made, and demanding attention

Intermember conflict is often the result of transference. Members may have intense reactions to one another; by exploring these reactions to specific individuals in a group, members can discover some important connections to the ways in which they transfer feelings from significant people in their lives to others. Here are some statements that can represent transference reactions:

- You seem self-righteous. Every time you begin to talk, I want to leave the room.
- You bother me because you act like a well-functioning computer. I don't sense any feeling from you.
- Your attempts to take care of everyone in here really bother me. You rarely ask anything for yourself, but you're always ready to offer something. I don't trust that.

Challenging the Group Leader Conflicts also often involve the group leader. You may be challenged on professional as well as personal grounds. You may be criticized for being "too standoffish" and not revealing enough of yourself, or members may take issue with you for being "one of the group" and revealing too much of your private life. Here are some of the comments you may hear from your group members:

- You're judgmental, cold, and stern.
- No matter what I do, I have the feeling that it'll never be enough to please you.
- You really don't care about us personally. I sense that you're just doing a job and that we don't count.
- You don't give us enough freedom. You control everything.
- You push people too much. I feel you aren't willing to accept a "no."

It is helpful to distinguish between a challenge and an attack. An attack can take the form of "dumping" or "hit-and-run" behavior. Members who attack group leaders with "This is how you are" statements don't give leaders much chance to respond. The leader has already been judged, categorized, and dismissed. A challenge by a member who openly confronts a leader with how the member perceives and experiences the leader provides an opportunity for the leader to respond and to explore the issue further. For example, "I'm aware that I'm not opening up in here. One reason is that if I do I feel that you'll push me beyond where I want to go." The leader can respond to this challenge and address the member's fears.

Most members experience the struggle between dependence and independence. Confronting the leader is often a participant's first significant step toward self-direction. If members are to become free of their dependency on the leader that is characteristic of the initial group stage, the leader must deal directly with these revealing challenges. It is well for leaders to be aware that some members will be hesitant to confront a leader because this behavior is not congruent with their cultural values and norms. In these cases, it is not generally facilitative for leaders to expect or to pressure members to express everything they are feeling.

The leader's ability to accept and deal with personal and leadership style challenges is a good indicator of whether the leader will be able to move the group into

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

more advanced levels of development. If you can learn to appreciate the opportunities that challenges from group members offer, you have a better chance of dealing with these interactions directly, nondefensively, and honestly. You are also in a better position to share how you are affected by the confrontation and to ask members to check out their assumptions.

Reluctance and Guardedness Some members may be reluctant to explore personal issues or painful feelings in depth. This reluctance generally makes sense to the member and serves a protective purpose. Reluctant members may exhibit defensive behaviors, and unless these behaviors are recognized and explored they can seriously interfere with the group process. Participants need to become aware of the defenses that may prevent them from getting involved in the group and of the effects of these defenses on the other members. An effective way of dealing with defensive behavior is to treat it as an inevitable aspect of the group process; that is, the leader acknowledges that being guarded is a member's natural response to getting personally involved in a risk-taking experience. An open atmosphere that encourages people to acknowledge and work through whatever hesitations and anxieties they may be experiencing is essential. Participants must be willing to recognize their anxiety and their defenses to manage this anxiety and to talk about what might be keeping them from full participation. However, members should be confronted with care and in such a way that they are *invited* to recognize their defensive behaviors and *encouraged* to go beyond them.

Group members may be unwilling to share their feelings because they do not trust the group leader or because the group is simply not a safe place in which to open up. There are times when member "resistance" is the result of factors such as an unqualified leader, conflict between coleaders, a dogmatic or authoritarian leadership style, a leader's failure to prepare the participants for the group experience, or a lack of trust engendered by the leader. Leaders must look honestly at the sources of defensive behavior, keeping in mind that not all ambivalence stems from the members' lack of willingness to face unconscious and threatening sides of themselves.

Cultural factors need to be considered in addressing what may appear to be resistance. It is important to distinguish between uncooperative behavior as a manifestation of problematic behavior or as a hesitation to participate fully in the group process. Clients with different cultural traditions may be reluctant to express themselves or, in some cases, are simply being politely respectful. Leaders or other members who demonstrate little understanding or appreciation for the underlying cultural values of these clients may misunderstand their reticence. For example, silence in a group cannot always be interpreted as a refusal to participate. In some cultures, silence is a customary sign of respect for others; talking too much or interrupting others is considered impolite. Quiet clients may think that being silent is better than talking frequently or verbalizing without careful thought. Their quietness could reflect their fear of being perceived as seeking attention. They may be waiting to be called on by the group leader, whom they view with respect. Some clients may be hesitant to talk about family members because of taboos against openly discussing family matters. This hesitation should not necessarily be interpreted as a stubborn refusal to be open and transparent.

Decreasing reluctant behavior in a group is rarely accomplished by labeling participants as "resistant group members." By using more descriptive and nonjudgmental terminology, it is likely that leaders will change their attitude toward members who appear to be "difficult" (Corey et al., 2014). There are many problems involved in categorizing people and reducing them to labels such as "the monopolist," "the intellectualizer," "the dependent one," or "the quiet seducer." Although it is understandable that prospective leaders will be interested in learning how to handle "problem members" and the disruption of the group that they can cause, the emphasis should be on *actual behaviors* rather than on labels. Regardless of the type of behavior members exhibit as a characteristic style, they are more than that particular behavior. The manner in which you conceptualize problematic behavior contributes a great deal to either melting or entrenching uncooperative or counterproductive behavior. To categorize someone as a "resistant" and "difficult" member often leads to blaming the person, which tends to reinforce the member's uncooperative behavior. If you see and treat a person just as a "monopolizer" or an "advice giver" or a "help-rejecting complainer," you contribute to cementing that particular behavior instead of

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

helping the person work on the problems behind the behavior. For example, if members are treated as "monopolizers" and are not encouraged to explore their impact on the group, they will continue to see themselves as others see and respond to them. You can help these members, as well as the entire group, by investigating the reasons for their need to keep the spotlight on themselves and by explaining the effects of this behavior on the group.

Another limitation of identifying "problem members" rather than problem behaviors is that most of those who participate in groups exhibit, at one time or another, some form of resistance. Occasional advice giving, questioning, or intellectualizing is not in itself a problem behavior. As a matter of fact, the group leader needs to be aware of the danger of letting participants become overly self-conscious of how they behave in the group. If participants become too concerned about being identified as "problem group members," they will not be able to behave spontaneously and openly.

Difficult Group Member, or Difficult Group Leader?

Many students in group counseling classes want to talk about the "difficult" members in the groups they are leading. At times, certain members may display behaviors that are problematic such as monopolizing the group's time, storytelling, asking many questions, making interpretations for others, being overly intellectual and detached, being overly silent, or giving advice or reassurance when it is not appropriate. Such behavior often gets in the way of those members who want to work on their concerns.

Members exhibit problematic or defensive behaviors at times because of problematic behaviors on the part of group leaders. Even in effective groups, certain members may manifest problematic behaviors that are a source of difficulty to themselves, other members, and the leader. Learning how to deal therapeutically with resistance and the many forms it takes is a central challenge for group leaders. When beginning counselors encounter members who are highly resistant, they often take the matter personally. They seem to view themselves as not being competent enough to cope with certain problematic members. If they were able to "break through" the layers of defenses of some of these difficult members, they believe that they would then feel competent.

The best way to deal therapeutically with difficult member behaviors is to simply describe what we are observing and let members know how we are affected by what we see and hear. This approach is an invitation for members to determine whether what they are doing is working for them. A shift in your attitude can allow you to understand certain behaviors as the result of a member's fear, confusion, and cautiousness. As you change the lens by which you perceive members' behaviors, it will be easier to adopt an understanding attitude and to encourage members to explore ways they are reluctant, cautious, and self-protective.

Some common denominators characterize appropriate group leader interventions when dealing with difficult behaviors of group members. Here are some guidelines for effectively dealing with members who sometimes can be challenging:

- Express annoyance with a member without denigrating the character of the person.
- Avoid responding to a sarcastic remark with sarcasm.
- Educate the member about how the group works to demystify the process.
- Encourage members to explore their fears or any form of resistance rather than ignore them.
- Avoid labeling and judging any member and instead describe the behavior of the member.
- State observations and hunches in a tentative way rather than being dogmatic.
- Demonstrate sensitivity to a member's culture and avoid stereotyping the individual.
- Let members who are difficult for you know how they are affecting you in a nonblaming way.
- Avoid using the role and power of the leader to intimidate members.
- Monitor your own countertransference reactions.
- Challenge members in a caring and respectful way to do things that may be painful and difficult.
- Avoid retreating when conflict arises.
- Provide a balance between support and challenge.
- Refrain from taking member reactions in an overly personal way.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Facilitate a more focused exploration of a problem rather than give simple solutions.
- Meet the member's needs, not your own.
- Invite group members to state how they are personally affected by problematic behaviors of other members, but block judgments, evaluations, and criticisms.

A main responsibility of a group leader is to facilitate insight and change. To do so, the leader cannot rush in too quickly with attempts to change members who may be exhibiting difficult behaviors. Initially, the leader can gather data, ascertain whether the members see themselves as causing problems for themselves or others, and discover what they might be attempting to communicate through their behavior. Those who exhibit problematic behaviors in the group can be given more of a chance to change in the group than they might be given in daily life. The basic purpose of a therapeutic group is to provide people with opportunities to see themselves in a new light and to get a more accurate picture of how others perceive them. In the group context, they can learn that they do not have to persist in a negative behavioral pattern. With the security afforded in a group, they can open themselves to taking risks and can dare to be different.

Leaders who initiate feedback about a troublesome behavior should do so in a sensitive, honest, nonjudgmental, and caring manner. For example, rather than saying "You're a storyteller," the leader might say this: "When you go into great detail about another person, I have a hard time paying attention to you. Could you say more about how you're affected by this person?" Or the leader might express to the member that "I'd like to be able to stay present with you and understand you, but it's not easy for me to get a sense of you when you describe things in so much detail."

Other group members will observe these confrontations, so it is important for leaders to be aware of what they are modeling for the members. It is important for both the leader and the members to talk about how they are being affected when they are having difficulty with a member. It may be inappropriate to introduce any explicit technique at all beyond encouraging feedback and individual expression and offering comments on the group process.

When working with a group member who exhibits difficult behaviors, put these behavioral patterns into the context of the meaning and purpose of this behavior for the individual. People in a group are likely doing their best, even if they become aware that what they are doing is not working well for them. It is always useful to remind ourselves that the very reason people seek a group is to assist them in finding more effective ways of expressing themselves and dealing with others.

Dealing With Your Own Reactions to Problematic Behaviors

Look at how you are being personally affected by the wide variety of problem behaviors you encounter. Many of us would display a variety of avoidance strategies if we were in a group. As old patterns are confronted and as we experience the anxiety that accompanies personal change, we are likely to be very creative in devising a pattern of defensive or protective strategies.

When group members exhibit what you consider to be problematic behavior, examine your own desire to respond with strong feelings. You may feel threatened by those members who dominate and attempt to control the group; you may be angered by members who display resistive behavior; you may blame certain clients or the group as a whole for the slow pace or lack of productivity of the group; and you may take any signs of resistance personally. If you ignore your own reactions, you are in essence leaving yourself out of the interactions that occur in the group. Your own responses—be they feelings, thoughts, or observations—are often the most powerful resource at your disposal in effectively handling resistant behaviors.

One rationale for group leaders to experience their own group therapy is that this kind of self-exploration increases the chances that they will gain awareness of their own blind spots and potential vulnerabilities. Frequently, members we perceive as being "difficult" and who affect us the most are those who remind us of aspects of ourselves, or of significant people in our lives.

In dealing with countertransference, supervision is most helpful. As a trainee, you have the opportunity to explore with your supervisor and fellow group leaders your feelings of attraction or dislike toward

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

certain members and to learn a lot about yourself in the process. If you are leading a group alone and no longer have supervision, it is important that you be willing to consult with a qualified professional to work through unresolved problems that may lie behind your feelings of countertransference. One of the advantages of working with a coleader is that your partner can offer valuable feedback from an objective point of view and thus help you see things that may be blocked from your awareness.

Summary of the Transition Stage

Stage Characteristics The transitional phase of a group's development is marked by feelings of anxiety and defenses to allay this anxiety. Members experience a variety of feelings and may once again question their involvement with the group process and test it in some of these ways:

- Wonder what they will think of themselves if they increase their self-awareness, and wonder about others' acceptance or rejection of them
- Test the leader and other members to determine how safe the environment is
- Experience some struggle for control and power and some conflict with other members or the leader
- Learn how to work through conflict and confrontation
- Feel reluctant to get fully involved in working on their personal concerns because they are not sure others in the group will care about them
- Determine whether the leader is trustworthy and learn from this person how to resolve conflict
- Learn how to express themselves so that others will listen to them

Member Functions and Possible Problems A central role of members at this time is to recognize and deal with the many forms of defensiveness. These tasks include the following:

- Recognizing and expressing the range of their feelings and thoughts
- Respecting their own struggles yet continuing to explore them in the group
- Moving from dependence to independence
- Taking increased responsibility for what they are doing in the group
- Learning how to confront others in a constructive manner
- Being willing to face and deal with reactions toward what is occurring in the group
- Being willing to work through conflicts rather than avoiding them

During the transition phase, some common problems can arise with members:

- Members can be categorized as a "problem type," or they can limit themselves with a self-imposed label.
- Members may refuse to express persistent negative reactions, thus contributing to the climate of distrust.
- If confrontations are poorly handled, members may retreat into defensive postures and issues will remain hidden.
- Members may identify a scapegoat and project their own feelings onto that person.
- Members may collude by forming subgroups and cliques, expressing negative reactions outside of the group but remaining silent in the group.

Leader Functions Perhaps the central challenge that leaders face during the transition phase is the need to intervene in the group in a sensitive manner and at the right time. The basic task is to provide both the encouragement and the challenge necessary for the members to face and resolve the conflicts that exist within the group and their own defenses against anxiety. As indicated earlier, the genuine cohesion that allows for productive exploration and interaction to develop demands that this difficult phase of defensiveness and conflict be experienced and dealt with successfully.

Here are some of the major tasks the leader needs to perform during this critical period in a group's development:

- Teach group members the importance of recognizing and expressing their anxieties, reluctances, and here-and-now reactions to what is happening in the sessions.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Help participants recognize the ways in which they react defensively and create a climate in which they can deal with their resistances openly.
- Teach the members the value of recognizing and dealing openly with conflicts that occur in the group.
- Point out behavior that is a manifestation of the struggle for control, and teach members how to accept their share of responsibility for the direction of the group.
- Assist group members in dealing with any matters that will influence their ability to become both independent and interdependent.
- Encourage members to keep in mind what they want from the group and to ask for it.
- Provide a model for the members by dealing directly and honestly with any challenges to you as a person or as a professional.
- Continue to monitor your own reactions to members who display problematic behavior.
- Explore your potential countertransference through supervision or personal therapy.

Leaders need to be especially active during the early stages of a group because the participants have not yet learned to work effectively on their own. If a conflict arises, for example, some members may attempt to move on to more pleasant topics or in some other way ignore the conflict. Group leaders need to teach members constructive ways to deal with conflict and the value of expressing their feelings, thoughts, and reactions to such conflicts.

Destructive confrontations, with an attacking quality, can lead to entrenchment of resistance and breed hostility and mistrust. Confrontation is appropriate even during the early stages of a group if it is done with sensitivity and respect. In fact, trust is often facilitated by caring confrontations on the leader's part. How leaders deal with conflict, resistance, anxiety, and defensiveness does much to set the tone of the group. In my view, members have a tendency to follow the leader's manner of confronting.

Concluding Comments

This chapter has addressed various issues of group membership and group process that are central to your effectiveness as a group leader. I have focused on key concerns as the group is being formed, at its initial phase, and at the transitional period in a group's history. I have emphasized the central characteristics of the group at each phase, the member functions and possible problems, group process concepts, and the leader's key tasks. Your approach to leadership functions and skills hinges on your understanding of the roles that members play at the various stages in the group. Only if you are clear in your own mind about the various aspects of productive and unproductive member behaviors can you help group participants acquire the skills necessary for a successful group experience and correct behaviors that hinder self-exploration and involvement in the group.

Video

Watch Gerald Corey's *Group Theories in Action*, video via the Cengage eBook. The group session discussed in this chapter is based on an integrative approach to group counseling.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 5

Later Stages in the Development of a Group

Learning Objectives

1. List six characteristics of an effective working group.
2. Describe five therapeutic factors of a group.
3. List three guidelines for group member self-disclosure.
4. Describe five guidelines for giving and receiving feedback.
5. Explain several key characteristics of a group during the working stage.
6. List five member functions during the working stage.
7. List five group leader functions during the working stage.
8. Describe the key characteristics of a group during the final stage.
9. List five member functions during the final stage.
10. List five leader functions during the final stage.

Continuing the discussion of the evolutionary process of a group in action, this chapter focuses on the working stage, the final stage, and the postgroup issues of evaluation and follow-up. The major characteristics of the group at each phase, the member functions and problems that are likely to occur, and the group leader's key functions are discussed as well.

Stage 4: Working Stage—Cohesion and Productivity

There are no arbitrary dividing lines between the stages of a group, and considerable overlapping is common in all groups. This is especially true of movement from the transition stage to the working stage. The working stage is characterized by the commitment of members to explore significant problems in depth, to try out effective actions to bring about desired behavioral changes, and by members' attention to the dynamics within the group. At this time in a group's evolution, I find that much less structuring and intervention are required of the leader

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

than during the initial and transition stages. By now the members have learned how to involve themselves in group interactions in more spontaneous ways.

To be sure, work and learning also occur during the initial and transition stages. However, a higher degree of cohesion, a clearer notion of what members want from their group, and a more intensive level of interaction among the members are characteristic of the working stage. At this stage, participants begin to realize that they are responsible for their lives, and they must be encouraged to decide what concerns to explore in the group and learn how to become an integral part of the group yet retain their individuality. Group members filter the feedback they receive and decide what they will do about it. Consequently, it is very important at this stage that neither the group leader nor other members attempt to decide on a course of action or make prescriptions for any other member.

Development of Group Cohesion

Nature of Group Cohesion

Group cohesion is characterized by a sense of belonging, inclusion, solidarity, and an attractiveness of a group for its members. Cohesiveness is the result of all the forces acting on the members that make them want to remain in the group. Members experience a sense of belonging and of having a connection with one another. In a group, the therapeutic alliance that develops from this feeling of being accepted involves multiple relationships: member-to-group, member-to-member, member-to-leader, and leader-to-members.

Cohesion may begin to develop in the early stages of a group, and it is a key facilitative element of the group process at the working stage. Groups do not have to experience conflict to become cohesive, but conflict that is smoothed over or somehow ignored in the group will obstruct the establishment of cohesion. If the group has successfully navigated a testing period, members will conclude, "If it's OK to express negative reactions and conflict, then maybe it's OK to get close." Groups do not become cohesive automatically, however; and cohesion may fluctuate throughout the life of the group in response to the interactions of group members.

In a cohesive group, members open up on a deeper level and are willing to reveal painful experiences and to take other risks. The route to this increased level of interaction within the group is often due to a willingness of members to stay in the here-and-now, especially their willingness to express persistent reactions they are having to one another. The honest sharing of deeply significant personal experiences and struggles binds the group together because the process of sharing allows members to identify with others by seeing themselves in others. Cohesion is the result of a commitment by the participants and the leader to take the steps that lead to a group-as-a-whole feeling, and it provides the group with the impetus to move forward.

Group leaders play a critical role in the development of cohesion and should actively engage in interventions that foster and maintain cohesion. When leaders establish clarity about how the group works in early sessions, members are able to reach higher levels of self-disclosure and cohesion in later sessions (Burlingame et al., 2011). Cohesion is integrally related to the success of group therapy. Based on an extensive meta-analysis of cohesion in group therapy, Burlingame et al. found that effective leaders foster group cohesion using these strategies:

- Set group agendas and treatment expectations
- Discuss group rules with members
- Demonstrate understanding of members' concerns
- Identify and discuss fears and concerns of members regarding self-disclosure
- Structure exercises that facilitate emotional expression and exchange
- Facilitate appropriate member-to-member interactions
- Discuss roles and responsibilities of both leaders and group members
- Model sharing personal information in the here-and-now
- Model appropriate self-disclosure
- Model expressions of caring and warmth
- Encourage member self-disclosure that is relevant to the current group agenda
- Encourage here-and-now discussions rather than storytelling disclosures
- Block ill-timed or excessive member self-disclosure
- Encourage active emotional engagement between and among group members

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Respond at an emotional level
- Use nonjudgmental language with members
- Reframe negative or injurious feedback
- Balance positive and corrective leader-to-member feedback
- Avoid becoming defensive when challenged by group members
- Foster a climate of support and challenge
- Develop and facilitate relationships with and among group members

Yalom and Leszcz (2020) believe that cohesion is a strong determinant of a positive group outcome but is not, by itself, a sufficient condition for effective group work. Yalom and Leszcz state that group cohesiveness has many significant consequences for the group therapeutic process, and it is a necessary component for other therapeutic factors to operate. Cohesion fosters action-oriented behaviors such as immediacy, mutuality, self-disclosure, honesty, risk-taking, and translation of insight into action. Also, without group cohesion members will not feel secure enough to maintain a high level of trust and engage in meaningful self-disclosure. If members do not experience a sense of belonging or attraction to the group, there is little likelihood that they will benefit, and they may well experience negative outcomes. Groups with a here-and-now focus are generally vital and cohesive. In contrast, groups in which members merely talk about issues with a "there-and-then" focus tend not to develop much cohesiveness.

Although cohesiveness helps build relationships that provide the groundwork for effective group work, it can potentially hinder the group's development. When cohesiveness is not accompanied by a challenge to move forward by both the members and the leader, the group may reach a plateau. Group members may settle for feeling secure and comfortable rather than being open to taking the risks necessary for growth.

Cohesion as a Unifying Force Despite recent challenges from researchers, my experience in facilitating groups continues to convince me that cohesion is a valuable concept and that it can be a unifying force for group members. In many of the adult groups I have facilitated, common human themes arise that most of the members can relate to personally, regardless of their age, sociocultural background, or occupation. In the earlier stages of the group, members are likely to be aware of the differences that separate them, but as the group reaches a level of cohesion, it is quite common for members to comment on how alike they are in the feelings that connect them. These commonalties may be expressed in a variety of ways:

- I'm not alone in my pain and with my problems.
- I'm more lovable than I thought I was.
- I used to think I was too old to change and that I'd just have to settle for what I have in life. Now I see that what I feel is no different from what the younger people in here feel.
- I'm hopeful about my future, even though I know I have a long way to go and that the road will be rough.
- I feel close to a lot of the people in this group, and I see that we earned this closeness by letting others know who we are.
- I learned that the loneliness I felt was shared by most of the people in this group.

As a group becomes cohesive, it is not uncommon for a woman in her early 20s to discover that she shares many struggles with a man in his late 50s. Both of them may still be searching for parental approval, and they both may be learning how futile it is to look outside of themselves for confirmation of their worth. A woman learns that her struggles with femininity have much in common with a man's struggles with his masculinity. A man learns that he is not alone when he discovers that he feels resentment over the many demands his family makes on him. An older man sees in a younger male member "his son" and allows himself to feel tenderness and compassion that he did not let himself experience earlier.

Other common themes evolving in this stage lead to an increase of cohesion: remembering painful experiences of childhood and adolescence, becoming aware of the need for and fear of love, learning to express feelings that have been repressed, struggling to find meaning in life, recognizing commonalties that link us together as humans, coming to an increased appreciation of our differences and the ways we are unique, feeling guilt over what we have done or failed to do, longing for meaningful

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

connections with significant people, and beginning a process of finding our identity. The leader can foster the development of cohesion by pointing out the common themes that link members of the group.

Characteristics of an Effective Working Group

Stage 4 is characterized by productiveness that builds on the effective work done in the initial and transition stages. Now that members have truly become a group and have developed relationship skills that allow them a greater degree of autonomy, they are less dependent on the leader. Mutuality and self-exploration increase, and the group is focused on producing lasting results. Although the specific characteristics of a cohesive and productive group vary somewhat with the type of group, here are some general trends that identify a group in its working stage:

- There is a here-and-now focus. Members have learned to talk directly to one another about what they are feeling and doing in the group sessions, and they are generally willing to have meaningful interactions. They pay more attention to what is going on in the group than on stories about people outside of the group. When outside issues are brought up, they are often related to what is going on within the group.
- Members more readily identify their goals and concerns, and they take responsibility for them. They understand what the group and the leader expect of them.
- Members are willing to work and practice outside the group to achieve behavioral changes. They carry out "homework assignments," and they bring into the sessions any difficulties they have had in practicing new ways of thinking, feeling, and behaving. They are willing to try to integrate thoughts, emotions, and behaviors in their everyday situations. They are better able to catch themselves when they are thinking and acting in old patterns.
- Most of the members feel included in the group. A few members may be on the periphery and may feel distant from those members who are doing intensive work. Members who are having a difficult time feeling a sense of connection or belonging are likely to mention this in the sessions.
- The group has almost become an orchestra in that individuals listen to one another and do productive work together. Although the participants may still look to the leader for direction, as musicians look to the conductor for cues, they also tend to initiate a direction in which they want to move.
- Members continually assess their level of satisfaction with the group, and they take active steps to change matters if they see that the sessions need changing. In a productive group, members realize that they have a part in the outcome. If they are not getting what they want, they generally say so.

Therapeutic Factors of a Group

The following brief overview provides a summary of the specific therapeutic factors that ensure that a group will move beyond the security of cohesiveness into productive work. The major aspects of the working stage are addressed in detail.

Trust and Acceptance Group members at the working stage trust one another and the leader, or at least they openly express a lack of trust. Trust is manifested in the participants' attitudes of acceptance and in their willingness to take risks by sharing meaningful here-and-now reactions. Feeling that they are accepted, the members recognize that in the group they can be themselves without risking rejection. At the working stage, trust is generally high because members have been willing to deal with any barriers to its establishment and maintenance. As is the case with other interpersonal relations, however, trust is not a static entity. Trust may ebb and flow, and members may need to talk about how safe they feel even during the advanced stages of a group.

Empathy and Caring Empathy involves a deep capacity to recall, relive, and tap into one's feelings through the intense experiences of others. By understanding the feelings of others—such as the need for love and acceptance, hurt about past experiences, loneliness, joy, and enthusiasm—members come to see themselves more clearly. Empathy requires

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

caring, and caring is expressed in a group by genuine and active involvement with the other members. It is also expressed by compassion, support, tenderness, and the willingness of group members to challenge one another. As people open themselves to others by showing their pain, struggles, joy, excitement, and fears, they make it possible for others to care for them, and even to love them. It is empathy that bridges the gap between people of different ethnic and cultural groups and enables them to recognize universal human themes. Although clients' specific life circumstances may differ depending on their cultural background, groups allow a diverse range of people to realize what they have in common.

Intimacy Interpersonal intimacy develops in a group when people have revealed enough of themselves for others to identify with them. I have found that intimacy increases as people work through their struggles together. When members learn that others have similar problems, they no longer feel isolated; identification with others eventually brings about closeness, which enables the members to help one another work through fears related to intimacy. The group setting provides an ideal arena for members to discover their fears of getting close to others. The ultimate goal is to understand how one has avoided intimacy outside of the group and how one can accept intimacy in life without fear.

Members may fear that if they allow themselves to care, they may suffer abandonment again; if they allow intimacy, they may be anxious about opening themselves up to being emotionally wounded. A productive group offers many opportunities for members to face and deal with these fears. They are able to use the here-and-now group experience as a way of working through past hurts and early decisions that block intimacy. Old and unfinished issues are relived in the group context, and a corrective emotional experience may enable members to make new decisions. Members are able to see connections between ways in which they are avoiding interpersonal intimacy both in the group and with significant others.

Bemak and Epp (1996) have written about the healing power of love in a group and contend that love has traditionally been ignored by group counselors. Bemak and Epp believe "love is a powerful therapeutic tool that can aid in the transition of group clients from a pattern of failed or unhealthy love relationships to a greater understanding of love's reality" (p. 125). The authentic experience of empathy, acceptance, caring, and intimacy that develop within a group certainly can be a manifestation of love in the best sense of the word. The intimacy and love that develop among members is often the outcome of the commitment of members to let themselves be known in significant ways, which makes it possible to genuinely love others. Group counselors who emphasize the healing power of love can assist members in appreciating the dynamics of love in the group situation.

Hope If change is to occur, members must believe that change is possible, that they need not remain trapped in their past, and that they can take active steps to make their lives more meaningful and authentic. Hope is therapeutic in itself because it gives members the incentive to commit to the demanding work that change requires. It is imperative that leaders approach their groups with a conviction that positive changes are possible. Perhaps the greatest builder of hope occurs when members see what they have created in the group by challenging their fears and speaking of their concerns honestly. As Yalom and Leszcz (2020) have indicated, instilling and maintaining hope are crucial in group therapy so that members will remain in the group and other therapeutic factors can take effect. The confidence group leaders model in supporting the efficacy of the group process is critical to motivating members. Yalom and Leszcz state that clients' high expectations that therapy will help them is significantly correlated with positive outcomes. In a therapy group, the presence of hope deepens client engagement in the group.

Freedom to Experiment Experimentation with different modes of behavior is a significant aspect of the working stage. The group is now a safe place in which to try out novel behavior, and a member who typically is very quiet may experiment with being more verbally expressive. In everyday transactions, people often behave in rigid and unimaginative ways, not daring to deviate from familiar and predictable patterns. With group support, participants can practice more creative ways of being and then decide what behaviors they want to change. Role playing is often an effective way to practice new skills in interpersonal situations; members can then decide whether to carry these behaviors into their everyday life.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Catharsis Suppressed feelings often result in physical symptoms such as chronic headaches, stomach pains, muscle tension, and high blood pressure. Expressing pent-up feelings can be therapeutic because it releases energy that has been blocked by withholding certain threatening feelings. Keeping a lid on anger, pain, frustration, hatred, and fear may also suppress spontaneous feelings of joy, affection, delight, and enthusiasm. The emotional release of catharsis, which sometimes occurs in a very intense way, leaves the person feeling freer and often signals the beginning of the healing process. Catharsis may be a vital part of a person's work if the client has a reservoir of unrecognized and unexpressed feelings or if the person has a great deal of pain associated with some event. Although catharsis is related to a positive outcome, some form of awareness, insight, or learning must follow for change to occur.

Unfortunately, members who do not have emotional releases may be disappointed and think that they are not really working and are not getting as much from the group as other members. Both group leaders and members sometimes make the mistake of concluding that this emotional release is the "real work"; however, simply ventilating feelings does not produce enduring benefits. I have learned that it is a mistake to assume that no real work occurs without a strong ventilation of feelings.

Dealing with the feelings that emerge for members who are affected by a group member's cathartic expression is extremely important. Yalom and Leszcz (2020) make the point that catharsis is more beneficial once supportive bonds have formed among the members. Group cohesion may be damaged by the premature expression of intense emotions before a sense of safety has been developed. From my perspective, it is also essential to understand catharsis within a cultural context. A culturally competent group leader will not push for cathartic releases without being aware of the cultural background of members and considering how their socialization is likely to affect their ability and willingness to express intense emotions.

Many members benefit from trying to gain understanding of the meaning of a cathartic experience. Group leaders can help members link their emotional exploration to cognitive and behavioral work. When asking members to cognitively process an emotional experience, timing is crucial. If a member is asked to make sense of an intense emotional experience too quickly, the member may shut down and withdraw. However, at some point the member can be asked to put into words what expressing these emotions meant and what insights the member may have gained.

Cognitive Restructuring A central part of the work done in a group consists of challenging and exploring beliefs about situations. As indicated previously, understanding the meaning of intense emotional experiences is essential to further self-exploration. This cognitive component includes explaining, clarifying, interpreting, providing the cognitive framework needed for change, formulating ideas, and making new decisions. Groups offer members many opportunities to evaluate their thinking and to adopt constructive beliefs in place of self-limiting ones. For example, members might believe it is not worth it to get close to people because others can then take advantage of them. Members can explore the degree to which this belief has been confirmed by their experience in the group. If members discover that there are benefits to being known in this group, they may decide to replace this negative thinking with more realistic beliefs. The process of cognitive restructuring forms a central role in several therapeutic approaches, including Adlerian groups, cognitive behavioral groups, and rational emotive behavior therapy groups.

Commitment to Change For change to occur, a person must believe that change is possible, but hoping for change is not enough. Constructive change requires a firm resolve to actually do whatever is necessary in order to change. Members must decide what to change as well as how to change it. Participants need to formulate a plan of action, commit themselves to it, and use the tools offered by the group process to explore ways of carrying it out. The support offered by the group is invaluable in encouraging members to stick with their commitments even when they experience temporary setbacks. The group affords the opportunity for members to plan realistically and responsibly and offers members ways to evaluate the effectiveness of their actions. If members find that carrying out some of their plans is difficult or if they do not do what they had planned, it is essential that they talk about these difficulties in the group sessions. The group itself can help members develop the motivation to follow through with their commitments. They can

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

agree to call another member when they encounter difficulties in carrying out their plans, or they can call when they have made a successful breakthrough.

Self-Disclosure Disclosure is not an end in itself; it is the means by which open communication can occur within a group. If disclosure is limited to safe topics or if it is equated with exposing secrets, the group cannot move beyond a superficial level. Internal barriers may keep us from self-disclosure, for example, fear of the intimacy that accompanies self-revelation, avoidance of responsibility and change, feelings of guilt and shame, fear of rejection, and cultural taboos. The willingness to overcome these barriers and make oneself known to others is a basic requirement at every stage of a group. During the working stage, most members have developed enough trust to risk disclosing threatening material.

Self-disclosure is the principal vehicle of group interaction, and it is critical that group participants have a clear understanding of what self-disclosure is—and what it is not. One level of self-disclosure involves sharing one's persistent reactions to what is happening in the group. Another level entails revealing current struggles, unresolved personal issues, goals and aspirations, joys and hurts, and strengths and weaknesses. If members are unwilling to share parts of themselves, it is difficult for others to care for them. In the process of talking about concerns that occurred outside of the group or in the past, it is important for members to relate these issues to the here-and-now. By focusing on the here-and-now, participants make direct contact with one another and generally express quite accurately what they are experiencing in the present. These interactions become increasingly honest and spontaneous as members become more willing to risk revealing their reactions to one another.

Self-disclosure does not mean revealing one's innermost secrets and digging into one's past. Nor does it mean "letting everything hang out" or expressing every fleeting reaction to others. Self-disclosure should not be confused with telling stories about oneself or with letting group pressure dictate the limits of one's privacy. At times, in striving to be "open and honest" or in perceiving pressure from others in the group, some members say more than is necessary for others to understand them. They disclose so much that nothing remains private, and as a result they may feel deprived of their dignity and their privacy. Oftentimes members who have engaged in too much self-disclosure will psychologically withdraw from the group.

Self-disclosure is highly valued in most of the traditional counseling approaches covered in this book, but self-disclosure may be foreign to the values of some cultural groups. Pushing for early disclosure of highly personal material or expecting members to be completely open can entrench defensive behavior in group members. Some individuals may take longer to develop trust and to participate in the disclosure that is based on this trust. Group leaders who understand the worldview of their clients are better able to be patient in helping these clients begin to speak. If clients feel that they are respected, there is a greater chance that they will begin to challenge their hesitation. Generally, group members may be slow to self-disclose until they are fairly certain that it is safe to do so, which usually involves some testing of the leader and others in the group. Being cautious should not necessarily be seen as resistance.

Unless clients challenge the obstacles to disclosure, their participation in a group will be limited. As a group leader, you can recognize that individuals from some ethnic and cultural backgrounds will have difficulties in readily sharing their feelings and reactions, let alone revealing their deeper struggles. Chung and Bemak (2014) suggest that Asian clients may feel inhibited in expressing emotions even during the later stage of a group. The formation of a supportive and respectful climate is essential in working with these group members. A good starting point is for them to talk about their difficulty in revealing themselves in a group setting. You can help these individuals by demonstrating respect for their cultural values and at the same time encouraging them to express what they want from you and from the group. With your support and the understanding of other members, they are in a position to clarify their values pertaining to self-disclosure and can decide the degree to which they are willing to make themselves known to others.

As a group leader, you can facilitate increased self-disclosure by being transparent and sharing some aspects of your personal life or experiences. There is no reason to keep yourself hidden. Modeling self-disclosure can be beneficial if done in a skillful, tactful, intentional, timely, and appropriate manner, and therapist self-disclosure can facilitate greater openness between group members (Yalom

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

& Leszcz, 2020). When engaging in personal self-disclosure, it is good to reflect on your motivations for disclosure. Your self-disclosure must be guided by the needs of the group members and not be used to satisfy your personal needs. Keep the focus on what is beneficial for the participants of your group. A particularly valuable form of leader self-disclosure is for you to be willing to engage in letting members know how they are affecting you and to participate in revealing your here-and-now reactions to members. Immediacy—talking about your reactions to what is going on in the group—can be a powerful form of self-disclosure (Yalom & Leszcz, 2020).

Hill et al. (2019) conducted a qualitative meta-analysis of the empirical literature to determine what is known about the clinical consequences of therapist self-disclosure. They offer the following practice recommendations for therapist self-disclosure, which have implications for group therapy:

- Therapist self-disclosure needs to be thoughtful and delivered with skill.
- Disclosure should be client-focused.
- It is important to evaluate the impact disclosure is having on the client.
- Attend to the quality of the therapeutic relationship in determining when to self-disclose.
- Use disclosure sparingly, and keep it brief with few details.
- Make disclosure relevant to what is going on with the client.
- Focus on similarities between therapist and client.
- Turn the focus back to the client after making a disclosure.

Based on many years of experience training and supervising novice therapists, Hill et al. (2019) have found that self-disclosure and immediacy are among the most difficult skills to learn to use effectively. They note that it is difficult for beginning therapists to set boundaries pertaining to appropriate self-disclosure and to determine when to talk about problems that may arise in the immediate relationship. They suggest that trainees can learn these skills by bringing to supervision specific situations in which they have concerns about disclosure with clients. Role playing and deliberate practice are useful ways to acquire and hone disclosure skills.

Confrontation Like self-disclosure, caring confrontation is a basic ingredient of the working stage; if it is absent, stagnation is likely to result. Constructive confrontation is an invitation for members to examine discrepancies between what one says and what one does, to become aware of unused potential, and to carry insights into action. When confrontation takes place in the supportive environment of a group, it can be a true act of caring.

In a successful group, confrontation occurs in such a way that the confronters share their reactions to the person being confronted rather than making judgments about the person. Confrontation done in a hostile, indirect, or attacking way leaves people feeling judged and rejected. Done with care and sensitivity, confrontation may help members challenge themselves to identify and work through the problems they need to resolve.

Confrontation is an issue that group members, as well as group leaders, frequently misunderstand; it is often feared, misused, and seen as a negative act to be avoided at all costs. In my opinion, support and empathy are certainly essential to group process, but they can become counterproductive if carried to excess. A group can cease to be effective if its members have colluded to interact only on a supportive level and agreed to focus almost exclusively on strengths and positive feedback. The unwillingness to challenge others to take a deeper look at themselves may result in overly polite and supportive exchanges that bear little resemblance to everyday interactions and that provide no incentive for members to extend themselves.

Therapeutic confrontation may not be appropriate for clients from certain cultures, especially if it is done too soon. For example, some cultures place a high value on authority, and members who view the leader as an authority figure may not be willing to confront the group leader. The directness associated with confrontation may be seen as a personal attack by members who view confrontation as a negative behavior and avoid it at all costs. Individuals may associate confrontation with "loss of face" and a significant sense of shame, making it difficult for them to return to the group setting. Asian clients may experience loss of face when they fail to fulfill an expected social role. If one loses face, it is felt not only by the individual but also by one's family and community (Chung & Bemak, 2014). If such individuals feel

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

insulted, chances are that they will also feel rejected or angry, and these feelings may deter them from becoming involved or remaining in a group. Group leaders need to consider the meaning of confrontation for individuals from other cultures who participate in their groups.

One of the most powerful ways of teaching constructive and caring confrontation is for leaders to model this behavior in their interactions in the group. By being direct, honest, sensitive, respectful, and timely in their confrontations, leaders provide members with valuable opportunities to learn these skills through observing the leader's behavior.

I typically emphasize the following points about effective confrontation:

- Remember that confrontation must be based on respect for others and that it is aimed at challenging others to look at unrecognized and unexplored aspects of themselves.
- Use confrontation only if you want to get closer to a client and only if you are willing to stay with the person after the confrontation.
- Learn to discriminate between a judgmental attack and a caring challenge. For example, instead of saying "All you do is take from the group; you never give anything of yourself," you may say "I miss hearing from you. I'm wondering whether you'd like to be saying more. Are you aware of anything that's preventing you from expressing your feelings and thoughts?"
- When confronting group members, address specific behaviors that affect others in the group.
- Take responsibility for your behaviors instead of blaming others for how you respond. Instead of saying "You're boring," say "I sometimes have a hard time staying with you when you speak, and I find that I'm getting lost."

Challenging group members should preserve their dignity and help members identify and see the consequences of their behavior. Effective positive confrontation should open up the channels of communication, not close them.

Benefiting From Feedback Although I treat the topics of self-disclosure, confrontation, and feedback separately for the purpose of discussion, these therapeutic factors have some degree of overlap in practice. Feedback occurs when members and leaders share their personal reactions about one another (Stockton et al., 2014). Most feedback entails self-disclosure, and sometimes feedback can be confrontational. For example, a group member may say this to another member: "I was very affected by the way you role-played talking to your father. It reminded me of my own father and the way I struggle with getting close to him." This is an example of both giving feedback and of self-disclosure. Now consider the group member, or a group therapist, who says this: "When you talked about your father, your fists were clenched, yet you were smiling. I don't know which to believe—your fists or your smile." This type of feedback involves a challenge and invites the member to explore the meaning of this nonverbal behavior.

Two key roles of the group leader are to create a climate of safety within the group that will encourage an honest exchange and to establish norms that will help members give and receive feedback. The exchange of feedback among group members is widely considered to be a key element in promoting interpersonal learning and group development (Stockton et al., 2014). For members to benefit from feedback, they need to be willing to listen to a range of reactions that others have to their behavior. It is important that there be a balance between positive feedback and corrective feedback. If members give one another their reactions and perceptions honestly and with care, participants are able to hear the impact they have had on others and can decide what, if anything, they want to change. This feedback can be of great help to the person who is exploring a problem, attempting to resolve a difficult situation, or trying different ways of behaving. Here are some guidelines that can help members learn how to give and receive feedback:

- Global feedback is of little value. Reactions to specific behavior in the group, in contrast, provide clients with an immediate, independent assessment that they can compare with their own view.
- Concise feedback given in a clear and direct manner is more helpful than qualified statements.
- Positive feedback is almost invariably rated as more desirable, more acceptable, more influential, and more conducive to change than corrective feedback. Positive feedback focuses on the

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

person's strengths as well as on behaviors that might be a source of difficulty.

- Group members tend to be more accepting of positive feedback than of difficult-to-hear feedback. Positive feedback is especially useful during the early stages of a group to establish trust and cohesion. Positive and corrective feedback should be balanced during the middle and later stages (Claiborn et al., 2002; Morran et al., 2004).
- Offer positive feedback before giving corrective comments. Corrective feedback is more readily accepted when it follows the exchange of positive feedback (Morran et al., 2004).
- Positive feedback is useful for reinforcing appropriate behaviors at any stage of a group (Morran et al., 2004).
- Although corrective feedback may be painful, if accurate and sensitively delivered, it can be helpful (Yalom & Leszcz, 2020).
- Difficult-to-hear feedback must be timed well and given in a nonjudgmental way, otherwise the person receiving it is likely to become defensive and reject it.
- Group members are often reluctant to deliver corrective feedback. This reluctance is due to fears of rejection by other members and to fears of causing harm to the feedback recipient (Morran, Stockton, & Bond, 1991). Members need to be taught the value of giving a range of feedback, as well as ways to deliver their reactions.
- Feedback about poor progress is likely to have a greater impact than feedback indicating positive progress (Lambert et al., 2019).
- Corrective feedback is more helpful when it is focused on observable behaviors, and it is easier to accept when members state how they have been affected by these behaviors. This practice lessens the chances that members will be judged because those who give feedback are focusing on themselves at the same time that they are talking to others about their behavior.
- Feedback with a quality of immediacy—that is, feedback given as a here-and-now reaction—is especially valuable.
- Leader feedback is generally of higher quality than member feedback, but it is not more readily accepted (Morran et al., 1985).
- Leaders do well to model giving effective feedback and to encourage members to engage in thoughtful feedback exchanges (Stockton et al., 2014).
- Feedback should not be imposed on others. There are times when members are not able to hear feedback because of emotional vulnerability, and this should be respected.

Members sometimes make a global declaration such as "I'd like feedback!" If these members have said very little, it is difficult to give them feedback. Members need to learn how to ask for specific feedback and how to receive it. There is value in listening nondefensively to feedback, in really hearing what others want to say to us, and then in considering what we are willing to do with this information. As the group progresses to a working stage, members are typically more willing to freely express their reactions.

Commentary Not all groups reach the working stage described here. This does not necessarily mean that the leader or the group is ineffective. Changing membership in a group can block its progress. Some populations simply may not be ready for the level of intensity that is often part of a working phase, and that needs to be respected.

If the tasks of the initial and transition stages were not mastered, it can be expected that the group will get stuck. Some groups don't get beyond the hidden agendas and unspoken conflicts that were typical of earlier sessions. The members of other groups may simply not be willing to give much of themselves beyond safe and superficial encounters. Members may have made a decision to stop at a safe level characterized by mutual support rather than challenging one another to move into unknown territory. Early interchanges between members and the leader or among members may have been abrasive, creating a climate of hesitancy and an unwillingness to trust others. The group may be oriented toward solving problems or patching up differences. This orientation can discourage self-exploration because members may be quick to offer advice when a member raises a problem. For these reasons and others, some groups never progress beyond the initial stage or the transition stage.

In the working stage, groups do not necessarily progress as tidily as this characterization may suggest. Earlier themes of trust, unconstructive conflict, and the

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

reluctance to participate may surface time and again in a group's work. As the group faces new challenges, deeper levels of trust have to be earned. Although some conflicts may have been resolved during the initial or transition stage, new conflicts may emerge in the working stage that must be faced and worked through. As is true with any intimate relationship, the relationships in the group are not static, and smooth waters may well turn into stormy seas at any time.

Summary of the Working Stage

Stage Characteristics When a group reaches the working stage, it has these central characteristics:

- The level of trust and cohesion is high, although variable and fluid.
- Communication within the group is open and involves an accurate expression of what is being experienced.
- Members interact with one another freely and directly.
- There is a willingness to risk threatening material and to make oneself known to others.
- Conflict among members is recognized and dealt with directly and effectively.
- Confrontation occurs in a way in which those doing the challenging avoid labeling others in judgmental ways.
- Participants feel supported in their attempts to change and are willing to risk new behavior.
- Members feel hopeful that they can change if they are willing to take action; they do not feel helpless.

Member Functions and Possible Problems

The working stage is characterized by the exploration of personally meaningful material. To reach this stage, members must fulfill these tasks and roles:

- Bring into group sessions issues they are willing to discuss.
- Give others feedback and be open to receiving it.
- Share how they are affected by others' presence and work in the group.
- Practice new skills and behaviors in daily life and bring the results to the sessions.
- Continually assess their satisfaction with the group and actively take steps to change their level of involvement in the sessions if necessary.

Some problems may arise at this time:

- Members may gain insights in the sessions but not see the necessity of taking action outside of the group to bring about change.
- Members may withdraw after intense self-disclosure or because of anxiety over others' intensity.
- Members may take refuge through observing others' work.

Leader Functions The central leadership functions at this stage are these:

- Provide systematic reinforcement of desired group behaviors that foster cohesion and productive work.
- Look for common themes among members' work that provide for some universality.
- Continue to model appropriate behavior, especially caring confrontation, and disclose ongoing reactions and perceptions.
- Interpret the meaning of behavior patterns at appropriate times to help members reach a deeper level of self-exploration and consider alternative behaviors.
- Be aware of the therapeutic factors that operate to produce change and intervene to help members make desired changes in thoughts, feelings, and actions.

Stage 5: Final Stage—Consolidation and Termination

As the group evolves and moves toward the final stage, it is especially important for the leader to be skilled in assisting members in transferring what they have learned in the group to their outside environments. During each stage of the group, participants are applying lessons learned in the sessions to their daily lives. The consolidation of this learning takes on

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

special meaning as a group moves toward termination; this is a time for summarizing, pulling together loose ends, and integrating and interpreting the group experience. Joyce, Piper, Orgrodniczuk, and Klein (2007) identify several essential tasks group leaders need to address during the termination phase of group therapy:

- Review and reinforce changes made by each member of the group.
- Assist members in reexamining their relationship with the group leader and other group members.
- Help members learn how to face future challenges using the skills they have acquired in the group.

The initial and final stages are the most decisive times in the group's life history. If the initial phase is effective, members get to know one another and establish their own identities in the group. An atmosphere of trust develops, and the groundwork is laid for later intensive work. Throughout the life of a group, the members are engaging in the cognitive work necessary to make decisions regarding what they are learning about themselves and others. As a group evolves into its final stage, cognitive work takes on particular importance, and feelings associated with endings are explored. To maximize the impact of the group experience, participants need to conceptualize what they learned, how they learned it, and what they will do about applying their insights to situations once the group ends.

It is essential that termination issues be brought up early in the course of a group's history. In every beginning the end is always a reality, and members need periodic reminders that their group will eventually end. Rutan et al. (2014) state that termination often evokes emotional reactions pertaining to death and mortality, separation and abandonment, and hopes for a new beginning. Termination of a group may involve a grieving process because other losses that members have experienced are often triggered during this time. It is important for leaders to help members identify and explore these feelings of loss even though they may not be completely resolved.

The number of sessions devoted to reviewing and integrating the group experience varies based on how long the group has been in existence and whether the group is an open or closed group. Leaders who try to cover too much in one final meeting can end up fragmenting the group instead of leading members to transferable learning. Members need to be able to express what the group experience has meant to them and to state where they intend to go from here. This is a time for members to express and process their feelings and thoughts about their experience in the group. Members need to face the reality of termination and learn how to say good-bye.

As a group leader, unless you recognize your own feelings about termination and are able to deal with them constructively, you are in no position to help members deal with their separation issues. If you find endings difficult, for any of a variety of reasons, facilitating members' expressions of their feelings about endings may be challenging for you. One way to facilitate the group's work is by sharing your own reactions to the ending of a group.

Avoiding acknowledging a group's completion may reflect an unconscious desire on the part of the leader or members not to deal with the role that endings play in their lives. Many people have had negative experiences with endings in their personal relationships. Someone may leave us with the assurance of keeping in touch but fade away in spite of our efforts to maintain the relationship. Some of us have friends and relatives who have ended a relationship with anger, leaving us with unfinished business. When the group does not confront its ending, members miss an opportunity to explore an area about which many of them may have profound feelings.

As group members become aware that the end of the group is nearing, they may isolate themselves so that they do not have to deal with the anxiety that accompanies separation. Work generally tapers off, and new issues are rarely raised. If members are allowed to distance themselves too much, they will fail to examine the possible effects of their group experience on their out-of-group behavior. It is crucial for the leader to help participants put into meaningful perspective what has occurred in the group. If the group has been truly therapeutic, members will be able to extend their learning to the outside, even though they may experience a sense of sadness and loss as the group ends.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Effective Ways of Terminating a Group

This section deals with ways of terminating the group experience by exploring questions such as these:

- How can members best complete any unfinished business?
- How can members be taught to carry what they have learned with them and to use these skills to deal more effectively with the demands of their daily life?
- What are the relevant issues and activities in the closing phases of a group?

Most of this discussion focuses on the termination of a closed group; that is, a group that has the same members throughout its life and whose termination date has been decided in advance. The unique challenges of members leaving an ongoing open group are also briefly addressed.

Dealing With Feelings During the final stages of the group, it is a good practice for the leader to remind members that there are only a few sessions remaining. This allows members to prepare themselves for termination and to achieve successful closure of the group experience. Members need help in facing the reality that their group will soon end. Feelings about separation, which often take the form of avoidance or denial, need to be fully explored. It is the leader's job to facilitate an open discussion of the feelings of loss and sadness that accompany the eventual termination of an intense and highly meaningful experience.

During the initial phase, members are often asked to express their fears of *entering* fully into the group. During the final phase, members should be encouraged to share their fears or concerns about *leaving* the group and having to face day-to-day realities without the group's support. It is not uncommon for members to say that they have developed genuine bonds of intimacy and have found a trusting and safe place where they can be themselves without fear of rejection. Members are not likely to welcome the prospect of being deprived of this intimacy and support. Also common are concerns of not being able to be so trusting and open with people outside the group. One of your leadership tasks is to remind members that their group is special—close, caring, and supportive—because the members made the choice and did the work together. Therefore, they can make similar choices and commitments, and be equally successful, in their relationships outside the group. This "boost of confidence" is not intended to deny the sense of loss and the sadness that may accompany the ending of a group. On the contrary, mourning the separation can be an enriching experience if the members of the group are encouraged to fully express their feelings of loss and anxiety.

Examining the Effects of the Group on Oneself Toward the end of the group it is useful to give all members an opportunity to put into words what they have learned from the entire group experience and how they intend to apply their increased self-understanding. I routinely discuss the various ways in which participants can go further with what they have learned in the group. This is a time for making specific plans for ways members can continue to build on what they learned in their group. To be meaningful, this discussion must be concrete and specific. Global statements such as "This group has been great. I really grew a lot, and I learned a lot about people as well as myself" are so general that the person who made the comments will soon forget what specifically was meaningful about the group experience. The leader can encourage the member to express these thoughts and feelings more concretely by asking these questions: "How has the group been good for you? In what sense have you grown a lot? What do you mean by 'great'? What are some of the things you actually learned about others and yourself?" Emphasizing the importance of being specific, helping members to conceptualize, and encouraging the open expression of feelings about endings and the meaning of the group can increase the chances that members will retain and use what they have learned. Members who have kept up their journal writing about their group experience have an excellent basis for assessing the impact of the group as a factor in bringing about significant change. During the final stage, I suggest that members of my groups write about most of the topics that are addressed in this section.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Giving and Receiving Feedback Giving and receiving feedback are crucial during the final phase. Although members of an effective group have been sharing their perceptions and feelings at each session, the opportunity to give and receive summary feedback has a value of its own. To help participants take advantage of this opportunity, during one of the last few sessions I generally ask members to give a brief summary of how they have perceived themselves in the group, what conflicts have become clearer, what the turning points were, what they expect to do with what they have learned, and what the group has meant to them. Then the others in the group say how they have perceived and felt about that person. I have found that concise and concrete feedback that also relates to the hopes and fears the person has expressed is most valuable. Vague comments such as "I think you're a great person" are of little long-term value. It is useful to ask members to write down specific feedback in their journals. If they do not record some of the things other members say to them, they tend to forget this feedback quickly. If they make a record, months later they can look at what others told them to determine whether they are progressing toward their goals.

Completing Unfinished Business Addressing unfinished business should not be put off to the very last session. Time should be allotted in earlier sessions to work through any unfinished business relating to transactions between members or to the group process and goals. Even if some matters cannot be resolved, members should be encouraged to talk about them. For example, a member who has remained silent throughout most of the group may not have felt safe enough to talk about personal concerns. Although it may be too late to work through this member's feelings to everyone's satisfaction, it is still important to address this issue. In another case, two people who were in conflict may be ending the group without fully resolving their differences. If they come to understand what has blocked them from working through the conflict, both will have learned something about themselves in the process.

Termination of Members in an Open Group In an open group, members leave the group and new members are incorporated into the group at various times. Some tasks to be accomplished with a member who is leaving an open group are unique to the structure of this kind of group:

- Leaders need to teach members the importance of giving adequate notice when they decide to terminate. This will ensure that members have time to address any unfinished business of their own or with others in the group.
- An effective termination is one that has been mutually agreed upon by the member and the leader and for which there is sufficient time to address feelings and thoughts about ending.
- Remaining group members often have reactions to the loss of a member, and they need an opportunity to express their thoughts and feelings.
- Members who are terminating can be asked to review what they have learned in the group and, specifically, what they intend to do with this learning. Members leaving an open group need time in the group to identify future goals and to discuss how they will deal with any setbacks they may encounter once they leave the group.

Preparing for Setbacks *Relapse prevention* is an integral part of the final phase of therapeutic groups. It is inevitable that group members will revert to old patterns and experience self-defeating thoughts and behaviors from time to time after leaving the group. It is important that members are able to recognize when they slip into old familiar patterns that no longer work for them, and the group can explore possible stumbling blocks and ways to cope with them. Group members can think about difficulties they might face in sticking with their plans and ways to address any lapses. The goal of relapse prevention is to help individuals maintain the gains they have made by using what they learned in a group when they need it in the future (Dobson & Dobson, 2017).

Summary of the Final Stage

Stage Characteristics During the final phase of a group, the following characteristics are typically evident:

- There may be some sadness and anxiety over the reality of separation.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Members are likely to pull back and participate in less intense ways in anticipation of the ending of the group.
- Members are deciding what courses of action they are likely to take.
- Members may express their hopes and concerns for one another.
- There may be talk about follow-up meetings or some plan for accountability so that members will be encouraged to carry out their plans for change.

Member Functions and Possible Problems The major task facing members during the final stage of a group is consolidating their learning and transferring what they have learned to their outside environment. Of course, they have probably been doing this to some extent between sessions if the group has been meeting on a weekly basis. This is the time for members to review the process and outcomes of the entire group and to put the meaning of the group experience into some cognitive framework. After their group has ended, the members' main functions are to continue applying what they have learned to an action program in their daily lives and to attend a follow-up group session (if appropriate). Here are some of the tasks for members at this time:

- Deal with their feelings and thoughts about separation and termination.
- Complete any unfinished business, either issues they have brought into the group or issues that pertain to people in the group.
- Make decisions and plans concerning ways they can generalize what they have learned to everyday situations.
- Identify ways of reinforcing themselves so that they will continue to grow.
- Explore ways of constructively meeting any setbacks after termination of a group.
- Evaluate and express the impact of the group experience.

Some problems can occur at this time:

- Members may avoid reviewing their experience and fail to put it into a cognitive framework, thus limiting the generalization of their learning.
- Due to separation anxiety, members may distance themselves.
- Members may dwell on conflicts that occurred in their group.
- Members may consider the group an end in itself and not use it as a way of continuing to grow.

Leader Functions The group leader's central tasks in the consolidation phase are to provide a structure that enables participants to clarify the meaning of their experiences in the group and to assist members in generalizing their learning from the group to everyday situations. The leader should focus on these tasks:

- Reinforce changes members have made and ensure that members have information about resources to enable them to make further changes.
- Assist members in determining how they will apply specific skills in a variety of situations in daily life, including helping them to develop specific contracts and action plans aimed at change.
- Help members conceptualize what is taking place in the group and identify key turning points.
- Help members summarize changes they made and see commonalities with other members.
- Assist participants in developing a conceptual framework that will help them understand, integrate, consolidate, and remember what they have learned in the group.
- Create an aftercare plan for members to use once group sessions have ended.

Stage 6: Postgroup Issues—Evaluation and Follow-Up

Just as the formation of a group and the leader's preparatory activities greatly affect the group's progress through its various stages, the work of the leader once the group has come to an end is also highly important. The last session of the group is not a signal that the leader's job is finished, for there are important considerations after termination. Two issues are dynamically related to the successful completion of a group's development: evaluation and follow-up.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Part of effective practice entails developing strategies to ensure continuing assessment and designing follow-up procedures for a group. To aid this work, consider the following questions:

- What is the group leader's responsibility in evaluating the outcomes of a group?
- How can the leader help members evaluate the effectiveness of their group experience?
- What kind of follow-up should be provided after termination of a group?
- What are the ethical considerations in evaluating a group and arranging for follow-up procedures?

Evaluating the Process and Outcomes of a Group

Evaluation is a basic aspect of any group experience, and it can benefit both members and the leader. Ethical practice requires a realistic assessment of the learning that has occurred. Evaluation is not a procedure to use only at the termination of a group. It should be an ongoing process throughout the life of a group—or at least at important turning points in the group—that tracks the progress of individual members and the group as a whole. With respect to group workers' responsibility for the evaluation of group process and outcomes, *The Guiding Principles for Group Work* (ASGW, 2021) provides this standard:

> *Formative and Summative Evaluation:* Group facilitators use formative and summative means to evaluate group processes and outcomes. Results are used for ongoing program planning, improvement, and revisions of current and future groups and/or to contribute to professional research literature. Group specialists follow all applicable policies and standards in using group material for research and reports. They conduct follow-up contact with group members, as appropriate, to assess outcomes or when requested by group members. (E.2.)

In many agencies, group counselors are required to use objective measures as a means of demonstrating the effectiveness of a group. Standardized instruments can assess individual changes in attitudes and values. Some type of rating scale can also be devised to give the leader a good sense of how each member experienced and evaluated the group. Such practical evaluation instruments can help members make a personal assessment of the group and can also help the leader know what interventions were more, or less, helpful. A willingness to build evaluation into the structure of the group is bound to result in improving the design of future groups, and it increases the leader's professional credibility and accountability.

Writing done by members about the group experience is a very useful basis for subjectively evaluating the meaning of a group experience. Generally, I ask people before they enter a group to put down in writing what their concerns are and what they expect from the group. I strongly encourage members to keep an ongoing journal of their experiences in the group and in their everyday lives between sessions. This writing process helps participants focus on relevant trends and on the key things they are discovering about themselves and others through group interaction. Journal writing gives participants a chance to recall significant occurrences in the group and helps them identify specific things they liked most and least about the group. The writing process is a useful tool for self-evaluation and is in itself therapeutic.

The Follow-Up Group Session

A follow-up session for the group enables members to discuss the group experience and put it in perspective. This session is valuable not only because it offers the group leader an opportunity to assess the outcomes of the group but also because it gives members the chance to gain a more realistic picture of the impact the group has had on them and their peers.

At the follow-up session members can discuss the efforts they have made since termination of the group to implement their learning in the real world. They can report on the difficulties they have encountered, share the joys and successes they have experienced in life, and recall some of the things that occurred in the group. A follow-up session also provides people with the opportunity to express and work through any afterthoughts or feelings connected with the group experience, and the mutual giving of feedback and support is extremely valuable for group members. It is also a good time to

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

assist members in locating specific referral resources for further growth. All members can be encouraged to find some avenues of continued support and challenge so that the ending of the group can mark the beginning of a new search for self-understanding.

The element of accountability that a follow-up session encourages maximizes the chances of long-lasting benefits from the group experience. Many people have reported that simply knowing that they would be coming together as a group one or more months after the group's termination and that they would be giving a self-report provided the stimulus they needed to stick with their commitments. Finally, the follow-up session offers leaders another opportunity to remind participants that they are responsible for what they become, and that if they hope to change their situation they must take active steps to do so.

Concluding Comments

I have mentioned more than once that the stages in the life of a group do not generally flow neatly and predictably in the order described in these two chapters. There is considerable overlap between stages, and once a group moves to an advanced stage of development it may temporarily regress to an earlier developmental stage.

Knowledge of the major tasks that commonly confront participants and the leader during the different stages of the group's evolution enables you to intervene at the right time and with a clear purpose. Having a clear grasp of typical stages of group development gives you a conceptual map from which to operate. Knowledge of the group's critical turning points enables you to assist the members in mobilizing their resources to successfully meet the demands facing them as their group progresses. Knowledge of the typical pattern of groups gives you an overall perspective that enables you to determine which interventions might be more useful at a particular time. Also, this perspective allows you to predict and prepare for certain crises in the life of the group and to manage them more effectively.

Video

Watch Gerald Corey's *Group Theories in Action*, video via the Cengage eBook. The group session discussed in this chapter is based on an integrative approach to group counseling.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

References and Suggested Readings for Part One

American Counseling Association. (2014). *ACA code of ethics.*

American Group Psychotherapy Association. (2002). *AGPA and NRCGP guidelines for ethics.* http://www.groupsinc.org/group/ethicalguide.html

American School Counselor Association. (2016). *Ethical standards for school counselors.*

APA Presidential Task Force on Evidence-Based Practice. (2006). Evidence-based practice in psychology. *American Psychologist, 61*(4), 271–285.

Arredondo, P., Toporek, R., Brown, S., Jones, J., Locke, D., Sanchez, J., & Stadler, H. (1996). Operationalization of multicultural counseling competencies. *Journal of Multicultural Counseling and Development, 24*(1), 42–78.

Association for Specialists in Group Work. (2000). Professional standards for the training of group workers [Special insert]. *The Group Worker, 28*(3), 1–10.

Association for Specialists in Group Work. (2008). Best practice guidelines. *Journal for Specialists in Group Work, 33*(2), 111–117.

Association for Specialists in Group Work. (2012). *Multicultural and social justice competence principles for group workers.* http://www.asgw.org/

Association for Specialists in Group Work. (2021). *Guiding Principles for Group Work*, http://www.asgw.org/

Atkinson, D. R. (2004). *Counseling American minorities* (6th ed.). McGraw-Hill.

Barlow, S. H. (2008). Group psychotherapy specialty practice. *Professional Psychology: Research and Practice, 39*(2), 240–244.

Bemak, F., & Epp, L. R. (1996). The 12th curative factor: Love as an agent of healing in group psychotherapy. *Journal for Specialists in Group Work, 21*(2), 118–127.

Bohart, A. C., & Wade, A. G. (2013). The client in psychotherapy. In M. J. Lambert (Ed.), *Bergin and Garfield's handbook of psychotherapy and behavior change* (6th ed., pp. 219–257). Wiley.

Brabender, V. (2020). Group psychotherapies. In S. B. Messer & N. J. Kaslow (Eds.), *Essential psychotherapies: Theory and practice* (4th ed., pp. 369–404). Guilford Press.

Brown, N. (2019). *Psychoeducational groups* (4th ed.). Routledge.

Burlingame, G. M., MacKenzie, K. R., & Strauss, B. (2004). Small group treatment: Evidence for effectiveness and mechanisms of change. In M. J. Lambert (Ed.), *Bergin and Garfield's handbook of psychotherapy and behavior change* (5th ed., pp. 647–696). Wiley.

Burlingame, G. M., McClendon, D. T., & Alonso, J. (2011). Cohesion in group therapy. In J. C. Norcross (Ed.), *Psychotherapy relationships that work: Evidence-based responsiveness* (2nd ed., pp. 110–131). Oxford University Press.

Burlingame, G. M., McClendon, D. T., & Yang, C. (2019). Cohesion in group therapy. In J. C. Norcross & M. J. Lambert (Eds.), *Psychotherapy relationships that work: Evidence-based therapist contributions* (3rd ed., Vol. 1, pp. 205–244). Oxford University Press.

Castonguay, L., Barkham, M., Lutz, W., & McAleavey, A. (2013). Practice-oriented research: Approaches and applications. In M. J. Lambert (Ed.), *Bergin and Garfield's handbook of psychotherapy and behavior change* (6th ed., pp. 85–133). Wiley.

Christmas, C., & Van Horn, S. M. (2012). SPARC groups: A model for incorporating spiritual psychoeducation into group work. *Journal for Specialists in Group Work, 37*(3), 170–201.

Chung, R. C.-Y., & Bemak, F. (2014). Group counseling with Asians. In J. DeLucia-Waack, C. R. Kalodner, & M. T. Riva (Eds.), *Handbook of group counseling and psychotherapy* (2nd ed., pp. 231–241). Sage.

Claiborn, C. D., Goodyear, R. K., & Horner, P. A. (2002). Feedback. In J. C. Norcross (Ed.), *Psychotherapy relationships that work* (pp. 217–233). Oxford University Press.

Comas-Diaz, L. (1990). Hispanic/Latino communities: Psychological implications. *Journal of Training and Practice in Professional Psychology, 4*(1), 14–35.

Comas-Diaz, L. (2019). Multicultural theories of psychotherapy. In D. Wedding & R. J. Corsini (Eds.), *Current psychotherapies* (11th ed., pp. 561–598). Cengage Learning.

Cook, J. M., Biyanova, T., & Coyne, J. C. (2009). Influential psychotherapy figures, authors, and books: An internet survey of over 2,000 psychotherapists. *Psychotherapy: Theory, Research, Practice, Training, 46*(1), 42–51.

Corey, G. (2023). *Student manual for theory and practice of group counseling* (10th ed.). Cengage Learning.

Corey, G. (2020). *Personal reflections on counseling.* American Counseling Association.

Corey, G., Corey, M., Callanan, P., & Russell, J. M. (2015). *Group techniques* (4th ed.). Cengage Learning.

Corey, G., Corey, M., & Corey, C. (2019). *Issues and ethics in the helping professions* (10th ed.). Cengage Learning.

Corey, G., Corey, M., & Haynes, R. (2014). *Groups in action: Evolution and challenges. DVD and workbook* (2nd ed.). Cengage Learning.

Corey, M., Corey, G., & Corey, C. (2018). *Groups: Process and practice* (10th ed.). Cengage Learning.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Cornish, M. A., & Wade, N. G. (2010). Spirituality and religion in group counseling: A literature review with practice guidelines. *Professional Psychology: Research and Practice, 41*(5), 398–404.

Cornish, M. A., Wade, N. G., & Post, B. C. (2012). Attending to religion and spirituality in group counseling: Counselors' perceptions and practices. *Group Dynamics: Theory, Research, and Practice, 16*(2), 122–137.

Council for Accreditation of Counseling and Related Educational Programs. (2016). Council for Accreditation of Counseling and Related Educational Programs (CACREP) 2016 standards. http://www.cacrep.org/wp-content/uploads/2015/05/2016-CACREP-Standards.pdf

Debiak, D. (2007). Attending to diversity in group psychotherapy: An ethical imperative. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 57*(1), 1–12.

DeLucia-Waack, J. L. (1996). Multiculturalism is inherent in all group work. *Journal for Specialists in Group Work*, *21*(4), 218–223.

DeLucia-Waack, J. L., & Donigian, J. (2004). *The practice of multicultural group work: Visions and perspectives from the field*. Cengage Learning.

Dies, R. R. (1983). Clinical implications of research on leadership in short-term group psychotherapy. In R. R. Dies & K. R. MacKenzie (Eds.), *Advances in group psychotherapy: Integrating research and practice* (pp. 27–78). International Universities Press.

Dobson, D., & Dobson, K. S. (2017). *Evidence-based practice of cognitive-behavioral therapy* (2nd ed.). Guilford Press.

Drum, D. J., & Knott, J. E. (2009). Theme groups at thirty. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 57*(4), 491–510.

Duncan, B. L., Miller, S. D., & Sparks, J. A. (2004). *The heroic client: A revolutionary way to improve effectiveness through client-directed, outcome-informed therapy* (Rev. ed.). Jossey-Bass.

Duncan, B. L., Miller, S. D., Wampold, B. E., & Hubble, M. A. (Eds.). (2010). *The heart and soul of change: Delivering what works in therapy* (2nd ed.). American Psychological Association.

Fallon, A. (2006). Informed consent in the practice of group psychotherapy. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 56*(4), 431–453.

Falls, L., & Furr, S. (2009). Group work, types of. In *The ACA encyclopedia of counseling* (pp. 251–254). American Counseling Association.

Francis, P. C. (2016). Religion and spirituality in counseling. In I. Marini & M. A. Stebnicki (Eds.), *The professional counselor's desk reference* (2nd ed., pp. 559–564). Springer.

Geller, J. D., Norcross, J. C., & Orlinsky, D. E. (Eds.). (2005). *The psychotherapist's own psychotherapy: Patient and clinician perspectives*. Oxford University Press.

Herlihy, B., & Corey, G. (2015a). *ACA ethical standards casebook* (7th ed.). American Counseling Association.

Herlihy, B., & Corey, G. (2015b). *Boundary issues in counseling: Multiple roles and relationships* (3rd ed.). American Counseling Association.

Hill, C. E., & Knox, S. (2002). Self-disclosure. In J. C. Norcross (Ed.), *Psychotherapy relationships that work* (pp. 255–265). Oxford University Press.

Hill, C. E., Knox, S., & Pinto-Coelho, K. G. (2019). Self-disclosure and immediacy. In J. C. Norcross & M. J. Lambert (Eds.), *Psychotherapy relationships that work: Evidence-based therapist contributions* (3rd ed., Vol. 1, pp. 379–420). Oxford University Press.

Hook, J. N., Captari, L. E., Hoyt, W., Davis, D. E., McElroy, S. E., & Worthington, E. L. (2019). Religion and spirituality. In J. C. Norcross & B. E. Wampold (Eds.), *Psychotherapy relationships that work: Evidence-based therapist responsiveness* (3rd ed., Vol. 2, pp. 212–263). Oxford University Press.

Hoyt, M. F. (2011). Brief psychotherapies. In S. B. Messer & A. S. Gurman (Eds.), *Essential psychotherapies: Theory and practice* (3rd ed., pp. 387–425). Guilford Press.

Hulse-Killacky, D., Killacky, J., & Donigan, J. (2001). *Making task groups work in your world.* Merrill/Prentice-Hall.

Ieva, K. P., Ohrt, J. H., Swank, J. M., & Young, T. (2009). The impact of experiential groups on master's students counselor and personal development: A qualitative investigation. *Journal for Specialists in Group Work, 34*(4), 351–368.

Ivey, A. E., Pedersen, P. B., & Ivey, M. B. (2008). *Group microskills: Culture-centered group process and strategies*. Microtraining Associates.

Jensen, D. R., Abbott, M. K., Beecher, M. E., Griner, D., Golightly, T. R., & Cannon, J. A. N. (2012). Taking the pulse of the group: The utilization of practice-based evidence in group psychotherapy. *Professional Psychology: Research and Practice, 43*(4), 388–394.

Johnson, I. H., Santos Torres, J., Coleman, V. D., & Smith, M. C. (1995). Issues and strategies in leading culturally diverse counseling groups. *Journal for Specialists in Group Work, 20*(3), 143–150.

Joyce, A. S., Piper, W. E., & Orgrodniczuk, J. S. (2007). Therapeutic alliance and cohesion variables as predictors of outcome of short-term group psychotherapy. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 57*(3), 269–296.

Joyce, A. S., Piper, W. E., Orgrodniczuk, J. S., & Klein, R. H. (2007). *Termination in psychotherapy: A psychodynamic model of processes and outcomes*. American Psychological Association.

Klein, R. H. (2008). Toward the establishment of evidence-based practices in group psychotherapy. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 58*(4), 441–454.

Kocet, M. M., & Herlihy, B. J. (2014). Addressing value-based conflicts within the counseling relationship: A decision-making model. *Journal of Counseling & Development 92*(2), 180–186.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Lambert, M. J. (2011). Psychotherapy research and its achievements. In J. C. Norcross, G. R. Vandenbos, & D. K. Freedheim (Eds.), *History of psychotherapy* (2nd ed., pp. 299–332). American Psychological Association.

Lambert, M. J. (2013). The efficacy and effectiveness of psychotherapy. In M. J. Lambert (Ed.), *Bergin and Garfield's handbook of psychotherapy and behavior change* (6th ed., pp. 169–218). Wiley.

Lambert, M. J., Whipple, J. L., & Kleinstauber, M. (2019). Collecting and delivering client feedback. In J. C. Norcross & M. J. Lambert (Eds.), *Psychotherapy relationships that work: Evidence-based therapist contributions* (3rd ed., Vol. 1, pp. 580–630). Oxford University Press.

Lasky, G. B., & Riva, M. T. (2006). Confidentiality and privileged communication in group psychotherapy. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 56*(4), 455–476.

Lau, M. A., Ogrodniczuk, J., Joyce, A. S., & Sochting, I. (2010). Bridging the practitioner-scientist gap in group psychotherapy research. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 60*(2), 177–196.

Lee, C. C. (2019). Multicultural competency: A conceptual framework for counseling across cultures. In C. C. Lee (Ed.), *Multicultural issues in counseling: New approaches to diversity* (5th ed., pp. 3–13). American Counseling Association.

MacNair-Semands, R. (2005). *Ethics in group psychotherapy.* American Group Psychotherapy Association.

MacNair-Semands, R. R. (2007). Attending to the spirit of social justice as an ethical approach in group therapy. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 57*(1), 61–66.

McCeneaney, A. M. S., & Gross, J. M. (2009). Introduction to special issue: Group interventions in college counseling centers. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 57*(4), 455–460.

Miller, S. D., Hubble, M. A., Duncan, B. L., & Wampold, B. E. (2010). Delivering what works. In B. L. Duncan, S. D. Miller, B. E. Wampold, & M. A. Hubble (Eds.), *The heart and soul of change: Delivering what works in therapy* (2nd ed., pp. 421–429). American Psychological Association.

Morran, D. K., Robison, F. F., & Stockton, R. (1985). Feedback exchange in counseling groups: An analysis of message content and receiver acceptance as a function of leader versus member delivery, session, and valence. *Journal of Counseling Psychology, 32*(1), 57–67.

Morran, D. K., & Stockton, R. (1985). Perspectives on group research programs. *Journal of Specialists for Group Work*, *10*(4), 186–191.

Morran, D. K., Stockton, R., & Bond, L. (1991). Delivery of positive and corrective feedback in counseling groups. *Journal of Counseling Psychology*, *38*(4), 410–414.

Morran, D. K., Stockton, R., & Whittingham, M. H. (2004). Effective leader interventions for counseling and psychotherapy groups. In J. L. DeLucia-Waack, D. Gerrity, C. R. Kalodner, & M. T. Riva (Eds.), *Handbook of group counseling and psychotherapy* (pp. 91–103). Sage.

Nolan, E. (1978). Leadership interventions for promoting personal mastery. *Journal for Specialists in Group Work, 3*(3), 132–138.

Norcross, J. C. (2005). The psychotherapist's own psychotherapy: Educating and developing psychologists. *American Psychologist, 60*(8), 840–850.

Norcross, J. C. (2010). The therapeutic relationship. In B. L. Duncan, S. D. Miller, B. E. Wampold, & M. A. Hubble (Eds.), *The heart and soul of change: Delivering what works in therapy* (2nd ed., pp. 113–141). American Psychological Association.

Norcross, J. C., & Alexander, E. F. (2019). A primer on psychotherapy integration. In J. C. Norcross & M. R. Goldfried (Eds.), *Handbook of psychotherapy integration* (3rd. ed., pp. 3–27). Oxford University Press.

Norcross, J. C., & Beutler, L. E. (2019). Integrative psychotherapies. In D. Wedding & R. J. Corsini (Eds.), *Current psychotherapies* (11th ed., pp. 527–560). Cengage Learning.

Norcross, J. C., Beutler, L. E., & Levant, R. F. (2006). *Evidence-based practices in mental health: Debate and dialogue on the fundamental questions.* American Psychological Association.

Norcross, J. C., & Goldfried, M. R. (Eds.). (2019). *Handbook of psychotherapy integration* (3rd ed.). Oxford University Press.

Norcross, J. C., Hogan, T. P., & Koocher, G. P. (2008). *Clinician's guide to evidence-based practices.* Oxford University Press.

Norcross, J. C., & Lambert, M. J. (2019). Evidence-based therapy relationships: The third task force. In J. C. Norcross & M. L. Lambert (Eds.), *Psychotherapy relationships that work: Evidence-based therapist contributions* (3rd ed., Vol. 1, pp. 1–23). Oxford University Press.

Ogrodniczuk, J. S., Piper, W. E., Joyce, A. S., Lau, M. A., & Sochting, I. (2010). A survey of Canadian group psychotherapy association members' perceptions of psychotherapy research. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 60*(2), 159–176.

Ohrt, J. H., Frier, E., Porter, J., & Young, T. (2014). Group leader reflection on their training and experience: Implications for group counselor educators and supervisors. *Journal for Specialists in Group Work, 39*(2), 95–124.

Pedersen, P. (1991). Multiculturalism as a generic approach to counseling. *Journal of Counseling and Development*, *70*(1), 6–12.

Pedersen, P. (1997). *Culture-centered counseling interventions: Striving for accuracy.* Sage.

Pedersen, P. (2000). *A handbook for developing multicultural awareness* (3rd ed.). American Counseling Association.

Post, B. C., Cornish, M. A., Wade, N. G., & Tucker, J. R. (2013). Religion and spirituality in group counseling: Beliefs

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and practices of university counseling center counselors. *Journal for Specialists in Group Work, 38*(4), 264–283.

Riva, M. T., & Haub, A. L. (2004). Group counseling in the schools. In J. L. DeLucia-Waack, D. Gerrity, C. R. Kalodner, & M. T. Riva (Eds.), *Handbook of group counseling and psychotherapy* (pp. 309–321). Sage.

Rutan, J. S., Stone, W. N., & Shay, J. J. (2014). *Psychodynamic group psychotherapy* (5th ed.). Guilford Press.

Sahker, E. (2016). Therapy with the nonreligious: Ethical and clinical considerations. *Professional Psychology: Research and Practice, 47*(4), 295–302.

Shapiro, J. L. (2010). Brief group treatment. In R. K. Conyne (Ed.), *The Oxford handbook of group counseling* (pp. 487–510). Oxford University Press.

Shumaker, D., Ortiz, C., & Brenninkmeyer, L. (2011). Revisiting experiential group training in counselor education: A survey of master's-level programs. *Journal for Specialists in Group Work, 36*(2), 111–128.

Skovholt, T. M., & Jennings, L. (2004). *Master therapists: Exploring expertise in therapy and counseling.* Allyn & Bacon.

Steen, S., Henfield, M. S., & Booker, B. (2014). The achieving success everyday group counseling model: Implications for professional school counselors. *Journal for Specialists in Group Work, 39*(1), 29–46.

Steen, S., Shi, Q., & Hockersmith, W. (2014). Group counseling for African Americans: Research and practice considerations. In J. DeLucia-Waack, C. R. Kalodner, & M. T. Riva (Eds.), *Handbook of group counseling and psychotherapy* (2nd ed., pp. 220–230). Sage.

Stockton, R., & Morran, D. K. (2010). Reflections on practitioner-researcher collaborative inquiry. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 60*(2), 295–305.

Stockton, R., Morran, K., & Chang, S. (2014). An overview of current research and best practices for training beginning group leaders. In J. DeLucia-Waack, C. R. Kalodner, & M. T. Riva (Eds.), *Handbook of group counseling and psychotherapy* (2nd ed., pp.133–145). Sage.

Stockton, R., & Toth, P. L. (1997). Applying a general research training model to group work. *Journal for Specialists in Group Work*, *22*(4), 241–252.

Sue, D., & Sue, D. W. (1993). Ethnic identity: Cultural factors in the psychological development of Asians in America. In D. R. Atkinson, G. Morten, & D. W. Sue (Eds.), *Counseling American minorities: A cross-cultural perspective* (pp. 199–210). Brown & Benchmark.

Sue, D. W., Arredondo, P., & McDavis, R. J. (1992). Multicultural counseling competencies and standards: A call to the profession. *Journal of Counseling and Development, 70*(4), 477–486.

Sue, D. W., Carter, R. T., Casas, J. M., Fouad, N. A., Ivey, A. E., Jensen, M., LaFromboise, T., Manese, J. E., Ponterotto, J. G., & Vazquez-Nutall, E. (1998). *Multicultural counseling competencies: Individual and organizational development.* Sage.

Sue, D. W., Sue, D., Neville, H. A., & Smith, L. (2019). *Counseling the culturally diverse: Theory and practice* (8th ed.). Wiley.

Torres-Rivera, E., Torres Fernandez, I., & Hendricks, W. A. (2014). Psychoeducational and counseling groups with Latinos/as. In J. DeLucia-Waack, C. R. Kalodner, & M. T. Riva (Eds.), *Handbook of group counseling and psychotherapy* (2nd ed., pp. 242–252). Sage.

Weinberg, H. (2020). Online group psychotherapy: Challenges and possibilities during COVID-19—A practice review. *Group Dynamics: Theory, Research, and Practice*, *24*(3), 201–211.

Wheeler, N., & Bertram, B. (2019). *The counselor and the law: A guide to legal and ethical practice* (8th ed.). American Counseling Association.

Wrenn, C. G. (1985). Afterward: The culturally encapsulated counselor revisited. In P. Pedersen (Ed.), *Handbook of cross-cultural counseling and therapy* (pp. 323–329). Greenwood Press.

Yalom, I. D., & Leszcz, M. (2020). *The theory and practice of group psychotherapy* (6th ed.). Basic Books.

Young, J. S., & Cashwell, C. S. (2020). Integrating spirituality and religion into counseling: An introduction. In C. S. Cashwell & J. S. Young (Eds.), *Integrating spirituality and religion into counseling* (3rd ed., pp. 3–29). American Counseling Association.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Part 2

Theoretical Approaches to Group Counseling

Chapter 6 The Psychoanalytic Approach to Groups

Chapter 7 Adlerian Group Counseling

Chapter 8 Psychodrama in Groups

Chapter 9 The Existential Approach to Groups

Chapter 10 The Person-Centered Approach to Groups

Chapter 11 Gestalt Therapy in Groups

Chapter 12 Cognitive Behavioral Approaches to Groups

Chapter 13 Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy in Groups

Chapter 14 Choice Theory/Reality Therapy in Groups

Chapter 15 Solution-Focused Brief Therapy and Motivational Interviewing in Groups

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 6

The Psychoanalytic Approach to Groups

Learning Objectives

1. Explain how the past can obstruct a member's efforts to function effectively in the present.
2. Understand the influence of early childhood development on an individual's present problems.
3. Explain how resistance is viewed by a psychodynamic group therapist.
4. Describe how multiple transferences offer a way for members to reenact unfinished events in a group setting and how these reactions can be explored in a group.
5. Define and explain the role of countertransference in the group psychodynamic therapy process.
6. Describe the role and function of the group leader from a psychodynamic perspective.
7. Define these techniques commonly used in psychoanalytic group practice: maintaining the analytic framework, free association, interpretation, dream analysis, and analysis and interpretation of resistance and transference.
8. Understand the application of the developmental stages that are part of the psychosocial approach and psychodynamic group therapy.
9. Identify and explain the key components associated with brief psychodynamic therapy.
10. Identify some of the strengths and the limitations of psychoanalytic group therapy from a multicultural perspective.

Introduction

Psychoanalytic theory has influenced most of the other models of group work presented in this textbook. Some are extensions of the analytic model, some are modifications of analytic concepts and procedures, and some have emerged as a reaction against psychoanalysis. It is fair to say that most theories of group counseling have borrowed concepts and techniques from psychoanalysis. As a group counselor, you may have neither the training nor the motivation to conduct analytic groups. However, even if you do not use psychoanalytic *techniques,* the basic psychoanalytic *concepts* can become an integral part of your own theoretical approach.

This chapter includes an overview of the psychoanalytic and psychosocial perspectives, a brief introduction to contemporary trends in psychoanalytic thinking, and the stages of development in an individual's life.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Sigmund Freud

Library of Congress Prints and Photographs Division Washington, D.C.[LC-USZ62-72266]

SIGMUND FREUD (1856–1939) was the firstborn in a Viennese family of three boys and five girls. His father, like many others of his time and place, was very authoritarian. Freud's family background is a factor to consider in understanding the development of his theory. Even though his family had limited finances, his parents made every effort to foster his obvious intellectual capacities. Freud had many interests, but he finally settled on medicine. Only 4 years after earning his medical degree from the University of Vienna at the age of 26, he attained a prestigious position there as a lecturer.

Freud's professional passion involved formulating and extending his theory of psychoanalysis. The most creative phase of his life corresponded to a period when he was experiencing severe emotional problems of his own. During his early 40s, Freud had numerous psychosomatic disorders, as well as exaggerated fears of dying and other phobias, and was involved in the difficult task of self-analysis. By exploring the meaning of his own dreams, he gained insights into the dynamics of personality development. He first examined his childhood memories and came to realize the intense hostility he had felt for his father. He also recalled his childhood sexual feelings for his mother, who was attractive, loving, and protective. He then clinically formulated his theory as he observed his patients work through their own problems in analysis.

Freud was highly creative and productive, frequently putting in 18-hour days. His collected works fill 24 volumes. Freud's productivity remained at this prolific level until late in his life when he contracted cancer of the jaw. During his last two decades, he underwent 33 operations and was in almost constant pain. He died in London in 1939.

As the originator of psychoanalysis, Freud distinguished himself as an intellectual giant. He pioneered new techniques for understanding human behavior, and his efforts resulted in the most comprehensive theory of personality and psychotherapy ever developed. His views continue to influence the contemporary practice of psychotherapy. Many of Freud's basic concepts also remain part of the foundation on which other theorists designed their theoretical frameworks.

Sigmund Freud made significant contributions to our understanding of the individual's *psychosexual development* during early childhood. However, he wrote little about the *psychosocial* influences on human development beyond childhood. For this reason, I also discuss Erik Erikson's (1963, 1982) psychosocial perspective, which provides a comprehensive framework for understanding the individual's basic concerns at each stage of life from infancy through old age. Erikson can be considered a psychoanalyst as well as an ego psychologist; he built on Freudian concepts by continuing the story of human development where Freud left off.

The person credited with first applying psychoanalytic principles and techniques to groups is Alexander Wolf, a psychiatrist and psychoanalyst. He began working with groups in 1938 because he did not want to turn away patients who needed but could not afford intensive individual therapy. His experiences increased his interest in analytic group therapy, and he made it his primary mode of therapy.

Key Concepts

Goal of the Analytic Group

The goal of the analytic process is to restructure the client's character and personality system. This

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

goal is achieved by making unconscious conflicts conscious and examining them. Specifically, psychoanalytic groups reenact the family of origin in a symbolic way via the group so that the historical past of each group member is repeated in the group's presence. Wolf (1963, 1975) developed group applications of basic psychoanalytic techniques such as working with transference, free association, dreams, and the historical determinants of present behavior. He stresses the re-creation of the original family, which allows members to work through their unresolved problems in the group. Members' reactions to other members and to the leader are assumed to reveal symbolic clues to the dynamics of their relationships with significant figures from their family of origin. Although these reactions are taken from the here-and-now, there is a constant focus on tracing them back to the early history of the members (Tuttman, 1986).

Some psychoanalytic groups seek to duplicate the original family in many respects. The group leader applies understanding to the family-like connections that arise among the members and between the members and the therapist. Participants in a group often reexperience conflicts that originated in the family context. Because of the family-like atmosphere, the group provides opportunities to evoke associations to both family-of-origin and present life experiences (Rutan et al., 2014).

Influence of the Past

Psychoanalytic work focuses on the influence of the past on current personality functioning. Experiences during the first 6 years of life are seen as the foundation for one's conflicts in the present. Typical problems that bring clients to therapy groups include an inability to freely give and accept love; difficulty recognizing and dealing with feelings such as anger, resentment, and aggression; and an inability to direct one's own life and resolve dependence and independence conflicts. According to the psychoanalytic view, these problems of adult living have their origin in early development. Early learning is not irreversible, but to change its effects individuals must become aware of how certain early experiences have contributed to their present personality structure.

There is considerable research on the significant role of early experiences on adult functioning. Early family interactions are our first group experiences, and this provides a template for how people behave in groups and what to expect from being in a group (Tasca et al., 2020). Although practitioners with a psychoanalytic orientation focus on the historical antecedents of current behavior, it is a mistake to assume that they dwell on the past to the exclusion of present concerns. Contemporary analytically oriented practitioners are interested in their clients' early experiences, but they intertwine that understanding with the present and with the future. A common misconception about psychoanalytic work is that it resembles an archaeologist digging up relics from the past. The past is relevant only as it influences the present and the future, and in this sense, all three have an essential place in group therapy (Rutan et al., 2014). In contemporary psychoanalytic therapy, therapists increasingly focus on the unconscious meanings in the here-and-now before attempting to reconstruct the past (Kernberg, 1997).

It is essential that participants understand and use historical data in their group work, but they also need to be aware of the pitfalls of getting lost in their past by recounting endless and irrelevant details of their early experiences. In the view of Wolf and Kutash (1986), the recital of yesterday's events can be uselessly time consuming and can inhibit progress. They see this use of history as essentially a form of resistance, and they suggest that talking about events in one's childhood is not as useful as dealing with the past in relation to here-and-now interactions within the group.

The Unconscious

The concept of the unconscious is one of Freud's most significant contributions and is the key to understanding his view of behavior and the problems of personality. The **unconscious** consists of those thoughts, feelings, motives, impulses, and events that are kept out of our awareness as a protection against anxiety. Freud believed that most of human behavior is motivated by forces outside conscious experience. What we do in everyday life is frequently determined by these unconscious motives and needs. Painful experiences during early childhood and the feelings

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

associated with them are buried in the unconscious because conscious awareness of these early traumas would cause intolerable anxiety in the child. The child's repression of events does not automatically lift with time, however, and the adult reacts to threats to the repression as if the anxiety associated with the early events would still be intolerable. Thus the "shadow of the past" haunts the present. By bringing unconscious material to awareness within the group, the member realizes that the anxiety is not intolerable. The trauma was intolerable only to the child; with an adult perspective on the world, these memories can be handled with relative ease.

Unconscious experiences have a powerful impact on our daily functioning. Indeed, Freud's theory holds that most of our "choices" are not freely made; rather, forces within us of which we are unaware guide our choices. We may select mates to meet certain needs that have not been satisfied; we may select a job because of some unconscious motive; and we continually respond to personal and interpersonal conflicts whose roots lie in unfinished experiences that are outside the realm of our awareness.

According to psychoanalytic theory, consciousness is only a small part of the human experience. Like the greater part of the iceberg that lies below the surface of the water, the larger part of human experience exists below the surface of awareness. The aim of psychoanalysis is to make the unconscious conscious, for it is only when we become aware of the motivations underlying our behavior that we can choose and become autonomous. The unconscious can be made more accessible to awareness by working with dreams, by using free-association methods, by learning about transference, by understanding the meaning of resistances, and by employing the process of interpretation (techniques discussed later in this chapter).

The concept of the unconscious has deep significance for analytic group therapy. Although exhaustive work with the unconscious determinants of behavior and personality reconstruction is beyond the scope of group counseling as it is generally practiced, group counselors should have an understanding of how unconscious processes operate. This understanding provides group practitioners with a conceptual framework that helps them make sense of interactions in a group, even if members do not deal with the unconscious directly.

Anxiety

To appreciate the psychoanalytic model, one must understand the dynamics of anxiety. **Anxiety** is a feeling of impending doom that results from repressed feelings, memories, desires, and experiences rising to the surface of our awareness. It is triggered by something in the environment or within the individual. Anxiety stems from the threat of unconscious material breaking through the wall of repression. We experience anxiety when we sense that we are dealing with feelings that threaten to get out of our control. Anxiety is often "free-floating"; that is, it is vague and general, not yet having crystallized into a specific form. Ego-defense mechanisms function as an integral part of the individual's attempt to cope with anxiety.

Ego-Defense Mechanisms

Ego-defense mechanisms protect the ego from threatening thoughts and feelings. These defense mechanisms were first formulated by psychoanalytic theorists as a way of explaining behavior. Conceptually, the **ego** is that part of the personality that performs various organizing functions, including keeping in contact with reality. The ego should not be equated with consciousness. Aspects of the ego are unconscious, including much of the functioning of defenses. The ego organizes and mediates between the impulses of the instincts (the id), the demands of reality, and the imagined demands of parental figures and others (the super-ego). When there is a threat to the ego, anxiety is experienced. Although we may be interested in the growth that comes from facing reality directly, we attempt to protect ourselves from experiencing anxiety. The ego defenses enable us to soften the blows that come with emotional wounding, and they are one way of maintaining a sense of personal adequacy. Although the ego defenses do involve self-deception and distortion of reality, they are not considered essentially pathological. It is only when these defenses are rigidly used or when they impair a person's ability to deal effectively with the tasks of life that their use becomes problematic. Even though these mechanisms are learned and become a habitual mode of defense against anxiety, they typically operate outside one's consciousness.

There are many opportunities to observe a variety of defensive behaviors in a group. Defenses that we

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

used in childhood when we were threatened often continue into adulthood and are activated when we feel threatened in the group. Through feedback from the group therapist and the other members, individuals can become increasingly aware of their defensive styles of interaction. With awareness, group members are able to be more flexible in the use of defenses, and eventually they may choose direct forms of dealing with anxiety-producing situations as they emerge in a group.

The following common ego defenses are typically manifested in the pattern of interactions in the therapeutic group:

- **Repression** results in threatening or painful thoughts and desires being excluded from awareness. By pushing distressing thoughts or feelings into the unconscious, people manage the anxiety that grows out of situations involving guilt and conflict. Repression underlies most of the other ego defenses. If adults were physically or emotionally abused in childhood, they might well have blocked out the pain and anxiety associated with these traumatic events by pushing the memories into the unconscious. For example, adults may have no recollection of the details of incestuous events that occurred in early childhood. However, as other members experience a catharsis and work through the pain associated with recalled incest, a member who has repressed an incestuous experience may be emotionally triggered, and unconscious material may surface to awareness.
- **Denial** is a mechanism that suppresses unpleasant reality by "closing our eyes" to the existence of anxiety-producing reality. Denial plays a defensive role similar to that of repression, but it generally operates at the preconscious or conscious level. In a therapy group, members sometimes refuse to accept that they have any problems. They may attempt to deceive both themselves and others by saying that they have "worked on" certain problems and that they therefore no longer have any concerns to deal with in the group.
- **Regression** is a mechanism whereby an individual reverts to a less mature developmental level as a way of coping with extreme stress. In the face of severe stress or a crisis, we sometimes revert to old patterns that worked for us earlier in our life. For instance, a member in a therapy group may retreat to childlike behaviors and become extremely frightened and dependent when faced with a crisis precipitated by a loved one's decision to end their relationship.
- **Projection** is a mechanism for attributing our own unacceptable thoughts, feelings, behaviors, and motives onto others. In a group setting, members are often able to see the faults of others. They may also attribute to other members certain feelings and motives that would lead them to feel guilty if they owned these feelings and motives themselves. Of course, groups offer many opportunities to view projection in action. Members who have difficulty accepting their aggressive or sexual feelings may see other group members as hostile or seductive. Group leaders should be aware, however, that members who do make inappropriate hostile or seductive comments often defend themselves by labeling as "projection" any negative feedback they receive in the group.
- **Displacement** entails a redirection of some emotion (such as anger) from a real source to a substitute person or object. Group members who are frustrated are likely to feel angry. If the leader confronts members for pouting or employing some other attention-seeking behaviors, for example, they may lash out in a hostile way toward some member who is relatively nonthreatening. Although their anger may be a result of the group leader's confrontation, they pick a safer target on whom to vent their hostility.
- **Reaction formation** is behaving in a manner that is opposite to one's real feelings and is used as a defense against anxiety that would result from accepting feelings that one is striving to disown. This defense may be exhibited in a group by the woman who is "sugary sweet" yet harbors many hostile feelings that she dares not express. It also may be displayed by the man who tries to convince himself and others that he does not care if others reject him, either in this group or at home, yet who underneath very much wants the acceptance of others. These behaviors cover up members' real feelings because dealing with

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

hostility or rejection would be too painful. The excessive quality of being sweet or of being emotionally indifferent to rejection is what makes them recognizable as a form of defense.

- **Rationalization** is a defense mechanism whereby we try to justify our behavior by assigning logical and admirable motives to it. Some people manufacture "good" reasons to explain away a bruised ego. This defense involves an attempt to minimize the severity of disappointment over losses or failures. There are many opportunities to observe this behavioral pattern in action in a group. Members may devote a great deal of energy to focusing on "others out there" as the source of their problems.

Everyone uses ego-defense mechanisms, and they have some adaptive value; nevertheless, their overuse can become problematic. Although self-deception can soften harsh reality, reality does not change through the process of distorting those aspects of it that produce anxiety. In the long run, when these defensive strategies do not work, the result is even greater anxiety. The group situation is ideal for enabling individuals to learn to recognize the indirect methods that they resort to when they feel emotionally threatened. Group leaders can work with members in therapeutic ways to help them increase their tolerance for coping with anxiety and learn direct ways of dealing with difficult interpersonal situations.

Resistance

In psychoanalytic therapy, **resistance** is defined as the individual's reluctance to bring into conscious awareness threatening unconscious material that has been previously repressed or denied. It can also be viewed as anything that prevents members from dealing with unconscious material and thus keeps the group from making progress. Resistance is the unconscious attempt to defend the self against the high degree of anxiety that the client fears would result if the material in the unconscious were uncovered. Rutan et al. (2014) remind us that "resistance is not a process designed to resist treatment; it is a defensive process designed to resist emotional pain" (p. 215). Resistance protects the individual from increased anxiety and the fear of change, enabling the member to cling to the familiar and the security of the status quo, even though these patterns are often painful (Wolitzky, 2020). Durkin (1964) stresses that resistance is a basic part of the analytic group, and she warns group leaders not to be surprised by or impatient with it. She recommends that leaders not view resistance as a sign of their own ineptness.

There are many kinds of resistances, some relating to apprehension about joining a group, some to participation in the group process, and some to the desire to leave the group (Locke, 1961). Wolf (1963) lists various sources of resistance in group members: fear that one's privacy will be invaded; need to "own" the therapist exclusively; fear of "meeting" again one's original family in the group—namely, recognizing one's parents or siblings in some of the participants—and having to deal with the anxiety produced by these encounters; unconscious fear of giving up neurotic trends; and anxiety about the freedom that a group offers, including the freedom to discuss anxiety.

Wolf also identifies other forms of resistance that surface during the advanced stages of group analysis. Some members hide behind the analysis of other members, and some engage in lengthy recitations of their life histories, thus avoiding the challenge of facing the present. Additional manifestations of resistance include these behaviors:

- Typically arriving late or not showing up at all
- Maintaining an attitude of complacency or indifference
- Exhibiting an exaggerated need to help others in the group
- Inappropriate or impulsive behavior, including comments or gestures offensive to any group members
- Using the group for mere socializing

These are by no means the only manifestations of resistive behavior; what they all have in common is the fear of recognizing and dealing with that part of oneself that is locked in the unconscious.

How do group therapists deal with resistance? Durkin (1964) maintains that to penetrate and work through resistances the therapist needs to enlist the cooperation of group members. Therefore, the therapist must start with the client's immediate problems as they are manifested through resistive behaviors, which should not be viewed as something to be overcome.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Because resistances are valuable indications of the individual's defenses against anxiety, they should be acknowledged and worked through by the group therapist and member together, with the clear understanding that they are both working toward the same ends. Resistance needs to be explored in therapy, but group therapists should take care not to label or censure group members because unacceptable criticism will only increase resistive behaviors. The concept of resistance is valuable from a theoretical and clinical perspective, but Safran et al. (2019) caution therapists to avoid framing resistance in a blaming way that implies that the client is doing something wrong and not cooperating with the treatment. Curtis (2020) notes that resistance to change can be expected because group members are often ambivalent; they have both a wish to change and a desire to remain embedded in the comfort of their old ways.

Transference

Transference refers to the member unconsciously shifting feelings, attitudes, and fantasies (both positive and negative) that stem from reactions to significant persons from the past onto the therapist (or other group members). Transference is a basic concept of the psychoanalytic group approach. When members relive earlier relationships in the present, the therapist can provide feedback that helps members come to a clearer understanding of their present situation (Safran et al., 2019). Contemporary psychoanalysts focus on the here-and-now transference in the sessions as much as they do on the transference from past figures (Wolitzky, 2020). Groups offer many opportunities for the exploration of these transference reactions that have their roots in prior relationships (Rutan et al., 2014).

In the analytic setting, unlike the original situation, members may experience and express these feelings without punishment. A psychoanalytic group provides a safe, neutral environment in which members can express spontaneous thoughts and feelings. Allowing the transference process to emerge in a group clearly contributes to the success of group therapy (Kauff, 2009). For example, a group member who perceives the therapist as a stern and rejecting father may benefit from the therapist accepting the member's feelings and helping the member understand these feelings. Analytically oriented group therapists consider the process of exploring and interpreting transference feelings as the core of the therapeutic process because this work helps the group member achieve increased awareness and personality change.

Group participants tend to compete for the attention of the leader—a situation reminiscent of earlier times when they had to vie for their parents' attention with their brothers and sisters. These attempts can be explored to discover whether they reflect the member's need for universal approval and how such a need governs the person's life. Members can gain increased awareness of how they dealt with competition as children and how their past success or lack of it affects their present interactions with others.

Group therapy also offers the possibility of multiple transferences. In individual therapy, the client's projections are directed toward the therapist alone; in group therapy, they may also be directed toward other members. By combining individual and group psychotherapy, the transference process can be illuminated and explored; benefits of the group format include facilitating separation/individuation, providing transference objects through other members in addition to the therapist, and dealing with resistances (Kauff, 2009).

The group constellation lends itself to **multiple transferences** in which "the group of today becomes the family of yesterday" (Locke, 1961, p. 102). Other members may stimulate such intense feelings that the individual "sees" in them some significant figure such as a father, mother, sibling, life partner, spouse, ex-lover, or boss. The group is a conducive milieu in which to relive significant past events as group members serve as transference figures for other members. The main work of the analytic group consists of identifying, analyzing, and resolving these projections onto family surrogates in the group. The leader has the task of helping members discover the degree to which they respond to others in the group as if they were their parents or siblings (Wolf, 1963; Wolf & Schwartz, 1962).

Groups can provide a dynamic understanding of how people function in everyday situations. As members increase their awareness of how the past is obstructing their efforts to function effectively in everyday life, they

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

are able to respond more flexibly in their current interpersonal relationships (Barber et al., 2013).

Countertransference

The therapist's own feelings may become entangled in the therapeutic relationship, obstructing or even destroying objectivity. According to psychoanalytic theory, **countertransference** is a therapist's unconscious emotional responses to a client based on the therapist's own past, resulting in a distorted perception of the client's behavior (Rutan, 2014). The resolution of countertransference is an essential skill that requires systematic reflection and exploration: "The group counselor's countertransference has the potential to be utilized as a powerful therapeutic force for the group and its leader, given good supervision and training" (Bemak & Epp, 2001, p. 310).

Comas-Diaz (2019) points out that therapists and their clients respond to conscious and unconscious dimensions of their culture: "Identifying the cultural parameters of transference and countertransference is central to multicultural psychotherapy. . . . Multicultural psychotherapists recognize that ethnic, cultural, gender, and racial factors often lead to a more rapid unfolding of core problems in psychotherapy" (p. 582). Relationships between members and the leader and among the members provide fertile ground for exploring a wide range of projections, and a culturally competent group practitioner can invite conversations on cultural differences and similarities within the group.

To the degree that countertransference is present, group therapists react to members as if they were significant figures of their own original family. Group therapists need to be alert to signs of unresolved conflicts within themselves that could interfere with the effective functioning of a group and create a situation in which members are used to satisfy the leader's own unfulfilled needs. If, for example, a group leader has an extreme need to be respected, valued, and confirmed, the leader may become overly dependent on the members' approval and reinforcement. The result is that much of what the leader does is designed to please the group members and ensure their continued support. It is important to differentiate between appropriate emotional reactions and problematic manifestations of countertransference. Following are some manifestations of countertransference that can arise in a therapeutic group:

- Seeing oneself in certain members and overidentifying with them to the point of becoming less able to work effectively with them
- Projecting some traits that one despises in oneself onto members and regarding them as impossible to work with or not amenable to treatment
- Engaging in seductive behavior and taking advantage of the leader's role to win the special affection of certain group members

Group therapists' unresolved conflicts and repressed needs can seriously interfere with the group process and can lead them to abuse their position of leadership. The difficulty in recognizing one's own countertransference and the necessity that such reactions be acknowledged and therapeutically dealt with provide a rationale for group leaders to experience their own therapy. The analytic approach requires that therapists undergo analytic psychotherapy to become conscious of their own dynamics and of the ways in which these dynamics can obstruct therapeutic tasks. Personal therapy for therapists is especially important when dealing with chronic countertransference problems (Hayes et al., 2019).

From a relational analytic perspective, conscious countertransference feelings can be a group therapist's best source of information in understanding the group members. Thus it is essential that therapists are aware of their countertransference reactions and acknowledge these feelings to themselves (Curtis, 2020). Hayes et al. (2019) describe four types of countertransference but favor an integrative definition that incorporates the therapist's reactions to all clinically relevant material. Bemak and Epp (2001) identify five typical countertransference patterns that a group counselor may experience: (1) becoming emotionally withdrawn and remaining unavailable to the group; (2) passivity; (3) being overly controlling; (4) regressing to maladaptive behaviors based on one's own unresolved personal issues; and (5) being paternalistic and adopting a role as a rescuer. Understanding countertransference is a form of self-therapy that is essential for the personal and professional development of group counselors. Countertransference provides group therapists with useful information about group members as well as about themselves.

Based on their review of the literature on countertransference in group work and their experience

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

training group counselors, Bemak and Epp (2001) identify some important aspects of this issue for both group leaders and students:

- Countertransference is a phenomenon that group counselors commonly experience.
- Given the number of participants in a group, there is an increased opportunity and likelihood that group leaders will encounter countertransference.
- If group leaders are unaware of their unresolved personal issues and their emotional responses, it will be difficult for them to effectively facilitate a group.
- Understanding one's own countertransference leads to enhanced effectiveness in facilitating groups and adds to the potential richness of the group experience.
- Countertransference is often associated with a range of emotionally charged responses such as withdrawal, anger, love, hate, annoyance, powerlessness, avoidance, collusion, overidentification, control, and sadness.
- It is essential that graduate programs create a context that facilitates a critical self-analysis of countertransference by student trainees.

It is critical that countertransference be managed and used for the benefit of the client. When therapists study their own internal reactions and use them to understand their clients, countertransference can greatly benefit the therapeutic work. However, when therapists are not aware of their countertransference and do not manage their reactions, countertransference generally inhibits the ability of therapists to function effectively (Wolitzky, 2020). Hayes (2004) reports that most research on countertransference has dealt with its deleterious effects and how to manage these reactions and suggests that it would be useful to undertake systematic study of the potential therapeutic benefits of countertransference as well. Hayes et al. (2019) point out that clinical supervision is another key factor in understanding and managing countertransference, for both trainees and experienced therapists. In their review of research on countertransference, Hayes et al. note that acting out of countertransference is harmful and that management of countertransference is helpful to therapeutic outcomes. Self-awareness is key to managing and using countertransference for therapeutic gain.

Role and Functions of the Group Leader

Leadership styles vary among psychoanalytically oriented group therapists, ranging from leaders characterized by objectivity, warm detachment, and relative anonymity to those who favor a collaborative relationship with group members. Some psychoanalytically oriented leaders believe members will project more of their own images of what they expect leaders to be if the leader remains anonymous, and these images are seen as expressions of members' unconscious needs. Therapist roles can be conceptualized on a continuum from active to nonactive, transparent to opaque, and gratifying to frustrating. Stricker and Gold (2019) believe that psychodynamic therapists need to be flexible and open to changing their roles to meet members' needs, which may range from active interventions to empathic reflection, understanding, questioning, or tentative interpretation. According to Stricker and Gold, as clients feel accepted, secure, and understood in the context of therapy, they are more willing and better able to explore life in new ways.

Transference and countertransference are central to understanding psychodynamic therapy, and the group therapist welcomes manifestations of transference as opportunities for fruitful work (Wolf, 1963). Exploring transference reactions should be done with care so as not to create additional resistance. Group therapists must remain flexible in their approach. As group interaction increases, the leader pursues participants' unconscious motivations and investigates the historical roots of these motivations through analysis and interpretation. Kernberg (1997) issues this warning: "Transference is to be handled like radioactive material, very responsibly, and with an awareness of how easily it can be misused" (p. 22).

Rutan et al. (2014) believe "the therapist's role is essentially to react rather than to initiate. The dynamic group therapist waits for the group process to occur and then comments on it" (p. 179). One role of the group therapist is to listen for the themes that emerge from the group process and to help members

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

become aware of deeper issues. Rutan (2014) claims that therapists are not so much group *leaders* as they are group *followers*: "We let the group go where it goes (for the most part), trusting that the group process will take the group where it needs to go, and that becomes a significant part of the data of the group" (p. 72).

According to Strupp (1992), one of the most significant developments of psychoanalytically oriented therapy is the growing recognition of the central importance of the therapeutic relationship. In contrast to the classical model of the impersonal analyst, the contemporary formulation places emphasis on the **therapeutic alliance**, a working relationship in which the therapist "communicates commitment, caring, interest, respect, and human concern for the patient" (p. 23). Curtis (2020) notes that the contemporary relational approach to psychodynamic therapy emphasizes **intersubjectivity**, that is, what occurs between individuals in the therapeutic dyad is of central importance. The therapeutic relationship is considered essential to bringing about change. "By trial and error, the relational therapist must find a balance between the safety of the old and the danger of the new. An alliance is created between patient and therapist through rapport, empathy, support, reflection, and the patient's sense of being known" (p. 91). How is the therapeutic alliance best fostered? Wolitzky (2020) explains that the therapist listens empathically and nonjudgmentally; pays attention to identifying and managing countertransference reactions; and explains the rationale for the framework of the therapy process. In addition, the group therapist also performs these functions:

- Gives support when doing so is therapeutic
- Helps members face and deal with resistances within themselves and in the group as a whole
- Assists members in gaining an awareness of the subtle aspects of behavior through questions and interpretations

To carry out these many functions effectively, group therapists have the paramount obligation of understanding their own dynamics and countertransference throughout the therapeutic process. To do so, they may need consultation and supervision. Personal therapy is valuable in helping leaders recognize signs of countertransference and in discovering how their own needs and motivations influence their group work.

Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures

The Therapeutic Process

The therapeutic process focuses on re-creating, analyzing, discussing, and interpreting past experiences and on working through defenses and resistances that operate at the unconscious level. The working-through process represents the final phase of the analytic group and results in increased consciousness and integration of the self. Insight and cognitive understanding are important, as are the feelings and memories associated with self-understanding. Because clients need to relive and reconstruct their past and work through repressed conflicts to understand how the unconscious affects them in the present, psychoanalytic group therapy tends to be a long-term and intensive process.

Relational analysis explores both the therapist's and the client's reactions and experiences within the group situation. The therapeutic relationship is central to increasing self-awareness, self-understanding, and exploration on the part of clients (Barber et al., 2013). Contemporary psychoanalysts and psychoanalytically oriented therapists no longer subscribe to the original model of the analyst as a "blank screen." In the contemporary model, the therapeutic relationship is an "ongoing, two-person transference-countertransference matrix in which patient and analyst mutually influence one another" (Wolitzky, 2020, p. 49). Self-disclosure and transparency have become more acceptable to contemporary psychodynamic group practitioners in recent years (Aviv, 2010; Curtis, 2020; Rutan et al., 2014).

A group format that uses psychoanalytic concepts and techniques has these specific advantages over individual analysis:

- Members are able to establish relationships similar to those that existed in their own families;

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

this time, however, the relationships occur in a group setting that is safe and conducive to favorable outcomes.

- Group participants have many opportunities to experience transference feelings toward other members and the leader; they can identify and deal with these feelings to increase their self-understanding.
- Participants can gain a clear sense of how their defenses and resistances are manifested.
- Dependence on the authority of the therapist is not as great as in individual therapy because group members also get feedback from other members.
- From observing the work of others in a group, members learn that it is acceptable to have and to express intense feelings that they may have kept out of awareness.
- Members have many opportunities to learn about themselves and others, in fact and in fantasy, through interactions with peers as well as with the leader. The material for analysis is available not only in terms of historical recollection but also on the basis of here-and-now interactions with fellow members.
- The group setting encourages members to examine their ego defenses. Resistance melts away in the atmosphere of mutual revelation and exploration in a group to a greater extent than is typically true of one-to-one therapy.
- Analysis in groups therapeutically challenges a member's idealistic expectation of having an exclusive relationship with the therapist. The experience of supporting others and the discovery of universal struggles encourage a fuller range of responses than does individual therapy.
- Analytic group therapy provides a context for addressing contemporary social issues, including class, race, and cultural differences.

Exploring Anxiety in the Group Situation

How the group leader recognizes and deals with anxiety, both within the individual and within the group as a whole, is a key technique in the psychoanalytic group. Anxiety is not something to overcome; it is essential to recognize, understand, and explore the function that the defenses against it serve. Anxiety is a necessary by-product of taking risks in the group, a process that eventually leads to constructive changes.

Free Association

The basic tool for uncovering repressed or unconscious material is **free association**—communicating whatever comes to mind regardless of how painful, illogical, or irrelevant it may seem. Group members are expected to report feelings immediately, without trying to exercise censorship, and the group discussion is left open to whatever the participants may bring up rather than revolving around an established theme. Foulkes (1965) refers to this process as "free-floating discussion" or "free group association." The psychodynamic group therapist tries not to interfere with the associative process. A therapist's task is "to help weave the various associations into a cohesive narrative about the unconscious life of the individual" (Rutan, 2014, p. 72).

One adaptation of free association to groups is the "go-around technique," which uses free association to stimulate member interactions (Wolf, 1963). Once a good rapport has developed in the conducive atmosphere fostered by sharing dreams and fantasies, members are encouraged to free-associate about each person in the group. Each participant goes around to each of the other members and says the first thing that comes to mind about that person. According to Wolf, the go-around method makes all the members adjunct therapists; that is, instead of remaining passive recipients of the leader's insights, the participants actively contribute to the interpretation of key meanings. Wolf contends that if group members say whatever comes into their heads about another "they will intuitively penetrate a resistive facade and identify underlying attitudes" (p. 289). As a result, members reveal inner feelings, become less guarded, and often develop the ability to see underlying psychic conflicts. Also, all group members have an opportunity to know how the other participants view them.

Wolf and Kutash (1986) suggest that it is useful when a client reports a dream to ask other members to free-associate with it. In this way members are being active and do not feel excluded as they listen

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

to the details of another member's dream. The group can explore both the dreamer's and the other members' associations.

In summary, free association encourages members to become more spontaneous and to uncover unconscious processes, which leads to the discovery of keener insights into their psychodynamics. This procedure also promotes unity and active participation in the group process.

Interpretation

Interpretation is a therapeutic statement offered by group leaders to help members explore the meanings of free associations, dreams, resistances, and transference feelings. An interpretation is a proposal of meaning aimed at helping group members gain self-understanding. "An interpretation is designed to make unconscious phenomena conscious, to attach meaning to events, behaviors, and feelings" (Rutan et al., 2014, p. 100). Psychodynamic group therapists have shifted to a more collaborative stance in recent years, offering interpretations as tentative hypotheses to group members for their consideration rather than as conclusions about an individual's behavior or affect state. Interpretations are often framed as questions: "Could it be that . . . ?" Therapists tend to present their observations in the spirit of mutual discovery rather than as pronouncements (Curtis, 2020). When group members reject a therapist's interpretation, it may mean the interpretation is inaccurate, not that members are being resistant.

Interpretation requires considerable skill. Well-timed and accurate interpretations help clients integrate new data that can lead to new insights. Correct timing of an interpretation in group therapy is critical. The way interpretations are presented influences how open members are to consider them. Group therapists need to understand and accept members' readiness to hear an interpretation. Premature interpretations are likely to promote undue anxiety and lead to considerable resistance. If members are presented with an accurate interpretation at an inappropriate time, they are likely to close off and become increasingly defensive.

Interpretations cast in the form of questions and presented as hypotheses and not as facts are more likely to be considered by group members. For example, Sam keeps making inappropriate interventions when other members express intense feelings and thus causes the others to lose contact with their feelings. The leader finally intervenes and says: "Sam, you seem to want to convince Julie that everything will work out for her. Is it possible that you become uncomfortable when you see a person in pain; so you rush in, trying to take that person's pain away? Could it be that you're trying to avoid painful experiences yourself?" This comment alerts Sam to a possible reason for his behavior in the group. If he thinks about the leader's interpretation, he may discover other meanings of which he is not now conscious. Whether he will respond nondefensively has a lot to do with the manner in which the interpretation is made. In this case, the leader's tentative approach doesn't pose a threat and doesn't push Sam into accepting something that he may not be ready to consider.

In making interpretations, a few other general rules are useful:

- Interpretation should deal with material that is close to the member's awareness so the member will be ready and able to incorporate it.
- Interpretation should begin from the surface and go as deep as the member can emotionally tolerate.
- It is best to point out a form of defense or resistance before interpreting the feeling or conflict that lies underneath it.

Some therapists direct interpretation to the group as a whole as well as to individual participants. For example, group members may be operating under the unspoken agreement that they will be polite and supportive and that they will not challenge one another. By observing the group process and sharing these observations with the group, the therapist can be instrumental in helping members see their hidden motives and reach a deeper level of interaction. Here, too, *how* the leader presents the observations is crucial.

One of the advantages of the psychoanalytic method in groups is that members are encouraged to share their insights about other participants. This process can be very supportive and can accelerate progress. Even though the members may not systematically make interpretations, leaving that function

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

to the therapist, they can have a significant effect on other members by being direct and unrehearsed. The disadvantages of peer interpretations are that they are sometimes ill-timed, too superficial or too deep, or inaccurate (Rutan et al., 2014). Because group members may be less defensive to hearing feedback from peers than from the group therapist, fellow members' reactions may elicit more consideration and thought than those coming from the group therapist. Rutan et al. contend that interpretations from peers can have unique power in groups. As members become more familiar with one another, they will increasingly be able to recognize defensive strategies and offer perceptive observations.

Dream Analysis

Freud (1955) saw dreams as "the royal road to the unconscious." Dreams express unconscious needs, conflicts, wishes, fears, and repressed experiences. Relational therapists are interested in the connection of a dream to a client's life: "The dream is viewed as a message to oneself to examine something that might lead to trouble if unexamined" (Curtis, 2020, p. 88). When a dream is shared in a group and worked through, the participant gains new insight into the motivations and unresolved problems behind it. Some motivations are so unacceptable to the person that they can be expressed only in disguised or symbolic form. An advantage of working with dreams in a group is that it enables members to deal in a concrete way with feelings and motivations that they otherwise would not face. After exploring the various facets and possible meanings of a dream in a supportive group, members may be more willing to accept themselves and explore other unresolved problems that elicit feelings of guilt and shame.

It should be noted that dreams have both a manifest (or conscious) content and a latent (or hidden) content. The **manifest content** is the dream as it appears to the dreamer; the **latent content** consists of the disguised, unconscious motives that represent the hidden meaning of the dream. A psychoanalytic group works at both levels. Because dreams are viewed as the key that unlocks what is buried in the unconscious, the goal is to search for the latent beneath the manifest and to gradually uncover repressed conflicts.

Wolf (1963) believes that the interpretation of dreams is an essential aspect of the analytic process and should continue throughout the various stages of a group because the unconscious material that dreams reveal has a liberating effect on participants. Members are encouraged to interpret and to free-associate with one another's dreams to reach the deepest levels of interaction. Wolf reports that the entire group becomes "engrossed in dream analysis with its attendant associations, catharsis, sense of liberation and mutuality, all of which contribute toward the group unity which is so important in the first stages of treatment" (p. 287). He stresses the importance of a nonjudgmental attitude on the part of the leader toward the emerging unconscious material. The leader's tolerant approach encourages a similar attitude in the members, and the group may soon become a compassionate and supportive family.

Dreams also contain a wealth of meaningful material concerning what is going on in the group. Members' dreams often reveal their reactions to the therapist and to other group members (Locke, 1961). The dreamer reports the dream and describes the meanings and associations it has for the dreamer. Then the group as a whole responds; other group members give their reactions to the dream and suggest cross-associations. The result is stimulation within the group.

Exploring dreams in a group has another valuable aspect. As members analyze the dreams of others and offer their own associations, they also project significant dimensions of themselves that often lead to extremely valuable insights. Wishes, fears, and attitudes are revealed as members associate with one another's dreams. One person's dream becomes the dream of the whole group, a process that is the "true essence of dream work in group psychoanalysis" (Locke, 1961, p. 133).

Insight and Working Through

Insight is a cognitive and emotional awareness of the connection of past experiences to present problems. Curtis (2020) states that analytic therapists have always emphasized the role of insight in bringing about change. Insights may be about the relationship with the therapist, about matters outside of the relationship, and about the impact of life history on current functioning. "Some insights at best are not

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

simply cognitive realizations—they are profoundly emotional, especially when focused on the here-and-now relationship between the two therapeutic participants" (p. 94). As group members develop keener insight, they become increasingly able to recognize the many ways in which these core conflicts are manifested, both in the group and in their daily lives. New connections are formed, and dominant themes begin to emerge. For example, in the course of group work some members may discover that they need to please everyone at all costs, and they come to see the effects of their need for approval on their life.

The analytic process does not end at the insight level, however. Working through core problems and conflicts is an essential aspect of analytically oriented groups and individual therapy. **Working through** involves repeating interpretations and overcoming resistance so members can resolve dysfunctional patterns that originated in childhood and make choices based on new insights. If group members hope to change some aspect of their personality, they are challenged to work through resistances and old patterns—typically a long and difficult process. Working through is one of the most complex aspects of analysis, and it requires deep commitment. The working-through process involves reexperiencing the unfinished business in the context of transference (multiple transference, in group analysis). Group members learn to accept their defenses, understand how they served a valid function in the past, and realize that they have become too burdensome in the present. Conflicts stemming from a member's early life experiences are rarely completely worked through. Most individuals will have to deal with these deeply rooted issues again from time to time. It is a mistake to think of working through as a technique that completely frees the individual from any vestige of old patterns.

Developmental Stages and Their Implications for Group Work

The psychoanalytic model views personality development as taking place across a sequence of stages, each of which is characterized by conflicts and tasks (Brabender, 2020). How the child addressed these developmental tasks affects the adult's personality. Contemporary psychoanalytic approaches all emphasize the formative role of early experience in influencing personality development. Brabender contends that the group provides a valuable therapeutic medium because, like an individual, the group goes through various stages of development and affords members opportunities to understand and work through conflicts. A developmental model aimed at understanding adult problems in coping with life provides both group therapists and group members with a way to incorporate earlier experiences in gaining a more realistic and less self-critical understanding of present difficulties (Tasca et al., 2021).

This section describes a developmental model based on Erikson's eight stages of human development and on the Freudian stages of psychosexual development. Such a combination provides group leaders with the conceptual framework required for understanding trends in development, major developmental tasks at each stage of life, critical needs and their satisfaction or frustration, potentials for choice at each stage of life, critical turning points or crises, and the origins of faulty personality development that can lead to later personality conflicts.

Erikson (1963, 1982) built on and extended Freud's ideas by stressing the psychosocial aspects of development. Although intellectually indebted to Freud, Erikson did not accept all of Freud's views. Erikson's theory of development holds that psychosexual and psychosocial growth occur together and that at each stage of life we face the task of establishing an equilibrium between ourselves and our social world. **Psychosocial theory** stresses the integration of the biological, psychological, and social aspects of development. Erikson describes development in terms of the entire life span, and each of the eight stages is characterized by a specific crisis to be resolved. According to Erikson, each crisis represents a *turning point* in life. At these turning points, we either achieve successful resolution of our conflicts and move forward or fail to resolve the conflicts and regress. To a large extent, our lives are the result of the choices we make at each stage.

This conceptual framework is useful for all group leaders, regardless of their theoretical orientation,

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and the following questions need to be raised as group work proceeds:

- What are some of the themes that give continuity to a person's life?
- What are the client's ongoing concerns and unresolved conflicts?
- What is the relationship between this individual's current problems and significant events in earlier years?
- What influential factors have shaped the person's character?
- What were the major turning points and crises in the client's life?
- What choices did the individual make at these critical periods, and how did the person deal with these various crises?
- In what direction does the person seem to be moving now?

Stage 1: Infancy—Trust Versus Mistrust (Birth to 12 Months)

Freud labeled the first year of life the **oral stage**, during which the mouth is the primary source of gratification and the infant is learning to trust or mistrust the world. The events of this period are extremely important for later development. Later personality problems that stem from the oral stage include a mistrustful view of the world, a tendency to reject love, a fear of loving and trusting, and an inability to establish intimate relationships.

According to Erikson (1963), an infant's basic task is to develop a sense of trust in self, others, and the world. Infants need to count on others and to feel wanted and secure. Each stage builds on the psychological outcomes of the previous stage, so if parents are not responsive to these needs, infants develop an attitude of mistrust toward the world, and especially toward interpersonal relationships.

Implications for Group Work The connection between these ideas and the practice of group psychotherapy seems quite clear. A common theme explored in groups is the feeling of being unloved and uncared for and the concomitant acute need for someone who will deeply care and love them. Time after time, group members recall early feelings of abandonment, fear, and rejection, and many of them have become fixated on the goal of finding a symbolic "parent" who will accept them. Much of their energy is directed toward seeking approval and acceptance. Being unable to trust themselves and others, they are afraid of loving and of forming close relationships.

Group leaders can assist these clients to express the pain they feel and to work through some of the barriers that are preventing them from trusting others and fully accepting themselves. Erikson (1968) observes that these clients tend to express their basic mistrust by withdrawing into themselves every time they are at odds with themselves, others, or the world. Establishing a sense of basic trust is a foundation for later personality development.

Problems associated with each of these developmental stages may become manifest in an analytic group in which the family of origin is recapitulated. Some regression to behaviors associated with earlier developmental stages is common in this type of group. For example, members may project hostile feelings onto the leader or other members. These individuals may feel justified in harboring unrealistic fears and may not have enough trust to check such projections for accuracy. It is essential that leaders do what is necessary to establish a group atmosphere that enables members to feel safe so they can explore possible projections. Members who do not develop this trust can easily become isolated in the group.

Analytic group therapists use their knowledge of developmental stages to understand patterns in which the members may be "stuck." The group leader's comments, questions, and interpretations can then be framed to help members resolve fixations and crises linked to specific developmental stages.

Stage 2: Early Childhood—Autonomy Versus Shame and Doubt (1 to 3 Years)

Freud called the next two years of life the **anal stage**, in which pleasure is derived from retaining and expelling feces and toilet training is being imposed on them. The main tasks that children must master during this stage include learning independence, accepting personal power, and learning how to express negative feelings such as jealousy, rage,

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

aggression, and destructiveness. It is at this stage that children begin their journey toward autonomy. They play an increasingly active role in taking care of their own needs and begin to communicate what they want from others. This is also the time when they continually encounter parental demands and are restricted from fully exploring their environment. The Freudian view is that parental feelings and attitudes during this stage have significant consequences for later personality development.

From Erikson's viewpoint, the years between ages 1 and 3 are a time for developing a sense of *autonomy.* Children who don't master the task of gaining some measure of self-control and the ability to cope with the world develop a sense of *shame* and *doubt* about themselves and their adequacy. At this age, children need to explore the world, to experiment and test their limits, and to be allowed to learn from their mistakes. Parents who do too much for their children can keep them dependent, inhibiting their children's autonomy and hampering their capacity to feel competent in the world.

Implications for Group Work By understanding the dynamics of this stage of life, the group leader can gain access to a wealth of useful material. Many of those who seek help in a group have not learned to accept their anger and hatred toward those they love. They need to get in touch with the disowned parts of themselves that are at the bottom of these conflicting feelings. To do this, they may need to relive and reexperience situations in their distant past when they began to repress intense feelings. In the safe environment of the group, members can gradually learn ways of expressing their pent-up feelings and work through the guilt associated with some of these emotions. Groups offer many opportunities for catharsis (expressing pent-up feelings) and for relearning.

Stage 3: The Preschool Age—Initiative Versus Guilt (3 to 6 Years)

In Freud's **phallic stage**, the child gains maximum gratification through direct experience with the genitals. Preschool children become curious about their bodies. They explore them and experience pleasure from genital stimulation. And they show increased interest in the differences between the sexes and ask questions about reproduction. The way in which parents respond, verbally and nonverbally, to their children's emerging sexual interest is crucial in influencing the kinds of attitudes, sexual and otherwise, their children develop.

According to the Freudian view, the basic conflict of the phallic stage centers on the unconscious incestuous desires that children develop for the parent of the opposite sex. These feelings are highly threatening and are repressed; yet they remain as powerful determinants of later personality development. Along with the wish to possess the parent of the opposite sex comes the unconscious wish to displace the parent of the same sex, a wish epitomized by the slaying of the father in the Oedipus myth.

Erikson, in contrast, emphasizes that the basic task of the preschool years is to establish a sense of *competence* and *initiative.* This is the time for becoming psychologically ready to pursue activities of one's own choosing. If children are allowed the freedom to select meaningful activities, they tend to develop a positive outlook characterized by the ability to initiate and follow through. But if they are not allowed to make at least some of their own decisions or if their choices are criticized, they are likely to develop a sense of guilt over taking initiative. Typically, they will refrain from taking an active stance and will increasingly let others make decisions for them.

Implications for Group Work In most therapy and counseling groups, participants struggle with issues related to gender-role identity. Many individuals have incorporated stereotypical notions of what it means to be a male or a female, and they have consequently repressed many of their feelings that do not fit these stereotypes. A group can be the place where individuals challenge such restricting views and become more whole.

Because concerns about sexual feelings, attitudes, values, and behavior are often kept private, people feel very much alone with their gender concerns. Groups offer the chance to express these concerns openly, to correct faulty learning, to work through repressed feelings and events, and to begin to formulate a different view of oneself. Perhaps the most important function of a group is that it gives members permission to have feelings and to talk honestly about them.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Stage 4: The School Age—Industry Versus Inferiority (6 to 12 Years)

Freudians call middle childhood the **latency stage**, a relatively calm period before the storm of adolescence. The torrent of sexual impulses of the preceding years is replaced by interests in school, playmates, sports, and a whole range of new activities. Around age 6, children begin to reach out for new relationships.

Erikson stresses the active, rather than the latent, aspect of this stage and the unique psychosocial tasks that must be met at this time if healthy development is to take place. Children need to expand their understanding of the physical and social worlds and continue to develop appropriate gender-role identities. They must also form personal values, engage in social tasks, learn to accept people who are different from them, and acquire the basic skills needed for schooling. According to Erikson, the central task of middle childhood is the achievement of a sense of *industry,* and the failure to do so results in a sense of *inadequacy* and *inferiority.* Industry refers to setting and achieving goals that are personally meaningful. If children fail at this task, they are unlikely to feel adequate as adults, and the subsequent developmental stages will be negatively influenced.

Implications for Group Work Some problems originating at this stage that group leaders may expect to encounter include a negative self-concept, feelings of inadequacy relating to learning, feelings of inferiority in establishing social relationships, conflicts about values, a confused gender-role identity, unwillingness to face new challenges, dependency, and lack of initiative. It is crucial that members learn to recognize patterns that originated during childhood because those patterns will inevitably unfold in a group.

To see how the leader's knowledge of the problems and promises of this period of life can help the therapeutic process, let's look at a participant who suffers from feelings of inferiority. Rachel fears failure so much that she shies away from college because she is convinced she could never make it. In a group, she can be helped to see possible connections between her feelings of inadequacy and some events that occurred when she was in elementary school. Perhaps she had a series of negative learning experiences, such as being told, openly or not, by her teachers that she was stupid and couldn't learn. Before Rachel can overcome her feelings that she cannot meet the demands of college, she may have to go back to the traumatic events of her childhood, relive them, and express the pain she felt then. With the support of the group, she can experience many of these repressed feelings and begin to put the events of her past in a different perspective. Eventually, she may also come to realize that she doesn't have to give up an academic career now because of something that happened in grade school.

Stage 5: Adolescence—Identity Versus Identity Confusion (12 to 18 Years)

Adolescence is a stage of transition between childhood and adulthood. It is a time for continually testing limits, rejecting ties of dependency, and establishing a new identity. It is most of all a time of conflict, especially between the desire to break away from parental control and the fear of making independent decisions and living with the consequences. Adolescence is marked by a resurgence of Oedipal feelings. From the Freudian perspective, the **Oedipus complex** is the unconscious desire of the son for his mother, along with feelings of hostility and fear toward his father. In Freudian theory, adolescence initiates the final psychosexual stage of development, the **genital stage**, which begins at the time of puberty and lasts until senility sets in, at which time the individual tends to regress to earlier stages.

Erikson did not believe that personality development ended with puberty, and he separated Freud's genital stage into four stages of development, beginning with adolescence. He saw the crisis that characterizes adolescence as the most important life crisis. During the **identity crisis**, adolescents seek to establish a stable view of self and to define a place in life. Most conflicts of the adolescent years are related to the development of a personal identity. Adolescents struggle to define who they are, where they are going, and how they will get there. Because all kinds of changes—physical as well as social—are taking place and because society applies diverse pressures, many adolescents have difficulty finding a stable

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

identity. They often experience conflicting pressures and demands. In the midst of this turmoil, the adolescent has the task of ultimately deciding where they stand in the face of these varying expectations. If the adolescent fails, *identity confusion* results, and the person will lack purpose and direction in later years.

Implications for Group Work In many groups a good deal of time is devoted to the exploration and resolution of the dependence/independence conflicts that are so prevalent in adolescence. A central struggle involves the process of separation from one's parents and moving toward individuality or autonomy.

At times one or several members may manifest a rebellious attitude toward the leader. Although challenging the leader often signals a move toward independence, attacking a leader may well be a symptom of rebellion against parents or any other authority. It is essential that leaders be aware of their own dynamics and potential countertransferences, especially when confronted in this way by members. Leaders will be less likely to react defensively if they understand the transference nature of this behavior.

The unresolved problems of adolescence are manifested in many of the problems that adults bring to a group. Until adults recognize this unfinished issue from their earlier years, they cannot effectively meet the challenges presented by other stages of life.

Stage 6: Early Adulthood—Intimacy Versus Isolation (18 to 35 Years)

In Erikson's view, we enter adulthood after we have mastered the conflicts of adolescence and established a firm personal identity. During early adulthood our sense of identity is tested again by the challenge of *intimacy* versus *isolation.*

An essential characteristic of the psychologically mature person is the ability to form intimate relationships. To achieve true intimacy with others, we need to have confidence in our own identity. Intimacy involves commitment and the ability to share and to give from our own centeredness; the failure to achieve intimacy leads to alienation and isolation. Early adulthood is also a time for focusing on one's interests, for becoming established in an occupation, and for carving out a satisfying lifestyle. It is a time for dreams and life plans but also a time for productivity.

Implications for Group Work In many adult groups considerable time is devoted to exploring the members' priorities. Participants struggle with concerns of interpersonal intimacy, talk about their unfulfilled dreams, question the meaningfulness of their work, wonder about the future, and reevaluate the patterns of their life to determine what changes they need to make. Perhaps the greatest value of a group for people engaged in these struggles is the opportunity to take another look at their dreams and life plans and determine the degree to which their life reflect these aspirations. If the gap is great, the participants are encouraged to find ways of changing the situation.

Typically, young adults bring to a group the problems related to living with another person and establishing a family. The central struggle of this period is the intimacy crisis, a conflict between the need to maintain a sense of one's own separateness and the need to establish close relationships. The successful resolution of the intimacy crisis involves achieving a balance between taking care of oneself and actively caring for others. Those who fail to strike this balance either focus exclusively on the needs of others, thus neglecting their own needs, or are self-centered and have little room for concern about others. The young adult's ability to form successful interpersonal relationships is greatly influenced by what took place during early development.

How members deal with intimacy within the group reveals patterns they learned about getting close or keeping distant during their young adulthood. For many people in groups, forming close bonds with others is extremely difficult. This pattern of being uncomfortable and frightened of both receiving and giving love and compassion is likely to unfold in the group sessions. The group is an ideal place for members who are struggling with intimacy issues to recognize and challenge their fears.

Stage 7: Middle Adulthood—Generativity Versus Stagnation (35 to 65 Years)

The seventh stage is characterized by a need to go beyond ourselves and our immediate family and to be actively involved with helping and guiding the next generation. This is a time when we are likely

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

to engage in a philosophical reexamination of how we are living, which often leads to a reinvention of our way of being. The mature years can be one of the most productive periods of our life, but this period may entail the painful experience of facing the discrepancy between what we set out to accomplish in early adulthood and what we have actually accomplished.

Erikson sees the stimulus for continued growth during this stage as the conflict between *generativity* and *stagnation*. Generativity is a broad concept that is manifested in the ability to love well, work well, and play well. If people fail to achieve a sense of personal competence, they begin to stagnate and to die psychologically. When we reach middle age, we become more sharply aware of the inevitability of our own eventual death. This awareness of mortality is one of the central features of the midlife crisis and colors our evaluations of what we are doing with our life.

Implications for Group Work The changes that occur during this life stage and the crises and conflicts that accompany them represent valuable opportunities for group work. Participants are often challenged to make new assessments, adjustments, and choices that enable them to reach new levels of meaning. Knowledge of adult development allows the group leader to watch for the hopelessness that some people experience during middle age and to help them go beyond the destructive view that "that's all there is to life." It takes caring and skilled leadership to inspire people to look for new meanings and to "invent themselves" in novel ways.

Stage 8: Later Life—Integrity Versus Despair (Above 65 Years)

The eighth stage of life confronts the individual with crucial developmental tasks, such as adjusting to the death of a spouse or friends, maintaining outside interests, adjusting to retirement, and accepting losses in physical and sensory capacities. But the central task of the final stage is reviewing the past and drawing conclusions.

According to Erikson, the successful resolution of the core crisis of this stage—the conflict between *integrity* and *despair*—depends on how the person looks back on the past. Ego integrity is achieved by those who feel few regrets. They see themselves as having lived productive and worthwhile lives, and they feel that they have coped with their failures as well as their successes. They are not obsessed with what might have been and are able to derive satisfaction from what has been. They see death as a part of the life cycle and can still find meaning and satisfaction in the time they have left. Failure to achieve ego integrity often leads to feelings of despair, hopelessness, guilt, resentment, and self-rejection.

Implications for Group Work Older adults are increasingly aware that they have a limited time left to live, and many of their issues can be productively addressed in a group. They realize that the joys associated with old age, such as wisdom and integrity, are limited in a way not recognized in earlier years (Henderson & Gladding, 2004). Themes prevalent with older adults include loss and grief; loneliness and social isolation; poverty; feelings of rejection; the struggle to find meaning in life; dependency; feelings of uselessness, hopelessness, and despair; the inevitability of death; sadness over physical and mental deterioration; and regrets over past events. Although these themes present major difficulties for many older people, they also have a range of life experiences and personal strengths that are often overlooked. Group work with older adults is one way to promote the positive aspects of aging as well as helping participants cope with the tasks associated with this stage of life. The interpersonal nature of groups can be therapeutic for older adults, especially those who experience isolation and loneliness.

The salient issues of this stage of life have implications not only for group leaders working with older adults but also for those who work with young or middle-aged adults. As people begin to see the years slip by, they feel increasing pressure to make something of their life. Fears of being alone when they are old or of financial or physical dependency on others begin to surface. Group leaders can help these members prepare now for a satisfying life as they grow older. Asking "What would you like to be able to say about your life when you reach old age?" is a good place to start. What the members say in answer to this question (to themselves and in the group) can influence the decisions they need to make now and the specific steps they must take to achieve a sense of integrity at a later age.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Contemporary Trends in Psychoanalytic Group Theory

Psychoanalytic theory continues to evolve. Freud's ideas were based on an id psychology, characterized by conflicts over the gratification of basic needs. Later, writers in the social-psychological school moved away from Freud's orthodox position and contributed to the growth and expansion of the psychoanalytic movement by incorporating the cultural and social influences on personality. Then ego psychology, with its stress on psychosocial development throughout the life span, was developed by Erikson, among others. Anna Freud (1937), with her identification of defense mechanisms, is a central figure in ego psychology although she is not particularly associated with the life-span interests of Erikson.

Psychoanalytic approaches are being applied to both family systems therapy and group therapy, and some contemporary psychoanalysts stress the interpersonal dimension more than the insight aspects of therapy. This is true of both object-relations theory and attachment theory. Although the notion of unconscious conflict remains fundamental to psychodynamic thought, contemporary theory gives more attention to internal structures of personality that are influenced by experiences with significant figures during one's infancy and early childhood. There is an increased focus on disturbances and arrests in infancy and early childhood that stem from deficiencies in the parent-child relationship.

Object-Relations Theory

In the 1970s and 1980s, psychoanalytic theory expanded to include **object-relations theory**, which holds that individuals go through phases of expanded awareness of others that culminates in a state of integration. Object relations are interpersonal relationships as they are represented intrapsychically. Although there is no single, generally accepted school or theory of object relations, this approach includes *self psychology* and *relational psychoanalysis*. Many theorists have contributed ideas to an evolving body of concepts that deal with object relations (St. Clair, 2004).

The term *object* was used by Freud to refer to that which satisfies a need, or to the significant person or thing that is the object or target of one's feelings or drives. It is used interchangeably with the term *other* to refer to an important person to whom the child and, later, the adult becomes attached. At birth, the infant has no sense of separateness; self and other are fused. The process of separation or individuation begins when the infant perceives that pleasure and discomfort are related to objects external to the self. The infant at this stage will typically make an attachment to the mother's breast before any recognition of her as a whole person.

Mahler (1968) believes the individual begins in a state of psychological fusion with the mother and progresses gradually to separation. The unfinished crises and residues of the earlier state of fusion, as well as the process of individuating, have a profound influence on later relationships. Object relations of later life build on the child's search for a reconnection with the mother (St. Clair, 2004). Psychoanalytic practitioners believe there is continuity in the development of self-other relations from their infantile origins to mature involvement with other persons. Object relations are interpersonal relationships that shape the individual's current interactions with people (St. Clair, 2004).

The contemporary theoretical trend in psychoanalytic thinking centers on predictable developmental sequences in which the early experiences of the self shift in relation to an expanding awareness of others. Once self-other patterns are established, it is assumed that they influence later interpersonal relationships. This influence occurs through a process of searching for a type of experience that comes closest to the patterning established by the early experiences. These newer theories provide insight into how an individual's inner world can cause difficulties in living in the actual world of people and relationships (St. Clair, 2004). Psychological development can be thought of as the evolution of the way in which individuals differentiate themselves from others.

Object-relations therapy is based on the premise that early in life the individual has drives that are satisfied through attachment to specific people, primarily parents. These early interactions

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

lay the foundation for relationship patterns later in life (Marshall & Fitch, 2009). In group work, participants can experience how they are bringing very early patterns into their present interactions. Group therapy provides a context for helping members understand how they can have new interactions that represent a departure from those of their past (Brabender, 2020). For example, a group member who appears closely involved with others at one meeting may seem distant and removed at the next, leaving everyone wondering what happened to the level of work that seemed to have been achieved. This pattern might repeat what Mahler (1968) calls the "ambitendency" of an infant who goes back and forth between wanting to be held by its mother and wanting to be left free to roam and explore. In a therapy group, the participants work through self-destructive interactional patterns. The primary goals in a therapy group are to create a corrective emotional experience and change self-defeating relationship patterns (Marshall & Fitch, 2009).

Attachment Theory

According to Marshall and Fitch (2009), a therapeutic group experience helps members meet their needs for being involved with others, for feeling attached, and for feeling appreciated. **Attachment theory** emphasizes the importance of attachment, separation, and loss in human development. Considered to be an offspring of object-relations theory, attachment theory is one of the newer relational models within the psychodynamic approach. This theory rests on the assumption that a child's early interactions with caregivers become the template that guides the way an individual forms connections with others (Zorzella et al., 2014). How members behave in a group and their perceptions of others in the group can illuminate significant data about their early attachments. Flores (2008) believes that this theory synthesizes the best ideas of psychoanalysis, cognitive sciences, child development research, and neurobiology: "Attachment is a primary motivational force with its own dynamics, and these dynamics have far-reaching and complex consequences, not just for development but also for the importance of the relationship and alliance in treatment" (p. 128).

Borderline and Narcissistic Personality Disorders

Perhaps the most significant developments of contemporary psychoanalytic theory involve borderline and narcissistic personality disorders. The essential features of **borderline personality disorder** are an unstable view of one's self and instability in relating to others. With borderline individuals, relationships are dominated by the need to defend against the fear of abandonment or rejection. The essential features of **narcissistic personality disorder** are a pervasive pattern of grandiosity, hypersensitivity to the evaluations of others, and a lack of empathy. Every relationship with a narcissistic individual requires adulation and perfect responsiveness from the partner (Masterson, 1997). Both of these personality patterns begin to be expressed in early adulthood. Among the most significant theorists in this area are Kernberg (1975, 1976) and Kohut (1971, 1977, 1984). Kohut maintains that people are their healthiest and best when they can feel both independence and attachment, taking joy in themselves and also being able to idealize others.

Object-relations theory sheds new light on the understanding of personality disorders. According to St. Clair (2004), borderline and narcissistic disorders seem to result from traumas and developmental disturbances during separation and individuation. However, the full manifestations of the personality and behavioral symptoms tend to develop in adolescence or early adulthood. Narcissistic and borderline symptoms, such as omnipotence, grandiosity, and splitting (a defensive process of keeping incompatible feelings separate), are behavioral manifestations of developmental tasks that were disturbed or not completed earlier.

Borderline Personality Disorder A borderline personality disorder is characterized by bouts of irritability, self-destructive acts, impulsive anger, and extreme mood shifts. People with borderline dynamics typically experience extended periods of disillusionment punctuated by occasions of euphoria. Interpersonal relations are often intense and unstable, with marked changes of attitude over time. *Splitting* is a term often attributed to the tendency of people with borderline characteristics to think in

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

"either-or" categories. For example, a formerly valued group member (or therapist) may suddenly be seen as worthless if the person angers a member who exhibits borderline features. Impulsive and unpredictable behavior frequently can cause physical harm. A marked identity disturbance is generally manifested by uncertainty about life issues pertaining to self-image, gender orientation, career choice, and long-term goals. Kernberg (1975) describes the syndrome as including a lack of clear identity, a lack of deep understanding of other people, poor impulse control, and the inability to tolerate anxiety. In recent years a great deal more clarity about individuals with borderline dynamics has emerged, especially due to the work of Kernberg and other theorists. Individuals with borderline personality disorder may be more disorganized than neurotics but are more integrated than psychotic individuals. People who manifest borderline dynamics have not fully achieved separation and individuation and tend to have a chaotic, primitive personality structure.

Yalom and Leszcz (2020) contend that borderline personality disorder does not represent a homogeneous diagnostic category. They state that diagnosing whether a person has a borderline personality disorder depends on the characteristics of the individual being screened rather than on a broad diagnostic category.

Implications for Group Work According to Yalom and Leszcz (2020), the core problem for individuals with borderline features lies in the area of intimacy, and a group setting offers the therapeutic factors of cohesiveness and reality testing. If these individuals can accept feedback and observations provided by other members, and if their behavior is not highly disruptive, the group can offer them supportive refuge from daily stresses. Yalom and Leszcz report that there is growing evidence that specialized group therapy is effective with these clients. These groups can offer people with borderline features containment, emotional regulation training, emotional support, and interpersonal learning. Although individuals with borderline dynamics may express primitive, chaotic needs and fears, they are continually confronted with reality through the group process, which helps keep these feelings somewhat under control. An advantage of group therapy with borderline clients is the reality testing provided by the feedback from the group. Yalom and Leszcz write that people with borderline disorders are referred to group therapy not because they work well or easily in a group but because they are so extraordinarily difficult to treat in individual therapy.

Clients with borderline personalities may be treated with a group format developed by Linehan (1993b), which is based on **dialectical behavior therapy (DBT)**, a blend of cognitive behavioral and psychoanalytic techniques that generally involves a minimum of one year of treatment. DBT skills training groups should be used with borderline clients in conjunction with individual psychotherapy. DBT groups validate the client's behavior "as it is in the moment," confront resistance, and emphasize "the therapeutic relationship as essential to treatment" while teaching clients skills necessary to change (pp. 5–6).

For those interested in learning more about treating individuals with borderline personality disorders from an object-relations perspective, see Clarkin et al. (2006). There is an excellent discussion of working with people with borderline and narcissistic disorders in psychodynamic therapy groups in Rutan et al. (2014).

Narcissistic Personality Children who lack the opportunity either to differentiate or to idealize others while also taking pride in themselves may later suffer from narcissistic personality disorder. This syndrome is characterized by an exaggerated sense of self-importance and an exploitive attitude toward others, which serves the function of masking a frail self-concept. Such individuals tend to display exhibitionistic behavior. They seek attention and admiration from others, and they tend toward extreme self-absorption. Narcissism may also present itself as very low self-esteem and an enhanced readiness to idealize others (Gabbard, 2000).

Kernberg (1975) characterizes people with narcissistic dynamics as focusing on themselves in their interactions with others, having a great need to be admired, possessing shallow affect, and being exploitive and at times establishing parasitic relationships with others. He writes that individuals who are narcissistically oriented have a shallow emotional life, enjoy little other than tributes received from others, and tend to disregard those from whom they expect few narcissistic pleasures.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Kohut (1971) characterizes narcissistically oriented people as being highly threatened in maintaining their self-esteem and as having feelings of emptiness and deadness. These individuals are typically searching for someone who will serve as an object to feed the famished self. Kohut uses the term *selfobject* to refer to a person who is used to foster the narcissist's self-esteem and sense of well-being. These clients look for people whom they can admire for their power because they see themselves as worthwhile only if they are associated with such selfobjects. Yet their inner void cannot be filled, so their search for confirmation by others is never-ending. Because of their impoverished sense of self and their unclear boundaries between self and others, they have difficulty differentiating between their own thoughts and feelings and those of the selfobject.

Implications for Group Work Yalom and Leszcz (2020) discuss the problems that arise when individuals with narcissistic dynamics enter group therapy. They typically have difficulty sharing group time, understanding and empathizing with others, being concerned about the feelings of others, and forming relationships with other members. These clients have a constant need for center stage. They often assess a group's usefulness to them in terms of how much time is devoted to them and how much attention they receive from the therapist. They are likely to be bored and impatient while other members are working, and they also tend to divert the discussion back to themselves. These individuals have unrealistic expectations of the other members. They feel that they are special and deserve the group's attention, but they are not willing to give attention to others. According to Yalom and Leszcz, a major task of the therapist is to manage such highly vulnerable members in the group. The leader must focus on the way members who display narcissistic traits relate to others in the group.

In *Interactive Group Therapy*, Earley (2000) provides an informative discussion about the challenges of dealing with members who exhibit borderline and narcissistic tendencies. One of the main problems for group leaders is the potential for countertransference reactions. The intense anger and splitting defenses that people with borderline disorders often display can result in a leader becoming intimidated by the client's anger or by becoming angry in return. The grandiosity, self-centeredness, and demeaning comments of a member displaying narcissistic tendencies can also elicit intense feelings of anger in both the leader and the members. Earley states that members with borderline and narcissistic disorders tend to provoke intense reactions in group therapists. This makes it particularly important for therapists to become aware of their reactions toward certain members, to avoid acting on their feelings as much as possible, and to seek supervision when needed.

Countertransference reactions can be valuable in understanding group members with borderline and narcissistic characteristics. Traits that initially might elicit negative reactions can be treated more therapeutically if the group leader's feelings are understood as resulting from a member trying to communicate something about long-standing styles of interaction. For example, a member's moodiness might be seen as an attempt to communicate the moody nature of some early parental relationship.

Brief Psychodynamic Therapy

Brief psychodynamic therapy (BPT) applies the principles of psychoanalytic theory and therapy to treating selective disorders within an established time limit of generally 10 to 25 sessions. BPT uses key psychoanalytic and psychodynamic concepts such as the enduring impact of psychosexual, psychosocial, and object-relational stages of development; the existence of unconscious processes; reenactment of the client's past emotional issues in relationship to the therapist; the therapeutic alliance; and repetitive behavior. Some key components that define BPT include rapid use of interventions, active therapist stance, formulation of a focus of therapy, establishing specific therapy goals, and an intentional use of time limitations (Farber, 2020).

BPT tends to emphasize a client's strengths and resources in dealing with real-life issues. Levenson (2017) notes that a major modification of the psychoanalytic technique is the emphasis on the here-and-now of the client's life rather than exploring the there-and-then of childhood. BPT "is an *integrative* short-term approach that interweaves major principles of time-sensitive clinical work" (p. 13). The brief psychodynamic therapist tends to think psychodynamically but is open to using a variety of intervention strategies. Levenson reports that recent developments in BPT indicate an increased emphasis on experiential

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

psychotherapeutic processes, a practical slant, and theoretical and technical integration of concepts and techniques outside the psychoanalytic domain.

Short-term psychodynamic therapies emphasize increased therapist activity within a limited, central focus. Therapists make the most of each session, and a high degree of client participation is expected (Hoyt, 2011). The aim of BPT is not to bring about a cure but to foster changes in behavior, thinking, and feeling; it provides an opportunity to begin the process of change that will continue long after therapy has ended. To accomplish the therapeutic aims of BPT, the therapist assumes an active stance and directs the therapy process in a time-efficient manner. The therapist directing the BPT process presupposes a strong therapeutic alliance (Farber, 2020).

Rutan et al. (2014) point out that there has been increased emphasis on shorter, more cost-effective group treatments and predict that pressure to provide group treatment as effectively and inexpensively as possible will continue. According to Levenson (2017), most people, regardless of their cultural background, prefer brief approaches to therapy. However, Levenson acknowledges that BPT is not suited for all clients and all therapists. For example, this approach is generally not suited for individuals with severe characterological disorders or for those with severe depression. Some therapists are not well suited to the interactive, directive, and self-disclosing strategies of BPT. Hoyt (2011) suggests that this approach requires a reasonably functional and psychologically minded client who has good contact with reality and has the ability to tolerate painful emotional material. Although time-limited groups are not the best choice for all people, these groups offer a viable treatment alternative for those who do not want to commit themselves to an open-ended, longer-term group.

In time-limited groups, members must formulate clear and precise treatment goals that are directly related to the organizing group theme. In these groups, the leader assumes a more active role and offers earlier interventions than would be typical in a long-term psychodynamic group. Here-and-now behaviors and interactions are given more attention, and in some very brief groups the therapist may focus exclusively on here-and-now interactions. The working-through process of past conflicts is unlikely to be pursued in these groups. According to Rutan et al. (2014), one advantage of these groups is knowing that a time limit exists; this keeps members focused on addressing specific personal problems. One disadvantage is that deeper conflicts or underlying problems remain untouched; members concentrate on more superficial levels of understanding.

Analytically oriented therapists tend to be skeptical of "quick fix" techniques and simplistic solutions to complex psychodynamic problems. However, many psychoanalytically oriented group therapists support the move to the use of briefer therapy, especially when this is indicated by the client's needs rather than arbitrarily set by third-party payers. Levenson (2017) believes brief therapy groups can be very rewarding because "the work combines an optimistic, pragmatic, results-oriented attitude with the experience of deep emotional commitment" (p. 117). For a more comprehensive discussion of brief dynamic therapy, I recommend Levenson (2017).

Group Theories in Action: A Psychodynamic Application*

Early life situations that continue to have an impact on an individual can be re-created in a psychodynamic group. Feelings of attraction, anger, competition, avoidance, aggression, or compassion may be similar to feelings members experienced toward significant people in their past. Members will most likely find symbolic mothers, fathers, siblings, relatives, and life partners in their group. These transferences within the group and the intense feelings that often characterize them are fruitful avenues to identify and explore in a psychodynamic group. Members in the video group illustrate how conflicts from the past may be influencing them today.

I open the session by asking members to reflect on who in the group is standing out for them. To follow up, I ask the members to briefly say something about what they are noticing about these group members.

- Galo mentions that he sees Randy as a father figure. "I never had a father in my life, and you have attributes that I would have wanted in a father."

*The group session discussed here is based on the psychodynamic group work segment in the video *Group Theories in Action*, which is included in the Online Student Resources.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Kellie notices traits in Jeff that remind her of her husband. "You joke a lot instead of getting on an emotional level. That annoys me when my husband deflects by joking."
- Lupe lets us know that her father died when she was 4 years old, and she often seeks approval from certain men. "I hesitate with you, Jerry, because I want your approval. I tend to monitor myself around you."
- Randy describes some issues he had with his mother as he was growing up. "I so often felt on edge around my mother. I was scared to approach my mother because she was so unpredictable. I am aware that I am cautious around women in this group."
- Melissa acknowledges that as a little girl her mother told her that she should be quiet and be invisible. "The message I got as a little girl was to be a fly on the wall. I felt *less than* as a child. A voice in my head kept telling me that I was not enough, that I am less than, and that I have to work twice as hard as others just to keep up."
- Julius identifies people in his family and life in the group. "Each person in this group represents someone in my family."
- Kellie reports that she struggles to feel adequate around some members in the group. "The advice I got from my parents is that I have to be twice as good as others to show up at the table. My past is here, right now. I want to be seen and heard."

After the members complete the checking in process, both Melissa and Kellie indicate that they would like to claim some time to talk about what is emerging for them. Kellie and Melissa seem to share a common theme, so I ask them to talk about the ways that they feel they are not enough and how they have to overachieve just to be average. Both mention having heard the message of needing to be twice as good as others, and they talk to each other about all of the ways they strive to be twice as good so they will feel they are enough.

Kellie: When you spoke, Melissa, you reminded me of a younger self. I often have kept myself submerged because of the belief that I do not have the right to express myself. A mantra I often hear is I must do more, and I am tired of always feeling I have to do more and more.

Melissa: I am tired of remaining invisible. I want to be visible. I don't want to be the fly on the wall, but a bee that is buzzing around.

This interchange between Kellie and Melissa continues for a time.

Members are often triggered by one another, and I encourage other members to express how they are being affected. A productive line to follow is to link themes and ask members to talk in more depth about how others in the group are serving as a catalyst.

Applying the Psychoanalytic Approach to Group Work in Schools

The developmental perspective described earlier in this chapter is useful for group counselors working in schools. Group work with young children is enhanced by the counselor's understanding of the developmental needs and tasks related to themes of industry versus inferiority. Adolescent groups function better if the counselor understands core struggles around identity versus identity confusion. Groups can be structured to assist the members in learning age-appropriate skills to enhance daily living. The development of the ego functions can be facilitated by conceptualizing and structuring a remedial counseling group as a supportive surrogate family.

The psychoanalytic model provides a conceptual framework for understanding a child's or an adolescent's current problems. Although the use of psychoanalytic techniques is generally beyond the scope of group counseling in the school setting, understanding how past events may continue to have a present influence on the problems can reframe the school counselor's approach. A group leader can be aware of factors such as resistance, transference, anxiety, and the functioning of ego-defense mechanisms. This awareness will add some depth to the interventions the group leader makes, even though the leader does not encourage excursions into past trauma or unconscious conflicts. Understanding these psychoanalytic concepts affords group counselors with a way to develop empathy and to work compassionately with here-and-now problems of children and adolescents.

Sheila Zaretsky (2009), a director and faculty member of the Academy of Clinical and Applied

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Psychoanalysis, drew from psychoanalytic theory and applied psychoanalytic techniques in her work with a group of recently immigrated Chinese high school students who wished to improve their spoken English. The students in this group displayed a host of resistances to being emotionally available, and Zaretsky worked through this using psychoanalytic group techniques. By the end of the school year, these students were able to discuss a wide range of meaningful concerns in English. Zaretsky concludes: "I am convinced that psychoanalytic theory and technique are an invaluable resource for teachers. It is my hope that universities and training institutes will create opportunities to offer those in the field of education our treasure. It is my mission to continue to do so" (p. 355).

Applying the Psychoanalytic Approach With Multicultural Populations

When considering whether a given theory is appropriate for working with diverse client populations in a group setting, one key criterion is the consistency between the concepts and techniques of the theory and the cultural values of the group members. Consider how well the underlying assumptions and key concepts mesh with the cultural values of diverse client groups. Although the basic concepts of psychoanalytic theory can be applied to understanding people from diverse cultures, the psychoanalytically oriented group therapist must also consider those instances when specific psychotherapeutic techniques may not fit with a client's cultural background. For instance, the psychoanalytic approach encourages the free expression of emotion, which may not be a good fit for members from cultures that value restraint of emotional expression. People from certain cultures may expect therapists to assume an active and directive role, providing more structure than the psychoanalytic approach entails (Wolitzky, 2020). Stricker and Gold (2019) write about assimilative psychodynamic psychotherapy, which blends psychodynamic ideas with concepts and techniques from several therapeutic orientations. They contend that assimilative psychodynamic psychotherapy is well-suited to address issues of diversity, if psychodynamic therapists respond to clients in a flexible and empathic way.

Many cultural groups place a high priority on family history. A review of a client's past and of how this past is having an important bearing on current functioning may be appropriate as a conceptual framework. Working in symbolic ways can also be powerful, especially with clients who are reluctant to talk about their personal problems. For example, there is value in using pictures of the family at different periods of the client's childhood. The leader might say: "Select a picture that has particular meaning for you. Tell me what you remember during these times. As you look at the picture, what thoughts and feelings come to you?" Once group members begin talking to one another about their memories based on these pictures, they are likely to be more open in dealing with emotional material.

Practitioners can conceptualize the struggles of their clients from an analytic perspective, but it is critical that they adopt a stance of flexibility. Group counselors need to exercise vigilance lest they misuse their power by turning the group into a forum for pushing clients to adjust by conforming to the dominant cultural values at the expense of losing their own worldviews and cultural identities. Group practitioners also need to be aware of their own potential sources of bias. The concept of countertransference can be expanded to include unacknowledged bias and prejudices that may be conveyed unintentionally through the techniques used by group therapists.

Evaluation of the Psychoanalytic Approach to Groups

Contributions and Strengths of the Approach

There is much in psychoanalytic theory that has great value for group work. All of the theoretical orientations presented in Part Two have some relationship to the psychoanalytic approach, even if in some cases the theory is a reaction against the basic ideas of this foundational theory. The analytic model provides a conceptual framework for understanding an individual's history, and in this regard group practitioners

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

can learn to *think* psychoanalytically even if they do not *practice* psychoanalytically. Although some psychoanalytic techniques may have limited utility for the group counselor in some settings, many analytic concepts help explain the dynamics operating both in individuals and in the group as a whole.

I am convinced that it is important to consider the past to fully understand present behavior. Many of the conflicts brought to a group are rooted in early childhood experiences. I am not advocating for a preoccupation with the past and excessively dwelling on it, but I believe ignoring the influence of the past can lead to superficial group work. Understanding this influence gives people more control over their present behavior.

A psychoanalytic concept I find of particular importance is resistance. Even when members are in a group by their own choice, I observe reluctance on the part of members, especially during the early development of the group. These reluctant and guarded behaviors are manifestations of various fears that are likely to interfere with the progress of a group unless they are dealt with from the beginning. In fact, I typically ask members to share with the group the ways in which they expect their behavior patterns to interfere with their group work. Even though resistance, or reluctance, is typically unconscious, group members are often surprisingly revealing. Some members seem to know quite well that they may sabotage their best efforts and block change by intellectualizing, by being overly nurturing or overly critical with fellow members, or by convincing themselves that their problems are not as pressing as the problems of others in the group. If members can recognize their avoidant behaviors when they occur, they have a chance to change them. Some of the more subtle forms of defense may become evident over time, such as displacing feelings and projecting.

The psychoanalytic concept of anxiety and the ego-defense mechanisms that emerge as a way to cope with this anxiety are most useful for group practitioners. Although in some groups the leader may not interpret and work through these defensive structures, it is essential to learn to respect defenses and to recognize how they develop and how they manifest themselves in group interactions. Dealing with the defenses against anxiety provides a useful framework for intense group work. Members have the opportunity to challenge some of their defensive strategies, and in the process of learning how to communicate in nondefensive ways, they can also learn new ways of responding.

Transference and countertransference have significant implications for group therapy. Although not all feelings between members and the leader are the result of these processes, a leader must be able to understand their value and role. I find the analytic concept of projection quite useful in exploring certain feelings within the group. Projections onto the group therapist and onto other members are valuable clues to unresolved conflicts within the person that can be productively worked through in the group.

Modifications of Classical Analytic Practice

An approach that integrates Freud's psychosexual stages of development with Erikson's psychosocial stages is, in my view, most useful for understanding key themes in the development of personality. Working solely on an insight level will not result in changes; it is essential to explore sociocultural factors as they pertain to the struggles of individuals at the various phases of their development. Unless group practitioners have a good grasp of the major tasks and crises of each stage, they have little basis for determining whether developmental patterns are normal or abnormal. Also, a synthesis of Freud's and Erikson's theories offers a general framework for recognizing conflicts that participants often explore in groups.

Object-relations theories, self psychology, and relational psychoanalysis offer valuable conceptions for group therapists. There have been a number of breakthroughs in working with borderline and narcissistic dynamics in group therapy, and the group offers some unique advantages over the one-to-one relationship in working with people manifesting borderline personality characteristics.

Many practitioners who were trained in classical psychoanalysis have modified analytic concepts and techniques to fit group situations. I have encountered a number of therapists who think in psychoanalytic terms but use techniques drawn from other therapeutic models. Many practitioners work with psychodynamic concepts such as the unconscious, defenses, resistances, transference, and the significance of the past. Some analytically oriented group therapists

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

demonstrate an openness toward integrating various methods.

Limitations of the Approach

The psychoanalytic approach has been accused of failing to adequately address the social, cultural, and political factors that result in an individual's problems. Psychoanalytic therapy is less concerned with short-term problem solving than it is with long-term personality reconstruction. In his critique of long-term psychodynamic therapy, Strupp (1992) acknowledges that this approach will clearly remain a luxury for most people. Low-income clients generally do not have the time, resources, or inclination to begin and maintain the extended and expensive journey of psychoanalytic self-exploration. Instead, they are likely to be motivated more by the need to have psychological security and provide for their family. This is not to imply that all approaches to psychotherapy are inappropriate for people of limited means. Smith (2005) contends that psychotherapists' willingness and ability to work with poor people is compromised by unexamined classist attitudes and that these attitudes constitute a significant obstacle for practitioners' success in working with the poor. Smith seems to be making a case for alternative therapeutic models such as psychoeducation, counseling, preventive psychology, and community psychology rather than traditional psychotherapy for the poor.

Self-Reflection and Discussion Questions

1. A basic assumption underlying psychodynamic group therapy is the notion that group members, through their interactions within the group, re-create their social situation so that the group becomes a microcosm of their everyday life. To what degree do you agree or disagree with this premise?
2. Psychoanalytic group therapists pay particular attention to early childhood experiences and the past as crucial determinants of present behavior. Traditional analytic group therapy focuses on the historical basis of present behavior. What are your thoughts about this emphasis? How can you apply this focus when conducting a group?
3. Multiple transferences entail a process whereby members develop intense feelings for certain others in a group; a member may "see" in others some significant figure in the member's present life. Multiple transferences enable members to explore the parallels between their past and present experience and to acquire a new understanding of their dynamics. Would you find it useful for group members to identify and explore potential transferences toward other members and the group leader?
4. What kind of group member would you find most challenging? What might this say about the potential for countertransference on your part? How would you work with a client who had negative feelings toward you, especially if you believed these feelings were inappropriate and a function of the client's transference?
5. What areas in your life could be manifestations of countertransference? How can you identify your countertransference reactions? How can you best manage your countertransference as a group therapist?

Where to Go From Here

If you would like to learn more about psychoanalytic groups, you would do well to join the American Group Psychotherapy Association (AGPA). Membership includes a subscription to an excellent journal, the *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy*, which is published four times a year. The journal contains a variety of articles dealing with both the theory and practice of group therapy, and many of the articles relate to psychoanalytic groups. Each year in February the AGPA sponsors a 5-day meeting that features a variety

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

of institutes, seminars, open sessions, and workshops. Although psychodynamic groups are featured, other group orientations are offered as well. Many of these full-day and half-day workshops are directed toward issues of interest to psychodynamic practitioners. The AGPA has a student-member category. For further information about journal subscriptions and membership requirements contact:

American Group Psychotherapy Association, Inc.
25 East 21st Street, 6th Floor
New York, NY 10010
Telephone: (212) 477-2677 or Toll Free: (877) 668-2472
Fax: (212) 979-6627
Email: memberservices@agpa.org
Website: www.agpa.org

Recommended Supplementary Readings

Psychodynamic Group Psychotherapy (Rutan et al., 2014) presents a comprehensive discussion of various facets of psychodynamic group therapy. This book addresses topics such as the stages of group development, the role of the group therapist, therapeutic factors accounting for change, working with difficult groups and difficult group members, and time-limited psychodynamic groups. If you were to select a single source on the psychodynamic approach to group therapy, I recommend this book.

Brief Dynamic Therapy (Levenson, 2017) describes a model of psychodynamic therapy that fits the reality of time-limited therapy and outlines the steps toward clinical work that is focused and deep. The author clearly explains how psychoanalytic concepts and techniques can be modified to suit the needs of many clients who cannot participate in long-term therapy.

References and Suggested Readings

American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.).

Aviv, A. (2010). Where intersubjectivity and group analysis meet. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 60*(1), 91–109.

Barber, J. P., Muran, J. C., McCarthy, K. S., & Keefe, J. R. (2013). Research on dynamic therapies. In M. J. Lambert (Ed.), *Bergin and Garfield's handbook of psychotherapy and behavior change* (6th ed., pp. 443–494). Wiley.

Bemak, F., & Epp, L. (2001) Countertransference in the development of graduate student group counselors: Recommendations for training. *Journal for Specialists in Group Work, 26*(4), 305–318.

*Brabender, V. (2020). Group psychotherapies. In S. B. Messer & N. J. Kaslow (Eds.), *Essential psychotherapies: Theory and practice* (4th ed., pp. 369–404). Guilford Press.

Clarkin, J., Yeomans, F., & Kernberg, O. (2006). *Psychotherapy for borderline personality: Focusing on object relations.* American Psychiatric Press.

*Comas-Diaz, L. (2019). Multicultural theories of psychotherapy. In D. Wedding & R. J. Corsini (Eds.), *Current psychotherapies* (11th ed., pp. 561–598). Cengage Learning.

Video

Watch Gerald Corey's *Group Theories in Action*, video via the Cengage eBook. The group session discussed in this chapter is based on an integrative approach to group counseling.

Books and articles marked with an asterisk (*) are suggested for further study.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

*Curtis, R. C. (2020). Relational psychoanalytic psychodynamic psychotherapy. In S. B. Messer & N. J. Kaslow (Eds.), *Essential psychotherapies: Theory and practice* (4th ed., pp. 71–108). Guilford Press.

Durkin, H. (1964). *The group in depth.* International Universities Press.

Earley, J. (2000). *Interactive group therapy: Integrating interpersonal, action-oriented, and psychodynamic approaches.* Taylor & Francis.

Erikson, E. H. (1963). *Childhood and society* (2nd ed.). Norton.

Erikson, E. H. (1968). *Identity: Youth and crisis.* Norton.

Erikson, E. H. (1982). *The life cycle completed.* Norton.

*Farber, E. W. (2020). Interpersonal psychotherapy and brief psychodynamic therapies. In S. B. Messer & N. J. Kaslow (Eds.), *Essential psychotherapies: Theory and practice* (4th ed., pp. 407–442). Guilford Press.

Flores, P. J. (2008). Attachment theory and group psychotherapy. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 58*(1), 127–132.

Foulkes, S. H. (1965). *Therapeutic group analysis.* International Universities Press.

Freud, A. (1937). *The ego and the mechanisms of defense.* Hogarth Press.

Freud, S. (1955). *The interpretation of dreams.* Basic Books.

Gabbard, G. O. (2000). *Psychodynamic psychiatry in clinical practice* (3rd ed.). American Psychiatric Press.

Hayes, J. A. (2004). Therapist know thyself: Recent research on countertransference. *Psychotherapy Bulletin, 39*(4), 6–12.

*Hayes, J. A., Gelso, C. J., Kivlighan, M., & Goldberg, S. B. (2019). Managing countertransference. In J. C. Norcross & M. J. Lambert (Eds.), *Psychotherapy relationships that work: Evidence-based therapist contributions* (3rd ed., Vol. 1, pp. 522–548). Oxford University Press.

Henderson, D. A., & Gladding, S. T. (2004). Group counseling with older adults. In J. L. DeLucia-Waack, D. Gerrity, C. R. Kalodner, & M. T. Riva (Eds.), *Handbook of group counseling and psychotherapy* (pp. 469–478). Sage.

Hoyt, M. F. (2011). Brief psychotherapies. In S. B. Messer & A. S. Gurman (Eds.), *Essential psychotherapies: Theory and practice* (3rd ed., pp. 387–425). Guilford Press.

Kauff, P. F. (2009). Transference in combined individual and group psychotherapy. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 59*(1), 29–46.

Kernberg, O. F. (1975). *Borderline conditions and pathological narcissism.* Aronson.

Kernberg, O. F. (1976). *Object-relations theory and clinical psychoanalysis.* Aronson.

Kernberg, O. F. (1997). Convergences and divergences in contemporary psychoanalytic technique and psychoanalytic psychotherapy. In J. K. Zeig (Ed.), *The evolution of psychotherapy: The third conference* (pp. 3–22). Brunner/Mazel.

Kohut, H. (1971). *The analysis of the self.* International Universities Press.

Kohut, H. (1977). *The restoration of the self.* International Universities Press.

Kohut, H. (1984). *How does psychoanalysis cure*? University of Chicago Press.

Kolb, G. E. (1983). The dream in psychoanalytic group therapy. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 33*(1), 41–52.

*Levenson, H. (2017). *Brief dynamic therapy* (2nd ed.). American Psychological Association.

Linehan, M. M. (1993a). *Cognitive-behavioral treatment of borderline personality disorder.* Guilford Press.

Linehan, M. M. (1993b). *Skills training manual for treating borderline personality disorder.* Guilford Press.

Locke, N. (1961). *Group psychoanalysis: Theory and technique.* University Press.

Mahler, M. S. (1968). *On human symbiosis and the vicissitudes of individuation.* International Universities Press.

Marshall, J. L., & Fitch, T. (2009). Group counseling theories. In *The ACA encyclopedia of counseling* (p. 249). American Counseling Association.

*Masterson, J. F. (1997). The disorders of the self and intimacy: A developmental self and object relations approach. In J. K. Zeig (Ed.), *The evolution of psychotherapy: The third conference* (pp. 37–52). Brunner/Mazel.

*Mullan, H., & Rosenbaum, M. (1978). *Group psychotherapy: Theory and practice* (2nd ed.). Free Press.

Rutan, J. S. (2014). A psychodynamic approach: Commentary on "Consciousness-raising in a gender conflict group." *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 64*(1), 71–75.

*Rutan, J. S., Stone, W. N., & Shay, J. J. (2014). *Psychodynamic group psychotherapy* (5th ed.). Guilford Press.

*Safran, J. D., Kriss, A., & Foley, V. K. (2019). Psychodynamic psychotherapies. In D. Wedding & R. J. Corsini (Eds.), *Current psychotherapies* (11th ed., pp. 21–57). Cengage Learning.

St. Clair, M. (with Wigren, J.). (2004). *Object relations and self psychology: An introduction* (4th ed.). Cengage Learning.

Smith, L. (2005). Psychotherapy, classism, and the poor. *American Psychologist, 60*(7), 687–696.

*Stricker, G., & Gold, J. (2019). Assimilative psychodynamic psychotherapy. In J. C. Norcross & M. R. Goldfried (Eds.), *Handbook of psychotherapy integration* (3rd ed., pp. 207–227). Oxford University Press.

Strupp, H. H. (1992). The future of psychodynamic psychotherapy. *Psychotherapy, 29*(1), 21–27.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

*Tasca, G. A., Mikail, S. F., & Hewitt, P. L. (2021). *Group psychodynamic-interpersonal psychotherapy.* American Psychological Association.

Tuttman, S. (1986). Theoretical and technical elements which characterize the American approaches to psychoanalytic group psychotherapy. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 36*(4), 499–515.

Wolf, A. (1963). The psychoanalysis of groups. In M. Rosenbaum & M. Berger (Eds.), *Group psychotherapy and group function*. Basic Books.

Wolf, A. (1975). Psychoanalysis in groups. In G. M. Gazda (Ed.), *Basic approaches to group psychotherapy and group counseling* (2nd ed.). Charles C Thomas.

Wolf, A. (1983). Psychoanalysis in groups. In H. I. Kaplan & B. J. Sadock (Eds.), *Comprehensive group psychotherapy* (2nd ed.). Williams & Wilkins.

Wolf, A., & Kutash, I. L. (1986). Psychoanalysis in groups. In I. L. Kutash & A. Wolf (Eds.), *Psychotherapist's casebook* (pp. 332–352). Jossey-Bass.

Wolf, A., & Schwartz, E. K. (1962). *Psychoanalysis in groups.* Grune & Stratton.

*Wolitzky, D. L. (2020). Contemporary Freudian psychoanalytic psychotherapy. In S. B. Messer & N. J. Kaslow (Eds.), *Essential psychotherapies: Theory and practice* (4th ed., pp. 35–70). Guilford Press.

*Yalom, I. D., & Leszcz, M. (2020). *The theory and practice of group psychotherapy* (6th ed.). Basic Books.

Zaretsky, S. (2009). The conversation group: Using group psychoanalytic techniques to resolve resistances of recently immigrated Chinese students to learning English in a high school setting. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 59*(3), 335–356.

Zorzella, K. P. M, Muller, R. T., & Classen, C. C. (2014). Trauma group therapy: The role of attachment and therapeutic alliance. *International Journal of Group Psychotherapy, 64*(1), 25–47.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 7

Adlerian Group Counseling

Coauthored by James Robert Bitter and Gerald Corey

Learning Objectives

1. Describe these key concepts of the Adlerian approach: teleology, purposeful and goal-oriented behavior, inferiority and superiority, subjective view of reality, unity of personality, lifestyle, early recollections, family constellation, and encouragement.
2. Explain the meaning of social interest and show how this is a foundational concept of the Adlerian approach.
3. Understand the rationale for group members exploring past experiences.
4. Describe leader characteristics associated with establishing and maintaining cohesive relationships with members.
5. Describe the key objectives for the four stages of the Adlerian group.
6. Explain how members' experiences in their family of origin can have an impact on present-day behavior.
7. Understand the value of sharing early recollections in a group.
8. Identify the key characteristics of Adlerian brief group therapy.
9. Identify the strengths and limitations of Adlerian group therapy from a diversity perspective.
10. Understand the unique contributions of the Adlerian approach to the development of other group counseling approaches.

Introduction

While Freud was developing his system of psychoanalysis, a number of other psychiatrists also interested in the psychodynamic approach were independently studying the human personality. One of these was Alfred Adler. In contrast to Freud's sexual repression theory, Adler (1996a, 1996b) contended that neurosis was the result of

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Alfred Adler

Library of Congress Prints and Photographs Division Washington, D.C.[LC-USZ62-72266]

ALFRED ADLER (1870–1937) grew up in a Vienna-family of six boys and two girls. Adler's early childhood was not a happy time. His younger brother died in the bed next to Alfred's. Adler was sickly and very much aware of death. At age 4, he almost died of pneumonia. He heard the doctor tell his father that "Alfred is lost." Adler associated this time with his decision to become a physician.

Adler's early childhood experiences had an impact on the formation of his theory. Adler is an example of a person who shaped his own life as opposed to having it determined by fate. Adler was an average student, yet with determined effort he eventually excelled in school. He went on to study medicine at the University of Vienna, entering private practice as an ophthalmologist, and then shifting to general medicine. He eventually specialized in neurology and psychiatry, and he had a keen interest in incurable childhood diseases.

Adler had a passionate concern for the common person and was outspoken about child-rearing practices, school reforms, and prejudices that resulted in conflict. He spoke and wrote in simple, nontechnical language, and the general population could understand and apply the principles of his approach in a practical way that helped people meet the challenges of daily life. Adler created 32 child guidance clinics in the Vienna public schools and began training teachers, social workers, physicians, and other professionals. He pioneered the practice of teaching professionals through live demonstrations with parents and children before large audiences, now called "open-forum" family counseling (Christensen, 2004). The clinics he founded grew in number and in popularity, and he was indefatigable in lecturing and demonstrating his work.

Although Adler had an overcrowded work schedule most of his professional life, he still took some time to sing, enjoy music, and be with friends. In the mid-1920s he began lecturing in the United States, and he later made frequent visits and tours. He ignored the warning of his friends to slow down, and on May 28, 1937, while taking a walk before a scheduled lecture in Aberdeen, Scotland, Adler collapsed and died of heart failure.

a person's retreat from the required tasks in life and that the symptoms served a safeguarding function to protect the individual from perceived failure. If people are depressed, we might ask, "What are they avoiding?" Is this person facing a challenge at work or with friendships, or is there conflict in an intimate relationship? We often know the purpose of a symptom by how the person *uses* it. Adler focused on the struggle of individuals to become all that they might be. Adler's growth model was the foundation for his *psychology of use.* We are born with certain building blocks (heredity and environment); what we do with them determines the kind of person we become.

Adler was a politically and socially oriented psychiatrist who showed great concern for the common person. Indeed, many of his early clients were working-class people who struggled to make a living, raise and educate their children, and make a difference in society. He was keenly aware of how cultural and social factors influenced one's life, and he is considered an early feminist by some. Part of Adler's mission was to bring psychological understanding to the general population and to translate psychological concepts into practical methods for helping a varied population meet the challenges of everyday life.

Alfred Adler made significant contributions to contemporary therapeutic practice. Adler believed in the social nature of human beings, and he was interested in working with clients in a group context. Adler was the first to introduce these concepts: the

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

role that thinking plays in feelings and behavior; the impact of early family experiences and birth order on current behavior; the importance of designing specific action plans; establishing egalitarian and collaborative counseling relationships; an assessment of lifestyle and social behavior as they influence personality development; the value of skills training; and an educational model of therapy (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017).

To fully appreciate the development of the practice of Adlerian psychology, we must recognize the contributions of Rudolf Dreikurs, who was largely responsible for extending and popularizing Adler's work and transplanting Adler's ideas to the United States. Dreikurs did a great deal to translate Adlerian principles into the practice of group psychotherapy, and he used group psychotherapy in his private practice for more than 40 years (Dreikurs, 1960, 1967, 1997). In fact, Dreikurs may have been the first person ever to use group psychotherapy in private practice (Terner & Pew, 1978). Dreikurs inadvertently scheduled more than one client at the same time, and that session convinced him of the therapeutic value of addressing common concerns through the group process.

Adlerian interventions have been widely applied to diverse client populations of all ages in many different settings, particularly in schools and with parents. Adlerian group therapy is an integration of key concepts of Adlerian psychology with socially constructed, systemic, and brief approaches based on the holistic model developed by Dreikurs (Sonstegard & Bitter, 2004).

Key Concepts

Overview of the Adlerian View of the Person

Adler's socioteleological approach provides an ideal foundation for group work (Sonstegard & Bitter, 2004). This approach assumes that people are primarily motivated by social forces and are striving to achieve certain goals. Adler's view is that we create for ourselves an idiosyncratic view of self, life, and others from which we then create goals, both short- and long-term, that in turn motivate our behavior and influence our development. It is especially our long-term goals, which Adler called *life goals*, that guide our movement toward an envisioned completion or self-actualization—and sometimes even toward perfection. The search for significance is related to our basic feelings of inferiority with regard to others, and these feelings motivate us to strive toward ever-greater mastery, superiority, power, and, ultimately, perfection.

Inferiority feelings can be the wellspring of creativity; and perfection, though never reached, is the ultimate goal of life. Because most of us do not reach completion or perfection, our goals are always fictions—pictures of personal fulfillment that we adopt "as if" they were true.

Adler's system stresses self-determination and consciousness (rather than the unconscious posited by Freud) as the center of personality. We are not the victims of fate but are creative, active, choice-making, and meaning-making beings whose every action has purpose and is directed toward some goal. Movement toward goals and our anticipation of the future are far more important than what has happened to us in the past. Behavior can be understood only if one takes a holistic approach and looks at all actions from the perspective of the individual's chosen *style of living* (Adler, 1927).

Each of us has a unique style of life, which starts to develop in early childhood to compensate for and overcome some perceived inferiority. Our life goals unify our personality, order our experiences of life, and guide interactions with others. This, then, is our **style of living**: our views about ourselves, others, and the world, and the distinctive behaviors we use to pursue our goals.

The Adlerian approach is a growth model; our destiny is never fixed because we are always in the process of becoming. Adlerians reject the idea that some individuals are psychologically "sick" and in need of a "cure." People are viewed as discouraged rather than sick (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017). Adlerians view their work as primarily an educational process—helping people learn better ways to meet the challenges of life tasks, providing direction, helping people change their mistaken notions, and offering encouragement to those who are discouraged.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

There are some striking commonalities between the key concepts of Adlerian psychology and positive psychology. The focus on strengths, well-being, and encouragement has led some to cite Adler as one of the early proponents of positive psychology (Maniacci & Sackett-Maniacci, 2019).

Holism

The Adlerian approach, also known as **Individual Psychology**, reflects his belief in the uniqueness and unity of the individual. Based on a holistic view of the person, Adler used the word *individual* to describe an indivisible unit. The focus is on understanding whole persons within their socially embedded contexts of family, school, work, and community. Individuals are always more than the sum of their parts. Thoughts, feelings, beliefs, behavioral patterns, traits and characteristics, convictions, attitudes, and personal creativity are all expressions of the uniqueness of the person and of the person's movement and style of living.

One implication of this holistic view is that people cannot be understood without looking at their social context. Adler is, perhaps, the first systems therapist because he focused more attention on interpersonal factors than on intrapersonal ones. Emphasis is placed on the client's experiences in the family of origin, which is considered the first group anyone joins. The therapist is oriented toward understanding the social situation of individuals and their attitudes about it. Viewing people in relation to social systems is basic to group and family therapy.

Adler's theory is, in essence, a field theory of personality that deals with how individuals attempt to find their place within the social environment. This makes a cultural understanding of group participants especially important. Adler saw behavior as inherently social; therefore, behavior is understandable only with reference to its function within the social context in which the behavior occurs. The group reflects how members behave in other real-life social situations. Members often seek the same position in a group that they held in their family constellation. For example, if a man assumed the role of caretaker for all of his siblings, he might put most of his energy into taking care of others in the group, neglecting to ask for time for himself. Again, this is especially true if the man's cultural heritage specifies the caregiver role for him, as is true in many cultures.

Furthermore, it is in a group that people often manifest their faulty beliefs with ineffective ways of meeting the tasks of life (Carlson et al., 2006). Group counseling is a natural setting for addressing relationships because members can experiment with interactions that result in transforming the mistaken goals and notions they are pursuing (Sonstegard & Bitter, 2004).

Teleology

Individual Psychology contends that we can be understood best by looking at where we are going and what we are striving to accomplish. According to Adler, all forms of life are characterized by a trend toward growth and expansion. He rejected Freud's causal determinism in favor of **teleology**, which studies the goals and purposes of human behavior. Adlerians relate the past to the present only to indicate the continuity in a maladaptive style of living. In contrast to the Freudian psychoanalytic emphasis on the past, Adlerians are more interested in the future. The past, present, and future are dynamically interrelated; our behavioral decisions are based on the conclusions we have made from what we have experienced in the past, which we use to then provide a framework for understanding our present situation, and for choosing, albeit unconsciously, the goals toward which we move. In short, Adlerians look for continuity or a pattern in a client's life, but the emphasis is always on the goal-directed nature of behavior. People are constantly striving to reach self-declared goals that they believe will bring them happiness (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017; Rasmussen, 2010), and the individual's movement through life is unified and directed by the person's self-selected life goal.

Because personality growth is guided by a fictional life goal, each part of a person's movement can be understood as part of that goal. Life throws challenges at people, and the major ones—getting along with others, engaging in meaningful activities, and finding a life partner—often ask individuals to meet a life task for which they are not prepared. People may find a way to retreat from that task to avoid failure or to preserve some sense of self-worth.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In group settings, Sonstegard and Bitter (2004) suggest using a version of what Adler called "The Question": *What would you be doing or how would your life be different if you did not have the problem you are reporting?* In a parenting group run by Jim Bitter, a parent announced that 93% percent of her life with her child was going fine; she was there to work on the other 7% percent. Such a statement suggests the goal of perfectionism: this is a person who likes to get things—perhaps everything—*just right*. This group member complained that her son, Timmy, was always interrupting her. When the counselor asked her The Question, she replied that among other things she would go back to playing her violin:

> "Tell me about playing the violin. Do you enjoy it?"
>
> "Well, I haven't played in a long time, maybe twelve years really. When I was in college, I was a concert violinist: first chair." (p. 71)

Here is a person whose style of living seeks perfection, seeks to be first or the best. It is not a large leap to guess that she is an oldest child and that doing things precisely and with excellence has become a self-requirement. Perhaps she was the best violinist at her college, but she has not practiced in a long, long time. She is no longer first chair, and Timmy is a blessing in her life, not just because he is her child but also because he interrupts her and keeps her from facing the fact that perfection—at least with the violin—has been lost.

Phenomenology

Adler was perhaps the first major theorist to stress a **phenomenological orientation** toward therapy that pays attention to the subjective fashion through which people perceive their world. This personal perspective includes the individual's views, beliefs, perceptions, and conclusions. From the Adlerian perspective, objective reality is less important than how we interpret reality and the meanings we attach to what we experience. Adlerians strive to understand the world from the client's vantage point and the unique ways that a client perceives the world (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017). Humans are creative beings who decide on their actions based on their subjective perceptions. In the group, members can test their subjective experience, and others in the group may validate or disagree with this worldview.

The subjective orientation is often most available in the early stages of the group when members begin to tell the story of what brings them to therapy. It is during this time that Adlerians will rely on empathy and active listening as well as using skills that help to develop each person's subjective views. One such skill is allowing the person's statements to inform the counselor's "next most interesting question": What did the group member say that the counselor would like to know more about? Asking the next most interesting question keeps the leader focused on the development of the person's place in life and ultimately in the group.

> **Member (M):** I don't have much luck with men. I always seem to pick guys who are not very good for me. They start out loving, but then after a while, I am doing all the giving and not getting much back.
>
> **Counselor (C):** So you think that you have a faulty picking mechanism.
>
> **M:** Yes! Yes, I do. I think that I look all around and find the one guy that is worst for me.
>
> **C:** What would happen if you found a really good one? Would you have to spend all your time watching him, waiting for him to go bad?
>
> **M:** [pause] I probably would.
>
> **C:** That's an awful lot of work to be in a joyful relationship.
>
> **M:** Yes, so it is.
>
> **C:** Do you ever think to ask what's the matter with these men that they can't sustain a relationship with a wonderful person?
>
> **M:** No. I don't really think that way. I am pretty sure I am not all that wonderful.
>
> **C:** Well, you've been with these group members for almost a month, once a week. Would you like to hear what they think of you?

Creativity and Choice

From the Adlerian perspective, humans are not defined solely by heredity and environment; rather, these are the foundations, or building blocks, of life.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The **socioteleological approach** is grounded on the notion that we are self-determining beings—we have the capacity to influence and create events. We express ourselves in diverse ways that are consistent with our past experiences, present attitudes, and anticipations about the future (Sonstegard & Bitter, 2004). Adler believed that what we are born with is not as crucial as the use we make of our natural endowment. Adlerians do recognize, however, that biological and environmental conditions limit our capacity to choose and to create. Although Adlerians reject the deterministic stance of Freud, they do not go to the other extreme by maintaining that individuals can become whatever they want to be. This approach is based on the premise that within a framework of limitations a wide range of choices is open to us.

Adlerians base their practice on the assumption that people are creative, active, and self-determining. Adlerians have developed a style of challenging clients to become aware of the ways in which they were active participants in situations they perceived as problematic. Sonstegard and Bitter (2004) report a case in which an adolescent felt his parents were always antagonizing him. After noting that the boy often provoked his parents, Sonstegard challenged Erv:

> Erv, . . . you are quite a bright boy, but you have some doubts about yourself. You are not sure you are as good as you want to be. So you go about reassuring yourself by proving others wrong. You feel so much better by comparison. What do you think about that? (p. 47)

By exploring this circular pattern of causality, and Erv's part in it, Erv had an opportunity to decide whether he wanted to break that pattern.

Dreikurs's therapy was aimed at showing clients that they could not directly change the behavior of others but that they did have the power to change their own reactions and attitudes toward others. Group settings provide a unique experience because repeated patterns of behavior come alive in the group. Members can then actively work in a group session to create a different outcome. If roles are no longer functional, the group affords an ideal place to learn more creative ways of being in the world.

Community Feeling and Social Interest

Community feeling and social interest, derived from the German word *Gemeinschaftsgefühl*, are fundamental tenets of Individual Psychology. **Community feeling** embodies the feeling of being connected to all of humanity—past, present, and future—and involved in making the world a better place. **Social interest** "is the kind of empathic bonding people feel for each other and the responsible actions and attitudes they take toward one another, a sense of belonging and participating with others for the common good" (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017, p. 43). People who have a developed sense of social interest care as much about the well-being of others as they do about themselves. As an antidote to social isolation and self-absorption, social interest leads to courage, optimism, and a true sense of belongingness. Adler equates social interest with a sense of identification and empathy with others, and ultimately it is the measure of one's mental health.

Individual Psychology rests on a central belief that our happiness and success are largely related to social connectedness. Because we are embedded in a society, we cannot be understood in isolation from that social context. We are primarily motivated by a desire for connection, which leads to a sense of belonging. Only within the group can we actualize our potentialities and develop closer social connections. As social beings, we have a need to be of use to others and to establish meaningful relationships in a community. As socially embedded individuals, our lives and contributions flourish when we experience a sense of belongingness to the community.

Adler (1964) notes that we have strong needs to feel united with others and that only when we do so can we act with courage in facing and dealing with life's problems. He contends that we must successfully master at least three *universal life tasks*. All people need to address these life tasks, regardless of age, gender, time in history, culture, or nationality. These tasks are building friendships (*social task*), establishing intimacy (*love/marriage task*), and contributing to society (*occupational task*). These life tasks are so fundamental to human living that dysfunction in any one of them is often an indicator of a psychological disorder. Each of these tasks requires the development

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

of psychological capacities for *friendship* and *belonging,* for *contribution* and *self-worth,* and for *cooperation* (Bitter, 2006, 2007). Most members have core beliefs surrounding key life tasks such as work, love, self-acceptance, belonging, and friendship. For example, Susan has a core belief that most of her worth as a person hinges on her productivity at work. When she is not working and achieving, she has a difficult time thinking well of herself. Beliefs such as this can be critically examined within the group, and it is possible to eliminate faulty beliefs and replace them with more constructive or useful beliefs.

These key concepts of community feeling and social interest have significant implications for group counseling; the general goals of the group are to increase self-esteem and to develop social interest. The group focuses on discovering the members' mistaken assumptions that keep them from feeling adequate and from being oriented toward and engaged with others. This concept is applied to group counseling by structuring the group so that members can meet some of their needs for affiliation with others. The group setting also provides a context for people to experience social interest; they come to care for the group as a community as well as for individual members in the group. Group members are given opportunities to offer feedback and to support others, which is an example of social interest in action.

Self-absorption and the alienation it produces are the opposite of social interest and are seen as a major problem in contemporary society. One reason people are often referred to group counseling is due to their exaggerated self-concern. It is hoped that one of the outcomes of a group experience will be a growing acceptance of themselves and others, even though all of us are imperfect.

Most Adlerians reject the idea of prescreening in groups because the process is antidemocratic, tends to destroy heterogeneity, and works against accepting different levels of imperfection common in the larger society. Sonstegard and Bitter (2004) assert that, generally, prescreening excludes the very people who could most use a group experience. Individuals who are self-absorbed, disruptive, noncommunicative, and isolated may find solutions to their problems in a group setting. Adlerians believe groups ought to welcome all who want to join and not exclude the people who need it most.

Inferiority/Superiority

From our earliest years, we recognize that we are helpless or less capable than we need to be, which is characterized by feelings of inferiority or of being less than we should be. **Inferiority feelings** are based on our appraisal of deficiency that is subjective, global, and judgmental (Carlson et al., 2006). This sense of inferiority is not a negative force. On the contrary, our basic inferiority is the springboard for our attempts to master our environment. Feelings of inferiority can serve as catalysts, motivating people to make extra efforts to reach their goals. To compensate for feelings of inferiority, we strive for a better position in life (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017). Adler believes that we strive for superiority, moving from a felt minus position in life to a perceived plus position. Inferiority feelings and striving for success are two sides of the same coin, and both are key ingredients of group work. Through this striving we find ways to control the forces in our life rather than being controlled by them. It is useful for members to explore their current strategies for managing their personal feelings of insignificance and inferiority. Members are encouraged to talk about any inferiority feelings and feelings of insignificance they may be experiencing within the group context itself. This can lead to very productive work with members realizing that their assumptions about their personal worth all too often are based on remembered failure experiences. The group experience provides members with an opportunity to see these early experiences in a new light and to put a new ending to a painful story.

Role of the Family

Adlerians place great emphasis on family processes, which play a significant role in the development of the personality during childhood. The climate of relationships among family members is known as the **family atmosphere**. The **family constellation** is the social configuration of the family group, the system of relationships in which self-awareness develops. This system includes and is maintained by the individual, the parents and siblings, and any others living in the household (Powers & Griffith, 2012).

Children incorporate many of the personal characteristics of their parents, and they learn a great deal about life by observing and interacting with their parents

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

(Christensen, 2004). Dreikurs (1967) takes the position, however, that sibling relationships are more influential in personality development than relationships between children and parents. In addition, the meaning that people give to their own position in the family constellation and the positions of their siblings are more important than the actual chronological ages of the siblings. The personality characteristics of each person in the family, the emotional bonds between family members, the size of the family, and the sex of the siblings are all factors in the family constellation. The child's position and role in the family influence later personality development (Powers & Griffith, 2012).

East Tennessee State University professor Graham Disque (personal communication, February 1, 2021) uses family constellation and sculpting as a foundation for group work. Each week a group member is asked to pick participants in the group to play members of the person's family. An early experience, often from an early recollection, is sculpted with the group member placing others in the roles, functions, and emotional-relational stances that the member associates with family members. As the scenes evolve, the group member gets to stand back from the experience and view it with new eyes (adult eyes) and perhaps come to a new understanding to family dynamics.

Powers and Griffith (2012) believe young family members rehearse a way of relating to others that will become a vital part of their style of life. They add that the family is not an encapsulated system apart from the community. Once material is gathered about the client's family constellation, a summary is developed so that interpretations can be made. The summary contains the client's strengths and weaknesses, and it is used in helping clients gain a fuller understanding of the current influence of their family on them. It is also important to take into account the ethnic, religious, social, and economic milieu reported by the client. These factors serve as the material for an individual's self-perception and view of the world, but they are not causal factors.

Style of Life

Our basic concept of self in relation to the world—our personal orientation toward social living—is expressed in a discernible pattern that characterizes our existence. This pattern is called the style of life or the "story of our life." Adler maintained that the goal of success pulls people forward toward mastery and enables them to overcome obstacles. The formative experiences within the family, particularly among siblings, contribute to establishing guidelines for understanding life that eventually make up the style of life. No two people develop exactly the same style of life. In striving for the goal of success, some people develop their intellect, others develop their physical being, and so on.

Striving for goals that are meaningful to us brings unity to the personality; our behavior is influenced by our core beliefs about self, others, and the world (Ansbacher, 1974). Our lifestyle is built on **private logic**, firmly held personal beliefs that we develop in early childhood that may or may not be appropriate later in life (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017). Adler contrasted private logic with common sense, and in this, he was referring to common sense of all of humanity. Private logic often gets in the way of social interest and does not facilitate useful, constructive belonging (Carlson et al., 2006). However, private logic helps explain how all of our behavior fits together, providing consistency to our actions.

Everything we do is related to our fictional life goal. Adlerians refer to the life goal as **fictional finalism**, the imagined central goal that gives direction to behavior and unity to the personality. It is an image of what people would be like if they were perfect, perfectly secure, or complete and fully actualized. Adlerian group counselors work with both the patterns for living and the logic supporting them to facilitate a more socially useful life (Sonstegard & Bitter, 2004).

Although our style of life is initiated during the first 6 years of life, later events can have a profound effect on our development. Adlerians believe that lifestyle undergoes some development throughout life, but for the most part lifestyle remains stable (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017). It is not childhood experiences in themselves that count but our *interpretation* of these events and our subjective view of events. Because we begin to live with these interpretations so early in life, it is easy to make mistakes, which may lead us to develop a faulty orientation based on mistaken notions in our private logic. Although we are not determined by our past, we are significantly influenced by our perceptions and interpretations of past events. By becoming aware of the

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

patterns and continuity of our life—especially of certain mistaken, self-defeating, or self-limiting notions we have developed—we are in a position to modify those faulty assumptions and make basic changes. We can reframe childhood experiences and *consciously* create a new direction in our style of living.

Role and Functions of the Group Leader

Adlerian group leaders promote an egalitarian, person-to-person relationship, which is basic to the Adlerian approach to groups. Group leaders serve as models for the members, who often learn more from what leaders *do* in the group than from what they *say*.

The role of the Adlerian therapist is to help group members become aware of their faulty worldview and to educate them into a healthier view that will result in corresponding changes in feelings and behaviors (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017). A number of specific personal attributes are essential for Adlerian group counselors and are prerequisites for effectively fulfilling their role and function in a group. Some of these characteristics include presence, self-confidence, demonstrating the courage to be imperfect, willingness to take risks, acceptance, caring, willingness to model, collaborative spirit, sense of humor, listening for purposes and motives, encouraging, and a belief in the usefulness of the group process. For optimum results, group leaders need to have a clear sense of their own identity, beliefs, and feelings. They must also be aware of the basic conditions essential for the growth of the group members (Sonstegard & Bitter, 2004).

Adlerian group counselors tend to the group process and create a structure that promotes open interaction, involvement, nonjudgmental acceptance, soft confrontation in the form of inquiry, and commitment. Adlerian group counselors are quite active, especially during the initial group session. They assist members in defining personal goals, conduct psychological assessments of individuals in the group, offer interpretations, and guide group assessment. Adlerians value psychoeducation, and they often incorporate aspects of teaching in group work. The group environment provides a safe milieu in which individuals can learn how to have a voice in life (Carlson et al., 2006).

Stages of the Adlerian Group

Like the psychoanalytic approach to groups, Adlerian group counseling involves the investigation and interpretation of one's early life. As the following discussion indicates, however, there are some fundamental differences between Adlerians and psychoanalysts. Sonstegard and Bitter (2004) outline the four stages of Adlerian group counseling:

Stage 1: Establishing and maintaining cohesive relationships with members

Stage 2: Initiating a psychological investigation emphasizing the motivation in understanding the individual (assessment)

Stage 3: Communicating to the individual an understanding of self (insight)

Stage 4: Seeing new alternatives and making new cognitive and behavioral choices (reorientation)

These are not necessarily discrete linear stages but remain fluid throughout the entire therapy process. Any stage may appear repeatedly during the therapy process (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017). Let's examine each of these stages in more detail.

Stage 1: Establishing and Maintaining Cohesive Relationships With Members

In the initial stage, the emphasis is on establishing a good therapeutic relationship based on cooperation, collaboration, egalitarianism, and mutual respect. By attending to the relationship from the first session, group leaders are laying a foundation for cohesiveness and connection. Establishing and maintaining a collaborative therapeutic relationship at the initial stage of counseling is essential for successful outcomes at other group stages (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017). Group members are encouraged to be active in the process because they are responsible for their own participation in the group. The group situation provides ample opportunity to work on trust issues and to strengthen the relationship between member and leader. Also, by witnessing positive changes in peers, participants can see how well the group works.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The Adlerian therapeutic relationship emphasizes a spirit of mutual respect and mutual engagement between social equals, and a democratic atmosphere prevails. One of the goals of Adlerian group counseling is the development of a sense of agency in members and the ability to express themselves, and the leader often begins by asking group members to divide into dyads and interview each other. In addition to getting to know their partner in general, group members are asked to disclose their birth order and how it was experienced when they were young; what they have learned about friendship and work; and an early memory about something that happened to them one time. By starting in dyads, the group members get to first use their voice in a context (a dyad) that is less threatening than speaking to the whole group. When the dyads return to the group, they each introduce their partner, an initial enactment of social interest in the group setting.

Winning the members' cooperation is essential for effective group counseling. Both the leader and the members work together toward mutually agreed-upon goals. Adlerians believe that counseling, individual or group, progresses only when the therapeutic process focuses on what participants see as personally significant and on areas that they want to explore and change.

One of the first exercises in group cooperation is the development of *group agreements*. Other models may refer to group rules or ground rules, but Adlerians believe that such rules reflect an autocratic approach to therapy. Instead, members are asked to identify the agreements they need to have with each other in order to feel safe and to facilitate a sense of belonging and growth. Attending to group agreements is an ongoing task in group process, and establishing these agreements early in the process enables group members to take charge of their own experiences.

Stage 2: Analysis and Assessment (Exploring the Individual's Dynamics)

In the second stage, group therapists conduct a comprehensive assessment of the each group member's functioning. The aim of this stage involves understanding members' style of life and seeing how that is affecting their current functioning in all the tasks of life. The emphasis is on the social and cultural context of each individual. A thorough history is explored during assessment that includes some of these aspects: family background, belief systems, cultural heritage, personal goals, and educational level. Adlerians do not try to fit clients into a preconceived model; rather, they allow salient cultural identity concepts to emerge and attend to clients' personal meaning of culture (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017). The leader may begin by exploring how members are functioning at work and in social situations and how they feel about themselves and their gender-role identities.

Dreikurs (1997) maintains that it is essential to obtain a thorough social history to understand the member's style of life and to provide a foundation for treatment. This social history is made up of both subjective and objective dimensions. Leaders listen carefully to members' stories, and questions flow from this presentation. It is common during the subjective interview for group members to express concerns or issues they would like to address through the group process. For example, one group member, Bill, reports that he has "anger management" problems. He finds himself in arguments all the time, and sometimes he feels angry enough to hit someone, although he never has.

To clarify the goals and purposes of these expressed concerns, the Adlerian group leader will often rely on The Question to focus on life task areas that the individual may be avoiding. When Bill is asked The Question, he responds: "If I didn't have anger all the time, I guess life would be a lot calmer; I would go about life with less strife, maybe even unnoticed."

The Question can be asked in a number of different ways. Adler would ask: "What would *you be like* if you were well?" Dreikurs typically asks, "How would your life be different if you didn't have these problems, concerns, or symptoms?" Other ways of posing the question are: "What would change in your life if you could have a pill that would make you completely well?" or "What would be different in your life if you woke up one morning and no longer had this problem?" Among other uses, the client's answer can be used to determine whether a physical symptom

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

is due to organic or psychological factors. If nothing would be different, the symptom may very well be organic, and the person will need to see a medical doctor for help. More often, the answer clearly indicates the purpose and the direction of the symptoms. If a group member were to say, "I would be doing better in school or have more friends if it were not for my anxiety," Adlerians would conclude that the client's anxiety was serving the purpose of justifying a lack of success, a fear of failure, or a lack of friends (Sonstegard et al., 2001).

The individual's goals and current lifestyle become much more obvious in interactions with others in the group (Dreikurs, 1969). Adlerian group counselors use any number of objective assessment techniques. Process assessment techniques include examining the member's family constellation, birth order, relationship difficulties, early recollections, dreams, and artwork, all of which produce clues to the person's goals, purposes, and lifestyle. Each of these approaches to psychological investigation can reveal a group member's interpretations of self, life, and the world as well as any mistaken notions that may be connected to these interpretations.

Analysis and assessment rely heavily on exploration of the client's family constellation, which includes evaluating the conditions that prevailed in the family when the person was a young child in the process of forming lifestyle convictions and basic assumptions. Let's look further into Bill's story as the group begins to learn about each other. Bill says he is the second of two. His older brother, Derek, is a highly accomplished leader in business. "He is a model of calm deliberation, and he always has been," says Bill. Although accomplished in his field as an educator, Bill feels that he has had to work twice as hard as his brother to get half as far. Derek is more like their father (also a business man), whereas Bill is volatile like his mother. Bill noticed early in his life that his father would say things that hurt his mother's feelings, and she would lash out at his father. His father would never fight back. He would simply walk away, often with his mother following him, shouting. Bill's father was German in ancestry; his mother was Italian and more emotional. Bill believes to this day that he should be more controlled, but he cannot stand to be challenged.

In this brief description, we begin to see Bill's private logic and how it contributes to the development of his style of living. Bill is competitive; he does not like coming in second to anyone. He believes that people should appreciate what he says and what he does, and if they don't—or worse, if they challenge him—he feels hurt and wants to strike back. When people walk away or ignore him, he becomes enraged, and his actions say, "I will not be ignored."

Bill is sensitive to slights, and he is likely to pay very close attention to what others are saying to or about him in the group. Even a small disagreement could result in Bill experiencing anger and wanting to "set people straight." Now that Bill has achieved this insight, he can choose to behave differently in the group when he might feel that he is being ignored. Instead of striking back when he feels the slightest challenge, he can pause for a moment and express what he is thinking and feeling. If this new behavior works well in the group situation, he can experiment with behaving in different ways in daily life when he feels slighted.

Another assessment procedure is asking clients to report their **early recollections (ERs)**, specific incidents that members recall (not what they were told by others), along with the feelings and thoughts that accompanied these childhood incidents. These "stories of events that individuals say occurred before they were 10 years of age" are quite useful in getting a better understanding of the client (Mosak & Di Pietro, 2006, p. 1). Early memories cast light on the "story of our life"; they are more like metaphors for our current views rather than descriptions of what actually happened long ago. Early recollections are a series of small mysteries that can be woven together and provide a tapestry that leads to an understanding of how we view and feel about ourselves, how we see the world, what our life goals are, what motivates us, what we believe in, and what we value; they also prepare us for our future (Mosak & Di Pietro, 2006).

From a series of early memories, it is possible to get a clear sense of our mistaken notions, guiding goals in life, present attitudes, social interests, and possible future behavior. Exploring early recollections involves discovering how mistaken notions based on faulty goals and values fly in the face of social interest and create problems in people's lives.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Mosak and Di Pietro (2006) capture the therapeutic value of ERs:

> Early recollections help us to determine what is important to a client. Early recollections, once told, tell on a person. They provide evidence of a person's priorities, goals, and methods in achieving goals. They are the solvable mysteries of who one is, where one stands, and where one is heading. (p. 6)

Adlerian counselors elicit early recollections by asking group members to think back to when they were much younger, before the age of 10, and to tell the group about some *specific event* they recall happening: "One time, I _____." Early recollections are different from reports, which are typically generalizations such as "My parents argued a lot and I sat by quietly." Counselors often ask for two or three early recollections, and they may ask for many more (up to 12). They ask for a description of the recollection but also an awareness of what the feeling was during the recalled memory. Early recollections represent a significant contribution for group counselors who use a variety of techniques. They are easy to obtain, and because of their projective nature, they offer practitioners a wealth of information that can be used in both the assessment and intervention phases of group counseling.

Returning to the case of Bill, here are two of his early recollections:

> Age 8: I remember my mother fussing about dinner. While she was cooking, she kept mumbling that he wasn't going to like it, meaning my father, I think. Her mumbling started off very quietly, almost like it was inside her, but she kept getting louder until she was actually banging pots around on the counter. When he came in from work, she said: "I fixed meatloaf, but you probably won't like it."
>
> "It will be fine," he said.
>
> "Fine!?!" she almost screamed. "I have been working for hours, and it's just fine!?!"
>
> I felt sorry for her. I couldn't understand why he wouldn't like it. He always ate it, so why didn't he like it?
>
> Age 5: I am playing with my brother, Derek. He has a toy that he got for his birthday, but it is really a toy that I want, and I actually believe that my parents meant me to have it. So I go to get it from him, and I start pulling on it. It's a red fire truck. But Derek is bigger, stronger than I am, and he gets up and pulls it away from me and walks off. I am really angry, half yelling at him, half crying.

From these memories, it is easy to see why Bill is focused on his anger. In the first memory, his mother's process is a metaphor for his own process. It starts out quietly, inside, but becomes more animated and louder until it is fully expressed. In addition, the memory suggests that this anger is the result of an anticipated outcome, someone not liking what he might be doing, and then the person, perhaps Bill, actually triggers the very response he fears. Although this interpretation needs refinement, it is a good *guess* based on the story, and it provides a jumping off point for a group discussion and for understanding Bill's process.

Bill's second memory suggests a mistaken notion: No one should have or get things before he does, and It does not matter what you do, bigger/stronger people will always win out and walk away, leaving you alone and raging.

During the assessment stage, the group counselor's main task is to integrate and summarize data from the lifestyle investigation and to interpret how the mistaken notions and personal mythology are influencing the client. This is done in a clear and concise way so that clients can recognize their own dynamics and pinpoint their assets and themes in their life. For example, after Bill reports his early recollections, some Adlerians would ask him what meaning the themes have for him. Bill may be able to see connections between his early experiences and how he reacts in present situations. The analysis of the lifestyle, which can be done collaboratively, is an ongoing process that helps the client and the counselor develop a plan for counseling.

Stage 3: Awareness and Insight

The classical analytic position is that personality cannot change unless there is insight, but the Adlerian

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

view is that insight is a special form of awareness that facilitates a meaningful understanding within the counseling relationship and acts as a foundation for change. Yet this awareness is not, in and of itself, enough to bring about significant change. It is a means to an end, not an end in itself. It is essential that awareness leads to constructive movement toward desired goals. People can make abrupt and significant changes without much insight. Conversely, intellectual insight can lead to the endless "Yes, but" game of "I know I should stop, but _____." Carlson and Englar-Carlson (2017) state that the Adlerian approach is both insight oriented and action oriented. Adlerians believe change begins with present-centered awareness, but it involves the recognition that one has options or choices in regard to both perception and behavior.

Sonstegard and Bitter (2004) believe group counseling is more effective than individual counseling in helping people gain awareness and redirect their *mistaken goals* and *mistaken notions*. In an Adlerian group, the members explore their self-defeating cognitions that contribute to their distorted perceptions. The interaction within a group provides an ideal setting for learning about oneself. In groups, awareness is heightened by the feedback and support of other members, which may carry more weight than what the group leader says. Group members accept feedback from each other because they feel that a certain equality exists among them as well as a mutual caring that develops over time. Furthermore, the sense of social connectedness that develops in groups enables members to see parts of themselves in others and to support others in a nonjudgmental way. The awareness and insight stage is concerned with helping participants understand why they are functioning as they are.

Interpretation is the process by which individuals gain insight into their lifestyle. Interpretation deals with members' underlying motives for behaving the way they do in the here-and-now. Interpretations are never forced on the client; they are presented tentatively in the form of hypotheses: "Could it be that _____?" "I have a hunch that I'd like to share with you." "It seems to me that _____." "Perhaps _____." "I get the impression that _____." Interpretations offered in this collaborative manner as hunches about possible meanings leave group members free to consider what they hear without feeling that they must accept the interpretation.

Interpretations can be linked to specific group behavior that is happening in a session. The shared experience of the group members provides a real-life opportunity to explore this behavior pattern. If the interpretation fits, members tend to respond with statements that indicate a new understanding. If it does not fit, the group often looks for a more accurate interpretation. Members themselves can be invited to make their own interpretations. The ultimate goal of this process is that participants will come to a deeper psychological understanding of themselves. The aim is for members to acquire deeper awareness of their own role in creating a problem, the ways in which they are maintaining the problem, and what they can do to improve the situation.

Stage 4: Reorientation and Reeducation

The end product of the group process is reorientation and reeducation. In the **reorientation stage**, members are helped to redirect their mistaken beliefs about self, life, and others. The emphasis is on considering alternative beliefs, behaviors, and attitudes. During this stage, members put insight into action, making choices more consistent with their desired goals (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017).

There is a change in members' attitudes toward their current life situation and the problems they need to solve. Adlerian groups are characterized by an attempt to reorient faulty living patterns and to teach group members how to interact cooperatively. Adlerian group leaders aim to teach participants how to become more effective in dealing with the tasks of life. They also challenge and encourage clients to take risks and make changes. The overall aim is literally to replace a faulty movement through life with one characterized by personal responsibility, belonging, contribution, courage, and community feeling and social interest (Rasmussen & Schuyler, 2020).

During the reorientation phase, members are encouraged to take action based on what they have learned from their group participation. The group becomes an agent of change through the improved interpersonal relations among members. The group

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

process allows members to see themselves as others do and to recognize faulty self-concepts or mistaken goals that they are pursuing. Change is facilitated by the emergence of hope. Members accept that there are options; others have shown they can be different and life can work out well. This sense of faith and hope contradicts the negative social influences members are imbued with in daily life (Sonstegard & Bitter, 2004).

Encouragement refers to the "building of courage," and it is derived from the strengths and resources of the client. Adlerians use encouragement throughout the counseling process to assist clients in creating new patterns of behavior and to develop strengths and resources. Encouragement entails showing faith in people, expecting them to assume responsibility for their lives, and valuing them for who they are (Sweeney, 2019). Encouragement embodies respect, trust, a belief in oneself and others, and a deep sense of caring for others. If encouragement is absent, the counseling efforts will not take root. Encouragement is the antidote to discouragement, and it is critical to creating therapeutic change. Encouragement is a basic aspect of all stages, but it is essential during reorientation (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017). Through encouragement, group participants begin to experience their own inner resources and their power to choose for themselves and direct their own lives. Peer encouragement often plays the most significant role in this reorientation and reeducation. The greatest encouragement comes from feeling that the members have found a place in the group. Members are encouraged when they realize they are accepted for their differences as well as for the common ground they share (Sonstegard & Bitter, 2004).

Reorientation is the action stage of a group; new decisions are made, and goals are modified. To challenge self-limiting assumptions, members are encouraged to **act as if** they were already the person they would like to be in the group setting. Adlerians often use action-oriented techniques to facilitate shifting members' view of a situation, enabling members to reflect on how they could be different. Members can be asked to act as if they did not have a particular problem for a week and experiment with a new style of behavior, noting how they may begin to think and feel differently.

Group members may be asked to "catch themselves" in the process of repeating old patterns that have led to ineffective or self-defeating behavior. The technique of **catching oneself** involves helping individuals identify signals associated with their problematic behavior or emotions. Members can then make decisions that stop their symptoms from taking over. If participants hope to change, they need to set tasks for themselves and do something specific about their problems. Commitment is needed to translate new insights into concrete action, and assignments to be carried out between sessions are useful in making changes. These between-session assignments are collaboratively developed by the group leader and the members.

Let's return one last time to the case of Bill to see how the group participates in the reorientation process:

Counselor (C): Bill, where do you feel it in your body when you start to get angry; what tells you that you are getting angry?

Bill (B): It starts in my chest, like I am on fire there.

C: A full-blown fire?

B: A small fire at first, but very hot, and everything that happens is like adding fuel to it. It gets bigger very quickly.

C: [to the group] So what could we do when we sense the fire starting in Bill?

Member (M)-1: I would want Bill to know that I wanted to be truthful with him, but I don't want to hurt him.

C: How would you do that?

M-1: I might say to him that I have something to say to him, but it is because I care about him.

M-2: I guess we could ask him if he feels like a fire is starting?

C: Yes. And what would help you if a fire was starting in you?

M-2: Well, I guess I would like someone to help me consider other ways of looking at the situation.

C: And how could that happen?

M-2: You might ask me what I was thinking at that moment in time and what a couple of other ways to look at it might be.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

C: What do you think of that idea, Bill? Is that something that might work for you, or do you have another idea of what might work?

Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures

Rationale for a Group Approach

Adlerians believe that the problems of individuals are mainly of a social nature. Based on this assumption, group work takes on special significance from both diagnostic and treatment perspectives. The group provides the social context in which members can develop a sense of belonging, social connectedness, and community. Inferiority feelings can be challenged and counteracted effectively in groups, and the mistaken concepts and values at the root of social and emotional problems can be deeply influenced by the group (Sonstegard & Bitter, 2004). Members come to see that many of their problems are interpersonal in nature, that their behavior has social meaning, and that their goals can best be understood in the framework of social purposes.

Applications to Brief Group Therapy

Carlson et al. (2006) define **brief therapy** as an approach "that is concise, deliberate, direct, effective, efficient, focused, planned, purposeful, and time limited" (p. 155). Adlerian group counseling lends itself to brief interventions and to short-term formats. From the beginning, both Adler and Dreikurs developed and used group methods as a way to reach a greater number of people in a shorter period of time. The core characteristics associated with brief group therapy include rapid establishment of a strong therapeutic alliance, clear problem focus and goal alignment, rapid assessment, emphasis on active and directive therapeutic interventions, a focus on strengths and abilities of clients, an optimistic view of change, a focus on both the present and the future, and an emphasis on tailoring treatment to the unique needs of clients in the most time-efficient manner possible (Carlson et al., 2006). One advantage of having a time limit is that it conveys to clients the expectation that change will occur in a short period of time. Specifying the number of sessions can motivate both the group members and the therapist to stay focused on desired outcomes and to work as efficiently as possible. Bitter and Nicoll (2000) claim that practitioners of Adlerian brief therapy strive to make a difference in the lives of their clients by staying focused on what is therapeutically possible in each engagement they have with their clients. Because there is no assurance that a future session will occur, brief therapists tend to ask themselves: "If I had only one session to be useful in this person's life, what would I want to accomplish?" (p. 38). Therapists often ask this question of group members.

Adlerian group leaders recognize that many of the changes in the members take place between the group sessions, and leaders create a structure that will help both them and the members stay focused on specific personal goals. Self-selected goals formulated once a group convenes become the focus of group work. Members decide how they want to best use the time available to them, and they establish a set of guidelines that will provide direction for their group.

Time-limited groups require at least a session or two to accomplish the tasks of closure, completing unfinished business, suggest referrals, and schedule follow-up meetings. Bitter and Nicoll (2000) suggest that some time-limited groups consider meeting on a short-term basis at a later time (perhaps 6 months or a year after the initial sessions). This arrangement, which is structured with formal follow-up meetings, enables members to check in with one another, and the group may never officially terminate. This kind of group is an example of a form of brief, intermittent therapy.

Adlerians recognize that *focus*, combined with time limits and encouragement, helps group members gain hope that change is possible, and relatively soon (Bitter & Nicoll, 2000). Group leaders focus on empowerment, generating new behaviors from existing internal and external resources. They want group members to leave in better shape than when they came (Bitter, 2021).

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Group Theories in Action: An Adlerian Application*

A unique aspect of the Adlerian group approach is identifying and exploring early recollections. Sharing these recollections is a way to build cohesion in a group. These recollections hold the key to understanding how we see the world and ourselves and what we value in life. Members typically become aware of how past experiences have influenced their current personality. Sharing and exploring the meaning of early recollections can be applied to most groups, regardless of the therapist's theoretical orientation.

In this session, I ask group members to reflect for a moment on some early recollection when they were very young. Lupe begins by sharing an early memory of her father when she was 4 years old. He left the house, and on the way to work he died. Lupe recalls feeling alone and abandoned by both her father and mother. She is invited to talk about the meaning this memory has for her today. Lupe feels that she has to overachieve and that she is almost never satisfied with what she accomplishes. There is a drive to always do more and never to simply relax. She would like to be less driven to achieve perfection, would like not to have to exceed her expectations, and would like to pause and enjoy life more often. She would like to be able to ask people for what she needs, but she realizes it is hard for her to let others give to her.

Describing this early memory is a catalyst for many others in the group to identify early memories, and members can be invited to reveal some of their memories. This is a natural way to link the work of several members. Randy says he remembers having heart surgery in a children's hospital when he was 5 years old, and he associates this experience with his feelings of being alone. Melissa is able to relate to Randy's feelings of being alone because she also was in a hospital for surgery as a child. Simply sharing these early memories is often therapeutic in itself.

As Julius listens to others share their early memories, he begins to become aware of his own early experiences. He realizes that his parents shielded him from some of the realities of life. I ask Julius to look at a few members in the group and let them know what they are bringing out in him. Simply asking members to share early memories with each other lays the foundation for developing group cohesion. Rather than focusing on one or two members, I ask people to look at one another and think about the meaning that their early memories have on them today. Members are encouraged to talk directly to each other about how they can relate to what they are hearing from others. Bringing these early memories into the here-and-now amplifies their relevance for members today.

Another catalyst involves asking members to talk about what most stands out for them as they were growing up in their family. As a child, who were the important people for them? How did they relate to their parents? To each of their siblings? Focusing on memories of being in their family of origin at various ages often results in insights about their present-day behavior.

Applying the Adlerian Approach to Group Work in Schools

Many Adlerian concepts, techniques, and procedures can be incorporated in groups for children in school settings where the entire history of the group may be limited to as few as six sessions. Because Adlerians focus on conscious aspects, on goals and motives, and deal with the present rather than exploring the past, short-term groups can be designed for a variety of populations in the schools. Adlerians use collaborative models of consultation in group settings, allowing teachers, parents, and administrators to learn from the experience of others.

Many Adlerian concepts and themes fit with counseling children and adolescents in various types of group formats. School counselors will find that Adlerian theory and therapeutic techniques have value in their work. One such example, an intervention based on the family constellation, is to invite children and adolescents to talk about their position in their family as this counselor does with Tami.

*The group session discussed here is based on the Adlerian group work segment in the video *Group Theories in Action*, which is included in the Online Student Resources.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Counselor (C): Where do you come in your family, Tami?

Tami (T): I'm the youngest. I have an older brother and sister.

C: How much older?

T: Well, my brother is 7 years older. He is in the army now, and my sister, Julie, is 5 years older than me. She's trying to go to college.

C: So, I would guess that you and your brother got along pretty well, and you and your sister, maybe not so much. Did I guess correctly?

T: No, not really. My brother was kind of mean to me, and Julie protected me; she stood up to him. She always seemed to know what to do. I never do.

The counselor in this group took a guess based on a rather standard belief related to birth order—that every other child tends to align. Even though the guess turned out to be incorrect, it provided Tami with a platform from which to respond, a starting point from which to explain how it was for her. In describing, even briefly, her relationship with her siblings, she notes the roles that they played and even the conclusion she adopted for herself. The group leader then turned to the members and simply asked what they had learned listening to Tami. Some gave rather concrete answers, restating what Tami had said. But one girl said to Tami: "It sounds like your brother was kind of dangerous, and your sister protected you. I had a dangerous brother too, but I didn't have a sister to protect me."

The concept of encouragement has relevance for group work with children and adolescents because many young people feel a profound sense of discouragement. The group process allows members to express the ways in which they experience their discouragement, and they also come to learn that they are not alone with their feelings. Groups using Adlerian basic concepts can be successful with at-risk high school students who are especially vulnerable to losing a sense of hope that life can be better. The four-stage model of Adlerian groups discussed earlier can be applied to adolescents who lack a sense of purpose. Through the reorientation process, adolescents are able to find a renewed sense of hope that can change the direction of their lives.

Children are often sent by a teacher to a counseling group because of misbehavior. Adlerians believe that children with a pattern of misbehavior are usually in pursuit of mistaken goals such as attention getting, power struggle, revenge, or a demonstration of inadequacy or withdrawal (Albert, 1996; Dreikurs, 1967). Adlerian group counseling with children deals with these mistaken goals and with changes in the motivations that account for children's behavior. This counselor is exploring the goals of Tommy's misbehavior:

Tommy: I hate Mrs. Toady.

Yoana: Her name is Toddy, not Toady.

Counselor: Why do you hate Ms. Toddy, Tommy?

Tommy: She is mean. She is the devil. She sits at home at night figuring out how to torture us. The "Toad" should die.

Hao: Absolutely. She should die.

Counselor: So Hao, you agree with Tommy, but you don't sound as upset as Tommy. Why is that?

Hao: Well, I don't know. Tommy is way cool though; he like destroyed her stupid science project the other day.

Tommy: Yeah, that's what got me here.

The counselor asks the group members why they think Tommy gets so angry and wants to destroy anything Ms. Toddy does. A number of ideas are advanced, most having to do with how awful the teacher is. Then the counselor suggests another interpretation:

Counselor: I have another idea. Would you like to hear it? [General approval from the group] Could it be that Tommy feels hurt by Ms. Toddy, and he wants to get even? Could it be he wants her to feel hurt the way he does?

Tommy: Yeah, that's exactly it. And if she doesn't lay off me, I will get her too.

As in this case with Tommy, a group can provide a context for understanding the goal for which the child is striving, as well as the purpose underlying a "behavior problem," and can provide a basis for corrective action (Henderson & Thompson, 2015).

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Applying the Adlerian Approach With Multicultural Populations

Adlerian theory is well suited to working with culturally diverse clients because of its emphasis on understanding the individual within a social context and because of the emphasis on social interest and social justice. Although the Adlerian approach is called Individual Psychology, the emphasis is on the person-in-the-environment, and culture can help define clients in a manner respectful of individual and cultural diversity (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017). Manacci and Sackett-Manacci (2019) maintain that therapists can learn a great deal about their clients through the lifestyle assessment, and they add: "Working with clients from diverse cultures is much like taking a personal tutorial in multiculturalism with each new client" (p. 21). By asking clients to describe their early family situation, therapists are able to learn about cultural values and traditions, parenting styles, family dynamics, social conventions, and religious background.

Carlson and Englar-Carlson (2017) claim that Adlerian therapy not only considers multicultural and social justice issues but is "alive, well, and poised to address the concerns of a contemporary global society" (p. 24). Adlerians' interest in helping others, in social interest, in pursuing meaning in life, in belonging, and in the collective spirit fits well with the group process. This approach respects the role of the family as being influential in personality development and stresses social connectedness and establishing meaningful relationships in a community. Adlerian therapists tend to focus on cooperation and socially oriented values as opposed to competitive and individualistic values.

Many core aspects of Adlerian therapy align with effective multicultural psychotherapy. Some of these key aspects include the importance of an egalitarian, respectful, and cooperative therapeutic relationship; the emphasis on social equality and social justice; the holistic approach that considers mind, body, and spirit; viewing people in the context of their family, social, and cultural contexts; and the emphasis on encouragement, empowerment, optimism, advocacy, and support (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017).

If the Adlerian approach is practiced appropriately and competently, it is difficult to find limitations from a multicultural perspective. The phenomenological nature of the Adlerian approach lends itself to understanding the worldview of clients, and Adlerians investigate culture in much the same way that they approach birth order and family atmosphere. Culture is a vantage point from which life is experienced and interpreted; it is also a background of values, history, convictions, beliefs, customs, and expectations that must be addressed by the individual. Adlerians do not decide for clients what they should change or what their goals should be; rather, they work cooperatively to enable clients to reach their self-defined goals.

Evaluation of the Adlerian Approach to Groups

Contributions and Strengths of the Approach

My group practice has been influenced by several Adlerian concepts, including an emphasis on the social forces that motivate behavior and the search for mastery, superiority, and power. The patterns that people develop out of their relationships with their parents and siblings and the notion that we create a unique style of life as a response to our perceived inferiority also interests me.

The Adlerian approach deviates in many ways from the psychoanalytic model. Most Adlerians maintain that much of Adler's work was done independently of Freud. There are, however, some important commonalities between the two approaches, including a focus on critical periods of development, an interest in early recollections, and an emphasis on interpretation. The difference lies in Adler's social constructivist view of these areas as opposed to Freud's deterministic perspective.

A major Adlerian contribution to group counseling is the use of early recollections. Adlerians believe that what we selectively attend to from the past reflects on how we behave in the present. Early

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

recollections can be shared by members in their group, and doing this can promote interaction and cohesion.

One of the strengths of the Adlerian approach is its integrative nature. Carlson and Englar-Carlson (2017) claim that "Adlerian psychotherapy was not only the first truly integrative helping system, but it remains one of the truly holistic integrated systems of psychotherapy" (p. 134). This integrative approach encompasses the full spectrum of human experience, and practitioners have great freedom in working with clients in ways that are uniquely suited to their own therapeutic style. Adlerians select from a wide variety of techniques in various theoretical perspectives based on the client's presenting problems and specific needs. One such technique is the use of the family constellation as a means of learning the client's identity interpretations. Other techniques Adlerians frequently use are encouragement, analysis of one's style of life, The Question, acting as if, catching oneself, reframing, and role playing (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017).

Even though all Adlerians accept the same theoretical concepts, they do not have a monolithic view of the therapeutic process. The methods of assessment and treatment differ substantially among Adlerian practitioners. Some Adlerian group practitioners are very directive, and others are not. Some are willing to disclose themselves, and others rarely make personal disclosures to clients. Adlerians who were trained by Adler tend to ask for 1 early recollection, whereas those who were trained by Dreikurs might routinely ask for as many as 6 to 12 recollections as part of the lifestyle interview. Adlerian group practitioners are not bound to follow a specific procedure, nor are they limited to using certain techniques, nor do they have to be totally in agreement with all of Adler's views. In short, there are almost as many techniques and approaches as there are Adlerian therapists. The basic criterion is that therapeutic techniques fit the theory and the client. Therapists are encouraged to grow both personally and professionally by being inventive in developing their own therapeutic style.

Integration With Other Approaches

One of the strengths of the Adlerian approach is that its concepts have group applications in both clinical and educational settings. As we have seen, its emphasis on social factors accounts for its success with individuals in groups, including parent education groups, teacher groups, and families—and also its widespread applicability to diverse client populations.

It is difficult to overestimate the contributions of Adler to contemporary therapeutic practice. Adler's influence has extended beyond group counseling into the community mental health movement. One of Adler's most significant contributions has been his influence on other therapeutic approaches. Abraham Maslow, Viktor Frankl, Rollo May, Karen Horney, Erich Fromm, Carl Rogers, Virginia Satir, William Glasser, Aaron Beck, and Albert Ellis have all acknowledged their debt to Adler (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017). Both Frankl and May see Adler as a forerunner of the existential movement because of his position that human beings are free to choose and are entirely responsible for what they make of themselves. This view also makes Adler a forerunner of the subjective, phenomenological approach to psychology, which focuses on the internal determinants of behavior: values, beliefs, attitudes, goals, interests, personal meanings, perceptions of reality, and strivings toward self-actualization. Carlson and Englar-Carlson (2017) note that almost every therapy system can trace its lineage back to Adler's original ideas: "In many ways, Adler could be considered the grandfather of modern psychotherapy" (p. 12).

Adlerian psychology is a phenomenological, holistic, optimistic, and socially embedded theory based on basic assumptions that have been woven into many theories of counseling (Maniacci & Sackett-Maniacci, 2019). The Adlerian view is congruent with Gestalt therapy, existential therapy, social learning theory, reality therapy, rational emotive behavior therapy, cognitive behavior therapy, solution-focused brief therapy, acceptance and commitment therapy, positive psychology, family therapy, and the person-centered approach. All of these approaches are based on a similar concept of the person as purposive and self-determining and as always striving for growth, value, and meaning in this world (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017). In several important respects, Adler seems to have paved the way for the current developments in the cognitive

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

behavior therapies. A basic premise in Adlerian practice is that if therapists can encourage clients to change their thinking then clients will change their feelings and behavior. These connections to such a wide range of current theories and psychotherapies make the use of the Adlerian model ideal for integration purposes.

Some Adlerian scholars mention the integrative promises of Adlerian therapy and also address the challenges of continual evolution and development of this approach. Bitter (2006, 2007) emphasized the point that orthodoxy does not lend itself to development and that practitioners must be concerned with the *development* of the model. According to Bitter, Adlerian core concepts provide a solid foundation for integration of new ideas and practices. When new knowledge does not easily fit within the Adlerian model, Bitter contends that it is then necessary to develop, and even challenge, the ideas of Adler and Dreikurs so that they are congruent with the contemporary world.

Limitations of the Approach

The Adlerian approach to group work shares some of the basic limitations of the psychoanalytic approach. Leaders of more structured groups may have difficulty incorporating some of the procedures geared toward understanding the members' lifestyle and showing them how earlier experiences are influencing their current functioning. Members in structured or short-term groups may not appreciate the value of exploring their childhood dynamics based on a comprehensive assessment.

Adlerian therapy, like most of the other therapeutic models in this book, was developed with a Western orientation. This focus on individuality and the premise that change and responsibility rests with the individual may be problematic for clients from collectivistic cultures. Furthermore, the notion of choice and individual responsibility may have some limitations for clients from an oppressed group.

Group leaders must be well trained so they avoid significant mistakes, especially when interpreting members' dynamics. Group leaders who have only a general understanding of Adlerian concepts could overstep the boundaries of their competence in attempting to teach members about the meaning of factors such as birth order and the family constellation. Using many of the procedures described in this chapter requires knowledge and training.

Another limitation of Adlerian therapy is the lack of empirical studies of the key concepts of the approach. Carlson and Englar-Carlson (2017) note that the future is moving toward evidence-based treatment strategies, and more of the Adlerian theoretical constructs need to be supported by research if this approach is to survive and thrive. "We believe that more research, study, and scholarship of Adlerian psychotherapy are needed, with the specific goal of outlining an Adlerian evidence-based psychotherapy" (p. 113).

Self-Reflection and Discussion Questions

1. What are some of your earliest memories? Are they mainly joyful or painful? Identify one specific early memory and reflect on the significance this early recollection has for you. What value do you see in the Adlerian technique of having group members recall their earliest memories? Can you think of ways to use this technique in groups you may lead?

2. Adlerians maintain that each of us has a unique lifestyle, or personality, that starts to develop in early childhood to compensate for and overcome some perceived inferiority. How does this notion apply to you? In what ways have you felt inferior in the past? Could you interpret what you do currently as your way to strive for mastery and significance and to overcome basic inferiority?

3. From an Adlerian perspective, group members are best understood by looking at where they are going. Apply this statement to yourself and reflect on the direction you are striving toward. How are your goals influencing what you are doing now? How do you think your past has influenced your future goals? In what ways can you apply this purposive, goal-oriented approach in your work with groups?

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4. Adlerians emphasize the family atmosphere and the family constellation. Reflect on what it was like for you to grow up in your family. How would you characterize your relationship with each of your siblings? What did you learn about yourself and others through your early family experiences?
5. Social interest is a central concept in the Adlerian approach to group work. What value do you place on social interest in your own life? In what ways do you think you could assist group members in increasing their social interest?

Where to Go From Here

If you find that your thinking is allied with the Adlerian approach, consider seeking training in Individual Psychology or becoming a member of the North American Society of Adlerian Psychology (NASAP); at the moment, if you are a counselor or therapist in training (in a graduate program), you can join NASAP for free for one year. To obtain information on NASAP and a list of Adlerian organizations and institutes, contact:

North American Society of Adlerian Psychology (NASAP)
117 Hedgewood Lane
Canton, GA 30115
Telephone: (989) 572-6854
Email: info@alfredadler.org
Website: www.alfredadler.org

The society publishes a newsletter and a quarterly journal and maintains a list of institutes, training programs, and workshops in Adlerian psychology. The *Journal of Individual Psychology* presents current scholarly and professional research. As the premier scholarly forum for Adlerian practices, principles, and theoretical development, the *Journal of Individual Psychology* also addresses techniques, skills, and strategies associated with the practice and application of Adlerian psychological methods. The journal is available from NASAP or from the University of Texas Press:
P. O. Box 7819
Austin, TX 78713-7819
Telephone: (800) 252-320
Email: utpress@uts.cc.utexas.edu

If you are interested in pursuing training, postgraduate study, continuing education, or a degree, contact NASAP for a list of Adlerian organizations and institutes. A few Adlerian training institutes are listed here:

The Alfred Adler Institutes of San Francisco and Northwestern Washington
2565 Mayflower Lane
Bellingham, WA 98226
Telephone: (360) 647-5670
Email: HTStein@att.net
Website: ourworl.compuserv.com/homepages/hstein

The International Committee for Adlerian Summer Schools and Institutes (ICASSI)
www.icassi.net/contact-us/
Telephone: (301) 577-8243
Fax: (301) 595-0669
Email: bettyicassi@aol.com
Website: icassi.net

Video

Watch Gerald Corey's *Group Theories in Action*, video via the Cengage eBook. The group session discussed in this chapter is based on an integrative approach to group counseling.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Recommended Supplementary Readings

Adlerian Group Counseling and Therapy: Step-by-Step (Sonstegard & Bitter, 2004) represents a distillation of the most significant ideas of Alfred Adler and Rudolf Dreikurs as applied to group work. This excellent book illustrates the development of a group from formation to the final stage, giving a clear picture of what is important to accomplish at each stage.

Alfred Adler Revisited (Carlson & Maniacci, 2012) represents some of Adler's most important writings placed into contemporary contexts by many of today's leading Adlerian scholars and practitioners.

Adlerian Psychotherapy (Carlson & Englar-Carlson, 2017) is an excellent resource that clearly presents a comprehensive overview of Adlerian therapy in contemporary practice.

Early Recollections: Interpretive Method and Application (Mosak & Di Pietro, 2006) is an extensive review of the use of early recollections as a way to understand an individual's dynamics and behavioral style. This book addresses the theory, research, and clinical applications of early recollections.

The Key to Psychotherapy: Understanding the Self-Created Individual (Powers & Griffith, 2012) is one of the best sources of information for doing a lifestyle analysis. This book comes alive with many good clinical examples. Separate chapters deal with interview techniques, lifestyle assessment, early recollections, the family constellation, and methods of summarizing and interpreting information.

Adlerian Counseling and Psychotherapy: A Practitioner's Wellness Approach (Sweeney, 2019) is an excellent resource on Adlerian counseling; its emphasis on holism and wellness is effectively translated into interventions that work with individuals, couples, families, and groups.

References and Suggested Readings

Adler, A. (1927). *Understanding human nature* (trans. W. B. Wolfe). George Allen & Unwin.

Adler, A. (1964). *Social interest: A challenge to mankind.* Capricorn.

Adler, A. (1996a). The structure of neurosis. *Individual Psychology, 52*(4), 318–333. (Original work published in 1935)

Adler, A. (1996b). What is neurosis? *Individual Psychology, 52*(4), 363–371. (Original work published in 1935)

Albert, L. (1996). *Cooperative discipline*. American Guidance Service.

Ansbacher, H. L. (1974). Goal-oriented Individual Psychology: Alfred Adler's theory. In A. Burton (Ed.), *Operational theories of personality* (pp. 99–142). Brunner/ Mazel.

Bitter, J. R. (2006, May 26). *Am I an Adlerian?* Keynote address, Ansbacher Lecture at the 54th annual convention of the North American Society of Adlerian Psychology (NASAP), Chicago, Illinois.

Bitter, J. R. (2007). Am I an Adlerian? *Journal of Individual Psychology, 63*(1), 3–31.

*Bitter, J. R., & Nicoll, W. G. (2000). Adlerian brief therapy with individuals: Process and practice. *Journal of Individual Psychology, 56*(1), 31–44.

Bitter, J. R. (2021). *Theory and practice of couples and family counseling* (3rd ed.). American Counseling Association.

*Carlson, J., & Englar-Carlson, M. (2017). *Adlerian psychotherapy*. American Psychological Association.

Carlson, J., & Maniacci, M. (2012). *Alfred Adler revisited*. Routledge.

*Carlson, J., Watts, R. E., & Maniacci, M. (2006). *Adlerian therapy: Theory and practice*. American Psychological Association.

Christensen, O. C. (Ed.). (2004). *Adlerian family counseling* (3rd ed.). Educational Media Corporation.

Dreikurs, R. (1960). *Group psychotherapy and group approaches: The collected papers of Rudolf Dreikurs.* Alfred Adler Institute.

Dreikurs, R. (1967). *Psychodynamics, psychotherapy, and counseling: Collected papers.* Alfred Adler Institute.

Books and articles marked with an asterisk (*) are suggested for further study.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Dreikurs, R. (1969). Group psychotherapy from the point of view of Adlerian psychology. In H. M. Ruitenbeek (Ed.), *Group therapy today: Styles, methods, and techniques* (pp. 37–48). Atherton.

Dreikurs, R. (1997). Holistic medicine. *Individual Psychology, 53*(2), 127–205.

Henderson, D., & Thompson, C. L. (2015). *Counseling children* (9th ed.). Cengage Learning.

*Maniacci, M. P., & Sackett-Maniacci, L. (2019). Adlerian psychotherapy. In D. Wedding & R. J. Corsini (Eds.), *Current psychotherapies* (11th ed., pp. 59–100). Cengage Learning.

*Mosak, H. H., & Di Pietro, R. (2006). *Early recollections: Interpretative method and application*. Routledge.

*Powers, R. L., & Griffith, J. (2012). *The key to psychotherapy: Understanding the self-created individual*. Adlerian Psychology Associates.

*Rasmussen, P. R. (2010). *The quest to feel good.* Routledge.

Rasmussen, P. R., & Schuyler, E. J. (2020). Life tasks and psychological muscle. *Journal of Individual Psychology, 76*(4), 308–327.

*Sonstegard, M. A., & Bitter, J. R. (with Pelonis, P.). (2004). *Adlerian group counseling and therapy: Step-by-step.* Taylor & Francis.

Sonstegard, M. A., Bitter, J. R., Pelonis-Peneros, P. P., & Nicoll, W. G. (2001). Adlerian group psychotherapy: A brief therapy approach. *Directions in Clinical and Counseling Psychology, 11*(2), 11–12.

Sue, D. W., Sue, D., Neville, H. A., & Smith, L. (2019). *Counseling the culturally diverse: Theory and practice* (8th ed.). Wiley.

*Sweeney, T. J. (2019). Adlerian counseling and psychotherapy: A practitioner's wellness approach (6th ed.). Routledge.

*Sweeney, T. J. (2019). *Adlerian counseling and psychotherapy:* A practitioner's wellness approach (6th ed.). Routledge.

Terner, J., & Pew, W. L. (1978). *The courage to be imperfect: The life and work of Rudolf Dreikurs.* Hawthorn Books.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 8

Psychodrama in Groups*

Learning Objectives

1. Define these key concepts of psychodrama: creativity, spontaneity, working in the present, tele, surplus reality, catharsis and insight, and reality testing.
2. Explain the role and functions of the psychodrama group leader.
3. Describe the three phases of a psychodrama.
4. Explain the rationale for exploring members' concerns in the here-and-now.
5. Describe how role reversal can be implemented in a group session in different ways.
6. Describe the value of future projection when assisting members in clarifying changes they want to make.
7. Define these techniques as they are used in psychodrama: double, soliloquy, empty chair, mirror technique, and magic shop.
8. Identify some of the contributions and limitations of psychodrama.
9. Explain how psychodrama can be integrated with other approaches.
10. Understand a few of the cautions when applying psychodrama in a group.

Introduction

In the mid-1930s J. L. Moreno created psychodrama, which was further developed by his third wife, Zerka Toeman Moreno, and others. Refinements and new techniques continue to be developed today (Cruz et al., 2018; Nolte, 2020). In a broad sense, psychodrama is a complex of technique, philosophy, and theory that weaves together imagination, intuition, physical action, and various dramatic devices to explore a wide range of psychological problems. Integrating psychodramatic methods, often referred to as *enactments*, can amplify the effectiveness of all the approaches described in this book. Drama therapy and other therapies also involve enactment, improvisation, and collaborative creativity aimed at expanding role flexibility and insight, and psychodrama is a significant source of ideas for many of these approaches.

*Appreciation goes to Mark Young, professor emeritus, University of Central Florida, for his review of this chapter.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Jacob L. Moreno

Bill Peters/The Denver Post/Getty Images

JACOB L. MORENO (1889–1974) developed psychodrama as an approach to psychotherapy in the mid-1930s. Moreno was born in Romania and reached adolescence and young manhood in the fertile intellectual climate of Vienna in the first few decades of the 20th century. He received his MD at the University of Vienna medical school around 1918 and emigrated to the United States in 1925. In the mid-1930s he developed psychodrama, sociodrama, and sociometry; contributed to the development of role theory; was a pioneer of group psychotherapy; promoted other expressive arts therapies; pioneered improvisational theater and its applications in consciousness-raising; explored the philosophy of creativity and the psychology of spontaneity; and in other ways was a most seminal thinker.

Moreno coined the term *sociometry*, which is the study of relationships between people, and Moreno's son, Jonathan, calls Moreno the father of the social network, pointing out that he mapped patterns in Sing Sing prison, a private girls school, and in Brooklyn elementary schools (J. D. Moreno, 2014). Moreno went beyond Freud's contributions in developing his theory of interpersonal relationships and his innovative use of psychodrama, sociometry, sociatry, sociodrama, and group psychotherapy.

In his autobiography, Moreno (1985) recounts meeting with Sigmund Freud in Vienna around 1912: "I attended one of Freud's lectures. He had just finished an analysis of a telepathic dream. As the students filed out, he singled me out from the crowd and asked me what I was doing. I responded, 'Well, Dr. Freud, I start where you leave off. You meet people in the artificial setting of your office. I meet them on the street and in their homes, in their natural surroundings. You analyze their dreams. I give them the courage to dream again. You analyze and tear them apart. I let them act out their conflicting roles and help them to put the parts back together again' " (p. 95).

Many types of therapy derive in part from psychodrama, including Gestalt therapy, voice therapy, and other therapies or educational methods that employ role playing. Moreno was instrumental in the American Psychiatric Association's recognition of group psychotherapy as a useful approach to treatment. He was tireless in promoting his methods and traveled nationally and internationally, offering workshops, editing and publishing several professional journals and books, and writing articles for many books. Moreno argued for the inclusion of spontaneity and creativity in psychotherapy and developed ways to enhance the creative spirit. Moreno's epitaph reads, "Here lies the man who brought laughter and play back into psychiatry."

J. L. Moreno realized that some aspects of the mind cannot be adequately accessed through words. Some feelings are best expressed through action, interpersonal interaction, or imagery, and improvisational theater can provide a channel for understanding and healing in this context. **Psychodrama** is primarily an action approach to group therapy in which clients explore their problems through role playing, enact situations using various dramatic devices to gain insight, discover their own creativity, and develop behavioral skills.

J. L. Moreno never meant for psychodrama and associated concepts to be used only in psychiatric treatment. The principles and techniques of psychodrama can be applied to many nonclinical contexts and are useful for professional training, education, spiritual development, recreation, building social intelligence, management training, business, community building, spontaneity and imagination development, and everyday life (Blatner, 1996).

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Zerka T. Moreno

Zerka T. Moreno Foundation Collection

ZERKA TOEMAN MORENO (1917–2016) was a pioneer in the development of psychodrama, a humanistic approach to understanding people. Zerka Moreno contributed greatly to the theory and practice of psychodrama, and she helped shape psychodrama in the decades after it was first introduced. She is recognized as a key figure in extending J. L. Moreno's work by bringing psychodrama to many parts of the world. I invited Zerka Moreno to describe her own process of getting involved in the field of psychodrama, her relationship and work with her husband (Jacob), and highlights of her personal journey. The biographical sketch that she provided follows.

"What I should most like people to remember about me is that I was fortunate to be in awe of life in its multiple dimensions. Meeting J. L. Moreno when I brought my psychotic older sister to him for treatment was a major turning point in my life. Moreno dealt with people who were psychotic because he fully grasped what they were experiencing and coping with, and it was his desire to accompany them in their healing process and to assist them in finding new meaning in life. His humility in dealing with them was touching. He also opened up entire horizons for me that I could not begin to imagine. Most of all, he saw something in me and believed in me in a way no other human being had. This made a huge impact on me, both personally and professionally.

"I became Moreno's student at the end of 1941, after my sister was discharged in a functioning state. I had been an art student with the idea of becoming a fashion designer. As a recent immigrant from England, I needed to earn a living, so I became a secretary. When Moreno offered me a scholarship to study with him, I insisted that I wanted to use my skills to assist him in working on his manuscripts, magazines, and books. When he opened his New York City Institute in March 1942, Moreno appointed me as his research assistant. I was totally unschooled in psychiatry, except for witnessing my sister's recurring illness. I was able to learn about psychodrama from my 7 years of apprenticeship from this master. Along with Moreno's encouragement and constant support, I came to believe that I could be a director of psychodrama. He began to include me in his treatment decisions with patients. I learned a great deal about psychodrama by participating in them with Moreno, especially in my roles as an auxiliary ego as a double (techniques in psychodrama), as well as doing research and writing about our work. During our partnership over a period of 33 years, the influence of our work spread internationally.

"One of my contributions to the field was the fact that I could do psychodrama work in my own way. I learned that I did not need to have J. L.'s special charisma to effectively facilitate a psychodrama and that I could develop my own unique therapeutic style by using my own gifts of spontaneity and creativity. Since Moreno's death in 1974, I have been able to continue to bring our work to countries around the globe. What I have learned from working in various countries is that these diverse cultures do indeed color the psychodramas in which people become involved. For instance, in Japan in the 1980s I was conducting a psychodrama and my suggestion to present a family photograph did not succeed, for doing this would go against the participants' culture. In Korea, the overriding problem presented by professional women was their relationship to their mothers-in-law. In Turkey, I expected the group members to work on their experiences of the recent earthquakes. Instead, the group participants presented family problems for exploration, much as one would find in the United States. The one universal theme seems to be this: Suffering wears the same face everywhere, no matter what its source.

"I have been pleased to be involved in writing about psychodrama and bringing this therapeutic approach to many people. Today, in my 98th year, I can truly say with Edith Piaff: 'Non, je ne regrette rien.' Not only are there no regrets, but rather profound gratitude for what my life has been."

Zerka Moreno died at the age of 99, working right up until her death, seeing patients from her nursing home bed.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Adam Blatner

ADAM BLATNER (b. 1937) had a congenital condition that required medical care for several years, and he had successful surgery in mid-childhood. He became fascinated with anatomy, medical procedures, and the doctors who treated him. At a very early age, Blatner decided he wanted to learn how to help other sick children. He graduated from medical school at the University of California, San Francisco in 1963.

During his medical student experiences, Blatner found that patients' life stories were even more compelling than the wonders of the human body. After receiving his MD, he decided to continue specialty training in child and adult psychiatry. It was during this time that he felt the limitations of the then dominant school of psychoanalysis. Blatner has always been creatively expressive—he sings, dances, cartoons, and plays characters. When he was introduced to the therapeutic method of psychodrama, he found a compatible approach. He was excited by the opportunity to interact with clients in a framework that could validate their creativity and cultivate their strengths as new options were explored to work with their problems. He received training with J. L. Moreno and colleagues and became a director and teacher of psychodrama.

Adam Blatner has applied psychodramatic methods in his clinical work; has taught these methods to many students and professionals around the world; and is a major author of books, chapters, and articles in this field. He has been committed to deepening the theoretical foundations of the theory and practice of psychodrama and to broadening the range of applications, including integrating psychodrama techniques with other forms of therapy. He has been an active collaborator and supporter of the creative arts therapies in North America and internationally.

Classical psychodrama involves a group setting, is client-centered, and is a complex and intense method that requires 2 or more hours of group work. It involves warming up the group, selecting the main player, warming up and working with the client as the main player, returning to a deeper involvement of the group-as-a-whole, and sharing this experience. Classical psychodrama entails an extended process of enacted exploration, which is an elegant and complex process that requires a good deal of training. Because of its length and the relative scarcity of trained practitioners, this type of group work is rare today, with the exception of groups that are specifically psychodrama-oriented or when used for training purposes. Classical psychodrama takes many years of study to master, but clinicians can borrow some of these techniques and ideas for their work today.

The emphasis in this chapter is on identifying selected psychodramatic techniques that can be integrated into group work—such as role playing—and explaining their underlying principles (Blatner, 2005). Group workers with diverse theoretical orientations can use these limited forms of psychodrama to foster problem solving, communication, and self-awareness (Blatner, 2001). The key idea of psychodrama is using enactment as a rehearsal for living; it is an opportunity to rework the responses as if we were the codirector as well as the principal player of our life. This process does not require excessive emotionality or theatrics.

Psychodrama's roots lie in Moreno's experiments around 1921 with an improvisational drama troupe he called the "Theater of Spontaneity." The actors did not memorize any scripts but enacted scenes in an impromptu fashion based on events drawn from the daily newspaper or topics suggested by the audience. Occasionally, people in the audience were invited to react to these scenes and come up and demonstrate how they might have played one or another

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

of the roles differently. Moreno found that both the actors and the audience members experienced a psychological release of pent-up feelings (catharsis) as a result. The Theater of Spontaneity led him to develop the group methods and specialized therapeutic techniques that in the mid-1930s evolved into psychodrama.

Another way to think of psychodrama is that it is a form of experiential learning. Action methods help people explore problems by setting up situations and improvising, first, to discover their own more authentic feelings, then learning to empathize with how others might be feeling, and finally, trying out different behaviors. At each step, people are helped to explore their challenges through improvised role playing. The scenes are played as if they were occurring in the here-and-now, even though they might have their origins in a memory or in an anticipated event.

Psychodrama allows group members to explore various roles and aspects of themselves, and to experience their perception of others with whom they have a relationship. The techniques of psychodrama encourage people to express themselves more fully, explore both intrapsychic conflicts and interpersonal problems, receive constructive feedback on how they come across to others, reduce feelings of isolation, and experiment with novel ways of approaching significant others in their lives. This approach certainly helps to enliven group interactions. Z. T. Moreno (1983) writes that "psychodrama represents a major turning point away from the treatment of the individual in isolation and toward the treatment of the individual in groups, from treatment by verbal methods toward treatment by action methods" (p. 158). Rather than have individuals *talk about* their hopes, dreams, and struggles, J. L. Moreno asked people he worked with to *show* their feelings and situations in the unfolding group setting (Blatner, 1996).

Key Concepts

J. L. Moreno's ideas should be recognized as involving not merely techniques, however useful, but also very important insights about the nature of human relationships. There is considerable value in incorporating these perspectives in an integrative approach to group work.

Creativity

Moreno was unique in his belief that a major function of the therapeutic process is to promote the client's creativity in exploring life, expanding oneself, and in coping with life. Creativity often emerges best not from careful, reasoned planning but as surges of inspired action, and creativity is often generated through active experimentation (Blatner, 2001). Psychodrama aims at fostering creativity in the individual, the group, and ultimately in the culture as a whole. Psychodrama entails the idea that each person is responsible for becoming more creative and for promoting creativity in others. Psychodrama can be thought of as a kind of laboratory for psychosocial experimentation and enhanced creativity (Blatner, 2005). For example, a client can experiment with many different ways to be assertive with a friend and imagine responding in a new and creative way.

Spontaneity

According to Blatner (2000), one of Moreno's significant insights is that the best way to promote creativity is through spontaneous exploratory activities; *doing* activates the imagination and intuition. Moreno's use of *spontaneity* stands out because so many of life's activities tend to inhibit spontaneity. Moreno sought to reverse this trend by creating contexts and activities that would maximize the courage to improvise.

Moreno observed that children were relatively more able than adults to enter into role-playing and fantasy situations and to express their feelings freely. As people grow older, they tend to become less and less spontaneous. To remedy this tendency, Moreno developed methods for training spontaneity aimed at freeing people from limiting "scripts" and rigid and stereotyped responses. He considered spontaneity training to be a prime way of enabling people to meet

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

new situations from a fresh perspective. It could be said that spontaneity is Moreno's definition of mental health because we learn to live in the here-and-now; we stop throwing our old solutions onto new problems (Nicholas, 2009).

From Moreno's perspective, **spontaneity** is an adequate response to a new situation or a novel response to an old situation, meeting each moment in a fresh and adaptive way. Spontaneity should not be thought of as impulsive behavior or as a license to act out; spontaneity involves reflection and gives people the ability to act according to the situations they face. Instead of encountering a new situation with anxiety, spontaneity fosters a sense of being capable of approaching a challenging situation (Z. T. Moreno et al., 2000). Blatner (2000) believes that in spontaneity there are elements of courage, liveliness, engagement, openness, the willingness to take risks, and a stretching of the mind. "Spontaneity involves an inclination towards questioning, challenging, re-thinking, re-evaluating, taking a fresh look—it is a shift in attitude" (pp. 83–84).

Working in the Present Moment

Working in the present moment is a concept closely related to creativity and spontaneity. Pioneered by Moreno years before it became fashionable, action in the here-and-now is an important element of psychodrama. Clients *talk about* situations in the past or the future to distance and defend themselves against experiencing their feelings. By re-creating those difficult situations as if they were happening in the present moment, encountering each other in the here-and-now, the actual encounter is brought into consciousness. When the protagonist (group member) slips into narrating, or begins to talk about a problem, the director steers the protagonist into action by saying, "Don't tell me *about* it, show me what happened, as if it's happening now" or "Show me frustrated, show me angry." A member may be asked to "Show us what happened when you were a young child and you found out your parents were divorcing" (Blatner, 2001).

A basic tenet of psychodrama is that reliving and reexperiencing a scene from the past gives participants both the opportunity to examine how that event affected them at the time it occurred and a chance to deal differently with the event *now*. By replaying a past event "as if" it were happening in the present, the individual is able to assign new meaning to it. Through this process, the client works through unfinished business and reframes that earlier situation.

Psychodrama can also deal with a present conflict: "Show us the conflict you are now experiencing between staying in college versus quitting." And psychodrama enables members to bring the future into the now: "Show us how you'd like to be able to talk with your partner one year from now." The past, present, and future are all significant tenses, yet the action is played out in the present moment. When members engage in *showing others* what they are thinking or feeling, they move toward concrete experiencing and cut through defenses. They also move away from abstract and intellectual discussions about a topic when they plunge into personal enactment of a concern.

Encounter

The underlying goals of immediacy and involvement were further supported when Moreno taught the principle of encounter, which he started writing about in 1914, long before the encounter group movement began in the 1960s. An **encounter** occurs when individuals connect with one another in a meaningful and authentic way. This encounter occurs in the context of the here-and-now, regardless of whether the enactment relates to a past event or to an anticipated future event. It involves both directness of communication and self-disclosure. There is great power in encountering. Even when done only symbolically in the form of role playing, it is still more effective than merely reporting an incident.

A psychodrama encounter is not a full encounter because the protagonist is encountering the significant other as portrayed by an auxiliary. In that sense, it is an incomplete encounter, whereas a complete encounter involves two protagonists meeting "eye to eye, face to face," as Moreno explained in his works. However, encountering someone playing the role of a significant other in psychodrama is powerful and healing. For example, if I can change the "father" that resides inside me through psychodramatic work, then my perception of my actual father may change, my behavior toward

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

him may change, and, ultimately, my actual father may change because I am relating to him in a different way.

Moreno envisioned an ideal encounter as involving both parties opening their minds and hearts to the viewpoint of each other through role reversal, imagining what it might be like to be in the other's predicament. Encountering is at the very core of psychodrama; through this process people not only meet but also understand one another on a deep and significant level.

Most clients with some psychological-mindedness still need help in reversing roles with significant others whose behavior may have caused them pain. Group members should have a number of opportunities to feel validated in their own experience before reversing roles with those challenging people.

Tele

Tele is a two-way flow of feelings between people and is Moreno's term for a dynamic similar to rapport. He calls it a "feeling of individuals into one another, the cement which holds groups together" (J. L. Moreno, 1964, p. xi). For many people, this dynamic operates at a preconscious or even unconscious level. Tele and helping people to become more explicitly aware of their interpersonal preferences is a major component of developing self-awareness.

Tele is a therapeutic factor related to change that promotes healing through a reciprocal empathic feeling. The level of positive tele in a group correlates with its cohesiveness. People naturally, or for not-so-obvious reasons, feel attracted to certain people and are put off by others. Addressing the attraction or lack of attraction among the people in a group is essential to understanding the dynamics of a group. Moreno believed the therapeutic relationship required the development of positive tele. When this rapport is positive and reciprocal, the people involved tend to be more accurately empathic with each other. When tele is negative, misunderstandings multiply and are inclined to be compounded (Blatner, 2000, 2009).

Surplus Reality

Psychotherapy helps people become more conscious of their deeper attitudes and motives, and sometimes it is useful to bring unspoken and unfulfilled fantasies into explicit awareness. Instead of talking only about what actually happened or what might in fact yet occur, it is often more important to help the client become clear about what was hoped for or feared, even if it is not realistic. Psychodrama includes the portrayal of such scenes, and Moreno gave the name **surplus reality** to these enactments that reflect the psychological world of the client apart from any concern for the limits of ordinary reality (Z. T. Moreno et al., 2000).

These concrete expressions of the imagination enable psychotherapeutic exploration of events that did not occur. Therapists often ask clients questions such as these: "What if you could have spoken up?" "What if she hadn't died?" "What if you could have a new mother or father?" In psychodrama this "what if" perspective is made more explicit by being physically enacted in the present, going beyond the limits of being realistic to acknowledge the way emotions work in the realm of "what could have been *if only* _____." For example, a son can talk to a father who died before they had a chance to say good-bye to each other. A woman can encounter her wiser self from 20 years in the future. A man can go back and experience the perfect seventh birthday to counter memories of what had been a humiliating or disappointing actual event. Using surplus reality, individuals can encounter lost others to talk out previously unexpressed emotions and ask and answer questions. Surplus reality can also be used to replay an unfortunate or even traumatic event so that the individual experiences a more empowered or satisfactory ending. Clients often find that their wish to have done something different is not as fulfilling as they had imagined. For example, a man whose partner had been unfaithful harbored the belief that if only he had physically thrown his partner into the street it would have made him feel less impotent. But during a role play in which he repeatedly throws his partner onto the lawn, he suddenly realizes that he had been angry at himself for being passive and that a violent act was not going to make the pain go away.

Moreno called psychodrama a "theater of truth" because the most poignant and central truths in the minds and hearts of people often go beyond ordinary reality and involve the extra dimension of what could have been or what might have happened if things

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

were different. Helping clients to become conscious of their own repressed emotions and implicit beliefs and attitudes requires a context that evokes spontaneous responses and bypasses tendencies to defend oneself through verbal distancing, narration, describing circumstances, and explaining. All of these are forgotten when the protagonist engages in a direct encounter with another.

Catharsis and Insight

Although psychodrama has been considered a therapy that works because of the catharsis it engenders, this may be somewhat misleading. It is not necessary for therapists to press for catharsis itself. Indeed, in many enactments this may be contraindicated. However, when an individual needs to rediscover repressed emotions, techniques that facilitate this reconnection of conscious and unconscious functions tend to evoke catharsis just as exercising tends to evoke sweat.

A main function of most ego-defense mechanisms is to compartmentalize emotions and attitudes. When these complexes reconnect, emotions tend to be released: tears, laughter, anger, vulnerability, guilt, hope. **Catharsis** is the expression of stored-up feelings that are released by verbally and physically acting out an emotion-laden situation. Catharsis often accompanies the experiential aspect of therapy, and it is a natural part of the psychodramatic process, but it is not in itself a goal. Simply rediscovering buried emotions will not bring about healing; these feelings must be worked through for integration to occur (Bemak & Young, 1998; Young & Bemak, 1996). For those who have lost awareness of the roots of their feelings, emotional release may lead to insight or to an increased awareness that the problem is real.

Insight is the cognitive shift that connects awareness of various emotional experiences with some meaningful narrative or some growing understanding. Insight adds a degree of understanding to the catharsis, but the experience itself often provides sufficient "action insight." Moreno did not find it necessary for his patients to have verbal insight in order to get well. Instead he talked about *action learning* and *action insight* and saw healing as an internal state not always attainable by verbal means. For Moreno, learning was more affective than cognitive.

It should be noted that protagonists can be helped to find the words that express their feelings using various psychodramatic techniques and so achieve insight. Insight, for the protagonist, might also occur following the enactment when other group members are sharing their own feelings and reactions to what happened on the stage. Often the other players (auxiliaries) and audience members also experience varying degrees of insight regarding their own life situations. There are many routes to achieving insight, and it is much more than an intellectual understanding of a problem or a situation.

Once people allow themselves the freedom to release intense emotions that have been controlling them and come to a cognitive and emotional (or experiential) understanding that they are no longer compelled to continue living as they did before, they can begin to gain control over inappropriate modes of either suppressing or expressing those feelings.

Reality Testing

The psychodramatic group offers an opportunity to find out how others feel and what the results of certain behaviors might be. The group is like a laboratory that offers a relatively safe setting for **reality testing**, that is, trying out behaviors that may not generally be socially acceptable in "real-life" situations.

For example, a young woman is in great emotional pain over what she sees as her father's indifference to her. She sees the ways he has passed up opportunities to demonstrate love for her. Following a psychodramatic enactment in which the young woman "tells" her father of her feelings of missing this love, she may still be angry with him and expect him to make the first move to change matters. During the discussion phase, the leader or the members can point out that she is assuming that he must be the person to initiate a closer relationship. The father may be fearful of showing her affection and attention, thinking that she is not interested in such a relationship with him. The group can be instrumental in helping her see that she may have to make the first move if she wants to change her relationship with him. Then psychodrama can again be used as a reenactment for her to practice a new approach to the relationship, translating insight into action. This enactment maximizes the process of interpersonal learning.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Role Theory

In the 1930s Moreno was one of the originators of social role theory, a way of thinking and talking about psychological phenomena that has many practical implications. Using psychodrama, we can examine the roles we play, renegotiate them, and choose different ways to play these roles. In psychodrama the members are given the freedom to try out a diversity of roles, thereby getting a sharper focus on parts of themselves that they would like to present to others. Playing roles also enables participants to discover hidden parts of themselves. They can recognize and explore stereotyped ways of responding to people and break out of rigid behavior patterns, creating new dimensions of themselves (Carnabucci, 2014).

Moreno's **role theory** taught that we are all improvisational actors on the stage of life, creating our parts without scripts. By thinking of our behavior patterns as roles in a drama, we are encouraged to bring a measure of reflection to the task, much as an actor stands back during rehearsal and considers how best to play the role assigned. We can go further and question which roles we want to take on or which roles are to be played out. More than merely performing social roles, we are able to actively modify certain roles. Indeed, we have the capacity to break out of roles when we discover that they no longer serve us.

Role playing, which is largely an extension of psychodrama, involves the sense of "playing with" the role, bringing a measure of spontaneity and creativity to it, refining it, and at times even redefining or radically renegotiating the role (Kipper, 1986). Psychodrama is one way to help people become more conscious and creative in how they play the various roles in their lives.

Role and Functions of the Psychodrama Group Leader

The psychodrama **director** (the main group therapist who facilitates the psychodrama) has a number of roles. According to J. L. Moreno (1964), the director has the role of producer, catalyst/facilitator, and observer/analyzer. Directors help in the selection of the protagonist and then decide which of the special psychodramatic techniques is best suited for the exploration of the person's problem. Directors organize the psychodrama, play a key role in warming up the group, and pay careful attention to what emerges in the drama. Directors function as catalysts and facilitators in that they assist the protagonist in developing a scene or series of scenes and facilitate the free expression of feelings. Only occasionally will they make therapeutic interpretations to help the protagonist gain a new understanding of a problem.

One of the main skills of the director is recognizing the protagonist's reluctance as insufficient warm-up rather than as "resistance." Insufficient warm-up is the primary reason for "stage fright" in the protagonist. An effective warm-up can do a great deal to create a safe climate within the group, whereas pushing protagonists to give up their defenses inhibits spontaneity. The director works to bring into explicit expression those concerns that might induce hesitation, such as a worry that group members might assume a judgmental stance. The director can then weave these ideas into a supportive exploration with the group, enabling protagonists to feel more connected to the other group members and thus be ready to courageously disclose yet another facet of their inner truth. Blatner (1996) cites Moreno's advice on this issue: "We don't tear down the protagonist's walls; rather, we simply try some of the handles on the many doors, and see which one opens" (p. 78).

The Basic Elements of Psychodrama

Classical psychodrama involves a *director* (the group leader), a *protagonist* (the main player), *auxiliary egos* (the supporting players), the *audience* (other group members who watch the action), a stage, and a number of psychodramatic techniques used to further the action.

The Protagonist (Main Player)

The **protagonist**, or main player, is the focus of the psychodramatic enactment—the one who presents a problem to be explored. As members interact with each other, a group member may raise an issue. If that person, the therapist, and the group agree that a

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

psychodramatic exploration is warranted, the person for whom the issue is most relevant generally becomes the protagonist of the ensuing psychodrama. The main player's role is assumed voluntarily although it may be suggested by the therapist or by the group. In general, it is important that members feel free to decline to be placed in the position of increased demand for disclosure.

The main player selects the event to be explored and, in negotiation with the director, chooses a scene from the past, the future, or an alternative present to be played as if it is happening in the here-and-now. In the case of a past event, it is not necessary to remember exact words but to portray the essential elements as experienced by the protagonist. The main player is the source of the imagery but requires the assistance of the director to explore a problem and to create a psychodrama. As soon as possible, the director encourages the main player to move spontaneously into action rather than merely talking about the event.

As the main player acts out a situation, it is important for the protagonist to have the freedom to explore any aspect of the scene (and related relationships) that seems significant. Although the director may encourage the main player to reenact a situation or deal with an anticipated event, the main player decides whether or not to follow the director's suggestions. In this sense, the director *follows* rather than *leads* the main player. The main player's preferences, readiness for engaging in a given theme, and decisions are given priority over the director's or the group's desires. With support from the group, the protagonist may choose to engage more fully in the scene. Effective psychodrama never involves coercion; the auxiliaries and the director are there to serve the main player.

The Auxiliary Egos (Supporting Players)

Auxiliary egos, often simply called "auxiliary," "auxiliaries," or "supporting players," are those in the group other than the protagonist and the director who take part in the psychodrama, usually by portraying the roles of significant others in the life of the protagonist. These people may be living or dead, real or imagined. Auxiliaries may also play the roles of inanimate objects, pets, or any emotionally charged object or being that is relevant to the protagonist's psychodrama.

Z. T. Moreno (1987) notes four functions of the auxiliary: (1) to play out the perceptions held by the protagonist, at least in the beginning; (2) to investigate the interaction between the protagonist and their own roles; (3) to interpret this interaction and relationship; and (4) to act as therapeutic guides in helping the protagonist develop an improved relationship. Effective auxiliary egos (or supporting players) can give a psychodrama greater power and intensity. A few ways in which they do this are by helping the protagonist warm up, by intensifying the action, and by encouraging the protagonist to become more deeply involved in the here-and-now of the drama.

The main player generally selects the group members who will serve as supporting players. These choices are made for both conscious and unconscious reasons. Some choices are made on the basis of characteristics of group members that are perceived as similar to those of the other figures in the scene. When a choice is made on this basis, the interaction between the main player and the supporting players is likely to be more spontaneous, real, and effective. Directors may make an exception to this rule if they want a group member to assume an auxiliary role with particular therapeutic potential. Although the protagonist has ideas about a problem, both the protagonist and the director have the function of coaching the supporting players in how to carry out their roles. This task sometimes entails giving supporting players some background on the person they are to play and a feeling for the style of that person. Protagonists may teach or coach a supporting player on how best to portray the behavioral style of a significant other. For example, suppose Joel, a group member, needs to confront his boss. If Joel first portrays the boss and is interviewed by the director, the auxiliary will have a better sense of how the role is to be played to bring out the authentic responses in Joel.

The director has the task of assessing whether the auxiliary's role playing is working more for the protagonist's benefit or meeting the auxiliary's needs. In the latter case, the auxiliary may be redirected by the director. The director needs to discuss this development during the sharing phase of the group because it usually has significant therapeutic implications for

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the auxiliary. It is important to remember that psychodrama is a *group process* and that auxiliary work has great therapeutic potential. Playing someone else's role often serves as a vehicle for getting in touch with parts of the self not uncovered while playing one's own role. At times, it is a good idea to permit auxiliaries some freedom of expression in their role portrayals. This can introduce novel elements that are surprisingly evocative. At other times, the director may help auxiliaries restrain their performance so it fits the protagonist's perception. Z. T. Moreno (1987) warns about possible dangers when the protagonist's psychodrama and the auxiliary's drama combine. She cautions both the auxiliary and the director to avoid doing their own psychodrama, thus taking the focus away from the protagonist's drama.

The Audience

The **audience** includes others in the group before whom the problem is explored. Even group members who are not engaged in the action play a role. As members witness the self-disclosure of others, they function psychologically as a kind of externalized "mirror." This gives the protagonist the experience of knowing that others share in looking at the world from the main player's point of view. The audience also functions in the ongoing improvisational process as the source of people who will volunteer or be chosen to enter the scene as auxiliaries, or as people who will share with the protagonist in an enactment on a future occasion.

Psychodrama benefits the whole group, not just the protagonist. Almost always some group members find a particularly moving resonance in the enactment, identifying with either the protagonist or one of the other roles. Usually, group members feel at least some empathy, and they can experience a release of their own feelings through their identification with others; they thus gain insight into some of their own interpersonal conflicts. These other group members (the audience) provide valuable support and feedback to the protagonist.

The Stage

The **stage** is the area where the enactment takes place. It represents an extension of the life space of the protagonist, and as such it should be large enough to allow for movement of the protagonist, the auxiliary egos, and the director. The stage is generally empty, but it is helpful to have a few chairs, perhaps a table, a variety of pieces of colored fabrics for costuming and other uses, and other items available as props. Props can be used to intensify the dramatic function. When a protagonist emerges from the group, the person moves to this area to create the psychodrama. In most cases, a special psychodrama stage is not available, but a section of the room can be designated for "as if" action. Those involved in the action are not expected to be particularly reflective or to function as interactive group members while playing parts in the psychodrama.

Phases of the Psychodrama Process

Psychodrama consists of three phases: (1) warm-up, (2) action, and (3) sharing and discussion. These phases are not absolute but are general intellectual constructs that help the practitioner build the spontaneity, apply it, and integrate the enactment with the group process.

Certain principles underlie the use of psychodrama action methods. First, warm-ups must be provided before moving into action so players do not feel overwhelmed by the ambiguity of the situation. Second, after an action segment, the protagonist and other group members need time to share what they have experienced to optimally integrate their feelings and insights. The following discussion of phases of the psychodrama process applies not only to classical psychodrama but also to the use of these approaches within most forms of group therapy.

The Warm-Up Phase

Warming up consists of the initial activities required for a gradual increase in involvement and spontaneity. This is aimed at encouraging maximum involvement. It includes the director's warm-up, establishing trust and group cohesion, identifying a group theme, finding a protagonist, and moving the protagonist onto the stage (Blatner, 1996, 2001). It is essential that participants be helped to get ready for the methods used during the action phase. Such readiness involves

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

being motivated enough to formulate one's goals and feeling secure enough to trust the others in the group. Physical techniques for warming up a group are commonly introduced and may include music, dancing, and movement or other nonverbal exercises.

Early in a psychodrama certain group members may emerge who appear ready to benefit from an experiential exploration of a problem. It may be an individual's relationship to a personal situation outside of the group or some group members needing to clarify their own interactions within the group. In these instances, the flow of group process serves as a warm-up enactment. In settings in which a psychodrama is to be the primary mode for exploration, the following warm-up methods have been used:

- The director gives a brief talk about the nature and purpose of psychodrama, and participants are invited to ask questions.
- Each member is briefly interviewed by the director. A lead question may be, "Is there a present or past relationship that you'd like to understand better?" As each person in the group responds to this question, a basis for group cohesion is being established.
- Members can form several sets of dyads and spend a few minutes sharing a conflict that they are experiencing and that they'd like to explore in the session.
- The go-around technique, in which members are individually asked to make some brief comments about what they are experiencing in the moment, can facilitate group interaction. Making the rounds can also focus members on personal work they would like to do during the session.
- In a long-term group with functional people, a nondirective warm-up is often used to get members ready for a session. For example, members may be asked to briefly state what they were aware of as they were coming to the session or to make any comments about their readiness to work.

The warm-up is aimed at creating an atmosphere of spontaneity that eases reluctance within members. Sometimes the group leader creates structured activities to help reduce anxiety and promote a climate of safety, trust, risk-taking, and playfulness. To be able to create a climate that fosters the development of spontaneity, group practitioners must be aware of their own feelings and draw upon them in intuitive ways. Scores of structured experiences can work as warm-ups, and Leveton (2001) describes a wide variety of both verbal and nonverbal warm-up techniques. In addition to structured techniques aimed at warming up a group for action, unstructured warm-ups such as the process by which a protagonist emerges from the spontaneous interaction at the beginning of a group session, may be used. The leader needs to pay close attention to verbal and nonverbal cues as the protagonist describes the issue to be explored.

Leveton (2001) states that a successful warm-up encourages members of the group to actively participate and assures members that all contributions will be rewarded. During the warm-up phase, members need to be reassured that the working environment is safe, that they each decide *what* they will reveal and *when* they will reveal it, and that they are free to stop at any time. The techniques are less important than the spirit and purpose of the warm-up; anything that facilitates the cohesion of the group, establishes trust, and enhances individual and group spontaneity is a useful tool for the initial phase of a psychodrama.

Francesca, a therapist who participated in a week-long psychodrama training group with 10 other therapists and a well-respected psychodramatist, describes what the warm-up process was like for her and what she learned about the importance of doing the warm-up well:

> We introduced ourselves by setting up our "favorite place." First, we talked about our favorite place that served as an initial warm-up. The room was merely a meeting space in a hotel, but it was transformed by each person as he or she assembled tables and chairs as props and turned the open space into a tree house, grandmother's kitchen, and a spot by the lake. The director acted like a facilitator to the main player, asking, "Is this right?" and "What can you see as you look out on the lake?" We learned how important it is for the main player to be involved in constructing the scene with the right details and people. I was somewhat reluctant to show my favorite place to the

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

> group, which was the bedroom I had as a child. Yet as I built the scene, I was transported back there, and many of the details I had forgotten came to my awareness, especially the sense of loneliness I felt as a child.

Francesca says she has never forgotten the necessity of enhancing the warm-up when she uses role playing with individuals, couples, and groups. She takes the time to create a safe and supportive climate by setting the scene, identifying the people in it, and then using role playing to help a client gain insight or practice new behavior.

According to Blatner (1996), the most important task during the warm-up phase is creating an atmosphere that fosters spontaneity. In his view, these four conditions are necessary for spontaneous behavior to occur:

- A sense of trust and safety
- A receptivity to intuitions, images, and feelings
- An element of playfulness
- A willingness to take risks and engage in novel behavior

Blatner (1996) notes the importance of the director's own warm-up as a key factor in creating a climate that encourages spontaneous behavior. It is during the warm-up period that directors are developing their own spontaneity. By communicating a sense of authenticity and warmth, they foster confidence and trust. Similarly, modeling risk-taking, self-disclosure, humor, spontaneity, creativity, empathy, and the acceptability of expressing emotions contributes to the group's cohesion. A theme may begin to emerge, and a protagonist may be selected and move onto the stage for action.

The Action Phase

The **action phase** includes the enactment and working through of a past or present situation or of an anticipated event. The goal of this phase is to assist members in bringing out underlying thoughts, attitudes, and feelings of which they are not fully aware. It is useful to facilitate the process so that the protagonist can move into action as soon as possible. In doing this, the leader can draw on important cues that the protagonist gave in presenting the situation, including facial expressions, figures of speech, and body posture. The director helps the protagonist get a clear focus on a particular concern. Rather than having the protagonist give lengthy details and risk losing the energy of the psychodrama, the director can ask the protagonist focusing questions or make statements such as these:

- With whom in your life are you having the most trouble at this time? [Pick the one with whom you need to do some work. Show us a scene.]
- Be your father [mother]. What would he [she] typically say to you? [Show us a scene.]
- Show us how you would want to respond to your mother [father].
- Show us a scene of how you'd like your partner to behave.
- Give us a few lines you'd like your son to hear.
- Tell us what you would most like to hear from your daughter.

The point of these interventions is to avoid commentaries and instead to plunge the protagonist back into a direct encounter and to try out alternative approaches in action.

Once protagonists have a clear sense of what they would like to explore, it is possible to create the scene and coach the auxiliary egos. After this focusing process, protagonists act out their problems and relationships on the stage. A single action phase may consist of one or several scenes. Scenes are constructed and enacted as they relate to the protagonist's issues. They may be interpersonal or intrapersonal in nature and usually progress from peripheral issues (presenting problems) to more central issues (the real or deeper problems). For example, if a member, Gayle, identifies a time when she felt abandoned, the leader might say: "Let's do a scene of an earlier time when you felt isolated and abandoned. Let's set it up." The enactment would then follow. At the end of a scene, Gayle or the director may suggest that the protagonist assume a different role in the same scene to determine whether she can respond more effectively. Another suggestion is that the protagonist fantasize about the future by acting out how things might be a year afterward, thus sharing private thoughts with the audience. The duration of the action phase varies and depends on the director's evaluation of the protagonist's involvement and on the level of involvement of the group.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

At times, most of a session may be devoted to the group as a whole working through interpersonal issues among members. At other times a common theme such as loneliness, fear of intimacy, or feelings of rejection seems to touch everyone in the group. With skillful facilitation by the group leader, the work of many group members can be linked and a common theme can be pursued.

At the end of the action phase, it is important to help protagonists acquire a sense of closure for any work they have accomplished. One useful way to facilitate closure is to arrange for behavioral practice to help the protagonist translate group learning to everyday life. In **behavioral practice**, a scene is replayed so the protagonist can experiment with a variety of new behaviors. Later the person can implement some of these new behaviors with significant others outside the group and cope with situations more effectively. To facilitate behavioral practice, the protagonist presents the situation as it was originally presented in the action stage and then can try out alternative ways of behaving. Role reversal, future projection, mirroring, and feedback are often used to help the protagonist get a clearer idea of the impact of this new behavior. (These techniques are described later in the chapter.)

A therapist who participated as a member in a psychodrama workshop provided this picture of what can be learned during the action phase:

> A very moving experience I had in a psychodrama group involved me participating as a member of the audience. One of the members decided to tell her drug-addicted 18-year-old son that he could no longer live with her. The director helped her explore a couple of past incidents when she felt she was not as supportive as she might have been. As she lived through these scenes, she was able to see that her feelings of failure as a mother were keeping her from forcing her son to get help. In a final scene, she was able to express both her feelings of needing to protect him and needing to force him into treatment. I later found out that she had followed through on her resolution to enter him into a detox program. This session impressed me because it explored both her heroism and her defeats. I began to see the holistic nature of psychodrama, which enabled her to explore her feelings, examine her cognitions, and experiment with new behavior.

The Sharing and Discussion Phase

The third phase of psychodrama involves sharing and discussion. After a scene is enacted, the psychodrama leader invites all the group members to express how the enactment affected them personally. Audience members often have strong emotional reactions to the protagonist's work. Those who took roles as auxiliaries may share in two ways. First, they may be encouraged to share what they found themselves feeling or thinking in their roles. Second, they can share something from their own life that was touched by the enactment.

Z. T. Moreno (Moreno et al., 2000) believes that both members and leaders need to be taught to have an open heart, not just an open mind. Sharing is a deeply personal process, not a cognitive reflection, and Moreno has some excellent guidelines for making the sharing session a therapeutic experience:

- Group members should not offer advice or analysis to the protagonist but instead talk about themselves and how they were affected by the enactment.
- The main player has engaged in open sharing, and this individual deserves more than an analysis or critique.
- Sharing has healing effects. The disclosure of others' experiences gives people a sense that they are not alone and leads to bonding.
- Interpretation and evaluation come later, when the main player is not so vulnerable.

During the sharing and discussion phase of psychodrama, the director's function is to initiate and lead a discussion that includes as many participants as possible to maximize feedback. This gives all the members in a psychodrama group the chance to express their feelings. It is important that the main players be given an opportunity for some form of closure of their experience. If they have opened themselves up and expressed deep feelings, they need to be able to count on the support of the group to integrate the meaning of the experience. If no such opportunity is available, protagonists may leave the session feeling rejected and lost instead of feeling freer and more purposeful.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The director must reinforce the kind of sharing that entails self-disclosure, support, and emotional involvement on the part of the members. The sharing is best structured so that members discuss how they were affected by the session, and in this way their own involvement, transparency, and growth are fostered. If participants attempt to analyze or to provide solutions, the director needs to intervene, for example, by asking questions such as these:

- How has Kanesha's drama affected you?
- Who or what most touched you in what you just saw?
- What experiences in your life relate to Kanesha's situation?
- Are there any feelings you had toward Kanesha that you'd like to share with her?

Sharing has another use for the director, especially in ongoing groups. New information group members reveal should be noted because this might well become the source for further therapeutic exploration, which the director could use with the relevant person's prior permission. By sharing their experiences, group cohesion is typically increased; members are able to see commonalities and are not left feeling as though they are alone in an unfriendly universe. Members have a basis for feeling accepted, and the feedback from other members acts as a reinforcement for them to continue revealing and exploring personal concerns.

Leveton (2001) stresses the importance of the director in helping the main player, auxiliaries, and other members find closure after a piece of work. **Closure** involves providing all who were involved in a psychodrama with an opportunity to talk about how they were affected and what they learned. A key aspect of closure is the process of shedding the roles (debriefing) of the main player and auxiliaries.

Closure depends on the client, the situation, and the group. The length of the session, the degree of cohesion, and the intensity of the work are other factors that determine what kind of closure is appropriate. If the group will not meet again, closure is particularly important. A period of discussion can be useful for "winding down" the emotional pitch to a more cognitive level and for helping the protagonist and the audience integrate key aspects of the session.

Although the emotional aspects of an enactment are of great therapeutic value, a degree of cognitive integration will maximize the value of experiencing emotions. Main players can be asked to express what they have learned from the enactment and the insights they have acquired. It is also a good practice to encourage main players to talk about the personal meaning of reliving the situation, to think of a possible course of action that will permit them to cope with repressed feelings, and of practical ways of dealing more effectively with similar problem situations in the future. Here are some of the tasks for closing a session that Blatner (1996) lists:

- Assist members in applying what they have learned in the group to daily living.
- Summarize some of the highlights of the session.
- Invite members to raise questions about the group process.
- Identify unfinished business.
- Make plans for the next session or identify future themes.
- Provide additional support.
- Engage in some kind of closing ritual (if appropriate).
- Deal with feelings about separation.

It is important to deal with unfinished business during the final stage of a psychodrama (Blatner, 1996; Leveton, 2001; McVea et al., 2011; Z. T. Moreno, 1987). Before ending a session, the director typically encourages members to verbalize any unspoken feelings that have developed during the psychodrama. Some problems will probably be opened up and fruitfully explored, but the main player may be far from having resolved the issue. After a successful sharing session, new work is likely to be shaping up as other members identify with what they just experienced. Of course, it is not wise to undertake further work in a given session if there is not ample time to address the issue adequately.

Members need to be warned of the danger of attempting premature and forced closure of an issue. It is essential that main players have ample opportunities to express their feelings, experience their conflicts, and explore the meaning of their emotional release. Clinicians, out of their own anxiety for wanting to see problems solved, sometimes suggest behavioral practice and an action plan before members have had a chance to ventilate and identify an area of personal concern.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Leveton (2001) notes that some practitioners expect perfection. Unless everything is settled, these leaders feel that they have failed. To avoid such feelings, they may try to force closure in situations where participants are better off if they continue reflecting on what has occurred. One of the most demanding tasks for the director is learning to bring closure to a session without curtailing members' further self-exploration, which is necessary for an in-depth resolution of their problems.

Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures

Psychodrama is an integrative approach that provides a context for applying its methods in a variety of therapeutic group settings (such as outpatient clinics, inpatient units, residential treatment centers, and private practice). Psychodrama methods can also be applied in groups designed for training counselors. Through recapitulating and reworking a situation from their life, psychodrama participants often are able to gain insights into an event and learn new ways of coping with interpersonal problems. Psychodrama uses a number of specific techniques designed to intensify feelings, clarify confusions and implicit beliefs, increase insight and self-awareness, and practice new behaviors. These techniques should be used for specific purposes related to what the protagonist and other group members need to experience to optimize relearning. Drama itself is not the goal (J. L. Moreno, 1978).

Directors have latitude to invent their own techniques or to modify standard psychodramatic ones. It is of the utmost importance that group leaders bring caution and commitment to the practice of their technical skills, and they need to know when and how to apply these methods. Effective psychodrama consists of far more than the mere use of certain techniques. Practitioners must learn to know, and work with, the members' psychological worlds in an educated, trained, sensitive, caring, and creative manner.

These principles provide guidelines for the practitioner's use of psychodramatic techniques (Blatner, 2000, pp. 227–228):

- Whenever possible, use physical action rather than talking about a situation.
- Promote authentic encounters as much as possible. Group members should speak directly to each other rather than explaining to the director.
- Look for ways to promote the active behavior of other members by getting them involved in an enactment as much as possible.
- Make abstract situations more concrete by working with specific scenes.
- Encourage participants to make affirmative statements about themselves by using sentences beginning with "I."
- Encourage members to deal with situations in the past or the future as if they were happening in the present moment.
- Recognize and tap the potential for redecisions, renegotiations, and corrective experiences in the present.
- Pay attention to the nonverbal aspects of communication.
- Work toward increasing levels of self-disclosure and honesty.
- When appropriate, weave in a degree of playfulness, humor, and spontaneity in a situation.
- Utilize symbols and metaphors, personifying them and making them more vivid.
- Include other artistic principles and vehicles, such as movement, staging, lighting, props, poetry, art, and music.
- Exaggerate or amplify behavior to explore a wider range of responses.
- Recognize and use warming up as a prelude to facilitating creative and spontaneous behavior.
- Utilize the therapeutic factors of a group.
- Integrate psychodrama with other therapeutic approaches and the creative arts.

Self-Presentation

In **self-presentation**, protagonists portray themselves and talk about their problem. For example, Jack wants to explore his relationship with his daughter, Laura. If the group is interested in this problem and wants to have it enacted, the director (group leader) asks Jack to stand up and come onto the stage area. They begin to establish a scene in which Jack interacts with Laura. Jack picks someone from the group to be the auxiliary playing his daughter. Jack states the problem as he sees

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

it, and the director helps to translate the narrative into an action so that "talking about" becomes "show us how you and your daughter interact."

Role Reversal

Role reversal is one of the most powerful tools of psychodrama; it involves looking at oneself through another individual's eyes. In **role reversal** the protagonist takes on the part of another personality portrayed in the drama. For example, the father can play the daughter's part, while the daughter plays the father. As an alternative, the father can be asked: "What does your daughter say or do?"

Through role reversal, people are able to get outside of their own frame of reference and enact a side of themselves they would rarely show to others (Z. T. Moreno et al., 2000). Once an enactment is set up, the director may wish to have protagonists use this technique to better portray how they imagine or remember the other personality and to reach a fuller understanding of the viewpoint or situation of the other. Through reversing roles with a key person in the psychodrama, the protagonist is able to formulate significant emotional and cognitive insights into the situation from another's viewpoint, which builds empathy with others. Nolte (2020) believes we can also gain insight when we reverse roles with abusive parents, or others who have wronged us. Doing this lets us experience roles that we reject and become aware of the shadow side of ourselves.

In setting a scene, the auxiliary ego (or supporting player) chosen to play a particular part (mother, father, sibling, lover, close friend, teacher, or relative) does not know how to enact either the nonverbal or the verbal components of the assigned role. The main player is asked to reverse roles to demonstrate this. As the scene unfolds, if the auxiliary ego begins to take the role in a direction that does not apply to the protagonist, the director can again invite a role reversal so that the auxiliary can get back on track. This intervention reduces the chance that the auxiliary will lose focus on the protagonist. The auxiliary is instructed to keep the drama true to the protagonist's perception of events.

The second and more important function of role reversal is to encourage protagonists to empathize with a significant person in their life. In assuming the role of that person in the psychodrama, they begin to develop a deeper appreciation for the person's world. This reversal allows them to experience the environment from a different perspective. Typically, the director suggests a role reversal when it appears that protagonists would benefit by attempting to "walk in the shoes" of the person with whom they are experiencing conflict. The art of this technique lies in the director's ability to warm up protagonists as if they were the other person (Blatner, 2005).

Z. T. Moreno (1983) explains that protagonists must act out the truth as they feel it and from their own subjective stance, regardless of how distorted their presentation may appear to the other members or the leader. For example, when Jack "becomes" his daughter, another member can assume the role of Jack as father. By playing the role of Laura as he experiences her, Jack may begin to come to a clearer understanding of how she feels. To warm-up the protagonist for this role shift, the director can interview Jack as he plays the role of his daughter. This technique also gives the director and the group a clearer picture of how Jack perceives his daughter and how he thinks she perceives him.

Z. T. Moreno (1983) maintains that this technique encourages maximum expression in conflict situations. Protagonists' distortions of these relationships can be brought to the surface, explored, and corrected in action. First, clients must "own" their emotions through ventilation, or catharsis. Then, by reversing roles, protagonists can reintegrate, redigest, and grow beyond situations that constrain them. Role reversal allows members to fully express their perceptions of reality, to get feedback from others in the group about their subjective views, and to make modifications of their perceptions to the extent that they discover distortions. It can be used throughout the drama to correct or modify the principal auxiliary's role portrayal and to present additional information to the auxiliary.

Role reversal is a useful psychodramatic technique that has many applications outside of group work. For example, it can be applied to supervision and can enable trainees to get an experiential sense of what it is like to be one of their "difficult clients."

Double

The **double** is an auxiliary player who gives expression to the protagonist's "inner self" by stating

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the thoughts and feelings that might otherwise go unexpressed. It is often wise to ask whether the protagonist wants a double, and it is important that the protagonist accept the double. Doubling performs the function of the "voice over" in cinema or television. The double stands to the side of the protagonist (to see and mirror the protagonist's nonverbal communications without intruding on the protagonist's perceptual field) and says the words that aren't being spoken. It is useful for the double to assume both the posture and the attitude of the protagonist to help the protagonist gain increased awareness of inner conflicts and repressed feelings and even express them. The director may introduce the technique by saying: "This is your double. If she says what you're thinking, repeat it. If it's not what you're thinking, correct it." It is important that the double not overwhelm or take over for the protagonist (Z. T. Moreno et al., 2000). As the encounter proceeds, the director might ask: "Is this double right for you? Is this what you are trying to express?" Doing this empowers the protagonist.

As an auxiliary, the double assists with the specific job of finding a part of the protagonist that is below the surface. Doubling is not an avenue for the supporting player to vent personal emotions unless those emotions are intuitively sensed as being what the protagonist is probably feeling. The double needs to pay close attention to cues given by the protagonist and to follow the lead of the protagonist. Doubling is one of the most powerful tools in psychodrama, and it must be used cautiously (Leveton, 2001).

Doubling is aimed at expressing preconscious, not unconscious, material and facilitating the protagonist's awareness of internal processes, which often leads to an expression of unvoiced thoughts and feelings. The double also acts to support the protagonist and as a link between the director and the protagonist. Once an alliance is developed between the double and the protagonist, the director may coach the double to insert some expansions or confrontive statements as a way of facilitating expression of feeling and the clarification process.

The double attends to process events and the immediate moment and is available to the protagonist in role reversals and in other roles. In Jack's case, the double technique might be used if he felt stuck or felt overwhelmed by his symbolic work with his daughter. The double would then help Jack stay in contact with and express his feelings. Effective doubling often results in the escalation of an interaction, and it is likely to provide the protagonist with the needed catalyst to say things that until now have remained unexpressed.

Multiple doubles may be used to represent and embody the various sides of the protagonist. They can represent the protagonist's conflicting sides or various roles the protagonist plays in life. With Jack, one double may represent the side of him that misses his daughter and wants to express love, and the other double can be the "cold father" who really wants to have nothing to do with her. The doubles may speak at the same time, or they may take turns. If the doubles are effective, the father's ambivalent feelings toward his daughter can be successfully portrayed on the stage, and Jack may come to see which side within him is stronger. Also, he may get a clearer picture of the feelings and attitudes he'd like to express to Laura.

Soliloquy

At times protagonists are asked to imagine themselves in a place alone where they can think out loud (soliloquize). The director may ask a protagonist to stop the action at some point, turn aside, and express whatever the protagonist is feeling at the moment. Or the director, on sensing ambivalence, may stop the action and ask the protagonist to walk around the stage and say what the protagonist is thinking and feeling. Or the protagonist may be engaged in a solitary activity, such as walking home. As a variation, the protagonist may soliloquize by having an inner dialogue with a double as the two walk together.

Like the doubling technique, the **soliloquy** describes what the protagonist may be thinking and feeling but not verbally expressing. For example, Jack may be asked to verbalize his thoughts during the course of a role reversal. This soliloquy gives him the chance to get a sense of what he believes Laura is thinking and feeling but perhaps not expressing directly.

The Empty Chair

Jacob Moreno originated the empty-chair technique and suggested this procedure to Rosemary Lippitt, calling it the *auxiliary chair* technique (Lippitt, 1958). This technique was later incorporated into Gestalt therapy by Fritz Perls, the founder of Gestalt therapy. The

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

empty chair represents a figure that is not present. It is used when an auxiliary ego may not be available for role reversal or when the actual person is too threatening to engage in an encounter. This technique is useful in bringing into consciousness the fantasies of what the "other" might be thinking or feeling. One can imagine a part of the self, such as the critical parent or the vulnerable child in an externalized format, and engage in a dialogue. The therapist acts as coach, facilitating bringing out hidden underlying assumptions or feelings. One of the more important uses consists of exploring what another person in one's social network might actually be feeling, and what that person's more realistic predicament might be.

The empty chair can be a useful technique when a psychodrama involves someone who is absent or who is dead. A group member, Adeline, can put her mother, who suddenly died, in the empty chair. Adeline can tell her mother what she meant to her and say many of the things that she did not get a chance to let her know before her death. During this time the director might sit or stand next to Adeline for support, or another member with a similar issue could be next to Adeline. A variation of this technique involves an extension of role reversal. Here Adeline is asked to sit in the empty chair, "become her mother," and speak to Adeline. This role reversal gives Adeline a chance to verbalize what she would like to have heard from her mother. In this way, the empty chair technique can serve as a way to complete unfinished emotional work (Leveton, 2001). There are many applications for this technique, and the empty chair is easily adaptable to working in one-to-one therapy sessions.

Mirror Technique

In the **mirror technique**, another member mirrors the protagonist's postures, gestures, and words as they appeared in the enactment. The aim is to foster self-reflection. If Jack (as protagonist) observes his own behavior as reflected by another person, he can see himself as others do. It is as if Jack had access to a live equivalent of videotape playback. This process may help Jack develop a more accurate and objective self-assessment. The feedback for protagonists may help them come to understand discrepancies between their self-perception and what they communicate of themselves to others. For example, if another member portrays Jack as demanding, critical, aloof, and cold, he is likely to wonder whether that's the way his daughter perceives him. This technique may be particularly useful if others in the group see Jack differently from the way he sees himself or if he has difficulty presenting himself verbally or in action. Blatner (2000) cautions that mirroring can be a powerful confrontational technique and must be used with discretion. It must be given in the spirit of concern and empathy rather than making the protagonist the object of ridicule.

Future Projection

Future projection brings an anticipated event into the present moment by acting it out so group members can express and clarify their concerns about the future. These concerns may include wishes and hopes, dreaded fears of tomorrow, and goals that provide some direction to life. Members create a future time and place with selected people, bring this event into the present, and get a new perspective on a problem. Members may act out either a version of the way they hope a given situation will ideally unfold or their version of the most horrible outcome.

Z. T. Moreno (1983) contends that the future has typically been a neglected dimension in therapeutic practice. When participants in psychodrama enact anticipated events as though they were taking place in the here-and-now, they achieve an increased awareness of their available options. Rehearsals for future encounters, coupled with constructive and specific feedback, can be of real value to members who want to develop more effective ways of relating to significant people in their life.

Once members clarify their hopes for a particular outcome, they are in a better position to take specific steps that will enable them to achieve the future they desire. To return to the case of Jack, he can be asked to carry on the kind of dialogue with his daughter that he would ideally like one year hence. He may even reverse roles, saying all those things that he hopes Laura will say to him. He can also project himself forward and tell her how he has acted differently toward her during the previous year. If Jack gets a clearer sense of the kind of relationship that he would like with Laura, and if he accepts his own responsibility for the quality of this relationship, he can begin to modify some of the ways in which he approaches his daughter.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The Magic Shop

The magic shop is occasionally used as a warm-up technique and may also be elaborated on throughout the action phase. The **magic shop** technique involves imagining and "creating" a shop that has many bottles and other exotic containers on the various shelves, each containing a different kind of personal quality. These qualities in their imagined containers can be obtained like magic wishes, but only if there is an exchange for some other quality that the protagonist already possesses. The key device is the bargaining the main player does with the auxiliary playing the "shopkeeper" for some imagined quality in one of the containers on the shelves. Jack, for example, may want to exchange his competitive style for the ability to open up to his daughter in a loving way. This technique can help him assess his priorities and see what is keeping him from getting what he wants from his relationship with Laura. The magic shop technique may be useful for protagonists who are unclear about what they value, who are confused about their goals, or who have difficulty assigning priorities to their values. This is a powerful technique, but Leveton (2001) indicates that it is of limited use: it must be timed appropriately, and it cannot be repeated very often with the same group. For more on the magic shop, see Barbour (1992) and Nolte (2020).

Replay

One obvious technique, used widely in musical or dramatic rehearsals, is that of simply redoing an action—refining it, replaying it with more expressiveness, or varying it in some other fashion. If you make a mistake, you might simply say, "That didn't work well enough. May I please do it over?" In psychodrama, the **replay** technique may be used to accentuate the sense of awareness in an action, to intensify the sense of ownership and responsibility, or to broaden the protagonist's role repertoire. Replay is a fundamental technique that has been modified and used in other approaches, especially in behavior therapy and Gestalt therapy.

Role Training

Role training involves a more systematic use of techniques such as replay, mirror, role reversal, and feedback and modeling from the group to help clients develop more skill and confidence in dealing with situations that had previously felt awkward or threatening. This is similar to *behavioral rehearsal*, a component of behavioral group therapy; however, the technique was developed by Moreno in the 1930s and it spread from there.

Psychodrama methods are not used only to bring out emotions or even to foster insight. Sometimes they can be applied in the service of expanding or refining an individual's role repertoire. Role training allows a person to experiment with new behaviors in the safety of the group. Protagonists have many opportunities for replaying a scene until they discover a response that fits them personally. They are given support, reinforcement, and feedback on the effectiveness of their new behaviors. As a part of working through a problem, the director typically focuses on acquiring and rehearsing specific interpersonal skills, which are often learned through the modeling of other members.

Participants are likely to be coached and to receive role training in situations such as a job interview, with the aim of learning how to manage their anxiety. Not only can they come into contact with their feelings, but they can also gain insight into behaviors that are likely to impede an effective interview. They can get feedback on the way they present themselves in the interview, and they can practice various behavioral styles to prepare themselves psychologically for what they see as a stressful experience. Members work on developing and practicing concrete social skills that will help them deal effectively with a range of interpersonal situations.

Group Theories in Action: A Psychodrama Application*

In opening a group session, I often use ideas from psychodrama by asking members to reflect on a past relationship that had an impact on them, or a current relationship they would like to understand better. This is an example of warming up group members to explore a relationship that concerns them. When I

*The group session discussed here is based on the psychodrama group work segment in the video Group Theories in Action, which is included in the Online Student Resources.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

invite members to identify a relationship they would like to understand more fully, Randy quickly indicates he is ready to work on how his relationship with his mother gets in his way of relating to women today. He begins by giving some details about all the ways his mother was critical as he was growing up.

I interrupt Randy as he talks *about* his mother and ask if he would be willing to pick a person that he could talk to in the role of his mother. Enacting a scene with his mother in a symbolic way in the here-and-now is likely to bring more vitality to his work. Randy is sitting next to Dana and says he could talk to her as his mother. Randy speaks directly to Dana as his mother:

> I was always anxious around you because I did not know how you might respond and never could understand your reactions. I wish you could have been more responsive to me. I have regrets over the way I was with you. I realize that my relationship with you greatly influences how I am around women today. I generally feel insecure around women.

After speaking directly to his symbolic mother, I ask Randy to reverse roles and "become his mother." Acting in the role of Randy's mother, we hear that she did the best she could, with what little she had. Then I ask Randy to be as critical as he remembers her being. Randy assumes his mother's tone of voice and her critical stance, playing this role with gusto.

Noticing that Dana is affected, I ask her to tell Randy what she is experiencing in the moment. Dana responds by letting Randy know that she was thinking of herself as a mother and wondering how her children feel about her. I suggest that Dana talk to Randy (who can stand in for her children) about the mother she has tried to be. Dana says, "I tried my best, but it was not good enough. I hope that you know how important you are to me, yet I think I let you down in some ways." Dana is asked to talk to her children about some of the ways in which she let them down, and she begins to realize how important having these conversations are in real life. Dana would like to talk to her children about her relationship with each of them, and I suggest that she talk symbolically to each of her children in this group. I might use the future projective technique to involve Dana in speaking to each child in the way she would like them to relate to her 6 months from now. Dana could reverse roles, speaking in the way she hopes each child would talk to her a year from now.

This intervention connects Dana and Randy with some painful themes, and other members have reactions to the work they are observing. One member is aware of his negative feelings toward his father whom he is not ready to forgive. Another member realizes she was not as attentive as she could have been to her children. The exchange involving Dana and Randy draws many members into asking for time to explore their relationships, especially early relationships that are influencing the quality of their present relationships. Members can be asked to symbolically bring these people into the room and explore what is emerging for them. Other members can assist in enacting the role play.

Applying Psychodrama to Group Work in Schools

Psychodrama produces insight through action. It is designed to bring the underlying attitudes, thoughts, and emotions of individuals into consciousness and expression. Classical psychodrama is too intense for use with children and adolescents, but role playing can be very effective for developing psychosocial skills that are essential for adapting to contemporary life. Role playing is an experiential mode that involves active integration of the imaginative and emotional dimensions of human experience, and it is widely used in education from preschool to professional graduate programs (Blatner, 2007; Crane & Baggerly, 2014; Green & Drewes, 2014; Kipper, 1986).

Other psychodrama methods can be useful with children and adolescents who are experiencing a conflict or a problem situation that can be enacted or dramatized in some form (Bannister & Huntington, 2002; Green & Drewes, 2014). Not only does the young person who is the focus of the action benefit, but other students in the group benefit as well. These action-oriented methods build group cohesion, offering opportunities for young people to become aware that their struggles are shared by others.

School groups are generally time limited and structured around a topical theme, and many of the techniques described in this chapter can enliven the work of both children and adolescents. Dramatic role play of previous or anticipated situations can be enacted by the students. School counselors who work

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

with younger students can utilize play therapy techniques in their portrayals. Puppet shows, dolls, and masks can be used to illustrate their complex and difficult problems through children's native language of play. Just as cathartic release can occur as children reenact painful experiences, feelings of self-confidence and self-efficacy can emerge from successful rehearsals of future challenges.

Role reversal gives a young person a chance to understand the world of others by experiencing the situation through others' eyes. This method expands a member's vision and assists in the development of empathy. The future projection technique has many possibilities for children and adolescents, especially as a vehicle for clarifying their concerns about their future. Group members can create the kind of relationships that they would hope for with others, they can rehearse for future encounters, and they can get helpful feedback on how they are coming across to others. The magic shop technique can assist young people in identifying some of their core values and clarifying how their values are related to their behavior.

Depending on what is going on within the group, other action-oriented techniques can tap the creativity, spontaneity, and imagination of the members. Group leaders must be mindful of choosing methods that are appropriate for the specific purpose of the group and for the school context. Leaders need to exert caution so they do not open up material that cannot adequately be dealt with within the limits imposed by the school setting or that exceeds their competence. The topic of training and supervision in psychodrama is addressed in detail later in this chapter.

Applying Psychodrama With Multicultural Populations

If practitioners take seriously the cautions that have been mentioned in this chapter, psychodrama can make unique contributions in helping ethnically and culturally diverse populations. Psychodrama is being used by thousands of professionals worldwide (Blatner, 2005). For many people who have English as a second language, psychodrama has some interesting applications. My colleagues and I have often asked group members to speak to a significant other in their native language as they are engaged in a role-playing situation in a group session (Corey et al., 2015). When they do so, their emotions quickly come to the surface. I recall a German-born group member who was speaking in English to her "father" in a role-playing situation. She did this in a detached manner, and what she said had a rehearsed quality. I asked her to continue talking to her father, but to speak in German. She did so and was quickly overcome with emotion. It was difficult for her to keep up her defenses against experiencing her intense feelings when she used her native tongue. It was not important for the leader or the other members to understand the exact words spoken. They could understand the underlying emotional message through the protagonist's nonverbal cues and tone of voice. After she finished her psychodrama, I asked her to put some English words to what she had been experiencing. She said that speaking in German had vividly brought back early images, which led to a powerful experience of reliving scenes from her childhood. This helped others who did not understand German to be more tuned into her work, and it also helped her put her emotional work into a cognitive perspective.

In the video program *Groups in Action* (Corey et al., 2014), Casey speaks symbolically to her mother in Vietnamese, and through role reversal that is also done in Vietnamese, the mother talks back to Casey. In another group program in the same DVD, Maria speaks to each member in the group about her thoughts and feelings in her first language, which is Spanish. These examples give experiential evidence of the therapeutic value of inviting members to speak in their first language at certain times.

If group members are very uncomfortable talking about personal issues, let alone displaying their emotions in front of others, some psychodrama techniques are most likely not appropriate. However, some of these techniques can be adapted to a problem-solving approach that makes use of cognitive and behavioral principles. It is possible to combine both didactic and experiential methods in structured groups with multicultural populations. All psychodrama techniques do not have to be used to elicit emotions and to encourage members to express

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and explore their feelings. Role-playing techniques can be productively adapted to structured situations dealing with trying on a new set of specific behaviors.

For those members who have grave cultural injunctions against talking about their family in a group, role playing that involves "talking" to their mother or father may be met with reluctance. This reluctance can be lessened with adequate warm-up procedures and by creating a sufficient level of trust and safety. The leader should fully explore the clients' cultural values and any hesitation to participate in certain techniques. This demands a high level of training and skill on the leader's part. It is easy to see that an untrained and culturally unaware leader could make group interventions that are counterproductive.

Evaluation of Psychodrama

Contributions and Strengths of the Approach

The action-oriented methods that have been described in this chapter can be integrated into the framework of other group approaches. Increasing numbers of practitioners are creating their own synthesis of psychodramatic techniques within their theoretical orientation. I value psychodrama's active techniques and role playing mainly because these methods lead participants to the direct experience of real conflicts to a much greater degree than is the case when members *talk about* themselves in an objective and storytelling manner.

Psychodrama offers a dynamic approach to life's problems and provides members with alternative ways of coping with their concerns. People often do not see alternatives for dealing with the significant people in their lives. In psychodrama, group members can demonstrate other ways of responding and thus provide the person with different frames of reference. In a role-playing situation, for example, Noreen approaches her partner, Sylvia, with a list of her shortcomings: In talking about her she says that Sylvia is selfish, she doesn't care, and she doesn't show her feelings or truly share her life with her. Through some variation of role playing, another member can demonstrate for Noreen a different way of relating to her partner that is not accusatory and that is less likely to cause Sylvia to become defensive and ignore her complaints.

Potential for Integration With Other Approaches

The concepts and methods of psychodrama offer imagery, action, and direct interpersonal encounters to psychodynamic, humanistic, and cognitive behavioral approaches. Most of the approaches covered in this book can be enriched by making the group process more experientially meaningful. In turn, psychodramatists have integrated concepts and techniques from other approaches (Baim et al., 2007). For example, discussion, cognitive processing, modeling, and feedback may aid in working through the feelings and aligning attitudes brought to the surface by the cathartic experience of psychodrama.

As discussed earlier, psychodrama frequently involves catharsis, but catharsis is not the main goal of psychodrama. Instead, catharsis is a natural product of the process of integration or healing. Group members often do not recognize the power of experiential techniques until they are involved in intense emotional work. Group therapists need to be able to assist members in working through the release of feelings and guide members in gaining an understanding of the meaning of a cathartic experience. Although there is value in catharsis, my experience with groups has taught me how essential it is to provide a context in which members can come to an understanding of how their unexpressed emotions have affected both themselves and their relationships. J. L. Moreno taught that every emotional catharsis should be followed by a catharsis of integration (Blatner, 2000).

Psychodrama can foster a healing catharsis when that is what is needed, and it can also be a useful force in integrating insights and developing and practicing more effective behaviors. From my perspective, deep personal changes will come about only if members are taught how to transfer what they have learned in their sessions to everyday situations, which is a vital part of psychodrama. It is also critical to teach members how to maintain these positive emotional and behavioral changes. This can be done by helping them plan ways of coping effectively when they meet with frustration in the world. An appropriate time for this cognitive work and formulation of action plans is toward the

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

end of the sharing session after the psychodrama has been brought to a close. One useful way to help members achieve closure on some of their emotional issues is to have them begin to think about the meaning of heightened emotional states. Members can be encouraged to reflect on how their beliefs and decisions may be contributing to some of the emotional turmoil they reexperienced in the psychodrama.

A major contribution of psychodrama is that it supports the growing trend toward technical eclecticism in psychotherapy. Psychodrama is most powerful when used within the group context. Practitioners are challenged to draw on whatever tools will be useful in a given situation. Yet psychodrama is best viewed as an optional set of tools rather than a single approach that in itself can address all of the group members' problems (Blatner, 1996).

Psychodrama is ideally suited for groups, but it can be adapted to individual, couples (Hayden-Seman, 1998), and family therapy as well. Variations of psychodrama are effective in groups with people of all ages. Expressive arts, play therapy, and drama therapy approaches in working with children and adolescents have been supported in the literature (Felsman et al., 2019; Green & Drewes, 2014). Psychodramatic methods can synergistically enhance techniques from group approaches that stress a cognitive behavioral orientation. For example, imagine a client role-playing a trip to see her mother. The director asks the client to speak aloud her thoughts and feelings about her upcoming visit (a soliloquy). This brings cognitive therapy into a here-and-now experience. As you read about other group therapeutic approaches, you will see how many of the basic concepts and techniques of psychodrama appear in what are sometimes referred to as "innovative therapies." See Blatner (1996, 2000, 2005) for a detailed discussion of integrations with other therapies.

Psychodrama is characterized by evolution and has continued to develop with significant refinements in theory and practice beyond the seminal work of J. L. Moreno (Baim et al., 2007; Dayton, 2005; Gershoni, 2003). Z. T. Moreno has made significant contributions to psychodramatic methodology, along with scores of other psychodramatists who have added their own innovations and applications. Horvatin and Schreiber's (2006) anthology, *The Quintessential Zerka: Writings by Zerka Toeman Moreno on Psychodrama, Sociometry and Group Psychotherapy,* compiles much of Zerka Moreno's work in one volume.

Limitations of the Approach

Blatner (1996) emphasizes that psychodrama is no panacea and that it must be used with good judgment and in a balance with other group therapy skills. Indeed, because enactment can evoke powerful emotions, therapists need to exercise humility in their commitment to continuing their professional and emotional education and in refining their own skills in the understanding and use of this most valuable method. Although spontaneity is one of the basic concepts of psychodrama, it can be misused. It is an ethical imperative that a group leader's spontaneity, inventiveness, and courage to try new techniques be tempered with a measure of caution, respect for the members, and concern for their welfare.

In classical psychodrama, one individual may consume the group's attention for an entire 2-hour session. The primary work is a deeper exploration of the life of the protagonist rather than an interpersonal interaction among group members. Although group members participate as auxiliaries and as the audience and later share their insights, the focus of a session is on one member. One psychodrama begets another, however, and warming up other group members to similar themes may result in further exploration by other group members. From a practical perspective, there is little time for the classical 2-hour psychodrama in most groups. However, some of the techniques that are often used in psychodrama can be incorporated into different kinds of groups led by group therapists with diverse theoretical orientations.

Practitioners who use psychodrama need to exercise caution in working with people who manifest acting-out behaviors and individuals with serious disturbances. It is critical that leaders have the experience, competence, and knowledge to deal with underlying psychopathology. In addition, they must have considerable sensitivity so that they do not push clients with disturbances past a point that is therapeutic. It is also important to use good judgment in structuring situations so that members are not likely to open up old wounds without getting some closure to their problems.

As with other approaches to psychotherapy, it is important that leaders using the powerful methods

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

of psychodrama also become aware of how their own personal problems and unmet needs might interfere with their professional functioning. If leaders are uncomfortable with emotions, they are likely to steer members away from expressing their feelings. Other group leaders may quickly become impatient with what they perceive as the "slow progress" of clients. Out of their desire to see more immediate results, they may resort to a variety of interventions designed to stir up emotions for the sake of drama. Group leaders need to be aware of how they experience, express, and manage intense feelings, and they need to gain awareness of their countertransference. A continued commitment to the director's own personal development is essential.

The underlying philosophy of psychodrama is consistent with many of the premises of existential therapy, person-centered therapy, and Gestalt therapy, all of which emphasize understanding and respecting the client's experience and the importance of the therapeutic relationship as a healing factor. Although group counselors who employ psychodramatic methods assume an active and directive role in facilitating a group, these methods will be most effective when the leader maintains the person-centered spirit (Blatner, 1996). Group leaders who are authentic, who are successful in making good contact with members, who are able to be psychologically present, who demonstrate empathy, and who exhibit a high level of respect and positive regard for their clients are most effectively able to implement a range of psychodrama techniques. One of the best safeguards for using these techniques appropriately is for a leader's practice to be grounded on a person-centered philosophical foundation.

Research on the effectiveness of psychodrama has been limited, and few controlled studies have been attempted (Wieser, 2007). Recent studies have provided support for psychodrama and "dramatherapy," a similar method (Feniger-Schaal & Orkibi, 2020; Gökkaya et al., 2020). Improvisational theater, a related approach, has been shown to reduce social anxiety (Felsman et al., 2019). It is difficult to separate the curative effects of the group from the specific effects of psychodrama, and this has led some psychotherapists to discredit the efficacy of psychodrama when evaluating outcomes (Norcross et al., 2006). To date, the psychodrama community has focused mainly on theoretical development and training practitioners, with research being a secondary emphasis. Much of the current research is not from the United States, and it is largely qualitative, concentrating on innovation with different populations and integrating psychodrama approaches with other methods (Karabilgin et al., 2012). There is more interest in psychodrama in Europe, Brazil, Argentina, and Turkey than in the United States (Nolte, 2020).

Training as a Safeguard

To minimize the limitations and potential problems that might be associated with psychodrama, those who practice psychodrama must have the necessary training and supervision in this approach. Simply reading about these techniques is not sufficient. Leveton (2001) warns about the irresponsible use of psychodramatic procedures. Ethical and skilled directors, Leveton says, are willing to devote the time necessary to develop their skills, and they have undergone a training program under the supervision of an experienced clinician. Psychodrama works best with clinicians who are well grounded in professional judgment and open to drawing methods from various approaches. It is important to remember that practitioners can use certain aspects of psychodrama without employing the full classical enactment for many populations.

The director's function is complicated and involves a combination of art and science, requiring several years of training (Z. T. Moreno, 1987). However, completing the requirements for the psychodrama practitioner certification can take much longer. The more fully practitioners live, the better they will be able to fulfill the functions demanded in a psychodrama.

Blatner (1996) contends that it is a basic assumption that directors have a theoretical, technical, and practical knowledge of psychodramatic techniques. To appreciate fully the potential values and risks inherent in these techniques, directors need to have participated in the process of experientially learning these techniques. The skills of an effective psychodramatist require many hundreds of hours of training and supervision. The training required for full certification as a psychodramatist includes having at least a master's degree in counseling or a related field and more than 780 hours of didactic and experiential work plus supervised experience directing

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

psychodrama sessions. Certification involves an examination based on ethical issues, knowledge of theory and practice, and an observation of the candidate's skills in leading psychodrama (Blatner, 2001). Group practitioners can learn a limited form of psychodrama, such as role playing, without the extensive psychodrama training required for certification as a psychodrama practitioner.

Students of psychodrama need to experience the process in all available roles: auxiliary ego, audience, director, and especially as protagonist. By getting personally involved in the psychodrama process, trainees not only learn a great deal more about themselves but develop sensitivity toward the role of the client. Inept leadership—manifested, for instance, in forcing people into situations with which they are not ready to deal—can have serious negative consequences for the participants. The sensitivity and expertise of the director are crucial if the experience is to be therapeutic.

Group practitioners who are interested in incorporating psychodrama into their style of leadership should realize that they do not have to be perfect in their first attempts to apply its methods. With supervised practice, experience as a member of a psychodramatic group, and specialized training, group practitioners are in a good position to acquire competence in applying some psychodramatic techniques in their groups.

Self-Reflection and Discussion Questions

1. A psychodrama group leader may say: "Don't tell me *about* it, show us as if it's happening now." What do you think about this emphasis on direct experiencing in the here-and-now?
2. Unless a group is cohesive, it is unlikely that members will risk role-playing significant life problems. What can you do to facilitate a sense of trust, safety, and willingness to take risks in a group?
3. Catharsis is a natural part of the psychodrama process, but it is not in itself a goal. These feelings must be worked with for integration to occur. What techniques from psychodrama would you choose to carry catharsis forward and enable integration?
4. What specific psychodrama techniques are potentially useful for the kinds of groups you may lead? To what degree are you likely to include these psychodrama techniques in your group work? How comfortable do you imagine you would feel in introducing psychodrama techniques?
5. The warm-up process is critical in setting up a successful psychodrama enactment. What are some ideas you have about ways you could warm up a group that would facilitate movement into action?

Where to Go From Here

If you are interested in learning more about the practical values and applications of psychodrama, you can make a good beginning by reading about the approach in journals and books. Also, consider seeking advanced training and supervision and attending reputable workshops led by certified psychodramatists where you can experience psychodrama as a group member. Not only will you learn how this approach works in a group, but you will also be able to work on some personal concerns and find new ways of dealing with them.

The American Society for Group Psychotherapy and Psychodrama is geared to the needs of professionals who want to learn about the latest developments in the field. It is an interdisciplinary society with members from all of the helping professions. The goals of the organization are to establish standards for specialists in group therapy and psychodrama and to support the exploration of new areas of endeavors in research, practice, teaching,

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and training. The society holds national and regional conferences and offers a number of membership benefits. For further information, contact the society directly:

American Society for Group Psychotherapy and Psychodrama (ASGPP)
P.O. Box 1654
Merchantville, NJ 08109-9998
Telephone: (609) 737-8500
Email: asgpp@asgpp.org
Website: www.asgpp.org
ASGPP journal: journal@asgpp.org
The American Board of Examiners in Psychodrama, Sociometry, and Group Psychotherapy was formed in 1975 to establish national professional standards in the fields of psychodrama, sociometry, and group psychotherapy and to certify qualified professionals on the basis of these standards. Two levels of certification have been established by the board: Certified Practitioner (CP), and Trainer, Educator, and Practitioner (TEP). Applicants must be certified at the first level before becoming eligible for certification at the second. The board website provides information on certification standards, application materials, fees, and how to find certified psychodramatists and psychodrama trainers in your area.

American Board of Examiners in Psychodrama, Sociometry, and Group Psychotherapy
1629 K Street NW, Suite 300
Washington, DC 20006
Phone: 202-483-0514
Email: abe@psychodramacertification.org
Website: www.psychodramacertification.org/
A series of three DVDs featuring the work of Zerka Moreno has been produced. In *Psychodrama in Action*, Zerka conducts an actual psychodrama session with a group of psychodrama practitioners. *Zerka on Psychodrama* describes the basics of psychodrama, and *Psychodrama, Sociometry and Beyond* is an extended interview by a panel of psychodrama practitioners.

Telephone: (800) 577-4762
Website: www.psychotherapy.net

Recommended Supplementary Readings

The Quintessential Zerka: Writings by Zerka Toeman Moreno on Psychodrama, Sociometry and Group Psychotherapy (Horvatin & Schreiber, 2006) documents the origins and development of the theory and practice of psychodrama, sociometry, and group psychotherapy through the work and innovation of its cocreator, Zerka Toeman Moreno. This anthology contains all of the articles by Zerka Moreno cited in this chapter as well as many of her writings from the early 1940s to the present.

J. L. Moreno and the Psychodramatic Method (Nolte, 2020) explains the psychodramatic method in detail. Nolte was Moreno's Director of Training, and he has done pioneered work using psychodrama to train trial lawyers and in other settings.

Acting-In: Practical Applications of Psychodramatic Methods (Blatner, 1996) is an excellent introduction and a guide for practitioners interested in using psychodramatic techniques in a group setting. This brief book is written very clearly and deals with the basic elements of psychodrama. It has become one of the most widely used basic textbooks for this approach.

A Clinician's Guide to Psychodrama (Leveton, 2001) offers an excellent and eclectic view of psychodrama. The writing is clear, vivid, and interesting. A number of psychodramatic techniques are described and illustrated through case examples that attest to the author's skills and creativity in applying these techniques.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Video

Watch Gerald Corey's *Group Theories in Action*, video via the Cengage eBook. The group session discussed in this chapter is based on an integrative approach to group counseling.

References and Suggested Readings

*Baim, C., Burmeister, J., & Maciel, M. (Eds.). (2007). *Psychodrama: Advances in theory and practice*. Routledge.

Bannister, A., & Huntington, A. (Eds.). (2002). *Communicating with children and adolescents: Action for change*. Jessica Kingsley.

Barbour, A. (1992). Purpose and strategy behind the magic shop. *Journal of Group Psychotherapy, Psychodrama & Sociometry*, *45*(3), 91–101.

Bemak, F., & Young, M. E. (1998). Catharsis in group psychotherapy. *International Journal of Action Methods, 50*(4), 166–184.

*Blatner, A. (1996). *Acting-In: Practical applications of psychodramatic methods* (3rd ed.). Springer.

*Blatner, A. (2000). *Foundations of psychodrama: History, theory, and practice* (4th ed.). Springer.

Blatner, A. (2001). Psychodrama. In R. J. Corsini (Ed.), *Handbook of innovative therapies* (2nd ed., pp. 535–545). Wiley.

Blatner, A. (2005). Psychodrama. In R. J. Corsini & D. Wedding (Eds.), *Current psychotherapies* (7th ed., pp. 405–438). Cengage Learning.

Blatner, A. (2007). Psychodrama, sociodrama, and role playing. In A. Blatner (Ed.), *Interactive and improvisational drama: Varieties of applied theatre and performance*. iUniverse.

Blatner, A. (2009, July 6). *Tele: The dynamics of rapport.* http://www.blatner.com/adam/pdntbk/tele.htm

Carnabucci, K. (2014). *Show and tell psychodrama*. Nusanto.

*Corey, G., Corey, M., & Haynes, R. (2014). *Groups in action: Evolution and challenges, DVD and workbook* (2nd ed.). Cengage Learning.

*Corey, G., Corey, M., Callanan, P., & Russell, J. M. (2015). *Group techniques* (4th ed.). Cengage Learning.

Crane, J. M., & Baggerly, J. N. (2014). Integrating play and expressive art therapy into educational settings: A pedagogy for optimistic therapists. In E. J. Green & A. A. Drewes (Eds.), *Integrating expressive arts and play therapy with children and adolescents* (pp. 231–251). Wiley.

Cruz, A., Sales, C. M. D., Alves, P., & Moita, G. (2018). The core techniques of Morenian psychodrama: A systematic review of literature. *Frontiers in Psychology*, *9*, 1263. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpsyg.2018.01263

Dayton, T. (2005). *The living stage: A step-by-step guide to psychodrama, sociometry, and experiential group therapy*. Health Communications.

Felsman, P., Seifert, C. M., & Himle, J. A. (2019). The use of improvisational theater training to reduce social anxiety in adolescents. *The Arts in Psychotherapy*, *63*, 111–117.

Feniger-Schaal, R., & Orkibi, H. (2020). Integrative systematic review of drama therapy intervention research. *Psychology of Aesthetics, Creativity, and the Arts*, *14*(1), 68–80.

Gershoni, J. (Ed.). (2003). *Psychodrama in the 21st century: Clinical and educational applications.* Springer.

Green, E. J., & Drewes, A. A. (Eds.). (2014). *Integrating expressive arts and play therapy with children and adolescents*. Wiley.

Gökkaya, F., Zorluoğlu, E., Işık, I., Önkür, B., Bozdemir, T., Kızıltan, R., Mıh, C., Salıkyüz, S., & Deniz, C. (2020). Investigation of effectiveness studies conducted by using cognitive behavioral group therapy, psychodrama and art therapy in Turkey. *Psikiyatride Güncel Yaklaşımlar*, *12*(2), 258–273. https://doi.org/10.18863/pgy.569156

Hayden-Seman, J. (1998). *Action modality couples therapy: Using psychodramatic techniques in helping troubled couples*. Jason Aronson.

*Horvatin, T., & Schreiber, E. (Eds.). (2006). *The quintessential Zerka: Writings by Zerka Toeman Moreno on psychodrama, sociometry and group psychotherapy.* Taylor & Francis.

Karabilgin, Ö., Gökengin, G., Doğaner, İ., & Gökengin, D. (2012). The effect of psychodrama on people living with HIV/AIDS. *European Journal of Psychotherapy and Counselling*, *14*(4), 317–333. doi:10.1080/13642537.2012.734529

Books and articles marked with an asterisk (*) are suggested for further study.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

*Kipper, D. (1986). *Psychotherapy through clinical role playing.* Brunner/Mazel.

*Leveton, E. (2001). *A clinician's guide to psychodrama* (3rd ed.). Springer.

Lippitt, R. (1958). The auxiliary chair technique. *Group Psychotherapy, 11*, 8–23.

McVea, C. S., Gow, K., & Lowe, R. (2011). Corrective interpersonal experience in psychodrama group therapy: A comprehensive process analysis of significant therapeutic events. *Psychotherapy Research, 21*(4), 416–429.

Moreno, J. D. (2014). *Impromptu man.* Bellevue Press.

Moreno, J. L. (1964). *Psychodrama* (3rd ed., Vol. 1). Beacon House.

Moreno, J. L. (1978). *Who shall survive?* (3rd ed.). Beacon House.

Moreno, J. L. (1985). *The autobiography of J. L. Moreno, M.D.* (Abridged). Moreno Archives, Harvard University.

Moreno, J. L., & Moreno, Z. T. (1958). *Psychodrama* (Vol. 2). Beacon House.

Moreno, J. L., & Moreno, Z. T. (1969). *Psychodrama* (Vol. 3). Beacon House.

Moreno, Z. T. (1983). Psychodrama. In H. I. Kaplan & B. J. Sadock (Eds.), *Comprehensive group psychotherapy* (2nd ed., pp. 158–166). Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.

Moreno, Z. T. (1987). Psychodrama, role theory, and the concept of the social atom. In J. K. Zeig (Ed.), *The evolution of psychotherapy* (pp. 341–366). Brunner/Mazel.

*Moreno, Z. T., Blomkvist, L. D., & Ruetzel, T. (2000). *Psychodrama, surplus reality and the art of healing.* Taylor & Francis.

Nicholas, M. (2009). Introduction to the special issue on psychodrama with some comments on Moreno's concept of spontaneity. *Group*, *33*(4), 291–295.

*Nolte, J. (2020). *J. L. Moreno and the psychodramatic method.* Routledge.

Norcross, J. C., Koocher, G. P., & Garofalo, A. (2006). Discredited psychological treatments and tests: A Delphi poll. *Professional Psychology: Research & Practice*, *37*(5), 515–522. doi:10.1037/0735-7028.37.5.515

Wieser, M. (2007). Studies on treatment effects of psychodrama psychotherapy. In C. Baim, J. Burmeister, M. Maciel (Eds.), *Psychodrama: Advances in theory and practice* (pp. 271–292). Taylor & Francis.

Young, M. E., & Bemak, F. (1996). Emotional arousal and expression in mental health counseling. *Journal of Mental Health Counseling, 18*(4), 316–332.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 9

The Existential Approach to Groups

Learning Objectives

1. Examine the key concepts and basic assumptions underlying this approach, including self-awareness, freedom and responsibility, intimacy and isolation, meaning in life, death anxiety, death and nonbeing, and authenticity.
2. Explain how the search for meaning is a central theme in existential group work.
3. Understand how the reality of death can be a catalyst for taking actions resulting in an increased sense of purpose.
4. Explain how techniques from diverse theories can be incorporated into a group that rests on existential principles.
5. Understand the unique emphasis placed on the therapeutic relationship in existential groups.
6. Understand the applications of the existential approach to brief therapy in groups.
7. Explain how existential themes have relevance to children and adolescents in school settings.
8. Understand how existential themes can enhance the exploration of multicultural concerns.
9. Evaluate the contributions and strengths of the existential approach to group therapy.
10. Identify some of the limitations of the existential approach to group work.

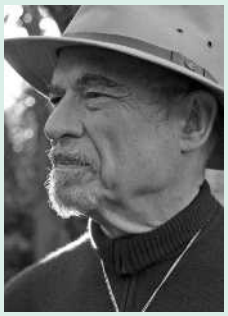
Introduction

Existential therapy can best be considered as a way of thinking rather than as a particular style of practicing group therapy. It is not a neatly defined, systematic model with specific therapeutic techniques. A wide range of beliefs, values, and practices characterize the field of existential psychotherapy, making it more appropriate to refer to *existential therapies* rather than to a single existential approach (Craig et al., 2016). Universal human concerns and existential themes constitute the background of most groups. This chapter deals with the practical implications of existential themes that have relevance to a wide variety of therapy groups, counseling groups, and support groups.

Existential psychotherapy places special emphasis on helping clients explore and understand existential concerns and how these concerns affect their life. Yalom developed an existential approach to psychotherapy

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Irvin Yalom


Courtesy Joseph Stroker.

IRVIN YALOM (b. 1931) was born of parents who immigrated from Russia shortly after World War I. During his early childhood, Yalom lived in the inner city of Washington, D.C. in a poor neighborhood. Life on the streets was perilous, and Yalom took refuge indoors reading novels and other works. Twice a week he made the hazardous bicycle trek to the library to stock up on reading supplies. He found an alternative and satisfying world in reading fiction, which was a source of inspiration and wisdom to him. Early in his life he decided that writing a novel was the very finest thing a person could do, and subsequently he has written several teaching novels, including *Love's Executioner* (1987), *When Nietzsche Wept* (1992), *Lying on the Couch* (1997), and *Momma and the Meaning of Life* (2000). In *The Schopenhauer Cure: A Novel,* Yalom (2005) describes the work of a group conducted from an existential perspective. One of the key themes involves facing the death of the group therapist in this fictional group.

Yalom is professor emeritus of psychiatry at the Stanford University School of Medicine, and he has been a major figure in the field of group psychotherapy; *The Theory and Practice of Group Psychotherapy* (Yalom & Leszcz, 2020) is currently in its sixth edition. His pioneering work, *Existential Psychotherapy,* written in 1980, is a classic and authoritative textbook on existential therapy. Yalom's (2008) nonfiction book, *Staring at the Sun: Overcoming the Terror of Death,* is a treatise on the role of death anxiety in psychotherapy, illustrating how death and the meaning of life are foundational themes associated with in-depth therapeutic work. Yalom's works, translated into more than 20 languages, have been widely read by therapists and laypeople alike.

Psychotherapy has been endlessly intriguing for Yalom, who approaches all of his patients with a sense of wonderment at the stories they reveal. He believes that a different therapy must be designed for each client because each person has a unique story. Yalom advocates using the here-and-now of the therapeutic relationship to explore the client's interpersonal world. His basic philosophy is existential and interpersonal, which he applies to both individual and group therapy.

that addresses four "givens of existence," or ultimate human concerns: freedom and responsibility, existential isolation, meaninglessness, and death. These existential themes are at the root of many psychological difficulties, and dealing with these concerns enables individuals to make changes that increase their psychological well-being and enhance the depth and quality of their life (Yalom, 1980; Yalom & Josselson, 2019).

Existential concerns often arise in group counseling. For example, one group member may have recently lost a loved one and is confronting the reality of mortality; another group member may be struggling to find meaning and purpose in life; and another group member may be suffering from a profound sense of isolation and loneliness. Because we all face these basic human concerns in one way or another, these discussions often result in poignant and powerful group therapy sessions.

The existential approach is grounded on the assumption that we are *free* and therefore *responsible* for our choices and actions. We need to be the pioneers of our life and to find models that will give us meaning. Even though we sometimes cannot control things that happen to us, we do have control over how we choose to perceive and handle them. Our freedom

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

to act may be limited by external reality, but our freedom *to be* relates to our internal reality. One of the goals of the therapeutic process is to challenge clients to discover alternatives and to choose among them. Schneider and Krug (2017, 2020) state that existential therapists are mainly concerned with helping people reclaim and reown their life. Schneider and Krug identify four essential aims of existential-humanistic therapy: (1) to help clients cultivate presence to both themselves and others; (2) to assist clients in identifying ways they block themselves from fuller presence; (3) to challenge people to assume responsibility for designing their present life; and (4) to encourage individuals to choose more expanded ways of being in daily life. Schneider and Krug (2020) identify presence as the core of existential-humanistic change processes. "This presence has two basic functions: (1) It reconnects people to their pain (e.g., blocks, fears, and anxieties), and (2) it attunes people to the opportunities to transform or transcend that pain" (p. 280). Presence involves what really matters in life.

Existential therapy is ultimately a process of exploring the values and beliefs that give meaning to living (Deurzen, 2012). Existential therapists invite clients to take action that grows out of their honest appraisal of their life's purpose. The therapist's basic task is to encourage clients to consider what they are most serious about so they can pursue a direction in life. An existential group therapist accepts the premise that clients must play an active role in the therapeutic process and that they have the capacity to make well-informed choices about living. Group members create their own purpose in the group, and the preferences, beliefs, motivations, and expectations of members significantly influence outcomes (Bohart & Wade, 2013). "Overall the research demonstrates that clients can take an active role in mining and managing their therapy experiences. Clients are 'co-authors' of therapy" (p. 245).

Historical Background of Existential Psychotherapy

Existentialism is a branch of philosophical thought that began in Europe. Søren Kierkegaard (1813–1855), a Danish philosopher and theologian, is considered the founder of existential philosophy. Kierkegaard was skeptical of abstract philosophical systems and thought philosophy should address everyday human concerns. Although Kierkegaard was not a psychologist, his works provide important insights into such psychological problems as anxiety and depression. Two of his writings, *The Concept of Dread* and *The Suffering Unto Death,* are often referred to as his "psychological works." The first is a penetrating analysis of anxiety, and the second is an equally penetrating analysis of despair (or depression). Instead of viewing anxiety as a pathology to be cured, Kierkegaard believed anxiety was a "school" in which one is "educated" to become a self. And instead of viewing despair or depression as a pathology, he saw it as an indication that the self had not yet found its authentic grounding and suggested that the "opposite of despair" is "to be that self one truly is." Kierkegaard understood, of course, that some forms of anxiety and depression might be "pathological," but his analysis suggested that these painful psychological states can serve as a door to personal growth, to becoming a deeper, more profound human being.

Like Kierkegaard, other key existential writers, such as Martin Heidegger (1889–1976) and Jean-Paul Sartre (1905–1980), did not address themselves to psychotherapeutic concerns directly, yet they provided insights into the human condition that were helpful to psychologists. The **existential tradition** seeks a balance between recognizing the limits and tragic dimensions of human existence on one hand and the possibilities and opportunities for humans to transcend those limits to achieve a vital existence on the other hand. It grew out of a desire to help people engage the dilemmas of contemporary life, such as isolation, alienation, and meaninglessness.

Rollo May brought existential thinking from Europe and translated key concepts into psychotherapeutic practice in the United States. May's writings (1953, 1961, 1981, 1983) have had a significant impact on existentially oriented practitioners throughout the world. May states that becoming a person is not an automatic process, but people do have a desire to fulfill their potential. It takes courage to be, and our choices determine who we become. There is a constant struggle within us. Although we want to grow toward maturity and independence, we realize that expansion is often a painful process. Hence the struggle is between the security of dependence and the delights and pains of growth. Along with May, another significant contemporary advocate

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

for existential therapy in the United States is Irvin Yalom.

Significant developments in the existential approach in Britain are due largely to the efforts of Emmy van Deurzen, who is currently developing academic and training programs at the New School of Psychotherapy and Counselling. For a description of the historical context and development of existential therapy in Britain, see Deurzen (2002), Deurzen and Adams (2011), and Cooper (2017); for an excellent overview of the theory and practice of existential therapy, see Deurzen (2012) and Schneider and Krug (2017).

The existential perspective focuses on understanding the person's subjective view of the world and is a phenomenological approach. Therapy is a journey taken by therapist and client into the world as perceived and experienced by the client. But this quest demands that therapists also be in contact with their own phenomenological world. Existential therapists are personally engaged in their work and are willing to be affected by their clients' experiences in therapy. The human dilemmas that grow out of the therapeutic relationship have as much relevance for the therapist as for the client (Deurzen, 2002). James Bugental (1987), a key figure in existential psychotherapy, wrote about **life-changing psychotherapy**, which is the effort to help clients examine how they have answered life's existential questions and to invite them to revise their answers and to live more authentically.

Existential therapy does not focus on applying problem-solving techniques to the complex task of authentic living, nor does it aim to cure people in the traditional medical sense. Yalom and Josselson (2019) describe existential psychotherapy as "an attitude toward human suffering [that] has no manual. It asks deep questions about the nature of the human being and the nature of anxiety, despair, grief, loneliness, isolation, and anomie. It also deals centrally with the questions of meaning, creativity, and love" (p. 274).

Existential therapists are concerned with the deepest and most vexing problems clients present in therapy. People are not viewed as being ill but as being sick of playing certain roles or being clumsy at living. Clients need assistance in surveying the terrain so that they can decide which path to pursue, and therapists help clients come to terms with life in all its contradictions. One of the aims of existential therapy is to help people face up to the difficulties of life with courage rather than avoiding life's struggles (Deurzen & Adams, 2011). Another aim is to challenge people to stop deceiving themselves regarding their lack of responsibility for what is happening to them and their excessive demands on life (Deurzen, 2002).

May (1981) views the aim of existential therapy as setting clients free. Through the experience of existential therapy, people enlarge their vision of themselves as being free to engage in action that aims at change, tempered by the wisdom to acknowledge that we are (as Heidegger puts it) "thrown" into a world we did not create. Clients gradually learn how to accept life in all its complexities and paradoxes. This process involves learning to face the inevitable problems, difficulties, crises, and disappointments that are a part of living. Clients come to realize that they are not imprisoned by their responses but have the ability to achieve authentic freedom. They are better able to live with the givens and find the courage within themselves to deal with uncertainty. Therapy provides them with the opportunity to contemplate a life that is worthy of commitment (Deurzen, 2012).

The Purpose of an Existential Group

The existential group represents a microcosm of the world in which participants live and function. Over time the interpersonal and existential problems of the participants become evident in the here-and-now interactions within the group (Yalom & Josselson, 2019). A guiding purpose of the group is to enable members to discover themselves as they are by sharing their existential concerns. The existential view is that the significance of our existence is never fixed once and for all; instead, we continually re-create ourselves through our projects. Being a person implies that we are discovering and making sense of our existence. We continually question ourselves, others, and the world. In an **existential group**, participants make a commitment to a lifelong journey of self-exploration with these goals: (1) enabling members to become truthful with themselves; (2) widening their perspectives on themselves and the world around them; (3) clarifying what gives meaning to their present and future life; (4) successfully negotiating and coming to terms with

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

past, present, and future crises; and (5) understanding themselves and others better and learning better ways of communicating with others (Deurzen, 2002). An open attitude toward life is essential, as is the willingness to explore unknown territory. Deurzen (2010) captures this idea well:

> Embarking on our existential journey requires us to be prepared to be touched and shaken by what we find on the way and to not be afraid to discover our own limitations and weaknesses, uncertainties and doubts. It is only with such an attitude of openness and wonder that we can encounter the impenetrable everyday mysteries, which take us beyond our own preoccupations and sorrows and which by confronting us with death, make us rediscover life. (p. 5)

Group members are encouraged to begin listening to themselves and paying attention to their subjective experience. Attention is given to clients' immediate, ongoing experience with the aim of helping them develop greater presence in their quest for meaning and purpose (Sharp & Bugental, 2001). This phenomenological self-searching emphasizes what members discover within their own stream of awareness when this stream is not directed by the therapist. To a large degree, the task of therapy is to help clients return to a position of openness to themselves, to their world, and to life itself (Deurzen & Adams, 2011). By openly sharing and exploring universal personal concerns, members develop a sense of mutuality. The group becomes a place where people can be together in deeply meaningful ways.

Key Concepts

Key concepts of the existential approach include self-awareness, self-determination and responsibility, existential anxiety, death and nonbeing, the search for meaning, the search for authenticity, and aloneness/relatedness. These key existential concepts guide the practice of group work by providing a way to view and understand individuals in the group. Although existentially oriented group practitioners may incorporate many techniques from other models, these interventions are made within the context of striving to understand the subjective world of the members. In this spirit, rather than focusing on group techniques, this chapter deals mainly with the implications of these key concepts for group work.

Self-Awareness

The capacity for self-awareness separates us from other animals and enables us to make free choices. The greater our awareness, the greater our possibilities for freedom. Schneider (2008) explains that the core existential position is that we are both *free* (willful, creative, expressive) and *limited* by environmental and social constraints. We are all subject to the deterministic forces of sociocultural conditioning and to the limitations imposed by our genetic endowment, but we are still able to choose based on our awareness of these limiting factors. According to May (1961), regardless of how great the forces victimizing us are, we have the capacity to know that we are being victimized, which allows us to take a stand on this situation. Furthermore, through self-awareness we come to recognize the responsibility associated with the freedom to choose and to act.

Implications for Group Work

In group work, the basic existential goal of expanding self-awareness and thereby increasing the potential for choice is pursued by helping members discover their unique "being-in-the-world." By asking key questions, participants seek to define themselves and become aware of the central dimensions of their existence: "To what degree am I aware of who I am and where I am going?" "How do I experience my world?" "What meanings do I attach to the events I experience?" "How can I increase my self-awareness?" "In what concrete ways does expanded consciousness increase my range of alternatives?" The task for group members is to become aware of their existence as fully as possible, which includes realizing their possibilities and learning to act on the basis of them. A central theme of the existential approach is taking existence seriously.

In the group situation participants have the opportunity to express their own unique feelings and their subjective views of the world. They are also explicitly confronted by others, and they learn to deal with the anxiety that arises from being without the security of their everyday roles. As we will see in detail later in the chapter, existentialists view anxiety

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

in positive terms. Anxiety helps "individuate" us by awakening us to the inauthenticity of merely being who others want us to be, and it reflects the understanding that we are unique.

Group leaders would do well to alert the members of their groups to the price that is involved in seeking greater self-awareness. As people become more aware, they find it increasingly difficult to "go back home again." Although living in ignorance of the quality of one's existence can lead to staleness, it also provides a certain degree of contentment or, at least, security. As we open doors that were previously closed, we can expect to encounter more struggles as well as the potential for enhancing the quality of our living. The experience can be exciting and joyful but also frightening and, at times, depressing. This is an issue that should be mentioned during the early phases of a group.

A higher degree of self-awareness permits us to recognize that we can make choices for ourselves. For example:

- We can choose to expand our awareness or to limit our vision of ourselves.
- We can determine the direction of our own life or allow other people and environmental forces to determine it for us.
- We can use our potential for action or choose not to act.
- We can choose to establish meaningful ties with others or choose to isolate ourselves.
- We can search for our own uniqueness or allow our identity to be lost in conformity.
- We can create and find meaning in our life or lead an empty and meaningless existence.
- We can engage in certain risks and experience the anxieties that accompany deciding for ourselves or choose the security of dependence.
- We can make the most of the present by accepting the inevitability of our eventual death or hide from this reality because of the anxiety it generates.

Example Here is an example that illustrates how participants in a group can gradually achieve a higher level of awareness. When Yoana first entered the group, she could see no value in expressing intense emotions and insisted that she had to be rational no matter what. She tried very hard to keep her feelings harnessed at all times because she was afraid that she'd "go crazy" if she allowed herself to feel intensely. This need to tightly control her feelings manifested itself in several ways: when other group members relived painful emotional events, Yoana panicked and tried to leave the room, and she often attempted to defuse the expression of intense emotions by others in the group.

During one session, however, another person's work triggered some painful memories in Yoana that were associated with her childhood memories of her parents' divorce. Suddenly she became that frightened child again, pleading with her parents to stay together and letting herself "go emotionally out of control." This unexpected experience made Yoana aware that she had been keeping a lid on her strong feelings and that her defenses against "hurting too much" had resulted in her difficulty in getting close to others, in expressing anger, and in manifesting the love she claimed she felt for her family now. She also learned that she did not "go crazy" by permitting herself to experience the depth of her feelings. After that experience, Yoana chose to open herself to feelings and not to run out of the room when she was afraid of the intense emotions of other members.

Self-Determination, Freedom, and Personal Responsibility

Another existential theme is that we are self-determining beings, free to choose among alternatives and therefore responsible for directing our life and shaping our destiny. Although we are thrust into the world, the existentialist view is that how we live and what we become are the result of our own choices. As Sartre (1971) put it, our existence is a given, but we do not have, and cannot have, a fixed, settled "nature," or "essence." We are constantly faced with having to choose the kind of person we want to become, and as long as we live, we must continue to choose. Sartre remarks: "Man being condemned to be free carries the weight of the whole world on his shoulders; he is responsible for the world and for himself as a way of being" (p. 553). For Sartre, we are free in that we are nothing but what we do, and what we do is not the result of our past. However, we are much given to making excuses for our behavior,

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

thus acting in "bad faith." Schneider and Krug (2017) write that existential therapy embraces three values: (1) the *freedom to become* within the context of natural and self-imposed limitations; (2) the capacity to *reflect* on the meaning of our choices; and (3) the capacity to *act* on the choices we make.

Viktor Frankl, an existential psychiatrist, stresses the relationship between freedom and responsibility and insists that ultimate freedom can never be taken from us because we can at least choose our attitude toward any given set of circumstances. To support this statement, Frankl (1963) draws from his own experiences in a German concentration camp, where the prisoners were stripped of every semblance of outward freedom. He contends that even in a situation of such extreme powerlessness, people can ultimately be their own master because the attitude they assume toward their suffering is of their own choosing: "Life ultimately means taking responsibility to find the right answer to its problems and to fulfill the tasks which it constantly sets for each individual" (p. 122). Frankl believes human freedom is not freedom from conditions but the ability to take a stand in the face of conditions.

Frankl's brand of existential therapy, **logotherapy** (*logos* = meaning), teaches that meaning in life cannot be dictated but can be discovered by searching in our own existential situation. Group practitioners with a logotherapy orientation do not tell clients what their particular meaning in life should be. Instead, they facilitate an exploration of past, present, and future meanings to help members of a group identify and connect or reconnect with potential sources of meaning in their lives (Craig et al., 2016). Frankl (1963) speaks of "discovering meaning" and "creating meaning" and believes the goal is not to attain peace of mind but to experience meaning in healthy striving. We are also responsible for (but not to blame for) the symptoms that restrict our ability to live freely and fully. It is essential that we recognize and accept our part in creating the quality of our existence. Life does not simply happen to us; we are capable of actively influencing our thoughts, feelings, and actions. Until we accept our capacity for freedom, we will not change. If we wait around for others to change or for the environment to change, we may well increase our misery and hopelessness instead of taking action to make something happen differently.

Implications for Group Work The members of an existential group are confronted over and over again with the fact that they cannot escape from freedom and that they are responsible for their existence. Accepting this freedom and responsibility generates anxiety, and so does the risk associated with making choices. Another goal of the existential group is to help participants face and deal with these anxieties. The main task for the group leader is to confront members with the reality of their freedom and of the ways in which they are restricting or denying it. Group participants sometimes present themselves as victims, talk about their feelings of helplessness and powerlessness, and place the blame for their unhappiness on others and on external circumstances. A good place for members to start on the road to greater self-determination is to become aware of the roles they have chosen to play. When people come to believe they can make choices, they can direct their own destiny and ultimately assume control of their life.

Yalom and Josselson (2019) contend that the group provides the optimal conditions for therapeutic work on personal responsibility. Members are responsible for the interpersonal position they assume in the group, which also provides a glimpse of how they behave in real-life situations. Through feedback, members learn to see themselves through others' eyes, and they learn how their behavior affects others. Building on these discoveries, members can take responsibility for making changes in their everyday lives. The group work "not only allows individuals to change their way of relating to one another but also brings home to them in a powerful way the extent to which they have created their own life predicaments—clearly an existential therapeutic mechanism" (p. 299). The existential group leader encourages members to assume genuine responsibility for their functioning in the group and to carry these changes into daily life.

Example Edward reluctantly joined one of my groups. I say "reluctantly" because he had serious misgivings about the value of participating in a group. At 62, Edward had settled into a passive, predictable, but comfortable and safe life as a successful business executive. When he joined, he presented himself with this statement: "I don't know if this group will do me

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

any good or not. Frankly, I think that I'm too old to change and that what I have is the most I can hope to get from life. I believe that things will probably stay as they are." In spite of his own statement and in spite of the fact that his life was orderly and safe, he felt that he was "drying up" and that life had lost zest. He was ready for a change, even though he was not sure that change was possible.

Through his involvement in the group, Edward began to realize that he did have options—many more than he had thought possible. All along, he had blamed his wife, his three sons, and his daughter for the fact that he couldn't change jobs and live the kind of life he wanted for himself. He was avoiding responsibility for his own problems by focusing on what his family expected, often without ever verifying their expectations.

The other members and I challenged Edward to begin thinking for himself about how he wanted his life to be different. I asked him these questions: "If you were to continue living for the rest of your life as you are now, with no basic changes, how would you feel about it?" "Assume that your family would be willing to make the changes in lifestyle that you want to make. How would your life be different a year from now? 5 years from now?" "What steps can you take today that will help you make some of the changes you want to make?"

The safety within a group allows members like Edward to explore the meaning of crisis as a place for rediscovering opportunities and challenges that have been forgotten. An existential group leader could help Edward face the actual process of decay that he is allowing to take place. Once he recognizes his ways of engaging in self-deception and sees that he is choosing to rest on his laurels, he can decide to take a different direction.

Existential Anxiety

Existential therapists view anxiety as providing potentially instructive signals that can assist individuals to live more authentically. Existential anxiety is the unavoidable product of being confronted with the **givens of existence**: death, freedom, existential isolation, and meaninglessness (Vontress, 2013; Yalom, 1980). **Existential anxiety** is the basic unease that we experience when we become aware of our vulnerability and our inevitable death (Deurzen, 2012). Anxiety is part of the human condition, but failure to move through anxiety results in neurotic anxiety. From the existential viewpoint, **anxiety** is an invitation to freedom and not just a symptom to be eliminated or "cured." This notion is captured nicely by Deurzen and Adams (2011): "Anxiety is a teacher, not an obstacle or something to be removed or avoided" (p. 24). Existential anxiety results from having to face choices without clear guidelines and without knowing what the outcome will be and from being aware that we are ultimately responsible for the consequences of our actions. In the context of group work, it is expected that we will feel anxious. At some level we know that for new dimensions of ourselves to emerge old parts of ourselves must die. The knowledge that to grow we must exchange familiar and secure ways for new and unknown ones is in itself a source of anxiety.

Existential anxiety is a normal part of being human and involves confronting basic questions of existence. From the perspective of Deurzen (2012), existential anxiety is basic to living with awareness and being fully alive. In fact, the courage to live fully entails accepting the reality of death and the anxiety associated with uncertainty. Although we may not welcome this anxiety, it is the price we must pay for becoming what we are capable of becoming. Some people dull their sensitivity as a way of avoiding the basic challenges of life, and others find different ways of disguising their anxiety. Yet underneath the surface of their coping styles, people experience anxiety as an ever-present threat. Paradoxically, it is equally a source of transformation.

Implications for Group Work At the core of therapy, clients eventually come to terms with the underlying conditions of being human. These sources of existential anxiety must be faced and worked through in therapy; they involve recognition of our separateness and our need to be with others, of our guilt over not living authentically, of the emptiness in the universe and lack of meaning, of the burden of responsibility associated with choosing for ourselves, and of our fear of death and nonbeing. As therapy progresses, group members often painfully recognize how much energy they have put into maintaining an idealized image of themselves that is impossible to achieve. They also see that they must let go of static images of themselves that lead to a restricted existence.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

As group participants give up their inauthentic roles, they are able to bring a renewed quality to their living. This process typically results in anxiety because clients are giving up ways of being that are familiar.

In existential group therapy, members are assisted in coming to terms with the paradoxes of existence: that life can be undone by death, that success is precarious, that we are determined to be free, that we are responsible for a world we did not choose, that we have the capacity to make choices and to accept the burdens that come with it, and that these choices are decisive in the face of doubt and uncertainty. Anxiety arises as members recognize the realities of their mortality, their confrontation with pain and suffering, their need to struggle for survival, and their basic fallibility. Thus anxiety is an indicator of the level of awareness that group participants allow. Existential anxiety is exposed in a group, especially when members explore ways in which they have adjusted too comfortably to a status quo style of living designed to mask basic insecurity and anxiety. Deurzen (1991, 2010) maintains that a main aim of existential therapy is not to make life seem easier or safer but to encourage clients to be more receptive to recognizing and dealing with the sources of insecurity and anxiety. Facing existential anxiety involves viewing life as an adventure rather than hiding behind securities that seem to offer protection. As Deurzen (1991) puts it: "We need to question and scrape away at the easy answers and expose ourselves to some of the anxiety that can bring us back to life in a real and deep way" (p. 46).

It is essential for the group leader to recognize existential anxiety and guide group members in finding constructive ways of exploring it. The purpose of an existential group is not to eliminate anxiety, for doing so would cut off a source of vitality. The optimal use of anxiety is one of the goals of existential therapy. Leaders have the task of encouraging members to deal with their existential anxiety and to develop the courage to face life squarely (Deurzen, 2012; Deurzen & Adams, 2011).

Once group members face and fully accept their anxieties, the next step is to encourage them to make a commitment to action. Through the support of the leader and of other participants in the group, the individual can be motivated to explore unknown paths and to investigate new dimensions of self. This search can lead to even greater anxiety for a time. However, in the process of growth, anxiety does not have to be devastating, and it is the price one must pay to break out of constricting modes of existence.

Example For much of her life, Ann had allowed others to make decisions for her. She had uncritically accepted her parents' religious values and had become dependent on her church to make decisions for her. At this time in her life, she was struggling with continuing to accept these values. Through her work in the group, she came to see more and more clearly that she needed to take responsibility for her choices if she wanted to change. Ann decided to look within herself for strength and direction. It took Ann some time to begin to trust herself and even longer to let go of the need to rely on external authority for her answers and security. Making decisions for herself was fraught with anxiety and self-doubt. Although some of her values have changed, she now has a sense that these are her own values.

The task of existential therapy was to teach Ann how to understand the feelings that surfaced as she became aware that she was responsible for deciding who she would be. As Ann realized that she did not have to continue being her "old self," she began to experience the uneasiness that accompanies losing the security that the familiar structure had provided.

Death and Nonbeing

The existential therapist considers death as essential to the discovery of meaning and purpose in life. Life has meaning precisely because it must end, and life is enhanced when we take seriously the reality of the life we do have. The reality of our finiteness can stimulate us to look at our priorities and to ask what we value most. The present is precious because it is all we really have. It is our temporal nature that makes us feel the urgency to do something with our life, to make a choice between affirming life by trying to become the person we are capable of becoming or allowing life to slip by us and eventually realizing that we've never given ourselves a chance to be different. Frankl (1963) believes that it is not how long we live but *how* we live that determines the quality and meaningfulness of our life. When we emotionally accept the reality of our mortality, we realize more clearly that our actions do count, that we do have choices, and that we must accept the ultimate responsibility for how we are living (Corey et al., 2018).

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

As the only creatures with a strong sense of the future, humans need to deal with the end of life, which Heidegger (1962) calls "cessation of possibility." Because many of us are afraid of facing the reality of our own death and the anxiety that goes with it, we might attempt to escape the awareness of this reality. But the price for trying to flee from the confrontation with nonbeing results in self-alienation.

Death awareness is an awakening experience that can be a useful catalyst for making significant life changes. Reflecting on the reality of death can teach us how to live fully. Deurzen and Adams (2011) state: "Life is a taskmaster, while death is a master teacher" (p. 105). Accepting the reality of our personal death can result in a major shift in the way we live in the world (Yalom & Josselson, 2019). We can turn our fear of death into a positive force when we accept the reality of our mortality. We can wisely and resolutely use our time on this earth to live courageously and fully (Vontress, 2013).

Implications for Group Work Awareness of death and the anxiety it generates has significant implications for the practice of group work. The concern with living life fully, rather than merely existing, is a recurrent theme in many groups. One way to address this theme is by encouraging group members to ask themselves honestly how they feel about the quality of their life. Members can then be asked to answer this same question as if they knew that they were about to die. How do the two answers differ? Have they made decisions that were not carried through? Have they ignored opportunities for change? By reflecting on their unfinished business, participants may come to realize that they are not living the kind of life they would like to live, and they may be able to identify the reasons for this unsatisfactory existence. Sometimes dreams about one's dying symbolize the coming to a close of one phase of life, of some interest, work, or relationship.

I find it valuable to expand the concept of physical death to other kinds of death. Even though we are physically alive, we may be dead or dying in important areas of life. Perhaps we are numb to our feelings or caught up in deadening roles. We may have lost our intellectual curiosity and wonderment about life. Perhaps our relationships with significant people are characterized by routine and ritual. What we do may have little meaning. In fact, the end of the group is itself a sort of "death" that is often avoided. A group can be a good place to recognize the areas in which we have grown stale and to confront ourselves with what we are willing to do to change.

The process of change entails allowing parts of us to die to make room for new growth. Growth often demands that we be willing to let go of familiar ways of being. We may need to experience a period of mourning over our losses before we can move forward and establish new patterns. Groups offer a safe place to express this sadness, to explore the ambivalence that generally accompanies change, and to experiment with new ways of being.

Example The stoics of ancient Greece proclaimed, "Contemplate death if you would learn how to live." Indeed, we can learn a great deal from those who have faced death or those with near-death experiences. People who are terminally ill often develop a new appreciation for the gift of life and remark on how a "death sentence" awakened them to living as fully as possible. Their confrontation with death results in their getting the most from a relatively brief period of time. The pressure of time forces them to choose how they will spend whatever time they have left. Kinnier et al. (2001) conducted interviews with people who experienced life-threatening situations and found some common themes: less materialism, more spirituality, and more caring for and serving others. Kinnier and his colleagues found that people who have faced death tend to worry less about mundane issues and become more optimistic about the future of humankind.

This framework can be applied to group work, including those who are very young and those who have not experienced a life-threatening event. Members can be challenged to look at how they are living right now, and if they are not satisfied with the direction they are moving, they can make new choices. If they accept the reality that they have only a limited time to achieve their personal goals, they may discover a freshness in living.

Irvin Yalom (1980) found that cancer patients in group therapy had the capacity to view their crisis as an opportunity to bring about changes in how they were living. After discovering they had cancer, many of these individuals experienced the following inner

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

changes that enabled them to find a powerful focus on life:

- A rearrangement of life's priorities; avoiding getting caught up in insignificant matters
- A sense of liberation; being able to choose the things they most wanted to do
- An increased sense of living in the present moment; living less for the future
- A vivid appreciation of the basic facts of life; noticing various aspects of nature
- A deeper communication with loved ones than before the crisis
- Fewer interpersonal fears, less concern over security, and more willingness to take risks (p. 35)

Group members do not have to wait until they are diagnosed with a terminal illness to begin living the way they would like. Members and leaders of a variety of groups can, however, learn a great deal from groups for cancer patients and others who are exploring end-of-life challenges.

For an existential perspective on addressing death in the therapeutic setting, *When Death Enters the Therapeutic Space* (Barnett, 2008) provides many useful insights. In Yalom's (2005) work, *The Schopenhauer Cure: A Novel,* a group therapist is confronted with his own mortality and is forced to examine the meaning of his life and work. In *Staring at the Sun: Overcoming the Terror of Death*, Yalom (2008) develops the idea that confronting death enables us to live in a more compassionate way. As we think about our own mortality, we often realize what's truly important in life. As one person put it, "Discover what you would be willing to die for and then live for it."

The Search for Meaning

The struggle for a sense of significance and purpose in life is a distinctly human characteristic. We have the capacity to cultivate meaning and awe in our lives. We search for meaning and personal identity, and we raise existential questions: "Who am I?" "How did I get here?" "Where am I going and why?" "Why am I here?" "What gives my life purpose and meaning?" For the existential thinker, life does not have positive meaning in itself; it is up to us to create meaning. Vontress (2013) captures the idea that meaning in life is an ongoing process we struggle with throughout our life: "What provides meaning one day may not provide meaning the next, and what has been meaningful to a person throughout life may be meaningless when a person is on his or her deathbed" (p. 147).

Frankl (1963) devoted his career to developing an existential approach to therapy that is grounded on the role of meaning in life. According to Frankl, the central human concern is to discover meaning that will give one's life direction. On the basis of his clinical work and study, Frankl concluded that a lack of meaning is the major source of existential stress and anxiety in modern times. He views **existential neurosis** as the experience of meaninglessness that results from inauthentic modes of living. Many people come to therapy because of an **existential vacuum**, a feeling of an inner void that results from not fully addressing issues of meaning. Therefore, according to Frankl, the function of therapy is to help clients create meaning in their lives.

There are many ways of creating meaning—through work, through loving, through suffering, or through doing for others. Frankl (1963) believes that the therapist's task is not to tell clients what their particular meaning in life should be but to encourage clients to develop meaning for themselves. He believes that even suffering can be a source of growth and that if we have the courage to experience our suffering we can find meaning in it. Suffering can be turned into achievement by the stand we take in the face of it. Frankl discovered this in his own experience in the death camps. By confronting pain, despair, and death, and by trying to understand their meaning for us, we turn the negative sides of life into triumph.

Clara Hill (2018) focuses on the meaning in life and points out that this is a universal human concern that often underlies depression, anxiety, isolation, physical illness, aging, and death anxiety—problems many clients bring to therapy. Addressing existential concerns can help clients find ways to create a richer existence. Hill recommends that therapists take time to consider some of these questions as they assess their clients:

- Is this client engaged in life? If so, in what way?
- If a client does not have a meaning and purpose, what might be the reasons?
- In what specific ways is the client finding meaning in life?

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- What does the client say regarding meaning in life?
- Is finding meaning a pressing concern for this individual?
- What are the client's gifts, abilities, strengths, and limitations that might be related to finding meaning?

A key role for existential therapists is to assist clients in deciding whether they want to make changes to achieve a sense of meaning, and if so, what actions clients may consider to bring about desired changes. Hill's comprehensive list of sources of meaning includes the following activities:

- Taking part in creative activities
- Participating in religious or spiritual activities
- Working through loss or suffering
- Having a passion for one's work
- Engaging in personal relationships with family and friends
- Participating in leisure activities
- Being of service to others
- Leaving a legacy for the next generation
- Immersing oneself in higher causes (self-transcendence)
- Striving for autonomy
- Striving for competence
- Feeling a sense of belonging

Sources of meaning may vary considerably over the life span and in relation to clients' current needs and desires. Therapists in both individual and group counseling can invite clients to identify activities that are meaningful for them at this time in their life and offer support as they challenge clients to assess the degree to which they are leading a meaningful life. For a more detailed discussion of the role of meaning in life in psychotherapy, I highly recommend *Meaning in Life: A Therapist's Guide* (Hill, 2018).

Implications for Group Work It is common for groups to explore both the issue of creating meaning and the related question of examining and perhaps discarding values that are no longer meaningful. Many participants are concerned about leaving old values without finding new and more suitable ones to replace them. Some people live by a value system that they have never critically evaluated, one that was handed down to them. Others have lost their identity by conforming to social mores. This issue comes alive within the group, where there is considerable pressure to conform to the expectations of others.

One of the tasks of the therapeutic process is to confront group members with evidence of the fact that they may be living by unexamined values that no longer contribute to a meaningful existence. We may not be responsible for having acquired values that do not give us a sense of meaning, but we are certainly responsible for retaining them and for failing to find new ones. With the support of the group, participants can find the strength to create an internally derived value system that is consistent with their way of being. This process will likely generate anxiety, at least for a time, and they may flounder in the absence of clear-cut values. Some useful questions that can be explored in a group setting are these:

- Do you like the direction of your life? If not, what are you doing about it?
- What are the aspects of your life that satisfy you most?
- What is preventing you from doing what you really want to do?

Group work is especially valuable for older adults as a way of assisting them in putting their lives into perspective, in consolidating the meaning of their life experiences, and in finding new meaning. Finding meaning in life takes on special urgency as we experience the losses associated with aging.

> Loss is the existential given of old age. We wake every day to face a way of being for which we are never prepared. Our minds, our bodies, our loved ones, our surroundings, our habitual ways of dealing with difficulties, our place in our social network, our status, our work, our self-definitions disintegrate in our hands as we struggle to hold them together. (Bugental, 2008, p. 334)

Elizabeth Bugental (2008) describes a group for older people she leads as "swimming together in a sea of loss." Her groups are composed of eight older adults between the ages of 65 and 90 who meet once a week for 8 weeks. The group sessions are loosely structured around existential themes concerning personal experiences with aging and loss. The themes

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

are presented in the form of questions such as these that group members explore together:

- How did I get to be this old?
- How can I create a new old age?
- Who am I now?
- How can I stay connected?
- How can I fill my life with beauty, goodness, wonder, and truth?
- Do I have the courage to find new possibilities in the midst of loss?

Although this is not a therapy group, it is very therapeutic. Members share their stories, especially those surrounding many different kinds of loss. Members are asked to stay in the here-and-now as much as possible. As group members express their feelings and receive understanding, they discover common bonds with one another. An overall theme guiding the group is "How do we choose to live during our final phase of life?"

Example Priscilla was reared with conventional values, and she had never really questioned them. She felt compelled to be a "proper lady" at all times, as if her parents were watching over her shoulder. Whenever Priscilla was doing something she thought her parents would not approve of, she seemed to "hear mother and father speaking," telling her what she *should* do and what she *ought* to feel. In various group exercises, Priscilla "became" her parents and spoke for them by lecturing each of us about how we ought to change our ways.

At one point I urged her to act as if she had no choice but to remain forever the nice and proper lady her parents expected her to be and asked her to exaggerate this ladylike behavior in the group for several sessions. Afterward she reported that it "made me sick" to be so rigid and so ready to conform. She decided she would change, no matter how difficult the task was going to be. Although Priscilla still respected some of the core values she had learned at home, she wanted the freedom to discard others even if it resulted in her feeling guilty. Her work in the group and outside of it gave her new freedom to develop her own set of values—values that were meaningful to her and that freed her to live by her own expectations rather than by those of others.

The Search for Authenticity

The theologian Paul Tillich (1952) uses the phrase "the courage to be" to define a courage that can take all forms of "nonbeing" into itself because it is based on the ground of being. Discovering, creating, and maintaining the core deep within our being is a difficult and never-ending struggle. Deurzen (2012) suggests that such authentic living is more of a process than a static end result. Living authentically entails engagement in doing what is worthwhile as we see it. Authenticity involves claiming authorship—taking responsibility for our actions and the way we are living (Deurzen & Adams, 2011). Briefly put, it means being true to ourselves. This kind of living can provide a deep sense of inner peace, yet authenticity is no easy matter. Living authentically entails knowing and accepting our limits. The "Serenity Prayer" captures the essence of this acceptance: "God grant me the serenity to accept the things I cannot change, courage to change the things I can, and wisdom to know the difference."

A quote with a different twist that Frankl (1963) is fond of using is Goethe's admonition: "If we take man as he is, we make him worse; but if we take him as he should be, we help him become what he can be." Frankl sees it as the therapist's task to challenge clients to become their full and authentic selves by engaging in life and making commitments. Logotherapy, being concerned with people's spiritual dimensions and higher aspirations, provides inspiration to continually seek the meaning that is necessary to live authentically. This idea is captured in an adage I discovered in a church in Hawaii: "Who you are is God's gift to you; what you make of yourself is your gift to God."

Existential guilt is rooted in the realization that we inevitably fall short of becoming what we could become, which means that we are always in debt to life to some extent. Existential guilt grows out of a sense of incompleteness and the realization that we are viewing life through someone else's eyes. Ultimately, the loss of the sense of being becomes psychological sickness. To the extent that we allow others to design our lives, we experience a restricted existence.

Implications for Group Work A group provides a powerful context in which to look at oneself, decide the degree to which one is a fully functioning

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

person as opposed to reflecting what others expect, and consider what choices might be more authentically one's own. Members can openly share their fears related to living in unfulfilling ways and come to see how they have compromised their integrity. The group offers many opportunities for tackling the tasks of life. Members can gradually discover ways in which they have lost their direction and can begin to be more true to themselves. Certainly, existential group leaders will not prescribe simple solutions, for they know that this is inconsistent with helping members live in authentic ways. It is also important for group leaders to be vigilant for members who may try to persuade others in the group to live in a certain way.

A major part of the group counseling experience involves members sorting out for themselves who they are and what identities they have assumed without conscious thought. When people live by outworn identities, their lives lose meaning. An existential group can be instrumental in assisting members to come to a full appreciation of themselves in relation to others. Through the group experience, members see that their identity is not cast in stone but that they can shape their own life. Group leaders who themselves continue to reshape their personal meanings are an encouragement to the members.

Example Martha, who at 45 had devoted a major portion of her life to her family, is typical of many women who have been members of my groups and personal growth workshops. For most of her life, Martha had depended almost totally on her roles as wife, mother, and homemaker as sources of identity. As her daughters and sons entered high school and then college and finally left home, she asked herself more and more frequently: "Is there more to life than what I've done so far? Who am I besides all the roles I've responsibly filled? What do I want to do with the rest of my life?"

Martha returned to the university and obtained a degree in human services, a critical turning point in her life that opened many new doors for her. She engaged in a number of projects that enriched her life, including specialized work with the elderly. Through her program of studies, Martha joined several intensive personal growth workshops, which gave her the opportunity to pose and debate questions such as "Do I have the courage to find out if I can create a new identity for myself?" "Will I be able to withstand pressures from my family to remain the way they want me to be?" "Can I give to others and at the same time give to myself?" These questions indicated Martha's growing awareness that she needed to be a person in her own right and that she wanted to live an authentic existence. Martha's self-questioning also showed that she knew that making choices entails doubts and struggles that one must resolve for oneself.

Aloneness and Relatedness

Existential group practitioners believe that even though we have close friends we are ultimately alone—that only we can give a sense of meaning to our lives, decide how we will live, find our own answers, and decide whether we will be or not be. **Existential isolation** refers to our aloneness in the universe. Even though we find meaning in connections with others, we enter the world alone and we leave the world alone. We must manage the tension between our wish for relatedness with others and the reality of our aloneness. "No relationship can eliminate existential isolation, but aloneness can be shared in such a way that love compensates for its pain" (Yalom & Josselson, 2019, p. 291). Because awareness of our *ultimate aloneness* can be frightening, some of us try to avoid it by throwing ourselves into casual relationships and frantic activities, trusting that they will numb us to our fears and anguish.

We also have the choice of experiencing our aloneness and trying to find a center of meaning and direction within ourselves. When we make this choice and succeed at establishing our own identity, we can relate genuinely and meaningfully to others. We must stand alone before we can truly stand with another. Solitude, unlike aloneness, is something that we can choose for ourselves. In **solitude**, we make time to be with ourselves, to discover who we are, and to renew ourselves (Corey et al., 2018).

There is a paradox in the proposition that we are existentially both alone and related. Yet it is this very paradox that describes the human condition. We are social beings, and we depend on interpersonal relationships for our humanness. We have a desire for meaningful connections, a hope to be significant in another's world, and a desire to feel that another's presence is important in our world.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

But unless we can find our own strength within ourselves, we cannot have nourishing relationships with others based on fulfillment rather than deprivation.

Implications for Group Work Group participants have the opportunity to relate to others in meaningful ways, to learn to be themselves in the company of other people, and to find reward and nourishment in the relationships they establish. They also learn that it is not in others that they find the answers to questions about significance and purpose in life. If their struggle for self-awareness is successful, they come to realize that no matter how valuable their relationships are they are ultimately on their own.

The relationships that participants establish within the group also teach people how to relate to others outside of the group. In a group, people recognize their own struggles in others, and this often results in a bond. Even though they may accept that ultimately they are existentially alone, they also come to realize that they are not alone in their struggles and that others, too, are courageously looking at themselves and trying to establish their own identities. In short, groups offer distinct possibilities for members to intimately relate to one another that individual therapy does not offer.

Example The case of Preston shows that a person can be with others and at the same time be very much alone. In a group session, Preston said that he felt cut off from everyone in the group and described himself as a "spectator who seems out of place." I asked him if he would be willing to experiment with really separating himself from the group and observing us from a distance. He agreed to leave the room, sit outside on the balcony, and observe what was going on through the window. I asked him to be aware of what he was thinking and feeling as he sat out there observing. He was told to return to the group when he was ready to talk about what he had experienced sitting on the outside.

When he returned, Preston said that for the first time he had realized how safe it was for him to keep himself in a spectator role and that he was ready to do something different. I asked him if he would go around to each person in the group and complete these two sentences: "One way I have kept you at a distance is by _____." and "One way I could be closer to you is by _____." After he had "made the rounds," Preston described the circumstances in which he typically felt alone, even when surrounded by many people. He spoke of his desire to achieve intimacy and of his fears of approaching people. His work in the group had intensified his attempts to keep himself separate, which finally resulted in a desire to change.

Role and Functions of the Group Leader

According to Schneider and Krug (2017), existential-humanistic therapists assist clients in addressing their concerns, not just behaviorally and intellectually but experientially, by maximizing their capacity to transform themselves. To achieve these aims, existential practitioners draw upon existential conditions through which experiential liberation and profound transformation can take root. In the existential view, therapy is a partnership and a shared venture between the therapist and the client. To develop this collaborative partnership, therapists focus on the person-to-person relationship. Existential therapists must bring their own subjectivity into their work, and it is essential that they demonstrate presence if they are to develop an effective working relationship with members. High priority is given to the quality of the therapeutic relationship as a healing force.

Bohart and Wade (2013) believe clients have preferences for the kind of therapeutic relationship qualities they want. They appreciate a therapist who is genuine, demonstrates empathy, and is able to be therapeutically present. Bohart and Wade view the client as the center of the healing process, which implies that therapists need to reinforce the role of the client as an active learner and problem solver who contributes to the therapy process and outcome. "Clients, not just therapists, can play a role in actively coping with and managing the therapeutic relationship" (p. 240). (As you will see in the following chapters, the relationship is also the core of the person-centered approach and of Gestalt therapy.)

Bugental (1997) sees the main task of existential therapy as being to increase both the range and the depth of clients' awareness. He adds that a therapist's

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

function is to display to clients the ways in which they constrict their awareness and the cost of such constrictions. This climate for change will not come about if the leader maintains a strictly objective orientation, is psychologically absent from the group, and is merely a skilled but impersonal technician. Bugental believes that therapists are frequently overly concerned with the content of what is being said, which gets in their way of recognizing the distance between themselves and their clients. Therapists need to be genuinely interested in the well-being of clients. In terms of presence and authenticity, what clients value is a therapist who can meet them as a person rather than being caught up in a professional role (Craig et al., 2016).

Change is brought about not only by the relationship with the leader but also by relationships with other members. A primary role of the leader is to foster meaningful relationships among participants by having members focus on key existential concerns and by providing a climate in which these concerns can be fully explored. Existential group therapists value being real and are willing to make themselves known through appropriate self-disclosure (Yalom & Josselson, 2019). Existential group leaders are *fellow travelers* in the sense that they must come to terms with the ultimate existential concerns of life. A therapeutic community is thus established based on the commonality of universal struggles.

Existential group leaders assume a basic role of encouraging members to assess ways their freedom may be restricted, reflect on how they might increase their choices, and assume responsibility for their choices. A group can be instrumental in helping members see how some of the self-constricting patterns they manifest in the group are paralleled in their everyday life. By gaining a better understanding of how they are in the group, members have a basis for increasing their awareness of their way of being in the world. Deurzen (2010) claims that existential therapists do not have the role of addressing the practical aspects and problems of a person's life; rather, "we focus on the person's struggle with human existence and elucidate the parameters of the human condition that the person is trying to come to terms with" (p. 236). Existential therapists help clients reflect on their situation, face their predicaments, and think for themselves.

Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures

Unlike many other group approaches, the existential model puts more emphasis on experiencing and understanding the group member in the present moment than on using a particular set of techniques. The therapeutic relationship is central in creating a climate that is conducive for group members to engage in an honest exploration of the way they are living. The therapeutic relationship is at the heart of existential practice (Craig et al., 2016). Existential therapists emphasize understanding and exploring the client's subjective reality rather than providing diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis. The aim is to help people accept and face their difficulties rather than avoiding them. Existential therapists have argued that an emphasis on techniques can interfere with this central aim (Deurzen & Adams, 2011). May (1983) emphasizes that technique follows understanding. Overemphasis on technique can block the therapist's ability to understand the client's subjective world. There are no "right" techniques in this approach; the task is accomplished through the therapeutic encounter and dialogue between client and therapist. It is not theories and techniques that heal, but the encounter that occurs between client and therapist as they work together (Elkins, 2007). Elkins (2016) examined hundreds of studies that identified the factors related to therapeutic effectiveness and concluded: "Remarkably, the findings showed that techniques had little to do with effectiveness and that common factors were the real agents of change" (p. 4). Elkins has become convinced that the human elements of psychotherapy are the primary factors in emotional healing. In *The Heart and Soul of Change*, Duncan et al. (2010) convey the central message that common factors (client, therapist, and therapeutic alliance) are the major determinants of the effectiveness of psychotherapy and are key to therapy outcomes.

The interventions therapists employ are based on philosophical views about the essential nature of human existence. Existential group therapists may incorporate a variety of techniques from various therapeutic approaches, but they do not employ an array

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

of unintegrated techniques. A set of assumptions and attitudes guide their interventions (Deurzen & Adams, 2011), and they integrate techniques in their work in a disciplined way.

Deurzen (2010) stresses the importance of therapists reaching sufficient depth and openness in their own lives to enable them to venture into their clients' subjective world without losing their own sense of identity. Deurzen reminds us that existential therapy is a collaborative adventure in which both client and therapist will be transformed if they allow themselves to be touched by life. She encourages therapists to use interventions that reflect their own personality and style but to remain flexible in relation to what their clients need.

Deurzen (2010) suggests several kinds of interventions, including the therapeutic use of silence, questions, and making interpretations:

- *Silence* is one of the most significant interventions a therapist can make. There needs to be a breathing space in between dialogue. Therapists have the task of listening with a receptive attitude so clients can move forward in a way of their choosing.
- *Questions* have a place in therapy, yet they need to be based on what clients are saying rather than probing for more information. It is best for therapists to ask open-ended questions that are implied in the client's words and in the subtext of their messages.
- *Interpretations* are used in existential therapy as a way to make sense of the client's overall story by connecting individual statements and experiences to enhance meaning. "The puzzle to be completed is the client's, not our own" (p. 293).

Because existential counseling is a philosophical investigation, Deurzen (2012) views the existential practitioner as a mentor in the art of living, one who is more of a sage than a brilliant technician.

Group practitioners who work within an existential framework use many of the techniques described in this book. Many of the procedures used by Adlerians and the techniques used by psychodramatists fit with an existential philosophy beautifully. Furthermore, the techniques of action-oriented therapeutic approaches such as cognitive behavior therapy, rational emotive behavior therapy, reality therapy, and solution-focused brief therapy can be grounded on existential concepts. However, existential group counselors never use techniques as the main menu. Instead, primary consideration is given to the nature of the relationships being formed in the group. When the deepest self of the group therapist meets the deepest part of the individual group members in the I/Thou encounter, the group process is at its best.

The leader sets the tone for the group not by introducing techniques and *doing something* but rather by *being* and *becoming* somebody. The group experience can shake up the conventional ways in which members view the world. When their status quo is shaken, members have a better chance of facing themselves and of changing.

Phases of an Existential Group

A therapeutic group is characterized by a creative, evolving process of discovery, which is conceptualized in three general phases. During the initial phase, group counselors assist the participants in identifying and clarifying their assumptions about the world. Group members are invited to define and question the ways in which they perceive and make sense of their existence. They examine their values, beliefs, and assumptions to determine their validity. For many group members, this is a difficult task because they may initially present their problems as resulting almost entirely from external causes. They may focus on what other people "make them feel" or on how others are largely responsible for their actions or inaction. The group leader teaches members how to reflect on their own existence and to examine their role in contributing to their problems in living.

During the middle phase of existential group counseling, the members are encouraged to more fully examine the source and authority of their present value system. This process of self-exploration typically leads to new insights and some restructuring of their values and attitudes. Group members get a better idea of what kind of life they consider worthy to live. They develop a clearer sense of their internal

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

valuing process. Existential exploration addresses a spiritual dimension of finding meaning. The focus is on core life issues, and clients deal with central issues of living (Deurzen, 2010; Deurzen & Adams, 2011).

The final phase focuses on helping members put what they are learning about themselves into action. The aim of a group experience is to empower the participants to implement their examined and internalized values in concrete ways. Through a therapeutic group experience, members are able to discover their strengths and put these capabilities to the service of living a meaningful existence. For many of us, recognition of the ways in which we have kept ourselves in a victimlike stance marks the beginning of change. Through the group process, we begin to understand that we can choose to consciously become the author of our life.

Group Theories in Action: An Existential Application*

In this existential group session, members are asked to reflect on the reality that they have a limited time on this planet. I ask members to check in by making a brief statement concerning how the reality of their mortality influences their meaning in life. Galo mentions the role his mother has played in the meaning in his life. Randy points out that his father died at age 50, shortly after retiring from the post office, and he wants his life to be different from his father's life. He acknowledges that he does not have forever, and he wants to have fun and enjoy life. Realizing that she has only limited time on this planet, Kellie asks herself this question: "Am I really doing what I want to do?" Lupe is striving for more balance in her life and claims that she would like to write a children's book.

Once the members have all checked in, Galo adds that he is not sure what people might say about him when he is gone, and he wonders what kind of legacy he is leaving. I take this opportunity to facilitate Galo's work by asking him to look at each person in the group and describe one thing he would hope to leave when he is gone. I then ask other members to think about their legacy and to explore this legacy in the group. I use this as a catalyst to encourage members to reflect on what gives their life meaning.

A related intervention that I have made in groups is to encourage members to write their own eulogy in their journal, and in a later session I invite members to share their eulogy. Another way to facilitate members thinking about the meaning of life is to ask them to write down what they would like on their tombstone. In another session members can be asked to express what this epitaph means to them and what these words symbolize to them. These exercises encourage members to think about how the reality of their eventual death can have a bearing on creating meaning in life. Exploring the meaning and purpose in life is the bedrock of existentialism, and all age groups and many different kinds of groups can benefit from this work.

Applying the Existential Approach to Group Work in Schools

The existential approach has a great deal to offer students today because they face so many existential challenges. During the recent coronavirus pandemic, existential themes involving death, life's meaning, and existential anxiety have become very real for people of all ages. With school closures across the United States in an effort to stop the spread of this deadly virus, teachers and school counselors have been able to offer little support to students processing illness and the death of family members. School counselors are now beginning to support students by discussing these existential questions in online forums.

From elementary to high school level, violence is becoming more commonplace, and school counselors are called upon for crisis intervention and to devise programs to prevent violence. When tragedies do occur, these young people are awakened to the reality of death. School shootings are a stark reminder that we do not know how much time we have on this earth and that we may not be able to accomplish our dreams. A crisis-oriented group provides

*The group session discussed here is based on the existential group work segment in the video *Group Theories in Action*, which is included in the Online Student Resources.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

opportunities for students to verbally express their shock, grief, anger, and fear.

It is not necessary for those who conduct a school group to process feelings surrounding violence, to come up with answers, or to bring closure to such issues; rather, the leader can provide a valuable function by encouraging students to give full expression to their feelings and thoughts. Group members can acknowledge their common concerns and provide support in a time when it is sorely needed. Such a group can be a catalyst for young people to assess their lives and do what they can to make life-affirming choices. Groups can be a rich source of healing, for both young people in the group and the counselor who facilitates the open expression of reactions. Exploring the existential anxiety surrounding the unknown is a main task of a group with a crisis-oriented focus.

Existential concepts can be incorporated in groups with adolescents in other ways as well. One of my colleagues, Conrad, is a social worker at a middle school. He facilitates several different kinds of groups, including a bereavement group that he started in response to a number of students who had to cope with the death of a parent. Conrad finds that junior high students are able to process a wide range of feelings and reactions associated with a significant loss, that they can be a genuine source of support for one another, and that they are able to begin healing from losses. As is the case for crisis-oriented groups, the members of Conrad's groups are challenged to reflect on their own mortality, to talk about their fears of death, and to explore what really counts in their lives. Conrad reports that his level of presence and compassion with the students is far more important than any techniques or exercises that he might introduce.

Most key concepts of the existential approach have relevance for a wide variety of groups with both children and adolescents. Young people struggle with issues of freedom and responsibility, existential anxiety around the unpredictable nature of life, the reality of death, question the true purpose of their lives, and reflect on striving for authenticity. Even a psychoeducational group or a short-term school group can reach more depth if the group leader learns to listen for the existential underpinnings that form the concerns of the members. In addition to teaching coping skills or acquiring certain information, a group can be instrumental in beginning a reflection process that encourages young people to take seriously the existential challenges of their existence. In working with school-age students, the emphasis needs to be placed on personal responsibility and the choices they make.

Applying the Existential Approach With Multicultural Populations

The existential approach emphasizes presence, the I/Thou relationship, and courage. As such, it can be effectively applied with diverse client populations with a range of specific problems and in a wide array of settings (Schneider & Krug, 2017, 2020). Deurzen and Adams (2011) point out that existential therapists are willing to shift their stance when the situation requires it, especially in cross-cultural counseling situations. Existential therapists attempt to free themselves of their preconceptions and prejudices as much as possible and appreciate that there are different ways of living. They respect the uniqueness of the particular situation of each client and do not impose their cultural values on the client. Assuming an existential orientation does not mean that we have to preach to group members about the values of self-awareness, choice, and responsibility. As leaders, we can listen for existential themes that inevitably arise in most groups and weave these themes into the group process.

The existential approach is particularly relevant for multicultural situations because it does not impose particular values and meanings; rather, it investigates the values and meanings of group members. In an individual's search for a meaningful existence, spiritual values should be viewed as a potential resource. For many clients, spirituality can be a powerful force in fostering healing through an exploration of self by learning to accept oneself, forgiving others and oneself, admitting one's shortcomings, accepting personal responsibility, letting go of resentments, and dealing with guilt. Clearly, spirituality is an existential issue. Elkins (1998) makes a distinction between religion and spirituality, pointing out that millions of people consider themselves "spiritual but not religious." Group members who are not religious in the traditional sense may be interested in spirituality and how to nourish their deeper self. Many existential

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

therapists believe authentic spirituality can be a source of strength and healing.

Vontress (2013) believes existential therapy is especially useful in working with culturally diverse populations because of its focus on universality, or the similarities we all share. He encourages counselors-in-training to focus on the universal commonalities of clients first and secondarily on areas of differences. He believes that it is essential to recognize and address both the ways we are alike and the ways we are different. Existential group counselors respect the different elements that make up a member's philosophy of life. With this understanding of different worldviews, group practitioners are in a position to establish mutually agreed-upon goals with group members that will provide a direction for change.

Individuals willing to participate in a group are frequently experiencing psychological pain. Faced with a crisis and feeling helpless, they often experience their lives as being out of their control. Some individuals simply believe that they do not have a choice or that choice is mainly a middle-class notion. Even if they do have some freedom, societal factors (such as racism, discrimination, and lack of opportunity) may severely restrict their ability to choose for themselves. Existentially oriented group leaders would do well to take into account the sociocultural factors that restrict choices. Clients who come from the barrio or an inner-city environment, for example, may be motivated primarily by the need for safety and survival and may be seeking help in getting these basic needs met. Simply *telling* people they have a choice in making their life better will not help, and it is likely to have a negative impact. Premature assurances that we are all free to give meaning to our lives will seem like insensitive clichés. It is real-life issues that provide grist for the mill for group work, assuming that the leader is willing to deal with them. Developing interventions that can help the group member take action, even if it is only small steps toward change, can have a significant impact on a client's life in the long run (Deurzen, 2010).

The existential approach is gaining international interest. The International Collaborative of Existential Counsellors and Psychotherapists meets online and hosts international conferences. Existential organizations and training programs have emerged in Israel, Portugal, China, Singapore, and Australia. Several Scandinavian societies (Sweden, Denmark, and Norway) are dedicated to promoting existential therapy, and the existential movement is gaining in popularity throughout eastern European society (including Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Russia, Ukraine, and Belarus). Mexican and South American societies also have been established to promote the existential approach. The existential movement in the United Kingdom is thriving, and several doctoral programs are offered. These international developments confirm that existential therapy has wide appeal for diverse populations in many parts of the world.

Evaluation of the Existential Approach to Groups

Contributions and Strengths of the Approach

I have incorporated many features of the existential approach in my practice of group work. My basic assumption is that people have the capacity to become increasingly self-aware and that expansion of awareness results in greater freedom to choose their own direction in life. I believe that people do not have to remain victims of their past and that they have the power to decide for themselves and to take action, at least to some extent. Although people can indeed be victims of forces outside of themselves, existential therapy can help these individuals reclaim or acquire a sense of power so they can become survivors. This approach is largely about empowerment of individuals. Yalom and Josselson (2019) capture the essence of the contemporary value of the existential approach: "Our present age is one of disintegration of cultural and historic mores, of love and marriage, the family, the inherited religions, and so forth. Given these realities, the existential emphasis on meaning, responsibility, and living a finite life fully will become increasingly important" (p. 305).

I value the existential perspective because it has brought the person back into a central place and because it addresses itself to the basic question of what it means to be human. This approach humanizes

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

psychotherapy and reduces the chances of its becoming a mechanical process in the hands of technicians. Deurzen and Adams (2011) maintain that a therapist needs to resonate with the client's experience and struggle to face life honestly. This capacity for resonance must be honed constantly, and it requires the therapist to be fully present with the client and take part in the therapeutic encounter in a fully engaged manner.

An important contribution of the existential approach is the notion that techniques follow understanding. This basic concept lessens the danger of misusing techniques. When the emphasis is on understanding the world of the individual, the leader's first concern is with genuinely grasping the core struggles of others and then drawing on certain techniques to help participants explore these struggles more fully. Because existentially oriented group leaders can draw from the techniques of most of the other approaches discussed in this book, they can develop a highly flexible therapeutic style that is suitable for a variety of groups.

Humanistic-experiential therapy research has made substantial progress during the past decade. Elliott et al. (2013) have compiled a comprehensive review of the humanistic-experiential psychotherapies (HEP) and report that a substantial and rapidly growing body of data supports these therapies. "Like CBT, HEPs are evidence-based for a wide range of client presenting problems" (p. 526). Elliott et al. have argued that the existing research is now more than sufficient to warrant positive evaluations of these approaches when applied to these client problems: depression, relationship problems, anxiety disorders, eating disorders, coping with chronic medical conditions, psychotic disorders, and substance abuse.

Deurzen (2002, 2012) identifies the clients and problems most suited to an existential approach as those who are interested in and committed to dealing with their problems about living. The approach has particular relevance for people who feel alienated from the current expectations of society or for those who are searching for meaning in their lives. It tends to work well with people who are experiencing transitions, or who are at a crossroad, coping with the changes of personal circumstances such as bereavement or loss of employment. Deurzen (2002, 2012) believes existential therapy works better with individuals who are willing to challenge the status quo in the world. She maintains that this approach can be useful for people who are on the edge of existence: those who are dying, those working through a developmental or situational crisis, those who no longer feel they belong in their surroundings, or those who are starting a new phase of life.

A particular strength of the existential approach is its focus on spirituality and meaning in life. Some group members cannot be understood without appreciating the central role their religious or spiritual beliefs and practices exert in daily life. Universal concerns about freedom and responsibility, anxiety, guilt, and the relationship of death to finding purpose in life can all be explored in an existential group. If spirituality or religious values are important in the group members' lives, these concerns should be addressed and can be integrated with other therapeutic tools to enhance the process of a therapeutic group. However, these values should never be imposed on the group by the leader.

Many group members describe feeling as if there is a hole in their life, and even though they attempt to fill this emptiness of self, they are not successful. Frankl (1963) writes about this emptiness as an "existential vacuum." Unless people confront their fears and the sources that are blocking their ability to live fully, they are likely to strive in vain to numb the pain created by this inner void. An existential group can be instrumental in encouraging members to face themselves courageously and deal with the inauthentic aspects of their lives. Group members can learn that the greatest peace of mind comes from listening to themselves and being true to themselves (Vontress, 2013).

Group work has a distinct advantage over dyadic existential therapy. Existential group counseling is comprehensive; it includes a consideration of the "worlds" in which people live. One of the most important of these worlds is the *Mitwelt,* the interpersonal environment in which we relate to others. Mitwelt reflects the idea that human connectedness is universal (Vontress, 2013). From infancy to old age, we need others and develop a sense of empathy with others. We are fulfilled by fellowship with other people and are influenced by continued contact with others. People who learn to relate to others usually have little trouble relating to themselves. However, before people can relate meaningfully to others, they need to know and have a good relationship with themselves.

Exploring the deeper layers of human existence is an involved process best suited for a long-term group, but the basic concepts of the existential approach

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

can form the foundation of a short-term, structured group. Sharp and Bugental (2001) believe that this short-term focus is often a compromise necessitated by managed care programs, which are characterized by cost containment, brevity, and quantifiable behavioral change. The reality of a time-limited group can be a catalyst for members to become actively and fully involved in each group session. J. Bugental (2008) states that short-term work in existential therapy requires a clearly defined purpose and a limited goal of treatment. A carefully thought out structure is required to maintain maximum gain from such a limited opportunity. Members are asked to present their concerns in a succinct form, and a contract might be designed to work toward resolution of a particular concern. In a time-limited group, the members can be challenged to examine how they are relating to the here-and-now aspect of the group experience. They can be asked to evaluate the degree to which they are fully utilizing the resources within the group and the degree to which they are active in the group. A short-term group can help members keep their focus clearly in mind and can encourage them to make optimal use of the limited time they have to accomplish their personal goals.

Limitations of the Approach

Many existentialist concepts are quite abstract and difficult to apply in practice. Existential philosophers such as Kierkegaard, Heidegger, Nietzsche, and Sartre were not writing for group counselors and therapists! Existentialism began as a formal philosophical movement, and although it eventually led to existential approaches within both psychology and psychiatry, its philosophical nature still dominates. Both beginning and advanced group practitioners who are not of a philosophical turn of mind tend to find many of the existential concepts lofty, abstract, and elusive. Even those group counselors who are sympathetic to the core ideas of this perspective sometimes struggle with knowing how to apply these concepts to the practice of group work. It is not so much a matter of applying existentialist philosophy as it is a matter of educating group leaders on the concrete and practical issues of life that are relevant to all human beings.

Zur (2009) has observed that the short-term groups preferred by managed care emphasize instant results and appearances. However, existential psychology teaches us that speed and quick fixes will not provide us with freedom and meaning in life. Most of the existential themes considered in this chapter would be viewed as being too abstract, complex, and amorphous to fit within a managed care context.

An effective existential practitioner needs to have a great deal of maturity, life experience, and intensive supervision and training. Therapists themselves provide the most limiting factor in existential group work. Deurzen (2002) believes that "existential therapists are required to be wise and capable of profound and wide-ranging understanding of what it means to be human" (p. 198). It is easy to envision the dangers posed by therapists who have a shallow grasp of this approach and who deceive both themselves and their clients into thinking that they possess the requisite wisdom. Effective existential therapists have the ability to learn from life experience (Deurzen & Adams, 2011). Living a reflective and honest life is the best way of becoming a competent existential therapist.

Self-Reflection and Discussion Questions

1. The existential approach offers group practitioners a perspective for understanding the value of anxiety and guilt, the role and meaning of death, and the creative aspects of being alone and choosing for oneself. Which of these key concepts would you want to incorporate as a part of your therapeutic style?

2. The *presence* of the leader is a major characteristic of the effective group. Group leaders need to be present as *persons* with the members and become active agents in the group. What can you do as a group leader to maximize your ability to be present in the groups you lead?

3. Existential group leaders are not bound by any prescribed procedures and can draw upon techniques from other therapeutic approaches. What techniques from other therapeutic models would you want to integrate with the existential approach?

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4. The "givens of existence" include these core themes: death, freedom, existential isolation, and meaninglessness. How do these themes have personal relevance in your life? To what degree are you inclined to think in terms of these existential themes in your work with groups?

5. The struggle for a sense of significance and purpose in life, a distinctively human characteristic, is a dominant force in the existential approach. How does striving for meaning in life pertain to you personally? How would this theme of searching for meaning be a topic you would likely focus on in the groups you lead?

Where to Go From Here

The Existential-Humanistic Institute's (EHI) primary focus is training, and courses in existential-humanistic therapy and theory are offered. A secondary focus is community building. EHI was formed as a nonprofit organization under the auspices of the Pacific Institute in 1997 to provide a home for those mental health professionals, scholars, and students who seek in-depth training in existential-humanistic theory and practice.

The Existential-Humanistic Institute, Dr. Kirk Schneider
Website: www.kirkjschneider.com
The Society for Existential Analysis is a professional organization devoted to exploring issues pertaining to an existential/phenomenological approach to counseling and therapy. Membership is open to anyone interested in this approach and includes students, trainees, psychotherapists, philosophers, psychiatrists, counselors, and psychologists. Members receive a regular newsletter and an annual copy of the *Journal of the Society for Existential Analysis.* The society provides a list of existentially oriented psychotherapists for referral purposes. The School of Psychotherapy and Counselling at Regent's College in London offers an advanced diploma in existential psychotherapy as well as short courses in the field.

Society for Existential Analysis
BM Existential
London WCIN 3XX
England
Telephone: 07000 47 33 37
Email: info@existentialanalysis.co.uk/
Website: www.existentialanalysis.co.uk/
Other useful websites are listed below:

Dilemma Consultancy Limited
Website: www.dilemmas.org

Psychotherapy Training
Website: www.existentialpsychotherapy.net
The International Collaborative of Existential Counsellors and Psychotherapists (ICECAP) meets online and sponsors international conferences. ICECAP exists to promote the appreciation, understanding, and growth of existential and phenomenological psychotherapy through publications, events, and colloquia. ICECAP provides a platform for the international registration of existential practitioners through the European Association for Psychotherapy and the World Council for Psychotherapy.

International Collaborative of Existential Counsellors and Psychotherapists (ICECAP)
Website: www.icecap.org.uk
SEPTIMUS is an Internet-based course that is taught in Ireland, Iceland, Sweden, Poland, the Czech Republic, Romania, Italy, Portugal, and the United Kingdom.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Psychotherapy Training on the Net—SEPTIMUS
Website: www.psychotherapytraining.net
The New School of Psychotherapy and Counselling (NSPC) is a training institute set up especially for training existential therapists, and it offers two doctoral programs, one in existential psychotherapy and one in existential counselling psychology. It offers an MA in Existential Coaching, and an online MSc in Psychotherapy Studies, which is based on an existential foundation and can be taken from anywhere in the world.

New School of Psychotherapy and Counselling
Email: Admin@nspc.org.uk
Website: www.nspc.org.uk
For an online course that focuses on contemporary trends within existential-humanistic psychotherapy, consult the Zur Institute.

Zur Institute
Website: info@zurinstitute.com

Recommended Supplementary Readings

No books that I am aware of deal explicitly and exclusively with the application of the existential approach to group counseling. However, the books listed here contain related material that you can use to apply this approach to your work with groups.

Existential Counselling and Psychotherapy in Practice (Deurzen, 2012) offers an excellent presentation of the theory and practice of existential therapy based on the European tradition. The author provides a framework for addressing problems in living rather than techniques for working with clients.

Skills in Existential Counseling and Psychotherapy (Deurzen & Adams, 2011) is a clearly written book that explains the existential attitude, highlights the importance of the person of the therapist, and describes the process of existential therapy. This is a superb resource that provides a basis for understanding how to apply existential notions to the practice of counseling.

Everyday Mysteries: A Handbook of Existential Psychotherapy (Deurzen, 2010) provides a framework for practicing counseling from an existential perspective. The author puts into clear perspective topics such as anxiety, authentic living, clarifying one's worldview, determining values, discovering meaning, and coming to terms with life.

Existential-Humanistic Therapy (Schneider & Krug, 2017) provides a clear presentation of the theory and practice of existential-humanistic therapy. This approach allows for incorporating techniques from other contemporary therapeutic approaches.

Existential Psychotherapy (Yalom, 1980) is a superb treatment of ultimate human concerns of death, freedom, isolation, and meaninglessness as these issues relate to therapy. This book has depth and clarity, and it is rich with clinical examples that illustrate existential themes. If you were to select just one book on existential therapy, this would be my recommendation.

A Matter of Death and Life (Yalom & Yalom (2021), describes the experiences of Marilyn and Irvin Yalom during the last months of her life after she was diagnosed with cancer. Marilyn and Irv Yalom share how they dealt with profound new struggles: Marilyn to die a good death, and Irv to live on without her. This is a moving account of dealing with death, loss, anxiety, and grief that illustrates existential themes in life.

The Schopenhauer Cure: A Novel (Yalom, 2005) describes the work of a group conducted along existential parameters in the form of a novel. Key points such as lack of commitment to the group, intragroup sexual relationships, envy and anger, and facing the death of the group therapist are dealt with in this fictional group.

I Never Knew I Had a Choice (Corey et al., 2018) is a self-help book written from an existential perspective. It contains many exercises and activities that leaders can use for their group work and that they can suggest as "homework assignments" between sessions. The topics covered include our struggle to achieve autonomy;

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the roles that work, love, sexuality, intimacy, and solitude play in our lives; the meaning of loneliness, death, and loss; and the ways in which we choose our values and philosophy of life.

Video

Watch Gerald Corey's *Group Theories in Action*, video via the Cengage eBook. The group session discussed in this chapter is based on an integrative approach to group counseling.

References and Suggested Readings

*Barnett, L. (Ed.). (2008). *When death enters the therapeutic space: Existential perspectives in psychotherapy and counselling*. Routledge.

Barnett, L., & Madison, G. (Eds.). (2012). *Existential therapy: Legacy, vibrancy, and dialogue*. Taylor & Francis.

Bohart, A. C., & Wade, A. G. (2013). The client in psychotherapy. In M. J. Lambert (Ed.), *Bergin and Garfield's handbook of psychotherapy and behavior change* (6th ed., pp. 219–257). Wiley.

Bugental, E. K. (2008). Swimming together in a sea of loss: A group process for elders. In K. J. Schneider (Ed.), *Existential-integrative psychotherapy: Guideposts to the core of practice* (pp. 333–342). Routledge.

*Bugental, J. F. T. (1987). *The art of the psychotherapist*. Norton.

*Bugental, J. F. T. (1997). There is a fundamental division in how psychotherapy is conceived. In J. K. Zeig (Ed.), *The evolution of psychotherapy: The third conference* (pp. 185–196). Brunner/Mazel.

Bugental, J. F. T. (2008). Preliminary sketches for a short-term existential-humanistic therapy. In K. J. Schneider (Ed.), *Existential-integrative psychotherapy: Guideposts to the core of practice* (pp. 165–168). Routledge.

*Cooper, M. (2017). *Existential therapies* (2nd ed.). Sage.

*Corey, G., Corey, M., & Muratori, M. (2018). *I never knew I had a choice* (11th ed.). Cengage Learning.

*Craig, M., Vos, J., Cooper, M., & Correia, E. A. (2016). Existential psychotherapies. In D. J. Cain, K. Keenan, & S. Rubin (Eds.), *Humanistic psychotherapies: Handbook of research and practice* (2nd ed., pp. 283–317). American Psychological Association.

Deurzen, E. van. (1991). Ontological insecurity revisited. *Journal of the Society for Existential Analysis, 2*, 38–48.

Deurzen, E. van. (2002). Existential therapy. In W. Dryden (Ed.), *Handbook of individual therapy* (4th ed., pp. 179–208). Sage.

*Deurzen, E. van. (2010). *Everyday mysteries: A handbook of existential psychotherapy* (2nd ed.). Routledge.

*Deurzen, E. van. (2012). *Existential counselling and psychotherapy in practice* (3rd ed.). Sage.

*Deurzen, E. van, & Adams, M. (2011). *Skills in existential counselling and psychotherapy*. Sage.

Deurzen, E. van, & Arnold-Baker, C. (2005). *Existential perspectives on human issues: A handbook for practice*. Palgrave, Macmillan.

*Deurzen, E. van, & Iacovou, S. (Eds.). (2013). *Existential perspectives on relationship therapy*. Palgrave, Macmillan.

Deurzen, E. van, & Young, S. (2009). *Existential perspectives on supervision: Broadening the horizon of psychotherapy and counselling*. Palgrave, Macmillan.

*Duncan, B. L., Miller, S. D., Wampold, B. E., & Hubble, M. A. (Eds.). (2010). *The heart and soul of change: Delivering what works in therapy* (2nd ed.). American Psychological Association.

Elkins, D. N. (1998). *Beyond religion: A personal program for building a spiritual life outside the walls of traditional religion*. Quest Books.

Elkins, D. N. (2007). Empirically supported treatments: The deconstruction of a myth. *Journal of Humanistic Psychology, 47*, 474–500.

*Elkins, D. N. (2016). *The human elements of psychotherapy: A nonmedical model of emotional healing*. American Psychological Association.

*Elliott, R., Greenberg, L. S., Watson, J., Timulak, L., & Freire, E. (2013). Research on humanistic-experiential psychotherapies. In M. J. Lambert (Ed.), *Bergin and*

Books and articles marked with an asterisk (*) are suggested for further study.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Garfield's handbook of psychotherapy and behavior change (6th ed., pp. 495–538). Wiley.

*Frankl, V. (1963). *Man's search for meaning*. Washington Square Press.

Heidegger, M. (1962). *Being and time* (J. Macquarrie & E. Robinson, Trans.). Harper & Row.

*Hill, C. E. (2018). *Meaning in life: A therapist's guide*. American Psychological Association.

Kinnier, R. T., Tribbensee, N. E., Rose, C. A., & Vaughan, S. M. (2001). In the final analysis: More wisdom from people who have faced death. *Journal of Counseling and Development, 79*(2), 171–177.

*May, R. (1953). *Man's search for himself*. Norton.

May, R. (Ed.). (1961). *Existential psychology*. Random House.

May, R. (1981). *Freedom and destiny*. Norton.

May, R. (1983). *The discovery of being: Writings in existential psychology*. Norton.

Sartre, J. P. (1971). *Being and nothingness*. Bantam.

*Schneider, K. J. (Ed.). (2008). *Existential-integrative psychotherapy: Guideposts to the core of practice*. Routledge.

* Schneider, K. J., & Krug, O. T. (2017). *Existential-humanistic therapy* (2nd ed.). American Psychological Association.

*Schneider, K. J., & Krug, O. T. (2020). Existential-humanistic psychotherapies. In S. B. Messer & N. J. Kaslow (Eds.), *Essential psychotherapies: Theory and practice* (4th ed., pp. 257–293). Guilford Press.

Sharp, J. G., & Bugental, J. F. T. (2001). Existential-humanistic psychotherapy. In R. J. Corsini (Ed.), *Handbook of innovative therapies* (2nd ed., pp. 206–217). Wiley.

Tillich, P. (1952). *The courage to be*. Yale University Press.

*Vontress, C. E. (2013). Existential therapy. In J. Frew & M. D. Spiegler (Eds.), *Contemporary psychotherapies for a diverse world* (pp. 131–164). Taylor & Francis.

Yalom, I. D. (2019). *Becoming myself: A psychiatrist's memoir*. Basic Books.

*Yalom, I. D. (1980). *Existential psychotherapy*. Basic Books.

*Yalom, I. D. (2005). *The Schopenhauer cure: A novel*. HarperCollins.

*Yalom, I. D. (2008). *Staring at the sun: Overcoming the terror of death*. Jossey-Bass.

* Yalom, I. D., & Josselson, R. (2019). Existential psychotherapy. In D. Wedding & R. Corsini (Eds.), *Current psychotherapies* (11th ed., pp. 273–308). Cengage Learning.

*Yalom, I. D., & Leszcz, M. (2020). *The theory and practice of group psychotherapy* (6th ed.). Basic Books.

*Yalom, I. D., & Yalom, M. (2021). *A matter of death and life*. Redwood Press.

Zur, O. (2009). *Clinical update: Existential-humanistic psychotherapy revisited*. info@zurinstitute.com

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 10

The Person-Centered Approach to Groups

Learning Objectives

1. Describe the ways that empathy, unconditional positive regard, and genuineness are fundamental to the process and outcome of therapy.
2. Describe the role and functions of the person-centered group facilitator.
3. Discuss the use of techniques in a person-centered group.
4. List some barriers to effective group counseling from a person-centered perspective.
5. Describe the stages that typically occur in a person-centered group.
6. Describe some principles of expressive arts therapy in a group setting.
7. Understand how person-centered group play therapy can be appropriately applied when working with schoolchildren to help them process their interpersonal and intrapersonal concerns.
8. Understand how the therapeutic factors apply in identifying and exploring diversity themes that are a part of a group experience.
9. Understand how cultural and racial differences among members can be effectively explored in a group that has achieved a level of trust and cohesion.
10. Recognize the contributions and the limitations of the person-centered approach to groups.

Introduction

The person-centered approach to group counseling was developed by the late Carl Rogers. Of all the pioneers of various approaches to group work, Rogers stands out as the one who most changed the direction of counseling theory and practice. In an internet survey of more than 2,000 psychotherapists, Carl Rogers was consistently named the most influential figure in the psychotherapy field (Cook et al., 2009).

In the early 1940s Rogers developed *nondirective counseling*, a powerful and revolutionary alternative to the directive and interpretative approaches to therapy then practiced. Elkins (2016) notes that Rogers pioneered significant changes in the field by challenging the basic assumption that the counselor was the expert and the client had a passive role. Rogers questioned the validity of such widely used therapeutic procedures as diagnosis, interpretation, giving advice, suggestions, and teaching.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Carl Rogers

Bettmann/Getty Images

CARL ROGERS (1902–1987), a major spokesperson for humanistic psychology, led a life that reflected the ideas he developed over half a century. He showed a questioning stance, a deep openness to change, and the courage to forge into unknown territory both as a person and as a professional. Rogers held academic positions in various fields, including education, social work, counseling, psychotherapy, group therapy, peace, and interpersonal relations, and he earned recognition around the world for originating and developing the humanistic movement in psychotherapy. His foundational ideas, especially the central role of the client-therapist relationship as a means to growth and change, have been incorporated in many other theoretical approaches. Rogers was a pioneer whose groundbreaking discoveries continue to have far-reaching effects on the field of psychotherapy (Cain, 2010).

In the 1960s and 1970s Rogers applied person-centered principles to group work, which increased the popularity of group counseling. He spearheaded development of basic encounter groups and personal growth groups. In 1974 Rogers and some of his colleagues initiated a new form of person-centered group known as the *large community group*. These groups, which began at the Center for Studies of the Person in La Jolla, California, were eventually offered in many locations around the world. These large community groups, whose size often reached 75 to 800 people, provided data for understanding how cross-cultural and international differences can be resolved.

It is difficult to overestimate the significance of Rogers's contributions to clinical and counseling psychology. He was a courageous pioneer who "was about 50 years ahead of his time and has been waiting for us to catch up" (Elkins, 2009, p. 20). Often called the "father of psychotherapy research," Rogers was the first to study the counseling process in depth by analyzing the transcripts of actual therapy sessions; he was the first clinician to conduct major studies on psychotherapy using quantitative methods; he was the first to formulate a comprehensive theory of personality and psychotherapy grounded in empirical research; and he contributed to developing a theory of psychotherapy that de-emphasized pathology and focused on the strengths and resources of individuals. He was not afraid to take a strong position, and Rogers challenged the status quo throughout his professional career.

During the last 15 years of his life, Rogers applied the person-centered approach to world peace by training policy makers, leaders, and groups in conflict. Perhaps his greatest passion was directed toward the reduction of interracial tensions and the effort to achieve world peace, for which he was nominated for the Nobel Peace Prize.

For an interesting account of Carl Rogers's journey, see *The Life and Work of Carl Rogers* (Kirschenbaum, 2009).

In nondirective counseling, the therapist's realness and empathy are emphasized, and the therapeutic relationship rather than the therapist's techniques are viewed as the central factors in facilitating change. Rogers's approach was grounded on the assumption that human beings tend to move toward wholeness and self-actualization. He believed that individual members, as well as the group as a whole, could

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Natalie Rogers

Courtesy Natalie Rogers.

NATALIE ROGERS (1928–2015) was a pioneer in the field of expressive arts therapy, which employs a variety of creative forms—movement, painting, sculpting, music, writing, and improvisation—in a supportive setting to facilitate growth and healing. N. Rogers expanded on her father's (Carl Rogers) theory of creativity, using the expressive arts to enhance personal growth for individuals and groups. Her approach, known as *expressive arts therapy*, extends person-centered theory by helping individuals access their feelings through spontaneous creative expressions.

Just as her father's work was influenced by his upbringing and departures from his parents' views, Natalie Rogers's work evolved from what she felt was lacking in her father's theory. Carl Rogers seldom openly expressed anger at home or in relationship to his colleagues (except in letter writing). As a woman growing up in an era when females were meant to be accommodating to men, N. Rogers eventually discovered her underlying anger at being a second-class citizen. Her art was one vehicle to express and gain insight into this injustice. She also expressed her anger at her father because he was unknowingly a part of the patriarchal system. He was surprised, but willing to hear about the role he and other men played in holding women back.

find their own direction with a minimal degree of direction from the group facilitator. Rogers was a *quiet revolutionary*; his ideas challenged the medical model of traditional therapeutic approaches, and they continue to influence counseling practice today (Cain, 2010; Kirschenbaum, 2009; Rogers & Russell, 2002).

A common theme in Rogers's early writings that permeated all of his later works was a basic trust in the client's ability to move forward if conditions fostering growth are present. Rogers believed in the **formative tendency** in nature, a central source of energy that seeks fulfillment and actualization and that both maintains and enhances the organism. A faith in the emergent nature of reality and his belief that therapy is an emergent relational process differentiates person-centered therapy from almost all other psychological theories. It leads naturally to a faith in subjective experience and a belief in the basic trustworthiness of human nature. Clients have capacities for self-understanding and constructive change, and this **actualization tendency** moves individuals inherently toward self-regulation, self-determination, and inner freedom. Rogers's conceptual framework grew out of his experience that human beings become increasingly worthy of trust when they feel they are understood and respected at a deep level (Kirschenbaum, 2009).

Historical Background

Rogers's nondirective approach focused on reflecting and clarifying the feelings of individual clients. Rogers believed that through an accepting relationship clients were able to gain insight into the nature of their problems and then take constructive action based on their new self-understanding. During the 1950s, Rogers developed and refined his basic hypotheses for psychotherapy, and these principles were later applied to therapy groups. He also developed a systematic theory of personality and applied this self-theory to the practice of counseling individuals, which led him to rename his approach *client-centered therapy* (Rogers, 1951). The client-centered approach was broadened to include applications to the teaching/learning situation,

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

affective/cognitive learning in workshops, and organizational development and leadership.

As the fields of application grew in number and variety, the name "client-centered therapy" was changed to the *person-centered approach.* Rogers also broadened his emphasis beyond the therapist's ability to reflect accurately what clients were expressing to include the therapist's congruence and willingness to become increasingly involved in the therapy. The group work that Rogers pioneered was mostly in the form of weekend workshops, although some of his workshops lasted 2 to 3 weeks. These small groups did much to revolutionize the practice of group counseling.

Bozarth et al. (2002) provide a comprehensive review of research in person-centered therapy over the various periods in the evolution of its development. Here are some of their conclusions:

- In the earliest years of the approach, the client rather than the therapist was the person in charge. Research showed that nondirective therapy was associated with increased understanding, greater self-exploration, and improved self-concepts.
- Later the approach was characterized by a shift from clarification of feelings to a focus on the client's frame of reference. Research confirmed many of Rogers's hypotheses, offering strong evidence for the value of the therapeutic relationship and the client's resources as the crux of successful therapy.
- As person-centered therapy developed, research centered on the core conditions of therapy, which were assumed to be both necessary and sufficient conditions for successful therapy. The research strongly supports certain attitudes of the therapist as being basic to successful therapy outcomes.

Although person-centered therapy has changed over the years, faith in the fundamental actualization tendency of the person has remained at its foundation. The contemporary person-centered approach to group counseling is the result of an evolutionary process begun more than 60 years ago that continues to remain open to change and refinement (Bozarth et al., 2002; Cain et al., 2016).

The Relationship Between Existential Therapy and Humanistic Psychology

Some key concepts of existential therapy overlap with the humanistic themes put forth by Rogers and others. Indeed, Rogers constructed his notions of therapeutic practice on existential principles about what it means to be human, the balance between freedom and responsibility, and the client-therapist relationship as a key to change. Both person-centered therapy and Gestalt therapy are experiential, humanistic, phenomenological, and existentially oriented.

A number of humanistic theorists have contributed to a movement often referred to as the "third force" in psychology (in reaction to the psychoanalytic and behavioral forces). They have written on the nature of human existence, on methods for studying human modes of functioning, and on the implications of humanistic assumptions. Synthesizing their theories from many divergent fields and approaches, early humanistic psychologists contended that people could not be studied and understood in segmented fashion. Rather, humans must be studied in complete relation to how they interact with others and with the world. Some key figures in the development of humanistic psychology, all of whom are deceased, were Carl Rogers, Rollo May, Abraham Maslow, Fritz Perls, Virginia Satir, Clark Moustakas, Sidney Jourard, and James Bugental. Many of these psychologists have an existential orientation, but they also applied themes to the practice of psychotherapy that focus on the capacities unique to humans: love, freedom, choice, creativity, purpose, relatedness, meaning, values, growth, self-actualization, autonomy, responsibility, ego transcendence, humor, and spontaneity. Natalie Rogers's expressive arts methods made significant contributions to the continuing development of the humanistic approach as she taught and facilitated workshops in the United States, England, Spain, and South Korea. According to humanistic psychologists, any therapy that aims at growth must take these human capacities into account.

Several authors (Bohart & Watson, 2020; Greenberg & Rice, 1997; Page et al., 2002) address basic concepts shared by the humanistic approaches to psychotherapy: person-centered group therapy,

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Gestalt group therapy, and existential group therapy. These authors include these three theories under the humanistic umbrella because they all share common assumptions about human nature and what constitutes key therapeutic processes necessary for effective therapeutic outcomes. Basic concepts of primary importance in all of the humanistic approaches to psychotherapy include these ideas:

1. *Importance of self-awareness.* These theories stress the importance of self-awareness in therapy based on the premise that people who are self-aware can make more life-affirming choices.
2. *Commitment to a phenomenological approach.* A belief in the uniquely human capacity for reflective consciousness involves considering the client's subjective world and striving to understand reality from the client's perspective. Emphasis is on the uniqueness and individuality of the person.
3. *Actualization, or growth, tendency.* Both Maslow and Rogers maintained that human beings strive to grow. People have an innate drive to move beyond stability and toward realizing their full potential, and this focus enables them to benefit from therapy.
4. *Belief that humans are free, self-determining beings.* Individuals may be influenced by their past and by their environment, but they have a role in who and what they become through the choices they make.
5. *Concern and respect for the subjective experience of each person.* Humanistic therapists attempt to understand and grasp the experiential world of their clients. The humanistic approaches all emphasize the notion that people are capable of acting in responsible and caring ways in interpersonal relationships.

Key Concepts

Trust in the Group Process

Rogers (1986b) made it clear that the person-centered approach rests on a basic trust in human beings' tendency to realize their full potential. Similarly, person-centered therapy is based on a deep sense of trust in the group's ability to develop its own potential by moving in a constructive direction. In a successful group, participants begin to sense that they are part of something larger, and they are willing to participate in the larger process without giving up their own sense of autonomy. For a group to move forward, it must develop an accepting and trusting atmosphere in which the members can show the aspects of themselves they usually conceal and move into new behaviors. For example:

- Members move from playing roles to expressing themselves more directly.
- Members move from being relatively closed to experience to becoming more open to outside reality.
- Members move from being out of contact with internal and subjective experience to becoming aware of it.
- Members move from looking for answers outside of themselves to a willingness to direct their own lives from within.
- Members move from lacking trust and being somewhat closed and fearful in interpersonal relationships to being more open and expressive with others.

The Therapeutic Conditions for Growth

The basic tenet underlying the person-centered approach to group work was stated briefly by Rogers (1980): "Individuals have within themselves vast resources for self-understanding and for altering their self-concepts, basic attitudes, and self-directed behavior; these resources can be tapped if a definable climate of facilitative psychological attitudes can be provided" (p. 115). According to Rogers (1986b), the climate required to release our actualizing tendency is characterized by three primary attitudes of the therapist: *genuineness* (or congruence), *unconditional positive regard* (also called nonpossessive warmth or acceptance), and *empathy*. As the facilitator models these attitudes, an accepting and caring climate emerges. Given the establishment of a favorable climate, the group members can be trusted to drop

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

their defenses, make use of their inner resources, and work toward personally meaningful goals that will lead to significant personal change. To function effectively in a group, the facilitator must trust the abilities of the group members to grow in a favorable direction. If this is not the case, the group facilitator is likely to apply more control over the group process than is helpful (Page et al., 2002).

When a group facilitator expresses genuineness, acceptance, and accurate empathy for group members and when members perceive these conditions, therapeutic personality change and growth are likely to occur. Rogers's original conviction was that these core conditions work together rather than operating independently. The core conditions have been put to the test in a wide variety of situations with very divergent groups, different cultures, and different nations (Rogers, 1987d). Rogers stressed that the core conditions are not only *necessary* for effective therapy but also are *sufficient*.

Implications for Group Leaders Bozarth et al. (2002) assert that the most important aspect of training is to develop the attitude of the therapist to support the client's perception of the world, to demonstrate faith in the client's inner resources, and to attend to the therapeutic relationship. Because the person-centered approach emphasizes an equalization of power, it is critical that the facilitator's behavior in no way diminish the power of members.

Researchers have confirmed that the person-centered assumption that the facilitator's expression of three core therapeutic attitudes—genuineness, positive regard, and empathic understanding—is foundational for positive therapeutic outcomes (Cain, 2013; Kirschenbaum, 2009). These core characteristics, along with the therapist's presence, contribute to creating a safe environment in which clients are able to make significant changes. Emphasis is best placed on the art of listening and understanding rather than on techniques and strategies. Clients often identify "being understood" as one of the most helpful aspects of their therapy and express appreciation for being listened to carefully (Cain, 2010). When psychotherapists were asked what they do in practice, the most frequently endorsed methods were relationship oriented and included conveying warmth, acceptance, understanding, and empathy (Cook et al., 2010). These core conditions represent the therapist's *way of being*.

The following sections expand on Rogers's three core therapeutic conditions as they apply to the behavior of group leaders.

Genuineness

The first element is the **genuineness** of the facilitator of the group. Therapists must be present as themselves and perform their professional functions without hiding behind a professional role. What therapists express externally must be *congruent* with their inner experience, at least during the time of therapy. In other words, genuine therapists do not cling to a role such as being an expert or acting as a detached observer. They do not pretend to be interested when they are not, do not fake attention or understanding, do not say what they do not mean, and do not adopt behaviors designed to win approval. Genuineness occurs within the larger interpersonal context of acceptance, empathy, and positive regard; and qualities of humor, spontaneity, and vulnerability promote the working alliance (Miller & Moyers, 2021).

Genuineness is the state of authenticity that results from a deep exploration of self and a willingness to accept the truths of this exploration. Neither empathy nor positive regard can operate unless the therapist is perceived as being genuine. Congruence lends credibility to empathy and positive regard, and it occupies a central position in the person-centered conceptualization (Kolden et al., 2019).

Implications for Group Leaders Congruent group leaders avoid using their professional role to keep themselves hidden; instead, they are naturally themselves in their way of relating to members in the group. Although group leaders are essentially honest in their encounters in the group, they are not indiscriminately open, and they know the boundaries of appropriate self-revelation. They realize the importance of taking responsibility for any feelings they express in the group and the importance of exploring with clients any persistent feelings, especially those that may be blocking their ability to be fully present. Through their own authenticity, congruent group leaders offer a model that helps their clients work toward greater realness and makes the psychological

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

contact more immediate. Group therapists can encourage genuineness and authenticity by creating a safe climate for clients to give voice to their concerns (Kolden et al., 2019).

Some group leaders have difficulty "being themselves." Often that difficulty stems from the misapprehension that genuineness entails expressing every immediate thought or feeling or being spontaneous without any restraint or consideration of the appropriateness and timeliness of one's reactions. Another difficulty arises when, in the name of being "authentic," leaders make themselves the focal point of the group by discussing their personal problems in great detail. Facilitators need to examine their motivations for discussing their personal issues and ask themselves whether the disclosure serves the members' needs or their own. Therapists use self-disclosure to validate a client's reality, normalize experiences, strengthen the alliance, or present alternative ways of thinking or acting (Norcross, 2010). Leader self-disclosure should be done with careful attention to timing and with the purpose of helping the group advance its capacity to support growth.

Unconditional Positive Regard and Acceptance

The second core element is **unconditional positive regard**, accepting group members' personal feelings without judgment and expressing respect and caring for group members. When group facilitators display a positive, nonjudgmental, accepting attitude toward their clients, therapeutic change is more likely (Rogers, 1986b; Farber et al., 2019). A therapist's positive regard and affirmation functions as a positive reinforcer for group members' engagement in the therapeutic process. Effective therapists communicate a respectful, caring, positive attitude that affirms the client's sense of self-worth. Acceptance is communicated not only by treating clients with respect but also by avoiding being judgmental, disapproving, shaming, criticizing, or labeling. Miller and Moyers (2021) assert that an accepting attitude is particularly impactful when working with marginalized groups and when counseling across cultures. Positive regard and acceptance are communicated by affirming clients' positive attributes, strengths, accomplishments, and virtues. By valuing and accepting members' experiences without placing stipulations and expectations on this acceptance, group leaders reduce client defensiveness and enable clients to be more open to all their experiences and more involved in their therapy.

Acceptance is not to be confused with approval, however; facilitators can accept and value their group members as separate persons, with a right to their separateness, without necessarily approving of some of their behavior. As people perceive that they are seen, accepted, and valued for who they are, they tend to feel prized and develop more accepting feelings toward themselves (Cain, 2013).

Associated with positive regard is an attitude of nonpossessive caring and warmth, which can be expressed in subtle ways such as through gestures, eye contact, tone of voice, and facial expression. A genuine expression of caring can be sensed by clients and will promote their development. Likewise, artificial warmth is as readily identified and will not be helpful to group members. If clients sense that the therapist's expression of warmth is more a technique than a genuine feeling, it becomes difficult for clients to trust the genuineness of other reactions of the therapist.

It is a rare group facilitator who can genuinely provide unconditional acceptance for every member on a consistent basis. Even Rogers recognized that no therapist can fulfill perfectly the conditions of genuineness, empathy, and acceptance, but he believed that *to the degree* that therapists can fulfill these conditions the client will tend to move forward in a positive way. Unconditional positive regard can best be thought of as an attitude of receptiveness toward the subjective and experiential world of the group member.

Related to the concept of accepting the individual group member with unconditional positive regard, caring, and warmth is the idea of developing an attitude of acceptance of the group as a whole. Rogers (1970) believed in the capacity of individuals to find their own direction, and he also believed in accepting a group where it is, without attempting to impose a direction on it: "From my experience I know that if I attempt to push a group to a deeper level, it is not, in the long run, going to work" (p. 48).

Implications for Group Leaders Group facilitators in training often struggle with what they see as the monumental task of being able to feel accepting

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

or being able to demonstrate positive regard. Some burden themselves with the unrealistic expectation that they must *always be accepting* and that they must *consistently respond with warmth* in all situations. Group facilitators need to develop an accepting attitude toward themselves as well as toward their clients. It is not necessary to feel a high level of warmth and positive regard all the time to be an effective group leader. These attitudes are not an either-or condition; rather, they occur on a graded continuum. Being an effective group leader starts by accepting oneself and continues by bearing in mind that valuing, caring, and accepting group participants leads to greater opportunities to facilitate change.

Empathy

The third facilitative aspect is **empathic understanding**, accurately sensing the feelings and personal meanings members are experiencing. Rogers (1961) defined **empathy** as the capacity to see the world of another by assuming the internal frame of reference of that person: "To sense the client's private world as if it were your own but without ever losing the 'as if' quality—this is empathy, and it seems essential to therapy" (p. 284). But sensing, even understanding, the client's private world is not enough. The facilitator must also be able to communicate this understanding effectively to group members. A primary means of determining whether members experience a facilitator's empathy is to secure feedback from them (Norcross, 2010).

Miller and Moyers (2021) note that a central aspect of accurate empathy is striving to understand the client's own experience and perspective. Effective therapists exhibit a sense of curiosity and an interest in grasping another's experience. Therapists high on the skill of accurate empathy demonstrate a deep understanding of a client's meaning and have the ability to convey this understanding to the client. Miller and Moyers report that meta-analyses indicate that empathic listening is associated with greater client self-exploration and positive therapy outcomes.

Rogers (1975) considered empathy as "an unappreciated way of being" for many group practitioners. He regarded empathy as one of the most potent factors in bringing about learning and self-directed change, thus locating power in the person and not in the expert. He summarized some general research findings concerning empathy as follows:

- Therapists of many different orientations agree that attempting sensitively and accurately to understand others from their viewpoint is a critical factor in being effective therapists.
- One of the main functions of empathy is to foster client self-exploration. Clients come to a deeper self-understanding through a relationship in which they feel they are being understood by others. Research has demonstrated that clients who feel understood by their therapists are encouraged to share more of themselves.
- Empathy dissolves alienation; the person who receives empathy feels connected with others. Furthermore, those who receive empathy learn that they are valued, cared for, and accepted as they are.
- The ability to exhibit empathy depends on the personal development of the therapist. Rogers came to the conclusion that "the more psychologically mature and integrated the therapist is as a person, the more helpful is the relationship he provides" (p. 5).
- Being a skilled diagnostician and making interpretations is not related to empathy, which, at its best, is accepting and nonjudgmental. In fact, Rogers believed that "true empathy is always free of any evaluative or diagnostic quality" (p. 7).

Accurate empathy is central to the practice of person-centered group work. It is a way for facilitators to hear the meanings expressed by the members of their group that often lie at the edge of their awareness. Elliott et al. (2019) describe empathy as understanding the meaning and feeling of a client's experiencing and being able to communicate that clearly to the person. There is consistent and robust evidence that clients' perceptions of feeling understood by their therapist is a key factor in positive outcomes. Years of research have consistently demonstrated that empathy is the most powerful determinant of client progress in therapy (Elliott et al., 2019).

Active and sensitive listening was what Rogers (1970) did when he facilitated a group: "I listen as carefully, accurately, and sensitively as I am able, to each individual who expresses himself. Whether the utterance is superficial or significant, I listen" (p. 47). It is apparent that Rogers was listening to more than the words; he also heard the meaning behind both

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the verbal and the nonverbal content. In this regard he was concerned with facilitating the truest expression of the person's subjective experience.

In a group context, the interpersonal and higher-order aspects of empathy frequently result in bonding among the members and cohesion and alignment in the group as a whole. According to Cain (2010), emotionally focused empathy helps clients (1) pay attention to and value their experiencing, (2) process their experience both cognitively and bodily, (3) view old experiences in new ways that promote shifts in perceptions of the self and one's view of the world, and (4) increase their confidence in their perceptions and judgment and their ability to make sound decisions and take action. In the context of the safety of a group, the members' capacity for effective learning about themselves and how they relate to others is gradually restored.

Implications for Group Leaders Empathic understanding is essential to foster the climate of acceptance and trust necessary for the success of the group. Empathy is a skill that can be developed—and it is a skill that an effective group leader needs to develop.

In working with group counselors, many mistakenly assume that they cannot be empathic unless they themselves have directly experienced the problems voiced by group members. Such an assumption can severely limit the leader's effectiveness. Clearly, one need not experience incest to empathize with a group member's anguish over reliving such a painful experience. One need not to have been abandoned by a parent to feel and experience the sadness of abandonment. It is not necessary to have been divorced to share a client's anger, hurt, and sadness about separation. Such experiences come in many forms and, at one level or another, are common to us all. Situations in every life trigger feelings of isolation, rage, resentment, guilt, sadness, loss, or rejection—to name a few of the feelings that will be expressed in groups. Our ability to experience anger, joy, fear, and love makes it possible for us to enter the world of another person, even though this person's circumstances may be different from our own. As group leaders, if we remain open to our own emotions, allow ourselves to be touched by the emotions of others, and are willing to reexperience certain difficult events, we will increase our capacity to be psychologically present for others.

Barriers to Effective Therapy

When group leaders report unsuccessful experiences with a group, the conditions of active listening, empathy, and positive regard are often in some measure lacking in their groups. Here is a list of specific problems that work against group progress:

- *Lack of attending and empathy.* Often these prospective group leaders show that they don't really listen; they are preoccupied with a message that they want to impart to their groups and use the group as a vehicle for indoctrination. Or they ask many closed questions and are preoccupied with problem solving rather than problem understanding. They often take on too much responsibility for making things happen. In short, beginning group counselors sometimes talk too much and listen too little.
- *Absence of counselor self-disclosure.* Some agencies and institutions foster, even require, an undisclosing leader role. Group counselors may be given these messages: "Avoid being personal," "Don't get involved," and "Avoid sharing anything about yourself, even if it affects the relationship." Leaders are sometimes expected to change the behavior of members, yet keep themselves out of their interactions with group members.
- *Lack of positive regard, warmth, and acceptance.* Some group counselors are intolerant of the people they are supposedly helping and view their clientele in stereotyped categories. Such prejudice makes client change difficult. Admittedly, it may be hard to maintain positive regard, warmth, and acceptance toward people who are in a treatment program for spousal abuse, child abuse, or murder. Although these actions are not condoned, it is important for leaders to be able to set aside their reactions to these behaviors at least during the course of the group. If that is not possible, there is little chance of a group being successful.
- *Lack of belief in the therapeutic process.* Underlying the concepts of positive regard and acceptance is the belief that people can change and improve their personal condition. In our in-service group process workshops, we have met practitioners who lead groups only because

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

they are required to do so and who question the effectiveness of group therapy. When leaders' enthusiasm, motivation, and faith in groups is absent, group members will not have faith in the process. When group leaders believe in what they are doing and value the unique attributes of a group approach, they are in a position to educate their clients to the reality that group counseling is an optimal choice for many clients, not a second-class treatment.

Implications for Group Leaders It is essential that leaders examine how their attitudes and behaviors can be barriers to the progress of a group. Here are some questions that can serve as useful catalysts for self-reflection:

- What personal needs am I meeting by being a group leader?
- Am I authentically myself in a group, or do I hide behind the role of "leader"?
- Am I able to trust the capacity for self-direction of others, or do I need to direct their lives? Do I insist that members look at the world through my eyes? Can I engage equitably with the range of people who attend the group?
- Am I willing to take time to understand others, or do I force them to follow my agenda?
- Do I see my main task as helping members get what they want, or getting them to want what I want for them?

Role and Functions of the Group Leader

The person-centered approach emphasizes the personal qualities of the group facilitator rather than the techniques of leading. The primary function of the facilitator is to create an accepting and healing climate in the group. This therapy is best considered as a "way of being" rather than a "way of doing." Rogers (1986b) wrote that the therapist's role is to be a companion to clients in their journey toward self-discovery. When facilitators can achieve this level of "being" rather than "doing," they can enter a state of integration of their actions that resembles that of master practitioners in the arts and sciences.

The group leader is called a *facilitator*, which reflects the importance of interactions between group members and the leader's ability to assist members in expressing themselves. Person-centered group facilitators use themselves as instruments of change in a group. Their central function is to establish a therapeutic climate in which group members will interact in increasingly authentic and honest ways. The therapist's attitudes and behavior are powerful determinants of the accepting group atmosphere that is conducive to real communication. Group facilitators need to attend closely to the moment-to-moment unfolding of events in a session and to pay attention to what is happening between members. Attending to what the members want to talk about enables a group to move forward.

Rogers did his best to become a person to the members of his groups rather than assuming the role of an expert. In his work as a group facilitator, he functioned somewhat like a guide on a journey. Rogers (1970) emphasized the following characteristics of group facilitators:

- They have a great deal of trust in the group process and believe the group can move forward without their directive intervention.
- They listen carefully and sensitively to each member.
- They do all that is possible to contribute to the creation of a climate that is psychologically safe for the members.
- They attempt to be empathically understanding and accept individuals and the group; they do not impose their agenda on members.
- They operate in terms of their own experience and their own feelings, which means that they express here-and-now reactions.
- They offer members feedback and, if appropriate, challenge members on specifics of their behavior; they avoid judging and, instead, speak about what they are observing and how they are affected by others' behavior.

The person-centered group approach emphasizes certain attitudes and skills as a necessary part of the

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

facilitator's style: listening in an active and sensitive way, accepting, understanding, respecting, reflecting, clarifying, summarizing, sharing personal experiences, responding, encountering and engaging others in the group, going with the flow of the group rather than trying to direct the way the group is going, and affirming a member's capacity for self-determination. Other relational qualities and attitudes embraced by person-centered therapists include receptivity to experience, contact and engagement, a therapeutic alliance, authentic dialogue, understanding the client's experience, and hopefulness regarding the client's capacity for the relationship (Cain, 2010, 2013). The facilitator encourages members to explore the incongruities between their beliefs and behaviors and to move toward the inclinations of their inner feelings and subjective experiencing. As the members become more aware of these incongruities within themselves, their view of themselves expands.

Similar to his belief in the actualizing tendency within individuals, Rogers (1970) had faith in the capacity of a group to move on its own initiative. However, he acknowledged that anxiety and irritation among group members may result from the lack of a clear and shared structure, especially during the early phase of a group. He believed it was important for the group to determine for themselves how they would spend their time, and he might open a session by saying, "I wonder how you might like to spend the time in the group today?" Or he might say, "Welcome. We have set aside (a certain amount of) time today to meet in the group. I'm not sure what we will end up talking or thinking about, but I'm looking forward to seeing how it unfolds." The active involvement of the group members is critical to a successful group experience. This involvement encompasses openness and a willingness to engage in the tasks of therapy, cooperative participation, and a collaborative stance.

Rogers believed members have the resourcefulness for positive movement without the facilitator assuming an active and directive role. The facilitator's nondirectiveness allows members to demonstrate their typical interpersonal style within the context of the group. The premise is that members will generally reveal their typical behavior if the group is unstructured. Group members, who are accustomed to following authorities, are challenged to rely on themselves to formulate a purpose and a direction. Members are helped to increasingly listen to themselves and other members by a facilitator who will not act as an expert and give them direction. They are challenged to struggle and to express themselves, and out of this struggle they have a basis for learning how to trust themselves. If the facilitator is being too directive or relies on group exercises to get things going in the group, the members' natural manner of interacting will not evolve as readily.

Because person-centered practitioners have a basic trust in the process of a group, they view their job as facilitating this process. Here are some specific ways a group counselor might facilitate the group process:

- Encourage members to express their feelings and expectations openly.
- Teach members to focus on themselves and their feelings.
- Work to create a climate of safety that encourages members to take risks.
- Provide support for members as they try new behaviors.
- Foster a member-to-member rather than a member-to-leader interaction style.
- Assist members in overcoming barriers to direct communication.
- Help members integrate what they are learning in the group, and challenge them to find ways to apply it to their everyday lives.
- Encourage members to make an ongoing assessment of what is going on in their group and determine whether they want to change anything.

Tallman and Bohart (1999) maintain that the client is the primary agent of change and that the relationship members have with the facilitator provides a supportive structure within which clients' self-healing capacities are activated. "Clients then are the 'magicians' with the special healing powers. Therapists set the stage and serve as assistants who provide the conditions under which this magic can operate" (p. 95).

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Stages of a Person-Centered Group

Characteristics of the Group

The person-centered group may meet weekly for about 2 hours for an unspecified number of meetings. Another format is a personal growth workshop that meets for a weekend, a week, or longer. The residential aspect of small personal growth groups provides opportunities for group members to become a community.

There are few rules or procedures for the selection of members when organizing and conducting a person-centered group. If both the facilitator and the potential participant agree that a group experience would be beneficial, the person is included. When the group initially meets, the facilitator does not present ground rules by which members must abide or provide a great deal of information or orientation. It is up to the group members to formulate the rules for their sessions and to establish norms that they agree will assist them in reaching their goals.

Unfolding of the Group Process

On the basis of his experience with numerous groups, Rogers (1970) delineated 15 process patterns that occur in groups that employ the person-centered approach. These process patterns, or trends, do not occur in a clear-cut sequence, and they may vary considerably from group to group.

1. *Milling around.* The lack of leader direction inevitably results in some initial confusion, frustration, and "milling around"—either actually or verbally. Questions such as "Who is responsible here?" or "What are we supposed to be doing?" are characteristic and reflect the concern felt at this stage.
2. *Resistance to personal expression or exploration.* Members initially present a public self—one they think will be acceptable to the group. They are fearful of and resistant to revealing their private selves.
3. *Description of past feelings.* Despite doubts about the trustworthiness of the group and the risk of exposing oneself, disclosure of personal feelings does begin—however hesitantly and ambivalently. Generally, this disclosure deals with events outside of the group; members tend to describe feelings in a "there-and-then" fashion.
4. *Expression of negative feelings.* As the group progresses, there is a movement toward the expression of here-and-now feelings. Often these expressions take the form of an attack on the group leader, usually for not providing the needed direction.
5. *Expression and exploration of personally meaningful material.* If the expression of negative reactions is seen by the members as acceptable to the group, a climate of trust is likely to emerge. Members are then able to take the risks involved in disclosing personal material. At this point the participants begin to realize that the group is what they make it, and they begin to experience freedom.
6. *Expression of immediate interpersonal feelings in the group.* Members tend to express a full range of feelings toward one another.
7. *Development of a healing capacity in the group.* Next, members begin to spontaneously reach out to one another, expressing care, support, understanding, and concern. At this stage helping relationships are often formed within the group that offer members aid in leading more constructive lives outside of the group.
8. *Self-acceptance and the beginning of change.* Participants begin to accept aspects of themselves that they formerly denied or distorted; they get closer to their feelings and consequently become less rigid and more open to change. As members accept their strengths and weaknesses, they drop their defenses and welcome change.
9. *Cracking of facades.* Here individual members begin to respond to the group demand that masks and pretenses be dropped. This revealing of deeper selves by some members validates the theory that meaningful encounters can occur when people risk getting beneath surface interaction. At this stage the group strives toward deeper communication.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

10. *Feedback.* In the process of receiving feedback, members acquire a lot of data concerning how others experience them and what impact they have on others. This information often leads to new insights that help them decide on aspects of themselves that they want to change.
11. *Confrontation.* Here members challenge one another in what can become an emotional process involving feedback. Confrontation can be seen as a stepping up of the interactions described in earlier stages.
12. *The helping relationship outside the group sessions.* By this stage members have begun making contacts outside the group. Here we see an extension of the process described in number 7.
13. *The basic encounter.* Because the members come into closer and more direct contact with one another than is generally the case in everyday life, genuine person-to-person relationships occur. At this point members begin to experience how meaningful relationships occur when there is a commitment to work toward a common goal and a sense of community.
14. *Expression of feelings of closeness.* As the sessions progress, an increasing warmth and closeness develops within the group because of the realness of the participants' expression of feelings about themselves and toward others.
15. *Behavior changes in the group.* As members experience increased ease in expressing their feelings, their behaviors, mannerisms, and even their appearance begin to change. They tend to act in an open manner; they express deeper feelings toward others; they achieve an increased understanding of themselves; and they work out more effective ways of being with others. If the changes are effective, the members will carry their new behaviors into their everyday lives.

Some Outcomes of the Group Experience

Based on his vast experience in conducting groups and workshops, as well as his process and outcomes studies, Rogers (1987d) identified and summarized a number of changes that tend to occur within individuals in a successful group experience. Members become more open and honest. They learn to listen to themselves and increase their self-understanding. They gradually become less critical and more self-accepting. As they feel increasingly understood and accepted, they have less need to defend themselves, and therefore they drop their facades and are willing to be themselves. Because they become more aware of their own feelings and of what is going on around them, they are more realistic and objective. They tend to be more like the self that they wanted to be before entering a group experience. They are not as easily threatened because the safety of the group changes their attitude toward themselves and others. Within the group there is more understanding and acceptance of who others are. Members become more appreciative of themselves as they are, and they move toward self-direction. They empower themselves in new ways, and they increasingly trust themselves. The members become more creative because they are willing to accept their own uniqueness. They become more empathic, accepting, and congruent in their relationships with others, and in doing so engage in more meaningful relationships (Cain, 2010, 2013).

Person-Centered Expressive Arts in Groups*

Natalie Rogers, daughter of Carl Rogers, expanded on her father's theory of creativity using the expressive arts to enhance personal growth for individuals and groups. Group facilitators, counselors, and psychotherapists trained in person-centered expressive arts offer their clients or groups the opportunity to use movement, visual art, journal writing, and sound and

*Much of the material in this section is based on key ideas that are more fully developed in Natalie Rogers's books, *The Creative Connection: Expressive Arts as Healing* (N, Rogers, 1993), which focuses on how expressive arts can enhance and deepen individual psychotherapy, and *The Creative Connection for Groups: Person-Centered Expressive Arts for Healing and Social Change* (N. Rogers, 2011), which explores the potent use of the "creative connection" in all types of groups. This section was written in close collaboration with Natalie Rogers.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

music to express their feelings and gain insight from these activities (N. Rogers, 1993).

Principles of Expressive Arts Therapy

Expressive arts therapy is a multimodal approach integrating mind, body, emotions, and spiritual inner resources through the use of various art forms—movement, drawing, painting, sculpting, writing, music, and improvisation—in a supportive setting for the purpose of growth and healing (N. Rogers, 2011). This therapy is in addition to talking about feelings. Any art form generated from deep emotions aids in the process of self-discovery, and the raw and spontaneous product—as is—is part of the therapeutic process.

Natalie Rogers's group work was based on the foundational theory and methods of her father, Carl Rogers. It was during her work with him and a staff of six others in large encounter groups over seven summers (from 1974 to 1982) that her extension of his work evolved using the expressive arts:

> During the ten-day program large groups of individuals sat talking about their lives, telling their personal stories full of emotional content: their tragedies, confusion, fears, and dilemmas. As a staff we were good at genuinely listening and reflecting their feelings. We held a safe space for these personal moments. . . . Because I am such a kinesthetic person, I got restless as I sat there day after day, morning, afternoon and evening. So, during one of the workshops finally I said, "I have a studio space with art materials and anybody who would like to find other ways of delving into these personal issues can join me. We will experiment with exploring the self through the use of the arts." (N. Rogers, 2011, pp. 9–10)

Natalie Rogers's methods of expressive arts therapy are based on the following humanistic principles:

- All people have an innate ability to be creative.
- The creative process is healing. The expressive product supplies important messages to the individual. However, it is the process of creation that is profoundly transformative.
- Personal growth and higher states of consciousness are achieved through self-awareness, self-understanding, and insight.
- Self-awareness, understanding, and insight are achieved by delving into our emotions. The feelings of grief, anger, pain, fear, joy, and ecstasy are the tunnel through which we must pass to get to self-awareness, understanding, and wholeness.
- Our feelings and emotions are an energy source. That energy can be channeled into the expressive arts to be released and transformed.
- The expressive arts lead us into the unconscious. This often allows us to express previously unknown facets of ourselves, thus bringing to light new information and awareness.
- Art modes interrelate in the "creative connection." When we move, it affects how we write or paint. When we write or paint, it affects how we feel and think. During the creative connection process, one art form stimulates and nurtures the other, bringing us to an inner core or essence that is our life energy.
- A connection exists between our life force—our inner core, or soul—and the essence of all beings. As we journey inward to discover our essence or wholeness, we discover our relatedness to the outer world and the inner and outer become one. (N. Rogers, 1993, p. 7)

The same conditions that Carl Rogers and his colleagues found basic to fostering a facilitative client-counselor relationship help support creativity. Personal growth takes place in a safe, supportive environment created by facilitators (teachers, therapists, group leaders, parents, colleagues) who are genuine, warm, empathic, open, honest, congruent, and caring—qualities that are best learned by first being experienced. Taking time to reflect on and evaluate these experiences allows for personal integration at many levels: intellectual, emotional, physical, and spiritual (N. Rogers, 1993, 2011).

Conditions That Foster Creativity

N. Rogers (2011) believed that individuals have a tremendous capacity for self-healing through creativity if given the proper environment. N. Rogers primary focus

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

was on "creating and supporting person-centered environments where group members can safely delve into feelings of fear, shame, or victimhood in nonverbal and verbal ways" (p. 11). When one feels appreciated, trusted, and is given support to use individuality to develop a plan, create a project, write a paper, or to be authentic, the challenge is exciting, stimulating, and gives a sense of personal expansion. When the creative connection, or expressive arts, is part of an empathic and nonjudgmental climate, it "unleashes life force and healing energy, and stimulates constructive social as well as personal change" (p. 11). N. Rogers believed the tendency to actualize and become one's full potential, including innate creativity, was undervalued, discounted, and frequently quashed in our society. Traditional educational institutions tend to promote conformity rather than original thinking and the creative process.

Carl Rogers claimed that when we are able to listen to the response of others but are not overly concerned with their reactions, we are able to develop an **internal locus of evaluation**, giving ourselves credit and appreciation when it is due. Because most of us have a strong need for approval, gaining that sense of self-evaluation is a challenging task. Also, many of us are more critical of ourselves than of others. Having a keen sense of our talents and abilities goes along with developing a sense of self-esteem. As we become able to assess ourselves honestly, we are less in need of continual praise from others.

Offering Stimulating and Challenging Experiences

Certain external conditions foster and nurture the internal conditions for creativity. Carl Rogers (1961) outlined two such conditions: *psychological safety*, consisting of accepting the individual as of unconditional worth, providing a climate in which external evaluation is absent, and empathic understanding; and *psychological freedom*. Natalie Rogers (2011) added a third condition: offering *stimulating and challenging experiences.* Psychological safety and psychological freedom are the soil and nutrients for creativity, but seeds must be planted. What Natalie found lacking as she worked with her father were stimulating experiences that would motivate and allow people time and space to engage in the creative process. People could sit in therapy and talk about being creative without actually experiencing the creative process. Our culture is particularly geared to verbalizing, and according to N. Rogers (2011), it is necessary to stimulate the group participant by offering challenging experiences. The expressive arts group builds on the philosophy of the person-centered approach by creating a safe and creative environment that gives participants permission to shed their social masks and discover their genuine self. Carefully planned experiments or experiences designed to involve participants in the expressive arts (if they chose to take the opportunity) help clients focus on the process of creating.

The Creative Connection for Groups (N. Rogers, 2011) offers many exercises to move the group process forward throughout the life cycle of the group. As a group begins, facilitators offer stimulating nonverbal movement and art experiences to help people get acquainted, to help them discover who they are at the moment, and to find their inner resources. After going inward, group members share their art and writing with at least one other person, validating their experience and promoting group cohesion. When participants are ready, they can share their creations with the whole group. This intensive week focuses on nourishing the soul.

In the midlife of the group, exercises are offered that encourage people to discover their personal shadow and recover their spirit. When someone in the group takes a risk and makes a significant disclosure, such as an experience with rape, that person is listened to with sensitivity and empathy. All group members are encouraged to use art to express their own memories and feelings after hearing the story. This is an excellent time for group members to go deeply into their feelings through art in the presence of others. At such times the studio has a sacred aura; the silence, the concentration, and the mutual support are palpable. When the art and writing are shared, it is obvious that each person has a different experience and perception about the incident. As this diversity is accepted, group cohesion deepens.

The expressive arts are an ideal means for expression through symbols and metaphors. Symbolically expressing feelings toward any hated person, for instance, releases pent-up feelings without damaging that person. Using drawing, painting, and sculpting to express feelings about that person provides tremendous relief and a new perspective. Also, symbols

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

carry messages that go beyond the meanings of words (N. Rogers, 2011).

N. Rogers believed most people have experienced their attempts at creativity in an unsafe environment. They are offered art materials in a classroom or studio where the teacher says or implies there is a right or a wrong way to do it. Or they dance or sing only to be corrected, evaluated, or graded. To be offered an opportunity to explore and experiment with a wide variety of materials in a supportive, nonjudgmental space is an entirely different experience for most people. Such a setting gives participants permission to be authentic, to be childlike, and to delve deeply into themselves. It is possible to put out the materials and simply say, "Go to it." However, N. Rogers (1993) said that it is helpful to most participants to suggest projects or experiences that have no right or wrong outcome but that stimulate the creative juices.

N. Rogers believed our society has squeezed the tasty juice of the creative process right out of most of us. We need to find ways to recapture our spontaneous freedom of expression without looking to others for approval. We cheat ourselves out of a fulfilling and joyous source of creativity if we cling to the idea that an artist is the only one who can enter the realm of creativity. We all can use the arts to focus on self-expression and personal growth.

Guidelines for Creative Expression in Groups and in Community Building

N. Rogers's (2011) group work differed from her father's in that she offered group guidelines at the beginning of any workshop or experiential class so that participants would understand the concepts of creative expression and the basic guidelines for group behavior. Group evaluations and feedback over 25 years revealed that participants consistently felt that the following guidelines were helpful:

- Be aware of your feelings and your own body, and take care of yourself.
- There is no right or wrong way to do art.
- All instructions are *always* suggestions. You have the option *not* to do them. Be your own boss here.
- These experiences may stir up many feelings. You may need to cry or let out loud sounds, which can be very helpful.
- If you choose to be an observer, notice the group dynamics or enjoy the experience vicariously. Please do not judge others, and keep the general bounds of confidentiality.

Facilitators have a key role in establishing trust in a group that will allow for creative expression. Although facilitators cannot *make* participants trust the group process, they can do much to *earn* that trust from the participants by being respectful and caring. As is true for any form of person-centered therapy, being an effective facilitator has a lot more to do with one's "way of being" than with one's techniques. No technique can create trust unless the facilitator is fully present, respectful, caring, authentic, and responsive. N. Rogers (2011) captured the essence of her role as a group facilitator: "My prevailing intention is to create environments of understanding and trust where participants are free to unveil their authentic self" (p. 8).

Trust in a group situation also depends on the attitudes and actions of the members of that group. According to N. Rogers, any group that lives or works together over time becomes a community. Whether the community provides a safe, supportive environment depends on each person in the community as well as the facilitators. Each has feelings about being an insider or outsider, about recognition or lack of it, and about being seen, heard, and understood within the community. To enhance trust in the community, these feelings must be discussed openly. The co-created community is an important factor in the ability to learn.

Applications of Person-Centered Expressive Arts

Stories provided by graduates of the person-centered expressive arts certificate program describe how they have adapted this work for various client populations: children and adolescents, older people, eating disorder groups, grief groups, groups for people with cancer, victims of crime groups, and groups for people with mental disorders (N. Rogers, 2011). Others have used person-centered expressive arts methods to teach English as a second language (in Russia), to

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

integrate teacher education and social justice, and to facilitate cross-cultural understanding. N. Rogers led person-centered expressive arts groups with Israeli and Palestinian women as well as with people dealing with a social tragedy in Sweden. Such advances in the theory and application of group process are essential if we are to discover how to use these methods to bring about peaceful social change.

Summary Comments

Person-centered expressive arts therapy utilizes the arts for spontaneous creative expression that symbolizes deep and sometimes inaccessible feelings and emotional states. Conditions that foster creativity occur both within the participants and within the group environment. The conditions for free expression require acceptance of the participants, a nonjudgmental setting, empathy, psychological freedom, and the availability of stimulating and challenging experiences. Participants respond with nondefensive openness to experience and an internal locus of evaluation that receives but is not overly concerned with the reactions of others. Offering guidelines to participants at the beginning of the process is helpful and stays within the person-centered framework because the guidelines place the responsibility and authority with the participants. Using the person-centered philosophical base of Carl Rogers, Natalie Rogers developed an active group approach to personal growth and emotional health. Cain (2010) believes that "Natalie Rogers's expressive arts therapy represents a major innovation in practice and helped open the way for other person-centered therapists to expand the variety and range of practice" (p. 60).

Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures

Carl Rogers's original emphasis was on methods of reflecting feelings. As his view of psychotherapy developed, its focus shifted away from therapeutic techniques toward the therapist's personal qualities, beliefs, and attitudes and toward the relationship with the client. Attitudes and qualities critical in creating a favorable relationship include the therapist's congruence, authenticity, transparency, nonjudgmental caring, prizing, presence, acceptance, empathic attunement, respect, and unconditional positive regard (Cain, 2010, 2013). It is of the utmost importance to remember that techniques do not function separately from the person of the group facilitator. Any intervention must be an honest expression of the group facilitator. Rogers's style of reflective response is not the only acceptable way of being a group facilitator. Rogers emphasized that there are many ways to be facilitative, and he did not expect others to imitate him. Those who facilitate groups need to find their own way and discover their unique personal style.

Diversity of Methods and Therapeutic Styles

Person-centered therapy has evolved through diversity, inventiveness, creativity, and individualization in practice. Today relatively few practitioners adhere to the classical or traditional client-centered model (Cain, 2010, 2013). In newer versions of the person-centered approaches, group facilitators have greater freedom to participate in the relationship, to share their reactions, to challenge clients in a caring way, and to be active in the therapeutic process (Bozarth et al., 2002; Kirschenbaum, 2009). Current formulations of the approach assign more importance to therapists' bringing in their own here-and-now experiences, which can stimulate members to explore themselves at a deeper level. These changes from Rogers's original view of the counselor have encouraged the use of a wider variety of methods and a considerable diversity of therapeutic styles.

Although the group facilitator's receptive attitude is still viewed as being of central importance, this does not exclude the facilitator from taking the initiative at times to stimulate a client's experiential process. With the emphasis on genuineness, person-centered therapists can practice in a more flexible and creative way suited to their personality. They can also tailor their relationship style to suit different clients. Person-centered practitioners attempt to stay within the client's frame of reference, focusing their efforts on understanding and reflecting the client's experience. In person-centered therapy, the emphasis is on

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

establishing a facilitative therapeutic relationship, which is itself the therapeutic technique and strategy.

Whatever techniques one employs or avoids, whatever style one adopts or refrains from, the approach should be adapted to the needs of the group and its members. The diverse range of client populations and the individual differences that characterize members of a group require that any approach be flexibly applied. Some clients function better with a high degree of structure, whereas others need very little structure. In addition to the needs of the members, the leadership approach should fit the personality and style of the leader. Cain (2013) contends that it is possible to integrate concepts, methods, and relational styles from various approaches, which allows therapists to individualize therapy according to what best fits for the needs of the client. Therapists can practice within the person-centered spirit while maintaining flexibility in helping clients achieve their therapeutic goals.

Although Rogers (1970) affirmed the value of diverse styles of facilitation, he took a dim view of the use of techniques or exercises to get a group moving. He also suggested that facilitators avoid making interpretive comments because such comments are apt to make the group self-conscious and slow the process down. Group process observations should come from members, a view that is consistent with Rogers's philosophy of placing the responsibility for the direction of the group on the members.

Using this approach, members are at the center of the group. The commitment of the therapist to empathically experience the client's frame of reference creates a loyalty to the client's direction and pace. It is the therapist's attitudes and belief in the inner resources of the client that create the therapeutic climate for growth (Bozarth et al., 2002). Members of the person-centered group are often as helpful to the other members as is the leader, and they direct and orchestrate the process and progress.

Areas of Application of the Person-Centered Approach to Groups

People without advanced psychological education are able to benefit by translating the therapeutic conditions of genuineness, empathic understanding, and unconditional positive regard into both their personal and professional lives. The approach's basic concepts are straightforward and easy to comprehend, yet they are not always easy to practice. The approach is based on locating power in the person rather than fostering an authoritarian structure in which control and power are denied to the person. These core skills can be used by many people in the helping professions and are the foundation for virtually all of the other theoretical orientations discussed in this book. If group workers are lacking in relationship and communication skills, they will not be effective in carrying out their role and functions in a group.

Group Theories in Action: Person-Centered Application*

The members of this group are diverse with respect to race, cultural background, age, gender, and life experiences. For a diverse group to talk honestly about how their differences may influence their participation in the group, I must create a climate of safety and trust that allows members to engage in difficult conversations. The group is willing to initiate a discussion of real-life experiences with respect to dealing with discrimination and not being valued for who they are. At times, members bring into the group the pain they have experienced in society and are concerned about finding healing from these life experiences.

I open the group by encouraging members to look around the group and be aware of whom they are noticing and how their differences have an impact on the way they are in the group. Jeff begins by wondering if he is getting in the way of other members. He realizes that he speaks frequently and often is the first to speak. Jeff then acknowledges his white privilege and hopes that he is not alienating others in this group. He does not want to obstruct the trust and cohesion among the members by being insensitive. Members then give Jeff feedback about how they do

*The group session discussed here is based on the person-centered group work segment in the video *Group Theories in Action*, which is included in the Online Student Resources.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

not view him as an obstacle and how they appreciate his honesty in owning up to unearned privileges. Various members bring themselves into the conversation.

> **Julius:** I am slow to make myself vulnerable, and I keep many of my reactions to myself. It feels good to me that Jeff can acknowledge benefiting from being a white male. As an African American male, I can count on two fingers white males who have acknowledged their privileged status.
>
> **Melissa:** When I was a child, I was told about my culture. I am proud of my culture. I want to be able to show who I am. I also learned not to be noticed and to keep myself invisible. I struggle with being proud of my culture, yet at the same time feeling a need to avoid being noticed.
>
> **Lupe:** Being half Latina I can relate to feeling less than at times. I work hard at trying to overcome feeling less than. I overachieve and no matter how much I do, I usually feel a need to do more.
>
> **Julius:** When I go out, I always have to dress up. I can't wear a T-shirt for fear of being shot.
>
> **Galo:** Growing up I had a lot of discrimination and I was afraid. When I was driving a car, I was pulled over several times by the police and viewed as a gang member. I tried hard to be a good person, yet I am aware of how tough it is for me to feel good about myself when society puts up obstacles.
>
> **Kellie:** When I hear Julius talking, I see my son. It hurts me to see that. I want him to feel safe, to like and prize who he is, and to appreciate what he is accomplishing.

Because Kellie has feelings toward what Julius is saying, I ask Kellie to look at Julius and talk to him as her son. By using this technique, I am being more directive than the person-centered approach recommends, but these members are able to engage in a real dialogue. This session reassures me of how much therapeutic work can be done in a group when the core conditions are present.

Members talk about experiences they have had outside of the group, but they also talk about how these experiences reveal themselves and how they show sides of themselves to others in the group. As a facilitator, I link members together to do some of their work and influence the group by being who I am and not forcing an agenda on them. I have faith that the group will move in a constructive direction if I create a safe and caring environment. A main strength of this approach is the emphasis on truly listening to and deeply understanding the clients' world from their internal frame of reference. If I am able to listen and understand the subjective vantage point of the members, they will be able to channel their energies in a constructive direction.

Applying the Person-Centered Approach to Group Work in Schools

Freedom to Learn (Rogers & Freiberg, 1994) describes a foundation for transforming traditional schools into schools where children are free to learn and where the human dimensions of the student-teacher relationship are prized. When these key values are applied to education at all levels, Rogers and Freiberg demonstrate that a transformation in education can take place.

Both research and experience show that more learning, more problem solving, and more creativity can be found in classrooms that operate within a person-centered climate. The key elements of a person-centered school environment include the following features:

- Teachers assume the role of facilitators of learning rather than mainly giving information.
- Teachers, from elementary school classrooms to graduate schools, discover ingenious ways to help students learn and make decisions.
- Students develop responsibility, self-discipline, and the ability to work cooperatively.
- Teachers move in the direction of becoming more genuine, more understanding, and more caring toward their students.
- Learners become increasingly self-directed and are able to assume more responsibility for the consequences of their choices.

Rogers and Freiberg (1994) describe journeys taken by different teachers who have moved from being controlling managers to facilitators of learning. Each of these teachers has discovered their own pathway to freedom.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Many basic ideas and methods of the person-centered approach can be applied to play therapy in small group work. Play can be the medium through which children express their feelings, bring their conflicts to life, explore relationships, and reveal their hopes and fears. Other expressive techniques—such as art, music, and movement—can be used in group work with children as well.

It is possible to create a group using key principles of the person-centered approach yet incorporate some structure into the group. Depending on the ages of the children and the main purpose of the group, a facilitator may need to assume a more active role than the highly nondirective role discussed previously. Generally, if children sense that the counselor understands and accepts them, they are likely to open up and become quite responsive. This approach allows therapists to be flexible in working with children in groups.

Play group therapy can be appropriately applied to counseling children in elementary school (Landreth, 2002). Child-centered group play therapy can help children learn to become responsible in interpersonal relationships, to explore their behavior, to cope with stress and anxiety, and to find satisfaction in living with others. The group experience allows children to process their personal concerns on both an intrapersonal and an interpersonal level (Landreth, 2002; Sweeney & Homeyer, 1999). Baggerly and Parker (2005) describe how child-centered group play therapy with African American boys in the elementary school setting honors the African worldview and builds the self-confidence of boys. Baggerly and Parker found that during group play therapy the younger participants tended to identify with the older children, gained courage, and demonstrated newfound strength and skills. Those children who were timid frequently overcame their hesitancy by watching other children succeed at tasks. According to Baggerly and Parker, "child-centered group play therapy is an innovative strategy that fosters positive growth in African American boys' racial cultural identity" (p. 394).

If you are interested in the person-centered applications for education, I recommend *On Becoming an Effective Teacher: Person-Centered Teaching, Psychology, Philosophy and Dialogues with Carl R. Rogers and Harold Lyon* (Rogers et al., 2014).

Applying the Person-Centered Approach With Multicultural Populations

Rogers's interests evolved from working with individuals, to groups, to communities, to international relations, and to world peace. As the group movement developed, the person-centered approach became increasingly concerned with reducing human suffering, with cross-cultural awareness, and with conflict resolution on an international scale. During the last 15 years of his life, Rogers developed a passion for addressing broader social issues, especially peace. He sought ways to reduce psychological barriers that impinge on communication between factions (Kirschenbaum, 2009; Rogers, 1987c; Rogers & Malcolm, 1987).

The person-centered approach, more than other models, has been applied to bringing people of diverse cultures together for the purpose of developing mutual understanding. One of Rogers's hopes was that people from different cultures would be able to listen to one another and find the common ground that unites them. In 1948 Rogers began developing a theory of reducing tensions among antagonistic groups, and he continued this work until his death in 1987.

Shortly before his death, Rogers conducted 4-day workshops with Russian psychologists, educators, and researchers. He maintained that these sessions had demonstrated that the concerns expressed differed little from those felt by a similar professional group in the United States. As we have seen, the person-centered approach is grounded on the importance of hearing the deeper messages participants bring to a group. Empathy, being present, and respecting the values of group participants are particularly important attitudes and skills in groups with culturally diverse individuals. These attitudes are not limited to any one cultural group but transcend culture. Cain (2010, 2013) states that the core therapist conditions of empathy, unconditional positive regard, and congruence are universal or near universal and are likely to have a constructive impact on all individuals. Person-centered therapy has much to offer a wide range of client populations.

Although person-centered therapists are aware of diversity factors, they do not make initial assumptions

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

about individuals based on their cultural background or the specific group to which they belong and recommend waiting for the cultural context to emerge from the client. They realize that each client's journey is unique, and they appreciate the importance of tailoring their methods to fit each individual. Cain (2010) notes that rigid insistence on nondirectiveness may be too constricting for the therapist and the client. The personal preferences and learning styles of various members need to be taken into consideration. Some people prefer a directive and active style; others respond well to a less directive leader.

As I have mentioned previously, group members can benefit from some orientation by the leader on what the group is about and how best to participate. More preparation and orientation may be called for than is usually the case in a person-centered framework, especially in a group. Group members stand a better chance of using the group process in a productive way if they understand what behavior is useful in the context of the group. Members can profit from a discussion of the general goals and procedures of group process and of how the group might help them deal with their concerns and ways to reach their goals.

Evaluation of the Person-Centered Approach to Groups

Contributions and Strengths of the Approach

Because the person-centered approach is very much a phenomenological one, based on the subjective worldview of the client, I consider it an excellent foundation for the initial stages of any type of group. Many person-centered practitioners would argue that this approach is sufficient for all the stages of a group's development. From the outset this approach encourages members to assume responsibility for determining their level of investment in the group and deciding what personal concerns they will raise. Empathy is the cornerstone of this approach, and it is a necessary foundation upon which any theory rests (Cain, 2010, 2013; Elliott et al., 2019). Critical evaluation, analysis, and judgment are suspended, and attention is given to grasping the feelings and thoughts being expressed by the others. This form of listening and understanding is a prerequisite to any group approach, particularly during the early stages when it is essential that members feel free to explore their concerns openly. Unless the participants feel that they are being understood, any technique or intervention plan is bound to fail.

I appreciate the core values and principles upon which the person-centered approach rests, and I am convinced that many of its principles can be incorporated into other approaches to group work. This approach emphasizes the members' ability to find the answers to their problems. By creating an egalitarian environment in which the facilitator functions not as an authority figure with answers but as a person creating a safe place for exploration, the participants are able to empower themselves. Being a facilitator in a person-centered group entails finding rewards in seeing people take charge of their own lives.

Many of the problems of group leaders in training stem from their failure to reach an understanding of the members' subjective world, an understanding that can be achieved only by very careful listening and attending and by restraining the tendency to solve members' problems. A major strength of this approach is the central importance placed on the group counselor as a person, and the assumption that the client is the major change agent in a therapy group—both of these assumptions have a great deal to do with determining the outcomes of a group. Client contributions to the therapeutic process continue to be neglected in most theoretical models, with very few exceptions (Bohart & Tallman, 1999, 2010; Bohart & Wade, 2013). The therapist's personal development goes hand in hand with mastering the ability to respond with heartfelt empathy. Furthermore, faith in the client's capacity for self-healing is in stark contrast with many theories that view the therapist's techniques and procedures as the most powerful agents that lead to change (Bohart & Tallman, 2010).

The leader must develop the ability to be present for members and to encourage them to interact openly. If the leader can encourage the creation of an open and accepting climate within the group, the members' self-healing forces and the healing forces

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

present in the group as a community will become operant, and members will engage in the kind of individual and interpersonal work that will enable them to find their own resolutions that lead to self-acceptance. Ultimately, group members make their own choices and bring about change for themselves. Yet with the presence of the facilitator and the support of other members, participants realize that they do not have to experience the change process alone and that groups as collective entities have their own source of transformation.

I value the contributions of Natalie Rogers, who offered structured experiences to group members, giving them the opportunity to use movement, visual arts, music, and journal writing to establish their inner journey. The facilitator responds to the art in a person-centered way by honoring the world of the group member and by reflecting the deep feelings that are stirred by these art experiences.

The use and applications of the creative arts extends beyond Natalie Rogers's person-centered expressive arts. Gladding (2021) covers a variety of forms of creative arts including music, dance and movement, imagery, animal assisted therapy, visual arts, writing, drama, humor, play, and nature and wilderness therapies. According to Gladding, the creative arts are both global and culturally relevant for counseling professionals who practice in multiple settings. He concludes that "the creative arts in counseling are currently undergoing a transition that promises to be long-term, multifaceted, and productive" (p. 259). These forms of the creative arts can certainly be integrated within the spirit of person-centered theory and also can be incorporated into group work with populations of all ages.

Rogers and his colleagues engaged in research with personal growth groups when the group movement had reached its zenith in the 1960s. However, Page et al. (2002) indicate that the volume of person-centered research in the United States declined in the 1970s as U.S. interests turned to more cognitive approaches. During the past two decades, however, numerous studies of person-centered group therapy have emerged, especially in Europe. The findings of these studies generally support a strong relationship between empathy, warmth, and genuineness and positive therapeutic outcomes in a group setting. Indeed, the quality of the therapeutic relationship is considered to be the single most important factor in the person-centered approach; an effective therapeutic relationship is a key ingredient of successful psychotherapy (Bohart & Watson, 2020; Elkins, 2012, 2016; Gelso et al., 2019).

Cain (2013) points out that an extensive body of research, conducted over a period of 60 years, "provides support for the effectiveness of person-centered therapy with a wide range of clients and problems of all age groups" (p. 199). This research is ongoing in many parts of the world and continues to expand and refine our understanding of what constitutes effective psychotherapy. Cain (2013) concludes that "person-centered therapy is as vital and effective as it has ever been and continues to develop in ways that will make it increasingly so in the years to come" (p. 208). Murphy and Joseph (2016) suggest that future developments of person-centered theory will integrate nondirectiveness and techniques from other approaches into contemporary practice. "For the future, we envisage a person-centered experiential therapy that offers a flexible, effective, and evidence-based therapy that is widely available" (p. 210).

In summarizing the studies on person-centered group therapy, Page et al. (2002) point to the efficacy of this approach for people with serious problems. Clients with substance abuse can assume responsibility for making personal gains in these groups, and hospitalized patients and counseling center clients have also made significant improvement by participating in groups. It is clear that humanistic therapy groups can be used to help clients with a wide range of problems function better interpersonally and deal more effectively with their problems. However, humanistic group therapy is an underutilized approach in the managed care era in which practitioners are required to demonstrate concrete and measurable outcomes. Many practitioners are unaware of the research that demonstrates the effectiveness of person-centered groups with clinical populations.

Limitations of the Approach

I deeply appreciate the person-centered philosophy, but I feel that the lack of structure and active interventions by the person-centered group leader may limit the group's effectiveness. Both active support

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and directive interventions can be extremely helpful in promoting client change. I prefer the value of action; of therapeutic direction, if it is needed by clients; and of more directive skills than are generally found in the person-centered approach.

Although the person-centered approach has made significant contributions to working with groups representing diverse social, political, and cultural backgrounds, there are also some limitations to practicing exclusively within this framework in community agency settings and outpatient clinics. Many of the clients who come to a community mental health clinic or who are involved in some other type of outpatient treatment desire or may need a more structured group experience. This is especially true of short-term groups, open groups with a rapidly changing membership, task-oriented groups, and groups composed of culturally diverse populations. Clients seeking professional help to deal with a current crisis such as to alleviate psychosomatic symptoms, to learn coping skills (such as stress management), or to find solutions for pressing problems may benefit from a more directive leader who functions in an expert role as an authority.

Bohart and Watson (2020) point out that the person-centered therapist is not an expert who is going to tell the client the "right way of being." Instead, the therapist is a "fellow explorer" who strives to deeply understand the experiential world of the client in a curious, interested, and open way. This therapeutic style may not be a good fit for some clients. A guiding question Cain (2010) asks of himself and of his clients is "Does it fit?" Ideally, therapists will continually monitor whether what they are doing "fits." Cain believes person-centered practitioners must adapt their therapeutic style to be compatible with their clients' way of viewing and understanding their problems rather than expecting clients to adopt the therapist's approach and style.

Concluding Commentary The longevity of the person-centered approach is certainly a factor to be considered in evaluating its impact. A significant contribution of the person-centered approach to group work is that it challenges group therapists to trust the resources of group members and to trust the relational characteristics of leaders (and other members) to cultivate these resources. In an age when practitioners are increasingly looking for immediate cures and the techniques that produce quick fixes, the person-centered approach reminds us that it is people who heal people, not techniques (Cain, 2010).

The scope and influence of Rogers's work has continued well beyond his death; the person-centered approach is alive, well, and expanding (Kirschenbaum, 2009). "It is a vibrant international movement with burgeoning publications, organizations, research, theories, orientations, applications, and adherents. It has significant challenges to face if its renaissance is to continue, but clearly, it has survived its founder" (p. 607). Today there is not one version of person-centered therapy but a number of continuously evolving person-centered psychotherapies (Cain, 2010). Although few psychotherapists claim to have an exclusive person-centered theoretical orientation, the philosophy and principles of this approach permeate the practice of many, if not most, therapists. Other schools of therapy are increasingly recognizing the centrality of the therapeutic relationship as a route to therapeutic change (Kirschenbaum, 2009).

Self-Reflection and Discussion Questions

1. The person-centered approach emphasizes the personal qualities of the group leader rather than techniques that may be used. What qualities do you have that would help you to function within the person-centered spirit?

2. Carl Rogers taught that the core conditions for growth and healing are genuineness, unconditional positive regard, and empathy. He believed these conditions were both necessary *and* sufficient for change to occur. Do you agree? If not, what do you think is necessary to bring about change?

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

3. Could you adopt a person-centered philosophy and still incorporate techniques from some of the more active approaches to group work? To what extent can you view people from a person-centered perspective yet assume a more active and central role in leadership?

4. What aspects of person-centered expressive arts do you believe have special value in group work? What advantages do you see in incorporating expressive arts in group work?

5. If you were a member of a person-centered expressive arts group, what do you imagine this could be like for you? How might participating in expressive arts methods affect your ability to do emotional work in a group?

Where to Go From Here

Major Associations: The Person-Centered Approach

Consider joining the Association for the Development of the Person-Centered Approach (ADPCA), an interdisciplinary and international organization. Membership includes a subscription to the *Person-Centered Journal*, the association's newsletter, a membership directory, and information about the annual meeting. It also provides information about continuing education and supervision and training in the person-centered approach.

Association for the Development of the Person-Centered Approach
2865 Shimmering Bay Street
Laughlin, NV 89029
Telephone: (702) 298-9215
Email: adpca@cmaaccess.com
Website: adpca.org
Journal editor: Jon Rose (email: jonmrose@aol.com)

The Association for Humanistic Psychology (AHP) is an international community of people with diverse talents and interests who are dedicated to the exploration, healing, and expansion of the human psyche—the mind and soul—and to building a society that advances our ability to choose, grow, and create. AHP's mission is to realize a vision of the best of what's possible for humanity. Membership is open to all.

Association for Humanistic Psychology
1516 Oak Street #320
Alameda, CA 94501-2947
Telephone: (510) 769-6495
Fax: (510) 769-6433
Email: AHPOffice@aol.com
Website: ahpweb.org

Person-centered practitioners are working in many countries, including Australia, Canada, Korea, Israel, Jamaica, Russia, New Zealand, and South Africa. Active associations of person-centered practitioners can be found in Argentina, Brazil, Chile, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Japan, the Netherlands, Belgium, Austria, Switzerland, Slovakia, and the UK. The World Association for Person Centered and Experiential Psychotherapy and Counselling (WAPCEPC) publishes a quarterly journal and promotes international conferences and international forums.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Training in the Person-Centered Approach

The Center for Studies of the Person (CSP) in La Jolla offers workshops, training seminars, experiential small groups, and sharing of learning in community meetings. The Distance Learning Project and the Carl Rogers Institute for Psychotherapy Training and Supervision provide experiential and didactic training and supervision for professionals interested in developing their own person-centered orientation.

Center for Studies of the Person
1150 Silverado Street, Suite #112
La Jolla, CA 92037
Telephone: (858) 459-3861
Email: centerfortheperson@yahoo.com
Website: www.centerfortheperson.org

Discover the transformative power of moving beyond words as Natalie Rogers demonstrates person-centered expressive arts therapy in two sessions with a woman struggling with a career decision. Also, see a video on Person-Centered Therapy with Carl Rogers and Natalie Rogers.

Expressive Arts in Action
Website: www.psychotherapy.net/videos/approach/person-centered

Recommended Supplementary Readings

The Life and Work of Carl Rogers (Kirschenbaum, 2009) is a definitive biography of Carl Rogers that follows his life from his early childhood through his death. This book illustrates the legacy of Carl Rogers and shows his enormous influence on the field of counseling and psychotherapy.

Carl Rogers on Encounter Groups (Rogers, 1970) is an excellent introduction to person-centered groups. It is a readable account of their process and outcomes, changes as a result of them, and glimpses of the subjective struggles and experiences of those who participate in these groups.

On Becoming a Person (Rogers, 1961) is a classic that addresses the characteristics of the helping relationship, the philosophy of the person-centered approach, and practical issues related to therapy. I especially recommend chapters 2–9, 16, and 17.

A Way of Being (Rogers, 1980) contains a series of writings on Rogers's personal experiences and perspectives, as well as chapters on the foundations and applications of a person-centered approach. Especially useful are the chapters on person-centered communities, large groups, and perspectives on the world and person of tomorrow.

The Creative Connection for Groups: Person-Centered Expressive Arts for Healing and Social Change (N. Rogers, 2011) is a practical, spirited book lavishly illustrated with colorful action photos. Filled with fresh ideas to stimulate creativity, self-expression, healing, and transformation, Natalie Rogers combines the philosophy of her father with the expressive arts to enhance the power of group work.

Person-Centered Psychotherapies (Cain, 2010) provides a comprehensive overview of the development of the person-centered approach. This volume contains abundant current research supporting the core concepts of this approach.

Video

Watch Gerald Corey's *Group Theories in Action*, video via the Cengage eBook. The group session discussed in this chapter is based on an integrative approach to group counseling.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

References and Suggested Readings

Books and articles marked with an asterisk (*) are suggested for further study.

Baggerly, J., & Parker, M. (2005). Play therapy with African American boys at the elementary school level. *Journal of Counseling and Development, 83*(4), 387–396.

*Bohart, A. C., & Tallman, K. (1999). *How clients make therapy work: The process of active self-healing.* American Psychological Association.

*Bohart, A. C., & Tallman, K. (2010). Clients: The neglected common factor in psychotherapy. In B. L. Duncan, S. D. Miller, B. E. Wampold, & M. A. Hubble (Eds.), *The heart and soul of change: Delivering what works in therapy* (2nd ed., pp. 83–111). American Psychological Association.

*Bohart, A. C., & Wade, A. G. (2013). The client in psychotherapy. In M. J. Lambert (Ed.), *Bergin and Garfield's handbook of psychotherapy and behavior change* (6th ed., pp. 219–257). Wiley.

*Bohart, A. C., & Watson, J. C. (2020). Person-centered and emotion-focused psychotherapies. In S. B. Messer & N. J. Kaslow (Eds.), *Essential psychotherapies: Theory and practice* (4th ed., pp. 221–256). Guilford Press.

*Bozarth, J. D., Zimring, F. M., & Tausch, R. (2002). Client-centered therapy: The evolution of a revolution. In D. J. Cain & J. Seeman (Eds.), *Humanistic psychotherapies: Handbook of research and practice* (pp. 147–188). American Psychological Association.

*Cain, D. J. (2010). *Person-centered psychotherapies.* American Psychological Association.

Cain, D. J. (2013). Person-centered therapy. In J. Frew & M. Spiegler (Eds.), *Contemporary psychotherapies for a diverse world* (pp. 165–214). Taylor & Francis.

*Cain, D. J., Keenan, K., & Rubin, S. (Eds.). (2016). *Humanistic psychotherapies: Handbook of research and practice* (2nd ed.). American Psychological Association.

*Cook, J. M., Biyanova, T., & Coyne, J. C. (2009). Influential psychotherapy figures, authors, and books: An internet survey of over 2,000 psychotherapists. *Psychotherapy: Theory, Research, Practice, Training, 46*(1), 42–51.

*Cook, J. M., Biyanova, T., Elhai, J., & Schnurr, P. P. (2010). What do psychotherapists really do in practice? An internet survey of over 2,000 psychotherapists. *Psychotherapy: Theory, Research, Practice, Training, 47*(2), 260–267.

Elkins, D. N. (2009). *Humanistic psychology: A clinical manifesto.* University of the Rockies Press.

Elkins, D. N. (2012). Toward a common focus in psychotherapy research. *Psychotherapy, 49*(4), 450–454.

*Elkins, D. N. (2016). *The human elements of psychotherapy: A nonmedical model of emotional healing.* American Psychological Association.

*Elliott, R., Bohart, A. C., Watson, J. C., & Murphy, D. (2019). Empathy. In J. C. Norcross & M. J. Lambert (Eds.), *Psychotherapy relationships that work: Evidence-based therapist contributions* (3rd ed., Vol. 1, pp. 245–287). Oxford University Press.

Elliott, R., Greenberg, L. S., Watson, J., Timulak, L., & Freire, E. (2013). Research on humanistic-experiential psychotherapies. In M. J. Lambert (Ed.), *Bergin and Garfield's handbook of psychotherapy and behavior change* (6th ed., pp. 495–538). Wiley.

*Farber, B. A., Suziki, J. Y., & Lynch, D. A. (2019). Positive regard and affirmation. In J. C. Norcross & M. J. Lambert (Eds.), *Psychotherapy relationships that work: Evidence-based therapist contributions* (3rd ed., Vol. 1, pp. 288–322). Oxford University Press.

*Gelso, C. J., Kivlighan, D. M., & Markin, R. D. (2019). The real relationship. In J. C. Norcross & M. J. Lambert (Eds.), *Psychotherapy relationships that work: Evidence-based therapist contributions* (3rd ed., Vol. 1, pp. 351–378). Oxford University Press.

*Gladding, S. T. (2021). *The creative arts in counseling* (6th ed.). American Counseling Association.

Greenberg, L. S., & Rice, L. N. (1997). Humanistic approaches to psychotherapy. In P. L. Wachtel & S. B. Messer (Eds.), *Theories of psychotherapy: Origins and evolution* (pp. 97–129). American Psychological Association.

*Kirschenbaum, H. (2009). *The life and work of Carl Rogers.* American Counseling Association.

*Koldon, G. G., Wang, C., Austin, S. B., Chang, Y., & Klein, M. H. (2019). Congruence/genuineness. In J. C. Norcross & M. J. Lambert (Eds.), *Psychotherapy relationships that work: Evidence-based therapist contributions* (3rd ed., Vol. 1, pp. 323–350). Oxford University Press.

Landreth, G. L. (2002). *Play therapy: The art of relationship* (2nd ed.). Brunner-Routledge.

Books and articles marked with an asterisk (*) are suggested for further study.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

MacMillan, M., & Lago, C. (1999). PCA groups: Past, present . . . and future? In C. Lago & M. MacMillan (Eds.), *Experiences in relatedness: Groupwork and the person-centred approach* (pp. 29–45). PCCS Books.

*Miller, W. R., & Moyers, T. B. (2021). *Effective psychotherapists: Clinical skills that improve client outcomes*. Guilford Press.

*Murphy, D., & Joseph, S. (2016). Person-centered therapy: Past, present, and future orientations. In D. J. Cain, K. Keenan, & S. Rubin (Eds.), *Humanistic psychotherapies: Handbook of research and practice* (2nd ed., pp. 185–218). American Psychological Association.

*Norcross, J. C. (2010). The therapeutic relationship. In B. L. Duncan, S. D. Miller, B. E. Wampold, & M. A. Hubble (Eds.), *The heart and soul of change: Delivering what works in therapy* (2nd ed., pp. 113–141). American Psychological Association.

*Page, R. C., Weiss, J. F., & Lietaer, G. (2002). Humanistic group psychotherapy. In D. J. Cain & J. Seeman (Eds.), *Humanistic psychotherapies: Handbook of research and practice* (pp. 339–368). American Psychological Association.

Rogers, C. (1951). *Client-centered therapy*. Houghton Mifflin.

Rogers, C. (1957). The necessary and sufficient conditions of therapeutic personality change. *Journal of Consulting Psychology, 21*, 95–103.

*Rogers, C. (1961). *On becoming a person*. Houghton Mifflin.

*Rogers, C. (1970). *Carl Rogers on encounter groups*. Harper & Row.

Rogers, C. (1975). Empathic: An unappreciated way of being. *The Counseling Psychologist, 5*(2), 2–9.

*Rogers, C. (1980). *A way of being*. Houghton Mifflin.

Rogers, C. (1986a). Carl Rogers on the development of the person-centered approach. *Person-Centered Review, 1*(3), 257–259.

Rogers, C. (1986b). Client-centered therapy. In I. L. Kutash & A. Wolf (Eds.), *Psychotherapist's casebook* (pp. 197–208). Jossey-Bass.

Rogers, C. R. (1987a). Inside the world of the Soviet professional. *Counseling and Values, 32*(1), 46–66.

Rogers, C. R. (1987b). Rogers, Kohut, and Erikson: A personal perspective on some similarities and differences. In J. K. Zeig (Ed.), *The evolution of psychotherapy* (pp. 179–187). Brunner/Mazel.

Rogers, C. R. (1987c). Steps toward world peace, 1948–1986: Tension reduction in theory and practice. *Counseling and Values, 32*(1), 12–16.

Rogers, C. R. (1987d). The underlying theory: Drawn from experience with individuals and groups. *Counseling and Values, 32*(1), 38–45.

Rogers, C. R., & Freiberg, H. J. (1994). *Freedom to learn* (3rd ed.). Prentice Hall.

Rogers, C. R., Lyon, H., & Tausch, R. (2014). *On becoming an effective teacher: Person-centered teaching, psychology, philosophy and dialogues with Carl R. Rogers and Harold Lyon*. Taylor & Francis.

Rogers, C. R., & Malcolm, D. (1987). The potential contribution of the behavioral scientist to world peace. *Counseling and Values, 32*(1), 10–11.

Rogers, C. R., & Russell, D. E. (2002). *Carl Rogers: The quiet revolutionary*. Penmarin Books.

*Rogers, N. (1993). *The creative connection: Expressive arts as healing*. Science & Behavior Books.

Rogers, N. (2002). *Carl Rogers: A daughter's tribute* [CD-ROM]. Produced by Mindgarden Media, Inc.

*Rogers, N. (2011). *The creative connection for groups: Person-centered expressive arts for healing and social change*. Science & Behavior Books.

Sweeney, D. S., & Homeyer, L. E. (Eds.). (1999). *The handbook of group play therapy*. Jossey-Bass.

Tallman, K., & Bohart, A. C. (1999). The client as a common factor: Clients as self-healers. In M. A. Hubble, B. L. Duncan, & S. D. Miller (Eds.), *The heart and soul of change: What works in therapy* (pp. 91–131). American Psychological Association.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 11

Gestalt Therapy in Groups

Learning Objectives

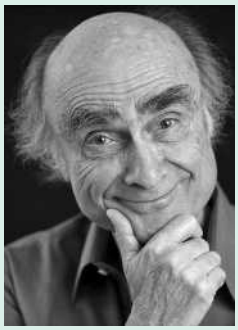
1. Understand the evolution of the Gestalt approach from the pioneering work of Fritz Perls to the contemporary relational approach developed by Erving and Miriam Polster.
2. Define the philosophy and basic assumptions underlying Gestalt theory and therapy.
3. Identify these key concepts in Gestalt therapy: here-and-now, present-centered awareness, dealing with unfinished business, contact and resistance to contact, body language, and experiments.
4. Recognize the emphasis of Gestalt therapy's group work in the here-and-now.
5. Explain these Gestalt therapy interventions: role playing, future projection, making the rounds, staying with the feeling, working with dreams, and creating experiments based on here-and-now awareness.
6. Understand the rationale for encouraging members to engage in symbolic work.
7. Differentiate between techniques and experiments in Gestalt group therapy.
8. Describe the practice of Gestalt therapy from a multicultural perspective.
9. Evaluate the contributions and strengths of the Gestalt approach to group work.
10. Identify some of the limitations of Gestalt group therapy.

Introduction

Gestalt therapy was developed by Fritz Perls and his wife, Laura, in the 1940s. It is based on the assumption that we are best understood in relation to our environment. The basic goal of a Gestalt group is to provide a context that enables members to increase their awareness of what they are experiencing and the quality of the contact they are making with others. Moment-to-moment awareness of one's experiencing, together with the almost immediate awareness of one's blocks to such experiencing, is seen as therapeutic in and of itself.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Erving Polster*


Zerka T. Moreno Foundation Collection

ERVING POLSTER (b. 1922) is still professionally active and gives presentations, therapy demonstrations, and workshops. He is regularly featured at the Evolution of Psychotherapy conference. Erving Polster provided the following explanation regarding his connection with Gestalt therapy.

"I first became aware of Gestalt therapy in 1953 when I attended a workshop in Cleveland with Frederick Perls. He was masterful in the therapy sessions he conducted with those of us who attended the workshop. Two aspects of the experience stand out for me. One was the combination of simplicity and power in both his concepts and his therapeutic work. The second was the surprising public nature of the personal explorations. This openness was revelatory in a process that had been steeped in privacy. Yet this freedom seemed both natural and daring, an enchanting exemplification of the drama of living.

"These explorations led to the formation of the Gestalt Institute of Cleveland, where I was faculty chairman from 1956 to 1973. The courses I created there composed a point of view that became the foundation of *Gestalt Therapy Integrated: Contours of Theory and Practice* (Polster & Polster, 1973), a book coauthored by my wife, Miriam. We moved to San Diego in 1973 and opened the Gestalt Training Center. People came there for 25 years from all over the world for extensive training work with us. Those were exciting and productive days, and Miriam and I had the pleasure of our partnership in developing our ideas and our training programs.

"Some years later, I wrote *Every Person's Life Is Worth a Novel* (Polster, 1987), *A Population of Selves: A Therapeutic Exploration of Personality Diversity* (Polster, 1995), and coauthored an anthology of Miriam's and my writings titled *From the Radical Center: The Heart of Gestalt Therapy* (Polster & Polster, 1999a). Miriam died in 2001, at which point we had both been retired for 2 years. After she died, I came out of retirement and began to explore a new theme, advocating the advancement of psychotherapy principles from a private office procedure into a communal application. I have written three books about this: *Uncommon Ground* (Polster, 2006); *Beyond Therapy: Igniting Life Focus Community Movements* (Polster, 2015); and *Enchantment and Gestalt Therapy: Partners in Exploring Life* (Polster, 2021)."

*I invited Erving Polster to write his biography and his wife Miriam's biography, which he kindly accepted. My gratitude to Erv Polster for providing these sketches of the Polsters' contributions to the development of Gestalt therapy.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Miriam Polster

Bill Peters/The Denver Post/Getty Images

MIRIAM POLSTER (1924–2001) earned her undergraduate degree in music. She was trained as a classical vocalist and a performer of operatic music. Her artistic gifts remained with her throughout her personal and professional life. M. Polster led workshops in which music served as a framework for assisting clients in exploring personal experiences.

She was a strong advocate of the relational dimension of Gestalt therapy, a counterpoint to the skewed stereotype of it as confrontational and technically narrow. The freshness of her perspectives, the clarity of her language, and the excitement evoked by her radiance all served to raise the charismatic potential of the therapist who entered into the realm of simple fascination with the way people lived their lives. The long arc of her influence was drawn by a feminine candor and conversational mutuality that achieved its strength through presence and intelligence more than through forcefulness; of relationship more than through manipulation; of optimism more than metallic rationalism; and, at last, of a wisdom-based tension that created a natural progression of experience.

Gestalt Therapy Integrated: Contours of Theory and Practice (Polster & Polster, 1973), coauthored by her husband, Erving, is considered a classic and a benchmark in the evolution of Gestalt therapy. In *Eve's Daughters: The Forbidden Heroism of Women* (M. Polster, 1992), Miriam painted an eye-opening picture of the contributions and the character of women in our society. She spelled out the historical role of women and their special heroic contributions to social progress. However, she went further than their overlooked heroism by also postulating a picture of heroism itself. She brightened the concept by reminding us of the heroism that is a part of everyday living. This interweaving of *women's* heroism with the *heroism of everyday life* accented the value of women's potential for effecting new social norms. Women's heroism had been taken for granted and was relegated to the background of social importance. M. Polster tied this social expansion of feminine heroism, often part of their ministrations in the world of everyday living, to an enlivened understanding of the subtle role of ordinary heroism of people at large.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Gestalt therapy is *existential* in that it is grounded in the here-and-now and gives primacy to existential dialogue. Awareness, choice, and responsibility are cornerstones of practice. Gestalt therapy affirms the human capacity for growth and healing through interpersonal contact and awareness. This approach is *phenomenological* in that it emphasizes how we see the world, how we contribute to creating our experience, and how we organize our world and ourselves. Gestalt therapy is also an *experiential* approach, and group members are able to come to grips with *what* and *how* they are thinking, feeling, and doing as they interact with others in the group. Group members are encouraged to try on a new style of behavior, to give expression to certain dimensions of their personality that are dormant, and to test alternative modes of behavior to widen their ability to respond in the world.

As clients acquire present-centered awareness and a clearer perception of the limitations of their style of interpersonal relating, significant unfinished business emerges. To live more fully in the present, clients need to identify and deal with anything from the past that interferes with current functioning. By reexperiencing past conflicts as if they were occurring in the present, clients expand their level of awareness and are able to integrate denied and fragmented parts of themselves, thus becoming unified and whole.

The Gestalt approach focuses more on process than on content. This process involves Gestalt group therapists putting themselves as fully as possible into the experience of the group members without judging, analyzing, or interpreting, while concurrently holding a sense of one's individual, independent presence. Gestalt group therapists believe experiencing is more powerful than a therapist's interpretations. Therapists do not try to explain to members why they do things, nor do they interpret the true meaning of members' experiences (Frew, 2013). Instead, therapists encourage members to discover their own meaning.

The Evolution of Gestalt Group Therapy

Fritz Perls, one of the founders of Gestalt therapy, was highly influential in promoting his style of therapeutic practice. Perls developed many of the key concepts of Gestalt therapy, but he never claimed to be doing group therapy. In the 1950s and early 1960s, Perls devoted much of his time to conducting workshops to train mental health practitioners in Gestalt theory and techniques as they applied to individual therapy. He emphasized one-to-one work—using the "hot seat" style—and discouraged any group interaction. Perls made frequent use of the "empty chair" technique, which was originated by the psychodrama pioneer, J. L. Moreno. Miriam Polster (1997) points out that Perls's work was clearly focused on interaction between himself and a client who volunteered to work *in front of* a group, but not *within* the group. She adds that Perls was not particularly interested in or adept at working with groups, and he rarely recognized the group as a presence in his work. The audience was viewed almost entirely as background for the encounter between the leader and the individual participant (Feder & Frew, 2008).

Perls challenged clients to see how they were avoiding responsibility or avoiding feeling, and his therapeutic style was characterized by theatrics, abrasive confrontation, and intense catharsis. Yontef (1999) claims that contemporary forms of Gestalt practice have moved away from the harsh and dramatic style of the 1960s and 1970s to an approach that "combines sustained empathic inquiry with crisp, clear, and relevant awareness focusing" (p. 10). Frew (2013) agrees that Gestalt therapy has evolved to focus more on attention to awareness and to interpersonal contact.

Contemporary Gestalt practice in the United States is very different from the confrontational and dramatic style of Fritz Perls. This newer version, **relational Gestalt therapy**, stresses dialogue and the I/Thou relationship between client and therapist. Relational therapists emphasize the therapeutic relationship and work collaboratively with clients in a search for understanding (Wheeler & Axelsson, 2015). Most contemporary Gestalt therapists emphasize presence, empathic attunement, authentic dialogue, gentleness, more direct self-expression by the therapist, decreased use of exercises, and greater trust in the client's experience and wisdom. A current trend in Gestalt practice is toward a greater emphasis on the therapeutic relationship, and therapists who operate from this orientation are able to establish a present-centered, nonjudgmental dialogue that allows clients to deepen

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

their awareness and to make contact with another person (Wheeler & Axelsson, 2015).

Erving and Miriam Polster (1973, 1999a), pioneers in relational Gestalt therapy, have made many significant theoretical and practical contributions to the development of contemporary Gestalt therapy. As therapists, supervisors, and trainers, the Polsters employed a style that is kind, compassionate, supportive, accepting, and challenging. Increased attention was given to families and communities, which form an integral part of an individual's life. Erv Polster (2008, 2015, 2021) writes about *life focus communities*, which is a way of taking therapy from the office into ordinary life in small groups.

Today few Gestalt practitioners use the empty chair technique as their *primary* method of conducting groups (Feder & Frew, 2008; Kepner, 2008). The essence of current Gestalt group therapy involves supporting group participants as they become more aware of their experience without pushing or blaming. In keeping with this evolution of Gestalt therapy, in this chapter I emphasize the contemporary developments that characterize this relational approach to Gestalt practice.

Key Concepts

Therapeutic Goals

The basic goal of Gestalt therapy is increased awareness, which by and of itself is seen as curative or growth producing. **Awareness** is a process of paying attention to one's own experiences in the moment. It requires self-knowledge, responsibility for choices, contact with the environment, immersion in current experience, self-acceptance, and the ability to make contact (Yontef et al., 2019). Polster (2021) contends that if we stay with the awareness of each moment, we will get to where we want to go. With awareness, clients have the capacity to find within themselves the resources necessary to solve their problems and to discover the conditions that will make change possible. Without awareness, they do not possess the tools for personality change.

Gestalt therapy aims not at analysis but at integration of conflicting dimensions within the individual. This step-by-step process involves "reowning" parts of oneself that have been disowned and then unifying these disparate parts into an integrated whole. As clients become more fully aware, they can carry on with their own personal growth, make informed choices, and live a meaningful existence.

A basic assumption of Gestalt therapy is that individuals can self-regulate, especially if they are fully aware of what is happening in and around them. Because the environments in which individuals are embedded are never completely responsive to their needs, creative adjustments occur, and aspects of the individual are lost to awareness. Therapy, individual or group, attempts to awaken the lost parts to the possibilities in the current set of field conditions.

The Gestalt theory of change posits that the more we attempt to be who or what we are not, the more we remain the same. According to Beisser's (1970) **paradoxical theory of change**, personal change tends to occur when we become aware of *what we are* as opposed to trying to become *what we are not.* Stated slightly differently, it is important that we accept *who* and *what* we are rather than striving to become what we "should be." What we *are* is always the starting point for the path we might take. Erv Polster (1995, 2021) states that the therapist is called on to see clients as they are, hear them as they are, talk to them as they are, and sense them as they are—to identify with them and create a union. When we acknowledge and become what we are, we open rich possibilities for change. The challenge for group therapists is to engage participants and assist them in developing their own awareness of how they are in the present moment.

Therapeutic goals can be considered from the point of view of personal goals for each member and of group process goals for the group as a whole. Zinker (2008) describes the following *individual* goals:

- Integrating polarities within oneself
- Enriching and expanding awareness
- Achieving contact with self and others
- Learning to provide self-support instead of looking to others for this support
- Defining one's boundaries with clarity
- Translating insights into action
- Being willing to learn about oneself by engaging in creative experiments

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- Learning to flow smoothly through the awareness-excitement-contact cycle without serious blockage

At the *group level*, Zinker (2008) lists the following goals for members:

- Learning how to ask clearly and directly for what they want or need
- Learning how to deal effectively with interpersonal conflicts
- Learning how to give support and energy to one another
- Being direct with each other and speaking in the first person
- Finding ways to challenge members to grow while respecting their needs for space and boundaries
- Creating a community that is based on trust that allows for a level of deep and meaningful work
- Learning how to give each other feedback
- Learning not to give advice
- Using the resources within the group rather than relying on the group leader as the director

The goals of a Gestalt group involve equal attention to process and content. As Frew (2013) puts it, "Gestalt therapy embraces the inseparable *yin* and *yang* of process and content, but it is primarily a process-oriented counseling approach" (p. 242).

Miriam Polster (1997) points to the importance of allowing members to talk about aspects of their life that concern or baffle them and also their way of relating to one another within the group. Although it is essential for members to be able to tell their story, she believes that the story itself is not enough. What is important is *how* the member tells the story and the way in which others in the group listen and are affected by the story. M. Polster gives an example of a man in one of her groups who let his sentences simply trail off in such a way that even he was not interested in what he was saying. She asked him to end his sentences with the phrase, "and I *really* mean that!" This led him to put more animation into his speech, which kept the rest of the group interested in what he was saying. As a way to enhance the possibilities for interpersonal learning, the group leader might ask members to let this man know how they are affected by being in his presence. Other members can share some ways they reduce their power in their daily lives and within the group context. They can also talk of ways they could become more animated. In other words, an individual's work can be enlarged upon by bringing in the interpersonal dimension so that members become more keenly aware of how they are functioning in the group situation. Doing this will give members a better sense of how they function out of the group as well.

Basic Principles of Gestalt Therapy

A number of basic principles underlie the theory of Gestalt therapy. These principles include holism, field theory, the figure-formation process, and organismic self-regulation.

Holism Holism, one of the foundational principles of Gestalt therapy (Latner, 1986), is expressed by this dictum: The whole is greater than the sum of its parts. We can only be understood to the extent that we take into consideration all dimensions of human functioning. Because Gestalt therapists are interested in the whole person, they place no superior value on a particular aspect of the individual. Gestalt practice attends to a client's thoughts, feelings, behaviors, body, and dreams as they become figural or move into the foreground for clients (Frew, 2013). The emphasis is on the aspects of the individual that are most "figural" or salient at any moment and to integration, or how the parts fit together, and how the individual makes contact with the environment.

Field Theory Gestalt therapy is based on **field theory**, which is grounded on the principle that the organism must be seen in its environment, or in its context, as part of the constantly changing field. Everything is relational, in flux, interrelated, and in process, and Gestalt therapists pay particular attention to and explore what is occurring at the boundary between the person and the environment.

Figure-Formation Process Originally developed in the field of visual perception by a group of Gestalt psychologists, the **figure-formation process** describes how the individual organizes experiences

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

from moment to moment. In Gestalt therapy the field differentiates into figure (the emerging focus of attention) and ground (the background environment). The figure-formation process tracks how some aspect of the environmental field emerges from the background and becomes the focal point of the individual's attention and interest.

Organismic Self-Regulation The figure-formation process is intertwined with the principle of **organismic self-regulation**, which describes the nature of the relationship between the individual and the environment. When equilibrium is "disturbed" by the emergence of a need, a sensation, or an interest, the organism will distinguish the means required to gratify this need. Organisms do their best to regulate themselves, and they take actions that will both restore equilibrium and contribute to growth and change.

Frew (1997) describes the implications of the principles of figure formation and organismic self-regulation for the therapy group. Members attempt to self-regulate in the group context by attending to what becomes figural moment to moment. A main method Gestalt therapists use in working with group members involves directing participants' awareness to the "figures" that emerge from the background during a group session. The needs of an individual at a given moment influence this process. What emerges for the group members is associated with what is of interest or what they need to be able to regain a sense of equilibrium or a measure of personal growth. The therapist uses the figure-formation process as a guide for the focus of exploration and work in the group.

Awareness

The task of members of a Gestalt group is to pay attention to the structure of their experience and to become aware of the *what* and *how* of such experiencing. The psychoanalytic approach is interested in *why* we do what we do; the Gestalt leader asks "what" and "how" questions but rarely "why" questions. By attending to the **continuum of awareness**—that is, by staying with the moment-to-moment flow of experiencing—group members discover how they are functioning in the world.

Gestalt group leaders employ the figure-formation process when they assist members in paying attention to what becomes figural for them. To help members gain a sharper awareness of what they are thinking, feeling, and doing, the Gestalt group therapist asks questions like the following, which lead to present-centeredness:

- What are you experiencing now?
- What's going on inside you as you're speaking?
- How are you experiencing your anxiety in your body?
- How are you attempting to withdraw at this moment, and how are you avoiding contact with unpleasant feelings?
- What's your feeling at this moment as you sit there and try to talk?
- What do you hear in your voice as you talk to your father now?

To attain present-centered awareness of our existence, Gestalt therapy focuses on the surface of behavior by concentrating on the group member's movements, postures, language patterns, voice, gestures, and interactions with others. There is value in attending to observable behavior and creating a climate in which group members can come into contact with their changing awareness from moment to moment.

The Here-and-Now

One of the most important contributions of Gestalt therapy is the emphasis on learning to appreciate and fully experience the present. A key principle of Gestalt therapy is that whatever is happening at the moment is center stage (Polster, 2021). The past is gone, and the future has not yet arrived, whereas the present moment is lively and exciting. The past is important, but only insofar as it is related to our present functioning. Gestalt therapists have developed a methodology that helps individuals discover and experiment with new possibilities. Gestalt group process provides many opportunities for using present-centeredness to increase awareness and bring about change, and the group process offers a greater chance to awaken unfinished business in members through their present-centered interactions (Schoenberg & Feder, 2005).

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

In Gestalt groups the participants bring past problem situations into the present by reenacting the situation as if it were occurring now. For example, if a group member (Leslie) begins to talk about the difficulty she had when she was younger and attempted to live with her father, the therapist could intervene with a request that Leslie "be here now" with her father and speak directly to him. The therapist might say: "Bring your father into this room now, and let yourself go back to the time when you were a child. Tell him now, as though he were here and you were that child, what you most want to say." The leader might make use of the empty chair technique by suggesting that Leslie imagine that her father is sitting in an empty chair and asking her to talk directly to him. Or the leader may ask Leslie to "borrow someone's eyes" in the group and talk to that person as if her father was present. Another alternative that a group leader might suggest to enhance the group process is to involve other members in Leslie's work. Leslie might select a group member to play the role of her father. This brings an interpersonal dimension to the Gestalt work and encourages other members to get involved by expressing their reactions to others in the group.

Most Gestalt experiments are designed to put clients into closer contact with their ongoing experiencing from moment to moment. "The goal [of an experiment] is always learning—slowing down and deepening experience in the service of new understanding and new possibilities for more flexible and effective response" (Wheeler & Axelsson, 2015, p. 40). Some Gestalt groups have a very tight focus on the here-and-now. A basic ground rule of Feder's (2008a) interactive, here-and-now approach is that participants agree to devote their attention and efforts to their experiences that directly pertain to what is taking place within the group. However, E. Polster (2021) claims that too tight of a focus on the here-and-now will foreclose on much that matters, such as the continuity of past and present.

Unfinished Business

Unfinished business includes unexpressed feelings—such as resentment, hate, rage, pain, hurt, anxiety, guilt, shame, and grief—and events and memories that linger in the background and clamor for completion. Unless these unfinished situations and unexpressed emotions become figural and are dealt with, they will interfere with present-centered awareness and with our effective functioning.

Because we do not sense the internal and environmental support to confront and fully experience our uncomfortable emotions, the emotions become a nagging undercurrent that prevents us from being fully alive. The Gestalt therapist might encourage expressing in the therapeutic session feelings never directly expressed before. If a group member (Tyler) says to the group that he is afraid of experiencing his feelings of hatred and spite, he may be encouraged by the therapist to stay with what is truly figural—"I am afraid." The group leader can then design an experiment in which Tyler can deepen his awareness of his fear. For example, he could talk to group members out of his fear, or he might tell each member one of his fears. Once Tyler has explored his fears, other members can react to him and share their fears in daily life and in the group itself. This intervention is one way to involve several members in exploring their fears.

During a group session, a member (Alejandro) says that he feels empty and powerless. The group therapist is likely to encourage him to stay with these uncomfortable feelings, even to exaggerate them—to "be empty," to "be powerless." If Alejandro can endure and truly experience the depth of his feelings, with the support of the group, he will probably discover that whatever expectations he has with regard to those feelings are more of a fantasy than a reality and that his helplessness and emptiness will shift at least slightly. By going beyond our creative adjustments, we make it possible to effectively address unfinished business that interferes with our present life, and we move toward health and integration.

Contact and Disturbances to Contact

In Gestalt therapy contact is made by seeing, hearing, smelling, touching, and moving. When we make optimal contact with the environment, change is inevitable. Effective **contact** means fully interacting with nature and with other people without losing one's sense of individuality. It is the continually renewed creative adjustment of individuals to their environment (M. Polster, 1999). Good contact

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

involves awareness, a sense of energy, and the ability to express oneself. Polster claims that contact is the lifeblood of growth. It entails zest, imagination, and creativity. There are only moments of this type of contact, so it is most accurate to think of levels of contact rather than a final state to be achieved. After a contact experience, there is typically a separation or withdrawal to integrate what has been learned.

Gestalt therapists also focus on interruptions, disturbances, and resistances to contact, which were developed as coping processes but often end up preventing us from experiencing the present in a full and real way. Resistances are typically adopted outside our awareness and, when they function in a chronic way, can contribute to dysfunctional behavior. Polster (2021) points out that, traditionally, resistance implies that people are not doing what they "should" be doing. Resistance can be understood as behavior that keeps us from exploring personal conflicts or painful feelings. It is our attempt to protect ourselves from anxiety and defend ourselves from pain, and thus it serves a function.

Some group counselors interpret resistance in a judgmental way. By reframing the concept, we can use what appears to be resistance in a therapeutic way. Group leaders can understand members' reluctance as an outdated coping strategy that at one time served an adaptive function but is no longer useful. By honoring members' resistance, group leaders are able to appreciate the fact that a particular coping strategy was the best possible response to a difficult situation. It is useful to recognize that some resistance makes good sense when it is understood in context. Polster (2021) speaks about the idea of "creative resistance," which implies that resistive behavior can be a desirable characteristic. Group leaders can adopt a positive view of resistance, and, indeed, they might embrace the notion of *therapy without resistance*. Because resistances are developed as a means of coping with life situations, they possess positive qualities as well as problematic ones, and many contemporary Gestalt therapists refer to them as "contact boundary disturbances" (Polster, 2021). In their classic book, *Gestalt Therapy Integrated: Contours of Theory and Practice*, E. Polster and Polster (1973) describe five contact boundary disturbances or phenomena that are articulated in Gestalt therapy: introjection, projection, retroflection, confluence, and deflection.

Introjection is the tendency to accept others' beliefs and standards uncritically without assimilating them and making them congruent with who we are. These introjects are alien to us because we have not analyzed and restructured them. When we introject, we passively incorporate what the environment provides, spending little time on clearly understanding what we want or need. During the early stages of a group, introjection is common because the members tend to look to the leader to provide structure and direction. At this phase of a group's development, members typically do not question the leader's interventions or rules. As the group reaches a working stage, members are less inclined to swallow whole the suggestions of the group leader.

Projection is the reverse of introjection. In **projection** we disown certain aspects of ourselves by ascribing them to the environment. When we are projecting, we have trouble distinguishing between the inside world and the outside world. Those attributes of our personality that are inconsistent with our self-image are disowned and put onto other people. By seeing in others the very qualities that we refuse to acknowledge in ourselves, we avoid taking responsibility for our own feelings and the person who we are. Of course, projection is the basis of transference. When transference feelings surface early in a group, these dynamics can be fruitfully explored. As members attempt to get a sense of both the leader and other members, they often attribute characteristics to these individuals that really belong to significant others in their lives. During the transition stage, when issues such as the struggle for control and power become central, projection continues to be a primary contacting style. Now participants may disown their own needs to control the group. The conflicts that occur at this phase are difficult to resolve unless those members who are projecting their need to control recognize and own their projections (Frew, 1986).

Retroflection consists of turning back onto ourselves what we would like to do to someone else. For example, if we lash out and injure ourselves, we are often directing aggression inward that we are fearful of directing toward others. Typically, these maladaptive styles of functioning are done outside of our awareness; part of the process of Gestalt therapy is to help us discover a self-regulatory system so that we can deal realistically with the world. During the initial

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

phase of a group, retroflection is easily observed in the tendency of some members to "hold back" by saying very little and expressing little emotion.

Confluence is the blurring of awareness of differentiation between the self and the environment. For people who are confluent, there is no clear demarcation between internal experience and outer reality. Confluence in relationships involves an absence of conflicts, or a belief that all parties experience the same feelings and thoughts. It is a style of contact that is characteristic of group members who have a high need to be accepted and liked. Conflicts can be very anxiety producing for individuals who rely on confluence as a style of contact (Frew, 1986). Confluence makes it difficult for people to have their own thoughts and to speak for themselves and makes genuine contact next to impossible.

Deflection is the interruption of awareness so that it is difficult to maintain a sustained sense of contact. People who deflect attempt to diffuse contact through the overuse of humor, abstract generalizations, and questions rather than statements (Frew, 1986). Deflection involves a diminished emotional experience. People who deflect speak through and for others.

Introjection, projection, retroflection, confluence, and deflection represent styles of contact. These styles can be either healthy or unhealthy, depending on the situation and the group member's level of awareness. Terms such as *interruptions in contact* or *boundary disturbance* are used to characterize people who attempt to control their environment. The premise in Gestalt therapy is that contact and withdrawal are both normal and healthy. Therefore, a discussion of these styles of contact focuses on the degree to which these processes are in the individual's awareness and serve adaptive purposes. Clients are encouraged to become increasingly aware of their dominant style of blocking contact.

Energy and Blocks to Energy

Unexpressed emotions can create a kind of blockage within the body. Gestalt therapists pay attention to bodily experience on the assumption that unexpressed feelings may result in some physical sensations or problems. Because members need energy to work in group sessions, Gestalt leaders pay special attention to **blocks to energy**, which involves noticing where energy is located, how it is used, and how it can be blocked. Blocks to energy show up in the body in a number of ways. One member will experience tension in the neck and shoulders, and another member will experience shortness of breath. Another person will typically speak with a restricted voice, holding back power. A few other ways that these blocks to energy will manifest themselves are keeping one's mouth shut tightly (as though afraid of what might slip out); slouching; looking at the ground or in the air as a way of avoiding contact with others' eyes; keeping one's body tight and closed; talking in a fast and staccato fashion; being emotionally flat; or experiencing body sensations such as a lump in the throat, a quivering of the mouth, a hot and flushed feeling, shaking movements of the hands and legs, or dizziness.

Group members may not be aware of their energy or where it is located and may experience it in a negative way. Zinker (1978) suggests that therapy at its best is "a lively process of stoking the client's inner fires of awareness and contact" (p. 24). This process involves a therapeutic relationship that awakens and nourishes the client in such a way that the therapist's own energy is not diminished. Zinker maintains that it is the therapist's job to help clients locate the ways in which they are blocking energy and to help them transform this blocked energy into more adaptive behaviors. Group therapists can learn to welcome these blocks and use them as a way of deepening therapeutic work. Members can be encouraged to recognize how their energy is being expressed or constricted in their body. Rather than trying to rid themselves of certain bodily symptoms, they can delve fully into tension states. By allowing themselves to exaggerate their tight mouth and shaking legs, they are able to discover for themselves how they are diverting energy and keeping themselves powerless.

Experiments can be designed that allow members to try out various body positions. For example, if Raul sits with a closed posture, the leader can invite him to uncross and experience the feeling, and then cross again. By inviting individuals to move out of a particular posture and experiment with a new posture, leaders can facilitate awareness. Members who slouch and who also complain about low self-esteem

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

can be invited to stand and walk erect. In a like way, members can be asked to exaggerate a particular gesture or posture as a way of learning more about themselves. In short, paying attention to the body and energy blockages within the body can be a productive way to explore the meaning of a member's experience and perhaps to reveal unspoken issues.

Role and Functions of the Group Leader

Gestalt group leaders focus on conscious awareness, contact, and experimentation, and they encourage members to heighten their awareness and attend to their contact styles. Therapists model the process of useful interactions by disclosing their own awareness and experience (Yontef et al., 2019). Group leaders can share a great deal about themselves by focusing on what they are experiencing in the moment in the group, without revealing much about themselves outside of the group. When leaders share their personal reactions to what is going on in the group, including how they are being affected by what they are hearing and observing, this can be especially helpful. Disclosure of personal problems or life outside of the group should be done with intentionality and serve the needs of the group rather than the leader's needs.

The group therapist, functioning much like an artist, invents experiments with clients to augment their range of behaviors. The leader's function is to create an atmosphere and structure in which the group's own creativity and inventiveness can emerge (Zinker, 1978). For example, a theme of loneliness may come up in a group. Here a central task of the leader is to orchestrate this theme by connecting members with one another and finding ways to involve the group as a whole in exploring loneliness.

Gestalt therapists assume an active role by employing a wide range of interventions and experiments to help group members gain awareness and experience their internal and interpersonal conflicts fully. Gestalt therapy uses both a supportive therapeutic relationship and active methods to help members discover how they block their awareness and personal functioning.

The Gestalt group therapist also promotes a nurturing environment within the group. This creates a climate in which the members are encouraged to try out new ways of being and behaving. Unless the group atmosphere is perceived as being safe, members will keep themselves hidden, and therapeutic work will be limited (Feder, 2008b). Although the group therapist functions as a guide and a catalyst, suggests experiments, and shares observations, the basic work of exploration is done by the group members.

The Role of the Relationship

Gestalt group therapists have latitude to invent their own experiments, which are basically an extension of their personality. Therapists must be grounded and in tune with themselves as well as being present for their clients. Group practitioners need to be mindful of not becoming technique-bound and losing sight of their own being as they engage the members of their group. The therapist's attitudes and behavior and the relationships established among the group members are what really count (Wheeler & Axelsson, 2015; Yontef et al., 2019). Many contemporary Gestalt therapists place increasing emphasis on factors such as presence, authentic dialogue, gentleness, more direct self-expression by the therapist, decreased use of exercises, a greater trust in the client's experiencing, and more interest in making full use of the Gestalt group process. Creating a therapeutic relationship is not a prelude to therapy but is at the heart of Gestalt therapy. "The client–counselor relationship is the heart and soul of Gestalt therapy. . . . The client and counselor are partners in an endeavor that involves increasing awareness, identifying figures of interest, and restoring contacting functions" (Frew, 2013, p. 242).

Many who write about Gestalt therapy give central importance to a dialogic relationship marked by an "I/Thou" attitude, or the authentic meeting between people. If members of a group are to become genuine, they need contact with an authentic group therapist. Because Gestalt therapy is part of the existential approach, the mutuality of the I/Thou encounter is seen as essential for therapy to succeed. Healing results from these nonexploitive encounters. The best experiments grow out of the trusting relationship that the leader creates and must be a phenomenological part of the therapeutic process. The experiments described later in

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

this chapter focus on awareness and are not intended to provide simple solutions to a client's problem. If therapists use experiments when they are frustrated with a client and want to change the person, they are misusing the experiments and will probably thwart rather than foster the client's growth and change (Hycner & Jacobs, 1995).

Polster and Polster (1973) see the therapist as nothing less than an artist involved in creating new life. Yet in Gestalt therapy, as in most other approaches, the danger exists that the therapist will lose sight of the true meaning of the therapeutic process and become a mere technician. The Polsters emphasize that therapists should use their own experience as an essential ingredient in the therapy process and never forget that they are far more than mere responders, givers of feedback, or catalysts who do not change themselves.

Creative therapists possess a rich personal background, having opened themselves to a range of life experiences and become able to celebrate life fully (Zinker, 1978, 2008). In short, they are able to use themselves as a person as they function as a therapist. In addition to being mature and integrated, creative therapists also possess certain capacities, abilities, and technical skills. Out of their experimental attitude, they use themselves, other group members, and objects and events in the group environment in the service of inventing novel visions of the members.

From this discussion of the role and functions of the Gestalt group leader, it should be apparent that who leaders are as a person and how they function in the group, creatively drawing on technical expertise, are the critical factors that determine the potency of leadership. Yontef et al. (2019) identify several styles of practicing Gestalt therapy, but all share these common elements:

- Direct experiencing and experimenting
- Direct contact and personal presence
- Attention to *what* and *how*
- *Here-and-now* focus

Stages of a Gestalt Group

One way of conceptualizing the role of the Gestalt group leader is to consider the stage of development of the group. Kepner (2008) presents a model that calls for different roles for the leader in working with different dimensions of group process. Gestalt group process aims to create conditions for learning about what it means to be a member of a group. Kepner notes that Gestalt group therapy can accentuate one of three contact boundaries: (1) the *intrapsychic* or *intrapersonal* (the individual's thoughts, sensations, and feelings), (2) the *interpersonal* (the interactions between and among group members), or (3) the *group level* (the processes that involve the whole group). She maintains that the choice of boundary emphasis is often defined by the leader's choice of role: *therapist* for the intrapersonal dimension, *facilitator* of interpersonal processes, and *consultant* to the group as a whole. Kepner emphasizes that the leader is committed to working with both the individual and the group for the enhancement of both. She describes the various roles of the leader in the Gestalt process group using a three-stage model.

First Stage

In the first stage (initial stage) of a group, the key characteristics are identity and dependence. Members of the group are dependent on the way they are perceived and responded to by other members and the leader. The leader, functioning as a therapist, helps individuals explore questions members have about their identity in the group. The leader's activities are directed toward providing a climate of trust that will support risk-taking and making connections between individuals. Once members discover what they have in common with each other, the group is ready to work on differentiation.

Second Stage

In the second stage (transition stage), the key characteristics are influence and counterdependence. During this time of transition, the group grapples with issues of influence, authority, and control. The leader's task is to work toward increasing differentiation, divergence, and role flexibility among members. The leader assumes the role of facilitator to help members work through reactions they are having toward what is taking place in the group. Some of these facilitative activities include heightening the awareness of the norms operating in the group, encouraging members to challenge norms and openly

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

express differences and dissatisfaction, and differentiating roles from persons.

Third Stage

In the third stage (working stage), intimacy and interdependence are the key themes. At this stage of the group's development, real contact occurs within and among members of the group. Now that the members have worked through the issues of influence, power, and authority, they are ready for a deeper level of work, both individually and with the group as a whole. During this stage, a high level of cohesiveness encourages members to take risks by engaging in experiments for the sake of new learning. "Experiment modifies the group members' perceptions of their own inner lives as well as the lives of others" (Zinker, 2008, p. 107). Group members utilize the experiment as a way to make significant discoveries about themselves.

The group leader is no longer the ultimate authority but now assumes the role of an experienced resource or consultant. The leader helps the group to arrive at closure and also assists members in recognizing unfinished business not worked through in the group. It is clear that Kepner's (2008) model accounts for the reality that the roles and functions of the group leader are rooted in three types of processes that occur simultaneously in groups: intrapersonal, interpersonal, and the group as a system. Gestalt leaders have the advantage of being able to intervene at all three of these levels: the *intrapersonal level* is aimed at heightening awareness, the *interpersonal level* is mainly used to promote interpersonal contact, and the *group level* is aimed at supporting and illuminating the group's journey through the stages of development.

Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures

Gestalt therapy employs a rich variety of interventions designed to intensify what group members are experiencing in the present moment for the purpose of leading to increased awareness. Melnick and Nevis (2005) state that "Gestalt methodology combines an Eastern focus on awareness and being in the here and now with a Western emphasis on action and doing" (p. 114). Gestalt therapy encourages direct experience and actions as opposed to merely *talking about* conflicts, problems, and feelings. Moving from *talking about* to action is often done by the use of experiments. These experiments need to be tailored to each individual and used in a timely manner; they also need to be carried out in a context that offers a balance between support and risk. Experiments offer an opportunity for clients to safely practice new behavior and are often referred to as a "safe emergency." Group members have an opportunity to explore beyond ways of behaving that have become restrictive and habitual. The solid support makes practicing new behavior safe, even though trying on a new behavioral style is likely to be risky (E. Polster, 2021; M. Polster, 1997). Experiments grow out of the therapeutic relationship and provide members with an opportunity to increase their awareness and try out new ways of thinking and behaving. Experiments should be the outgrowth of the therapeutic encounter—an encounter grounded in the mutual experiencing of the group member and the group therapist. There are no prescribed techniques that Gestalt group leaders must follow.

The Role of Experiments

It is important to distinguish between *techniques* and *experiments* because the two terms are not synonymous. **Techniques** are exercises or procedures that are often used to bring about action or interaction, sometimes with a prescribed outcome in mind. Generally, they are not invented in the moment as an integral part of the client's process or the group environment. In contrast, **experiments** are phenomenologically based; that is, they evolve out of what is occurring within a member or members in the present moment, and the outcome is unknown. Frew (2013) defines the experiment as "a method that shifts the focus of counseling from talking about a topic to an activity that will heighten the client's awareness and understanding through experience" (p. 238). In Gestalt group experiments, members are invited to try out some new behavior and to pay attention to what they experience. The purpose of an experiment is to assist a member in active self-exploration

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

(Melnick & Nevis, 2005). A Gestalt-oriented group leader is encouraged to be creative in designing and implementing a wide range of interventions, always using as a guide the participant's most pressing need or interest.

It is also useful to differentiate between a *group exercise* and a *group experiment*. Leaders prepare **group exercises** prior to the group meeting as a way to promote interaction. Members might be asked to pair up and talk, or a catalyst might be introduced into the group to provide a specific focus for work during a session. In contrast, a **group experiment** is a creative happening that grows out of the group experience; as such it cannot be predetermined, and its outcome cannot be predicted (Zinker, 1978). M. Polster (1999) states that experiments are "aimed at restoring momentum to the stuck points of a person's life. It is one way to recover the connection between deliberation and spontaneity by bringing the possibilities for action right into the therapy room" (p. 107). Frew (2013) indicates that experiments are always one of a kind: "Experiments emerge organically and seamlessly in the moment-to-moment contact between a counselor and a client, and they are discovered within that dialogic process" (p. 238).

Some forms that Gestalt experiments might take include dramatizing a painful memory, imagining a dreaded encounter, playing one's parent, creating a dialogue between two parts within oneself, attending to an overlooked gesture, or exaggerating a certain posture. One of the therapist's functions is to observe whether the experiment appears to be too safe or too risky (M. Polster, 1999). The Polsters (M. Polster & Polster, 1990) call for sensitivity and careful attention on the therapist's part so that clients are "neither blasted into experiences that are too threatening nor allowed to stay in safe but infertile territory" (p. 104).

Erv Polster (1995) writes that a diversity of Gestalt experiments is available, and therapists can create their own on-the-spot experiments that evolve from therapeutic engagements with clients as well. A loud-voiced client can be asked to experiment with speaking softly. A client grieving over the home she left may be asked to imagine herself walking into her home and report what she sees and feels.

On a similar note, Feder (2008b) pays close attention to the balance of safety and danger in the Gestalt group. An experiment is always done within the context of support. Members will not be able to engage in the kind of risk-taking that an experiment entails unless they feel safe in going beyond their comfort zone and venturing into new territory. Feder is particularly concerned about creating a nurturing atmosphere within the group as a whole, and any signs that this safety is lacking warrants the leader's attention.

If members experience the group as being a safe place, they will be inclined to move into the unknown and challenge themselves. It is useful for leaders to provide members with a general understanding of the role of experiments in the group process. To increase the chances that members will benefit from Gestalt methods, group leaders need to communicate the general purpose of these interventions and to create an experimental climate. "Let's try something on for size and see how it fits" or "try it and see what you might learn" conveys this experimental attitude on the part of the leader. The message also says that the leader is not trying to prove a point and that the members are free to try something new and determine for themselves whether it's going to work.

Many problems that members bring to the group relate to unfinished situations with significant people in their lives. Consider Clarissa, who learned to be cautious around men, based largely on her earlier relationship with her father. She may harbor feelings of resentment and mistrust toward men, based on her convictions that men will simply not be there for her in time of need. Clarissa may connect this present feeling to old feelings associated with her alcoholic father, who continually let her down and brought much pain into her life. Based on her early creative adjustment not to trust men, she may be projecting her negative feelings toward all men now. Concluding that if her own father could not be counted on for love and protection then surely other men will not be more trustworthy, Clarissa now looks for evidence to support her hypothesis. The Gestalt group leader might invite her to deal with her father symbolically in the here-and-now. Clarissa might have a dialogue with him, becoming both her father and herself. She could now say all the things that she wanted to say to her father as a child but, because of her fear, kept deep inside herself.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Of course, there are many creative possibilities within the group. Clarissa could look at the men in the group, expressing to each some of her resentments. In making contact with each man in the group, she could share her fantasies of all the ways in which they would let her down or of what she would like from them now yet is afraid to ask for. The theoretical rationale for this experiment is rooted in the assumption that the emotions that were overwhelming to her as a child were dealt with by some form of distortion or denial. The Gestalt leader encourages her to reexperience these past events by reliving them in the here-and-now so that emotions that were repressed can come to the surface. With the support of the leader and the group members, Clarissa can allow herself to experience feelings that she has sealed off from awareness, and she can now work through some of these feelings and beliefs that are keeping her stuck. By challenging her assumptions of how men are, she is able to establish a new basis for relating to men.

Experiments can be applied to future events as well as dealing with present conflicts and unfinished situations from the past. For example, if Clarissa is afraid of a future confrontation with her father, she can be asked to live her expectations in the here-and-now by speaking directly to her father in the group in a symbolic way and by expressing her fears and hopes. She may say to her father: "I want to tell you how much I'd like to be close to you, but I'm afraid that if I do so, you won't care. I'm afraid of saying the wrong things and pushing you even further away from me."

In this example, the possibilities are almost endless if there is good contact between the group leader and members, and if there is a climate of safety that encourages trying on a host of ways to deal with unexpressed thoughts and feelings. The emphasis is on inviting (not ordering) members to examine their behaviors, attitudes, and thoughts. Leaders can encourage members to look at certain incongruities, such as gaps between their verbal and nonverbal expression. The Gestalt group is characterized by assisting members in paying attention to what they are doing and experiencing in the here-and-now. Asking members to make this kind of examination of what is in the forefront for them could be perceived as challenging to some clients at times. Any time a member is encouraged to take a risk, this must be done in a caring manner. Also, a leader's challenge does not necessarily have to be aimed at weaknesses or negative traits; members can be asked to pay attention to the ways in which they are blocking their strengths and ways in which they are not living as fully as they might. In this sense, the leader is expressing a genuine interest in the member, that, if timed well, is likely to be perceived as supportive and therapeutic, not confrontational or abrasive.

Group members must be prepared for taking part in experiments. They need to know that they can choose to go along and that they can also decide when to stop. Rather than pushing them into experimenting, the spirit is always one of inviting them to discover something new about themselves. It is essential that leaders begin where the group member is. By drawing on the support within the members and the group environment, experiments can be designed that will enhance the potential for becoming more spontaneous. Cultural considerations must be taken into account when inviting group members to participate in Gestalt experiments; some interventions may not fit all populations or may need to be modified for individuals from diverse cultures.

I generally use experiments to enhance and to highlight the existing material in the group rather than to get things moving. For example, when members talk about a lonely time of their lives and sadness comes up naturally, I am inclined to ask them to do any number of things: look at another person in the room and talk directly to this person about the sadness, talk to a person as though that person is a significant other, or reenact a past event as though it were happening now. I continue to find that when members bring a struggle or some unfinished business with significant people in their lives into the present, whatever they are experiencing is intensified. Providing some therapeutic structure affords members the encouragement and support they need to fully experience their personal pain and make a crucial breakthrough.

Keep these introductory comments in mind as you read the following pages, which describe several Gestalt interventions, their rationales, and their applications to group situations. My discussion is based on

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

a variety of sources, including Frew (2013), Levitsky and Perls (1970), Passons (1975), E. Polster (1997, 2021), Polster and Polster (1973, 1999a), M. Polster (1997), and Zinker (1978). I have modified some techniques to fit the needs of the group situation.

Paying Attention to Language

Gestalt therapy emphasizes the relationship between language patterns and personality. Words can bring us closer to what we are experiencing or distance us from what we are thinking and feeling. Becoming more aware of our speech patterns can enhance self-awareness. It should be noted, however, that paying attention to a client's language patterns requires a great deal of skill on the part of the leader. Unless the members, through the leader's help, are able to see the value of paying attention to the impact of their language style, they may conclude that everything they say and do is subject to unnecessary scrutiny. Any one of the following interventions based on language may or may not be appropriate with a particular client. These experiments grow out of the phenomenological work with the member; they are not techniques to use in routine and stereotyped ways.

It "It" talk is a way of depersonalizing language. By using "it" instead of "I," we maintain distance from our experience. When group members say, "It's frightening to come to this group," they can be asked to change the sentence to, "I'm frightened to come to this group." Substituting personal pronouns for impersonal ones is a way of assuming responsibility for what we say.

You Group participants often say things like "You feel hurt when someone rejects you." By using "you" talk, people detach themselves from whatever they may be feeling. Ask members to pay attention to the differences between this "you" statement and saying, "I feel hurt when someone rebuffs me." By changing a "you" statement to an "I" statement, we reveal ourselves, and we take responsibility for what we are saying. Beginning a sentence with the word "you" tends to put others on the defensive and allows us to disown our own experience.

Questions In a Gestalt group, members are discouraged from asking questions. Questions direct attention to other people and can easily put others on the defensive. Also, questions often demand that those being questioned reveal themselves while those asking the questions remain safe behind their interrogation. Group members who tend to ask too many questions can be asked to experiment with any of the following:

- Instead of asking a question, make a direct statement to the person and share your own motivation for your question.
- Avoid "why" questions because they lead to a chain of "why/because" exchanges. Try "how" and "what" questions instead.
- Practice making "I" statements. By doing so, you take responsibility for your position, your opinions, and your preferences.

Qualifiers and Disclaimers By paying attention to the qualifiers attached to their statements, group members can increase their awareness of how they diminish the power of their messages. A common example is the use of "but": "I like you, *but* your mannerisms drive me up the wall"; "I often feel depressed, *but* I don't know what to do to change the situation"; "I think this group is helping me, *but* people outside are so different from those in here." In each of these cases the word "but" essentially discounts the statement that precedes it. Without making group members excessively self-conscious, the leader can encourage members to pay attention to the impact of the use of qualifiers and disclaimers.

"Can't" Statements Group members often say "I can't" when they really mean "I won't." Sally says, "I simply can't talk to my father and tell him what I feel; he'd never understand me." It would be more precise and more honest for Sally to say that she won't make the attempt to talk with her father. Essentially, Sally is unwilling to (won't) take the risk or sees it as not being worth the effort. If a group leader consistently and gently insists that members substitute "won't" for "can't," the leader is helping members own and accept their power by taking responsibility for their decisions.

"Shoulds" and "Oughts" Some group members seem to be ruled by "shoulds" and "oughts": "I should be interested in what others say in this group"; "I ought to

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

care for everyone, and if I don't, I feel terrible"; "I should express only positive feelings." The list of "shouldisms," both in daily life and in a group situation, is endless. Members can at least become aware of the frequency of their "should" and "ought" remarks and of the feelings of powerlessness that accompany their use. One way of increasing one's awareness of the limitations imposed by a "should" standard is to experiment with changing phrases such as "I have to" or "I should" to "I choose to."

In working with language, it is important to consider the stage of a group's development. If a leader or a member challenges someone's language during the early stages of a group, this can interfere with a sense of safety. Challenging the language of some members may result in their feeling criticized, judged, and not understood. Therefore, sensitivity and appropriate timing are essential as the leader explores with members their language patterns.

Nonverbal Language

Skilled group counselors listen not just to the verbal level of communication but also, and even more keenly, to the message behind the words, which is often conveyed in the voice tone, pitch, and volume, in the speed of delivery, and so forth.

The group setting offers many opportunities to explore the meaning of nonverbal messages. Such explorations are especially useful when participants exhibit nonverbal cues that are incongruent with what they are saying verbally. For example, Derek tells the group leader that he is angry with the leader for passing him over, but as he utters his angry words, he is smiling. The leader is likely to call to Derek's attention the discrepancy between his angry words and his smile. Derek may then be asked to carry on a dialogue between his words and his smile, or he may be asked to "become his smile" and give this smile a voice: "What is your smile saying?" This procedure gives Derek the opportunity to discover for himself the meaning of the discrepancy. In fact he may be saying, "I want to let you know that I'm upset that you passed me by, yet I don't want to risk your disapproval by letting you know how angry I am."

Here are some other examples of how the exploration of nonverbal expressions can increase members' awareness of what they are really experiencing in the moment.

- Conrad typically carries himself in a slouched posture. The leader says: "Become aware of your posture; go around the group and tell what your posture says about yourself to each member of the group. Complete the sentence 'I am my posture, and what I am telling you about me is _____!'"
- Makiko tends to speak in a soft voice and with a very tight mouth. The leader invites her to give a speech to the group and consciously exaggerate these mannerisms. She could "become her tight mouth" and say something like this: "I'm holding my words and myself back from you. I'm not going to be open, and if you want something from me, you'll have to pry me open."
- Manuel comes across as though he were always delivering a lecture to an audience. Group members have told him that his voice and his style of speaking create a barrier between him and others. He could be asked to stand before the group and give a lecture, perhaps on the value of lecturing people.

Examples of how people deal with nonverbal cues are endless. Creative group leaders can invent a wide variety of experiments designed to help participants become increasingly aware of what they are communicating through their eye contact, mannerisms, subtle gestures, tone of voice, and hand movements, as well as through their whole bodies. Keep in mind that experiments are presented as invitations rather than as dictates that members must follow. Group leaders would do well to avoid making bold interpretations—for example, that keeping one's arms crossed means that one is closed—and instead encourage members to merely pay attention to the nonverbal cues they emit. It is especially important for leaders to avoid making interpretations of nonverbal behavior in cross-cultural contexts. For example, leaders should not assume that lack of direct eye contact indicates a lack of confidence. In some cultures, direct eye contact is a confrontational act that should be avoided.

Experiments With Internal Dialogues

Because a goal of Gestalt therapy is to achieve integrated function and the acceptance of aspects of one's

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

personality that have been disowned and denied, therapists pay close attention to splits and polarities in personality function. Fantasy dialogues are meant to promote awareness of internal splits and eventual personality integration. These dialogues can take many forms, for example, dialogues between opposing sides or polarities within oneself (like tender/tough, brave/scared, masculine/feminine, loving/hateful, active/passive) or dialogues with a parent or other significant person, fantasized others, or dialogues with inanimate objects.

Understanding how polarities are related to inner conflicts is central to Gestalt therapy. A variety of experiments with dialogues can help members increase their awareness of the dichotomies within themselves and help them come to terms with dimensions of their personality that seem to oppose each other. Our self-concept often excludes painful awareness of the polarities within us. We prefer to think of ourselves as bright rather than dull, as kind rather than cruel, as loving rather than unloving, and as sensitive rather than indifferent. Typically, we may resist "seeing" in ourselves those parts that we do not want to accept as being part of who we are. Although we can recognize the altruistic side of ourselves, we might have trouble coming to terms with our self-centered nature. Ideally, as an outcome of a group, we become aware of the polarities within ourselves, including those thoughts and feelings that society does not sanction. As we become more tolerant of the complexities and seeming contradictions within us, there is less of a tendency to expend energy on fighting to disown those parts of our nature that we do not want to accept.

Dialogue experiments are a powerful method of contacting parts of our nature that we work hard at keeping secret from both ourselves and others. Through dialogues with the different facets of oneself, a person may be able to reclaim disowned parts. Learning how to carry on a conversation between our feminine and masculine sides, for instance, is one way of bringing to the surface inner conflicts we might have with these polarities. Alternately becoming each side as fully as we can is a way to *experience* both of these facets of our personality.

Dialogue experiments are typically used to heighten awareness of introjections and projections. In introjection, we uncritically take in aspects of other people, especially parents, and incorporate them into our personality. The danger of uncritical and wholesale acceptance of another's values as our own is that it can prevent personality integration. Gestalt experiments are aimed at getting these introjections out in the open, so that we can take a good look at what we have been swallowing whole without digesting it.

For example, by experimenting with fantasy dialogues, Joaquin becomes aware of some of the messages he has internalized without question: I must be practical; I ought to cling to security and never set out on a new path unless I have carefully assessed all the odds; only irresponsible people seek fun for the sake of fun—in other words, a long list of "dos" and "don'ts," "shoulds," and "shouldn'ts" that keep him from enjoying life. At last, Joaquin begins to realize that he has listened to these directives from others and given others the power to direct his life. Through dialogues with the different facets of himself, Joaquin becomes aware that he wants to reclaim this power for himself.

Making the Rounds

Making the rounds can be a useful technique to help a group member recognize a hidden fear. The member is encouraged to go around to each of the group members and say something the member usually does not communicate verbally. For example, assume that Larry sees himself as a self-made man who needs nothing from others. Although he may not say this about himself, the theme of "I can do it by myself" runs through much of his life. To better understand how this theme actually determines what he does, Larry could be asked to stand before each member in the group and tell that person something about himself and then add, "and [or but] I can do everything by myself." First, Larry goes to Yesenia and says, "I never ask for emotional support from others, and at times I feel lonely . . . but I can do everything by myself." He then goes to Michael and says, "I make all the decisions in my business . . . and I can do everything by myself." The aim of this experiment is to have Larry feel fully what it's like for him to be so self-reliant, to the extent that he will not ask for help from anyone. Ultimately, he may decide to continue to do things for himself, but with the awareness of

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

the price he pays for doing so. Or he may come to see that he doesn't have to be totally self-reliant and that he can be independent while letting others do things for him from time to time.

Here are a few more examples of the use of making the rounds:

- Julius says that he is afraid of women. He could make the rounds and say to each woman, "I'm afraid of you because _____." or "If I were to get close to you _____."
- Adriana worries about boring people in the group. She might be asked to make the rounds and, for each person, complete the sentence, "One way I could bore you is by _____." or "You would be bored if I _____."
- Nisha says that she feels distant from the rest of the group, even though she would like to have a sense of identification. She could make the rounds and experiment with completing the sentence, "One way I feel distant from you is _____." or "The way I am different from you is _____."

Fantasy Approaches

Experimenting with a diversity of fantasy situations in a group can lead to significant growth. Fantasy can promote personal awareness in a number of ways, as the following brief list suggests.

- Fantasy can be used when members are too threatened to deal with a problem in concrete terms. For example, members who are afraid to be assertive can imagine themselves in situations in which they are assertive. Then they can compare what they feel when they are passive with what they feel when they are able to ask for what they want.
- Fantasy approaches are useful in dealing with negative expectations, which often result in a sense of paralysis. Members who are afraid to express what they think and feel to someone they love can be guided through a fantasy situation in which they say everything they want to say but are afraid to express. Essentially members speak in the here-and-now to the loved one (as if they were present) in front of the group. The leader may say: "Pick someone in this group to be your mother [or some other significant person]. Borrow this member's eyes, and tell your mother what you most want her to hear." There is a possible psychological value in working through these feelings in the safety of the fantasy approach, because the person may be able to release submerged feelings that have become split off. Note that it is not necessary for the person to express these feelings in real life; as a matter of fact, to do so could be unwise.
- Fantasy is a useful and safe way to explore members' fears about involving themselves in the group. For example, members can be asked to imagine the thing they most fear occurring in the group. If, for example, some members are afraid of being rejected by the group, they can be directed to imagine that everyone is systematically rejecting them and then work with the feelings associated with this fantasy.

Once a fantasy has been tried in the group, it could be carried outside of the group setting. At times members can be invited to picture themselves as they wish they were in interpersonal situations. They might share their fantasies aloud in the group as they experience themselves in powerful, alive, creative, and dynamic ways. Then they can be asked to try acting in the group as if they were the person they imagined themselves to be. If the experiment is successful, members may feel encouraged enough to try the new behavior in real-life situations.

Rehearsal

In everyday life we often rehearse for roles we think we are expected to play, and we worry that we may not say the "right" thing and perform "properly." Internal rehearsing consumes much energy and frequently inhibits spontaneity. In the **rehearsal** technique, members are asked to "rehearse out loud" so that others can experience the internal process of thinking and censoring. This can be especially useful when it is obvious that members are doing a lot of blocking and censoring and when what they say seems carefully measured out for a certain effect. Suggesting a rehearsal must be timed properly, and it must emerge from the situation in which a member is

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

struggling in some way. Rehearsals are not designed to stir up emotions but to bring into sharper awareness a process that is typically done without awareness. For example, during the initial stages of one of my groups, Erin was quite silent and appeared to be developing an observer's stance. When I asked her if she was indeed saying everything she wanted to say, she shook her head in denial. So I asked her to express aloud some of the random thoughts she had as she was sitting there in silence.

Rehearsing can also be productive when a member is anticipating some future confrontation. Assume that Klaus wants to tell his boss that he doesn't feel appreciated and that he wants to be recognized for his accomplishments. Klaus can, in fantasy, picture himself standing before his boss, ready to tell him what he wants to say. Klaus's out-loud rehearsal could go something like this: "I'm standing here like a fool. What if I mess up? He won't listen to me, and I don't really have anything to say. How can I let him know what I'm thinking? Right now I feel like running away and apologizing."

In a Gestalt group the participants share their rehearsals with one another to become more aware of the many preparations they go through in performing their social roles. By doing so, they become more aware of how they strive to please others, of the degree to which they want to be accepted and approved, and of the extent of their efforts to avoid alienating others.

The Exaggeration Technique

In the **exaggeration technique**, group members are asked to repeat and intensify a particular behavior for the purpose of bringing out-of-awareness emotional processes into awareness. Movements, postures, and gestures are exaggerated so that the meanings they communicate become clearer. By exaggerating the movement or gesture repeatedly, the person experiences the feelings associated with the behavior more intensely and becomes more aware of the inner meaning of that behavior.

For example, if the leader notices that Sandy consistently nods her head in an approving way when people speak, the leader could ask Sandy to go before each group member and intentionally exaggerate nodding her head while, at the same time, putting words with this action. Other examples of behaviors that lend themselves to exaggeration are habitually smiling while expressing painful or negative emotions, trembling, clenching one's fists, tapping one's foot, crossing one's arms tightly, and pointing a finger at someone.

Berrin, a group member, said, "I feel burdened by listening to everyone's problems in this group!" At an earlier session, Stephen had confronted Berrin for intervening so quickly and trying to make him feel better when he was working on conflicts he was having with his family. She then revealed that during her childhood years she typically assumed the role of family arbitrator, always doing her best to smooth over the battles in her family. Berrin eventually said that she was sick and tired of carrying everyone's burdens; it weighed her down and gave her a heavy feeling.

The leader suggested that Berrin pick up some heavy objects and hold them as she looked at each person in the group. She could be invited to allow herself to get into the experience of the heaviness and being burdened. For example, while holding the heavy objects, she might make the rounds and complete the sentence, "Looking at you I am burdened by _____." Or she might say something to each member such as, "Here, let me take on all your burdens. I really enjoy carrying everyone's problems, and I just wouldn't know what to do if I didn't have all these burdens weighing me down!" Even though she said that she was sick and tired of carrying around everyone's burdens, we encouraged her to allow herself to give in to the part of herself that felt burdened and experiment with telling others all the benefits of being this way. The rationale here was that if she could fully experience being burdened there was a good chance she could allow herself to experience shedding these burdens and being light, at least for a few moments. Often the best way to discover the aspect of ourselves that we say we would like to experience more of is to allow ourselves to stay with that part of us that we want to avoid.

Dream Work in Groups

Consistent with its noninterpretive spirit, the Gestalt approach does not interpret and analyze dreams. Instead, the intent is to bring the dream back to life,

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

to re-create it, and to relive it as if it were happening now. Here is a brief description of this approach.

Group members do not report their dreams or talk about them in the past tense. Instead, they are asked to tell the dream as if it were happening in the present. Dreamers become immersed in their dreams with more vitality when they narrate dreams as though they are happening now. Members can be asked to identify with a segment of the dream and to narrate their dream from a subjective perspective. They may be asked to transform key elements of the dream into a dialogue and become each part of the dream. The group context allows them to play out parts of the dream as present events.

Dreams contain existential messages; they represent our conflicts, our wishes, and key themes in our lives. By making a list of all the details in a dream—remembering each person, event, and mood—and then acting out ("becoming") each of these parts as fully as possible, one becomes increasingly aware of one's opposing sides and of the range of one's feelings. Eventually the person appreciates and accepts these inner differences and integrates the conflicting forces; each piece of work on a dream leads to further assimilation and integration. By avoiding analyzing and interpreting the dream and focusing instead on becoming and experiencing it in all of its aspects, the client gets closer to the existential message of the dream. Freud calls the dream "the royal road to the unconscious"; Perls (1969a) refers to it as "the royal road to integration" (p. 66).

The Polsters (E. Polster & Polster, 1973) see dreams as a projection of the dreamer. All aspects of the dream are representations of the dreamer. They also view dreams as a road to contact. As dreamers acknowledge their kinship with the many aspects of their dream, they are also extending their own sense of diversity, broadening the experience of self, and centering themselves in the world. Dreams can be used in groups quite creatively "as a starting point for discoveries about present relationships with other group members or the therapist or with a recognition of an existential position which bears exploration using the dream only as a point of departure" (p. 273).

The Polsters (E. Polster & Polster, 1973) provide the example of a man (Fred) in a group who dreams a large frog is always watching him and is ready to jump. The group leader can suggest a number of creative experiments to increase contact between Fred and others in the group. The leader might ask Fred to describe his experience of the group as he relates his dream in the present tense. Fred might be asked, "What would you like to say to the members in this group?" If Fred were to indicate that they might see something in him that he doesn't want them to see, he could be asked to imagine what each person sees in him as they watch him. The dream work is an interactive process that enables Fred to experience more intensely his sense of being watched and his fears of being jumped on. It could be that Fred has some unfinished business with the group about a time when he thought they jumped on him.

Here are some suggestions for group leaders to help members explore their dreams in a group:

- The member can be asked to relive the dream as though it were happening right now.
- After dreamers have had an opportunity to recount a dream in the present tense, they can be asked any one of these questions: "What are you experiencing now?" "What was it like for you to recount your dream?" "What interests you most about the dream?"
- Have members choose an element of the dream that seems most like them and ask, "What element of the dream has the most energy?"
- It is useful to inquire whether there is a troublesome part of the dream. If there is, it is important to address it early so there is time to work on it.
- Members can be encouraged to "become" different parts of a dream. For example, members become all the people in the dream. Are any of them significant people? They can "become" objects in the dream, especially objects that link and join, such as telephone lines and highways. They can identify any powerful force, such as a storm.
- A way for members to become a part of a dream is for them to assume the identity of a person or an object by giving voice and personality to this dream element.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Rainwater (1979) suggests that you notice how you feel when you wake up from a dream. Do you feel fear, joy, sadness, frustration, surprise, anger? Identifying the feeling tone may be the key to finding the meaning of the dream. In working with dreams in Gestalt style, dreamers can focus on questions such as "What are you doing in the dream?" "What are you feeling?" "What do you want in the dream?" "What are your relationships with other objects and people in the dream?" "What kind of action can you take now?" and "What is your dream telling you?"

Group experiments can emerge out of the dream work of individuals in a group. Zinker (1978) has developed an approach he calls *dream work as theater*, which goes beyond working with an individual's dream. After a dream is reported and worked through by a participant, a group experiment is created that allows other members to benefit therapeutically from the original imagery of the dreamer. Each plays out a part of the dream. This offers the group participants many opportunities for enacting certain dimensions of the dream that relate both to the dreamer and to their own life.

For example, assume that Kara has had a dream that contains a broken-down car, a man shooting at people in the car, and a woman trying to save the passengers. One member may choose to take on the identity of the person doing the shooting, another can take on the role of one of the people in the car being shot at, and still another can be the car that doesn't function. As members play out their parts, the dreamer can help them understand the characters or objects in the dream. The group leader can facilitate the production of the dream as a dramatic and therapeutic experience for the entire group. There are many advantages to this approach in increasing group cohesion and linking one member's work with others.

The dreams of group participants may have implications for how they feel in their group. For example, Kara may discover that she feels frightened in the group and would like to escape. She may feel attacked (shot at) by one or more members, with a woman coming to her rescue. In this case, she can act out her dream in the group by selecting the person by whom she feels most seriously attacked and talking to that person directly. She can then become the broken-down car—her powerless vehicle of escape—and see what insights this association brings. She can also pick out the woman in the group by whom she feels most supported and have a dialogue with her. She might reverse roles, becoming the person doing the shooting. Working with the dream in this way has great potential for dealing with unfinished business with others in the group.

Group Theories in Action: Gestalt Therapy Application*

Unless members become aware of unfinished business in their life, their ability to make good contact in their environment and to function effectively will be hindered. If group facilitators pay attention to what is happening in the here-and-now as members interact with each other, both group members and facilitators are likely to become aware of unfinished business that is manifesting itself in current interactions. In this session, I ask members to check in with some unfinished business that they might be willing to explore in this group session. Several members mention memories pertaining to fathers, which seems to be a theme.

After everyone has checked in, Galo says he would like to talk more about his absent father; however, he is aware that he became emotional in the previous session and is anxious about crying. I intervene by asking Galo to make the rounds and share the mantras he hears in his head: "Strong men don't cry." "Crying is not manly. Get over it!" "Crying is a sign of weakness, and I don't want people to see me as being weak." Galo continues to provide each person in the group with a sentence about crying. He then lets us know that the loss of a father in his life is affecting him today, and he would like to get over this loss. When I ask Galo to pick someone in the group to be his father, he says Randy could be his dad. I ask Galo to talk to his symbolic father and he begins with this: "Dad, I am only 12 years old, and I don't want you to leave. I need a father, and it is not fair that you

*The group session discussed here is based on the Gestalt therapy group work segment in the video *Group Theories in Action*, which is included in the Online Student Resources.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

are leaving." Galo continues to talk to his father, and Randy responds as his dad saying: "I've fallen short as a dad. I am sorry. I wish it could be different." Both Galo and Randy become very emotional as they continue their dialogue.

I notice that Kellie, Julius, Jeff, Dana, and Lupe are all tearing up. I link the work of these members by asking them to tell Galo how they are affected by the interchange, and each of them talks to their dad about pain they have felt. Lupe is sitting between Jeff and Galo, both of whom are very emotional. Noticing that Lupe seems affected, I ask her to talk to Jeff and Galo, and she begins talking about the pain she feels over losing her father at a young age. Dana becomes emotional and talks about good relationships with her father, who she fears losing because of an illness. Each member is given time to identify some pain that is affecting them now.

Staying with what is happening in the moment has touched many members, and it is important that members are given a chance to make sense of what they experienced emotionally before the session ends. Emotional ventilation can be therapeutic, but members need to work in the present to put into words what they are learning. This session shows that members' self-talk and beliefs have influenced the emotions they associate with some event. Processing what they are experiencing emotionally helps members put these events into perspective.

Applying Gestalt Therapy to Group Work in Schools

The emphasis in Gestalt therapy on creating quality therapeutic relationships fits well with what is required for conducting successful groups with both children and adolescents. The personal dimensions leaders are able to bring to a group increase the involvement of young people. According to Coker (2004), Gestalt counseling, although not generally viewed as a school-based approach, includes many developmentally appropriate exercises that work effectively with both children and adolescents in brief counseling contexts. Gestalt counseling offers school counselors a theoretically based approach that is conducive to brief interventions that can lead to both insight and behavior change.

As you have learned in this chapter, Gestalt group work places a premium on the quality of the contact between the individual and the group. In this respect, the Gestalt approach has some common denominators with both the existential and person-centered approaches. I think this is a main strength of Gestalt therapy, and children and adolescents are likely to respond to this collaborative spirit. Specific applications of Gestalt interventions with children can be seen in the works of Lambert (2003) and Oaklander (1988, 2006). In *Windows to Our Children*, Oaklander (1988) describes various Gestalt exercises for children that can be adapted to group work. Various creative activities she uses are aimed at helping children experience their feelings, understand their relationship with people in their environment, and help children develop a sense of responsibility for their actions. Oaklander (2006) claims that what is directly perceived, felt, and experienced is more relevant than a therapist's explanations and interpretations. She sees value in projection through art and storytelling as ways of increasing a child's self-awareness. Oaklander believes the empty chair exercise is an effective way to assist children in understanding and dealing with frustration, anger, resentment, and other unfinished business. Gestalt exercises are often bridges to the child's inner self. A major focus is to help children become aware of what they are doing, how they are doing it, and how they can change themselves.

Techniques from Gestalt therapy may be limited in working with some adolescent groups, especially in the case of involuntary members. Middle school and high school students are often highly self-conscious and may not take kindly to what they perceive as "weird" techniques. Adolescents who may be reluctant to participate in certain Gestalt activities can be invited by a skillful group leader to take the risk of engaging in here-and-now experiments. The manner in which group leaders introduce role-playing interventions has a great deal to do with enlisting a cooperative spirit among these group members. Instead of adolescents merely talking about problems they have in their relationships, they might be surprised by how real the interactions become when they bring interpersonal difficulties to life by using present-centered methods advocated in Gestalt therapy.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Applying Gestalt Therapy With Multicultural Populations

There are certain advantages in using a Gestalt approach with culturally diverse client populations. Gestalt therapy pays attention to how clients view their world, and therapists attend to what is figural for members out of their diverse backgrounds. Because Gestalt therapy is practiced with a phenomenological attitude, therapists are less likely to impose their own values and cultural standards on their clients. Frew (2013) notes that Gestalt therapy can be a useful and effective approach with individuals from diverse backgrounds because it takes the clients' context into account.

There are many opportunities for Gestalt leaders to apply their creativity with diverse client populations. People in many cultures give attention to expressing themselves nonverbally rather than emphasizing the content of oral communication. Some clients may express themselves nonverbally to a greater extent than they do with words. For example, group leaders may ask members to focus on their gestures, facial expressions, and the experience within their own body. If a group member (Eduardo) says that he is feeling threatened, the leader may invite him to pay attention to his bodily reactions. Some very creative work can emerge from work with people's gestures and body sensations. One of the advantages of drawing on Gestalt experiments is that they can be tailored to fit the unique way in which members perceive and interpret their culture. Of course, before Gestalt procedures are introduced, especially with culturally diverse group members, it is essential that the clients have been adequately prepared.

The use of imagery and fantasy has much potential if members are well prepared and if there is a high degree of trust within the group. Assume that Jianni is dealing with unfinished business pertaining to guilt surrounding the death of a loved one. She can make significant inroads into completing this unfinished business by bringing this dead person symbolically into the room and dealing with her in the present. If English is her second language, Jianni can be invited to speak in her original language. However, such an exercise may be resisted by the client on two counts: it may be difficult for her to talk about the dead person, let alone "speak directly" to her; she may also argue that it would be more comfortable for her if she spoke in English. Ultimately, it is Jianni's choice regarding her participation in this exercise.

Some caution should be observed when using Gestalt experiments with individuals from different cultural backgrounds. As is evident from this chapter, these interventions often lead to emotional expression. Focusing on affect has some limitations with those individuals who have been culturally conditioned to be emotionally reserved, or at least not to publicly express their emotions, because doing so may be viewed as a sign of weakness and a display of one's vulnerability. Certainly, an effective Gestalt group leader would invite such members to explore their feelings, thoughts, and attitudes surrounding being vulnerable. Ineffective leaders who push for catharsis are likely to find certain members becoming increasingly uncooperative, and these members may eventually terminate. For instance, people who are reluctant to experience and express their emotions will probably not take kindly to the therapist's suggestion that they "talk to the empty chair."

Although some raise concerns about using Gestalt interventions with diverse cultural groups, I think we do a disservice to group members if we decide in advance that experiential approaches will not be effective because of our expectations based on a person's cultural background. In training workshops in group counseling that Marianne Schneider Corey and I conducted in South Korea, we found group participants to be very open and willing to share themselves emotionally. As we do with any person we work with in our groups, but especially with members who are obviously culturally different from ourselves, we begin with a not-knowing position. We are not quick to make assumptions about the clients, nor do we impose our worldview or values on them. Instead, we approach clients with respect, interest, compassion, and presence. We work collaboratively with our clients to discover how to best help them resolve the difficulties they experience internally, interpersonally, and in the context of their social environment. It is unrealistic to think you need to know everything about different cultures, but an attitude of respect and appreciation for cultural differences is essential.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Evaluation of the Gestalt Approach to Groups

Contributions and Strengths of the Approach

Perls originally conceived of Gestalt therapy primarily as an individual approach, but the practice of Gestalt therapy has evolved and expanded into group work over the years. Gestalt therapists rely heavily on group work today, with the most popular applications being in psychotherapy, training, and supervision groups.

Gestalt therapy is a humanistic, existential, and holistic model that brings a fresh and creative perspective to the practice of group work. I find that Gestalt experiments are powerful and often lead to the expression of immediate emotions and the reexperiencing of old feelings. As is the case with psychodramatic exercises, the Gestalt present-centered methods of reenacting early life experiences bring vitality both to an individual's work and to the participants of the group. The creative and spontaneous use of active experiments as a pathway to experiential learning is a key contribution of Gestalt therapy.

Another distinctive feature of Gestalt therapy is its focus on the body. In an excellent book dealing with the role of the body in psychotherapy, Kepner (1993) demonstrates how a client's posture, movements, and bodily experiences can be incorporated into the practice of Gestalt therapy. Without making interpretations for members, leaders can encourage them to pay attention to what they are experiencing bodily. This focus can provide rich clues to areas members want to avoid, and it also offers a way for members to come in contact with their anxiety. If the leader avoids telling members the meaning of their gestures, postures, and body symptoms, members are more able to stay with what they are experiencing and eventually find their own meaning.

Limitations of the Approach

Gestalt interventions frequently elicit participants' emotions, which may make it tempting for a leader to focus on feelings and sometimes give less attention to cognitive factors. Helping participants discover the meaning of their emotional experiences is a significant factor in producing personality changes that will extend beyond the group. Although the earlier phase of Gestalt therapy's development did not focus on cognitive processes, contemporary Gestalt therapy addresses cognitive factors and integrates the affective and cognitive dimensions of human experiencing (Yontef et al., 2019).

A major concern I have about the way Gestalt therapy could be practiced is the potential misuse of power. Typically, Gestalt therapists are very active, and if they do not have the characteristics mentioned by Zinker (1978)—sensitivity, timing, inventiveness, empathy, and respect for the client—the experiments can easily boomerang. Also, members may grow accustomed to the leader creating experiments for them and withdraw from suggesting their own experiments. Ideally, experiments in a group are co-created by the leader and the members.

With an approach that can have powerful effects on members, either constructive or destructive, ethical practice requires adequate training and supervision for leaders. The most immediate limitation of Gestalt therapy or any other therapy is the skill, knowledge, training, experience, and judgment of the therapist. Some leaders assume an imposing style, which increases the potential for abuses of power. Those leaders who impose on members are more interested in what they want than in what the members want. In the imposing stance, group leaders are less concerned with understanding and respecting the members' experience than they are with making something happen (Frew, 1992).

Inept group therapists may use powerful interventions to stir up emotions and open up problems that members have kept from full awareness, only to abandon the members once they have managed to have a dramatic catharsis. Such leaders fail to help members work through what they have experienced and bring some closure to it. It is essential that leaders are able to be psychologically present as the members express emotions. If leaders are threatened by emotional intensity, they might also abandon members who are experiencing emotion. Leaders must learn to manage powerfully expressed emotions. It needs to be emphasized that contemporary Gestalt therapy focuses more on therapeutic relationships and less on techniques.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

It is easy to see that the misapplication of Gestalt methodology could provide a tempting place for group leaders to hide their personal responses and forget about the I/Thou relationship, especially those leaders who adopt an imposing style. Through the use of confrontive techniques, without a clear understanding of the theory of Gestalt therapy, leaders can do considerable psychological damage. Contemporary Gestalt therapists make use of facilitative interventions that highlight interpersonal processes rather than relying on a coercive and hard-hitting style (Schoenberg & Feder, 2005). Gestalt practitioners need to learn how to intervene in a manner that respects the member's reluctance. A blend of support and the invitation to risk go a long way in creating the kind of relationship that enables clients to explore a universal tension—I want to change versus I want to stay the same.

Gestalt group leaders who have truly integrated their therapeutic approach are sensitive enough to practice in a flexible way. They have solid training in Gestalt theory and practice, which allows them to design experiments that will deepen the work of members. They strive to help members experience themselves as fully as possible in the present, yet they are not rigidly bound by dictates, nor do they routinely intervene with a directive whenever members stray from the present. Sensitively staying in contact with a member's flow of experiencing entails the ability to focus on the person and not on the mechanical use of techniques for a certain effect.

Self-Reflection and Discussion Questions

1. A basic assumption of Gestalt therapy is that the focus on the here-and-now encompasses the past and helps influence the future. What do you think about asking participants to bring a past problem into the present by reenacting the situation as though it were occurring now?
2. Contemporary Gestalt therapists emphasize presence, authentic dialogue, gentleness, a trust in the client's experiencing, and an interest in making full use of the Gestalt group process. What are your reactions to this trend in relational Gestalt therapy?
3. What are the differences between using a technique in Gestalt therapy and creating an experiment?
4. Gestalt therapy emphasizes nonverbal aspects, including body language. What value do you see in observing nonverbal language in a group without making interpretations for members?
5. Describe the Gestalt approach to understanding dreams. What therapeutic value do you see in working with dreams that group members share?

Where to Go From Here

You might consider pursuing Gestalt training, which would include attending workshops, seeking out personal therapy from a Gestalt therapist, and enrolling in a Gestalt training program that would involve reading, practice, and supervision.

Psychotherapy.net is a comprehensive resource for students and professionals that offers videos demonstrating Gestalt therapy with adults and children. New articles, interviews, blogs, therapy cartoons, and videos are published monthly.
Website: www.psychotherapy.net

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Videos on Gestalt Therapy

Watching Erving Polster doing therapy with a challenging client or an interview on Polster's perspective on Gestalt therapy will bring Gestalt therapy alive. A video relevant to this chapter is a good place to start.

Video: www.psychotherapy.net/videos/approach/gestalt
This video depicts renowned therapist and teacher Erving Polster artfully and adeptly plying his trade with Gerald, the type of client we have all struggled with: bright, cynical, emotionally detached, overly intellectual, and seemingly determined to defeat this therapist as he has previous ones.

Video: www.psychotherapy.net/video/polster-gestalt-therapy
In this in-depth interview, you'll get to know Polster's unique take on Gestalt therapy, and see for yourself how he boldly elevates ordinary conversations into life-affirming encounters.

Video: www.psychotherapy.net/video/gestalt-therapy
Watch Gestalt child therapist Violet Oaklander in an actual counseling session with a 13-year-old boy who has difficulty expressing anger.

Video: www.psychotherapy.net/video/oaklander-gestalt-child-therapy
See Gestalt therapist Violet Oaklander apply this approach in consulting with child therapists on three challenging cases.

Video: www.psychotherapy.net/video/gestalt-child-therapy

Other Resources

Here are a few resources for training in Gestalt therapy:

Gestalt Institute of Cleveland, Inc.
1588 Hazel Drive
Cleveland, OH 44106-1743
Telephone: (216) 421-0468
Fax: (216) 862-3550
Email: registrar@gestaltcleveland.org
Website: www.gestaltcleveland.org

Gestalt Therapy Institute of the Pacific
1626 Westwood Blvd., Suite 104
Los Angeles, CA 90024
Telephone: (310) 446-9720
Fax: (310) 475-4704
Email: info@gestalttherapy.org
Website: www.gestalttherapy.org

Gestalt Therapy Training Center, Northwest
757 SE 34th Avenue
Portland, OR 97214
Telephone: (503) 230-0900
Fax: (360) 696-4811
Email: gttcnw@aol.com
Website: www.gttcnw.org

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The Center for Gestalt Development, Inc. publishes *The Gestalt Directory,* which includes information about Gestalt practitioners and training programs throughout the world. The training center's program is described in detail, including admission requirements, costs, length of the program, certifications, and other pertinent data. Single copies of *The Gestalt Directory* are free of charge. Requests for a copy must be in writing or from the website. Also available are books, audiotapes, and videotapes dealing with Gestalt practice.

The Center for Gestalt Development, Inc.
Website: www.gestalt.org

Journals

Gestalt Review
P. O. Box 515
South Wellfleet, MA 02663
Website: www.gestaltreview.com

British Gestalt Journal
P. O. Box 420
Bristol, BS99 7PQ
England
Website: www.britishgestaltjournal.com

Recommended Supplementary Readings

Beyond the Hot Seat Revisited: Gestalt Approaches to Group (Feder & Frew, 2008) is one of the few books exclusively devoted to Gestalt approaches to group work, and I highly recommend it. Separate chapters are devoted to Gestalt group process, family therapy, training groups, intensive workshops, and other clinical applications.

Gestalt Group Therapy: A Practical Guide (Feder, 2006) provides an excellent discussion of what Gestalt group therapy is and how a Gestalt group progresses.

Enchantment and Gestalt Therapy: Partners in Exploring Life (Polster, 2021) brings to life many key themes in Gestalt therapy, a few of which include working in the here-and-now, life focus groups, understanding resistance, and fundamentals of contact boundaries. The author describes the phenomenon of enchantment in psychotherapy, and he brings in his own experiences over his long career as a Gestalt therapist.

Gestalt Therapy (Wheeler & Axelsson, 2015) offers an excellent introduction to the theory, evolution, research, and practice of Gestalt therapy. The book is based on principles that encourage an active, present-focused, relational stance on the therapist's part.

Video

Watch Gerald Corey's *Group Theories in Action*, video via the Cengage eBook. The group session discussed in this chapter is based on an integrative approach to group counseling.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

References and Suggested Readings

Beisser, A. R. (1970). The paradoxical theory of change. In J. Fagan & I. L. Shepherd (Eds.), *Gestalt therapy now* (pp. 77–80). Colophon.

Coker, J. K. (2004). Using Gestalt counseling in a school setting. In B. T. Erford (Ed.), *Professional school counseling: A handbook of theories, programs & practices* (pp. 131–138). CAPS Press.

*Feder, B. (2006). *Gestalt group therapy: A practical guide.* Gestalt Institute Press.

*Feder, B. (2008a). Gestalt group therapy: An interactive approach. In B. Feder & J. Frew (Eds.), *Beyond the hot seat revisited: Gestalt approaches to group* (pp. 157–166). Gestalt Institute Press.

*Feder, B. (2008b). Safety and danger in the Gestalt group. In B. Feder & J. Frew (Eds.), *Beyond the hot seat revisited: Gestalt approaches to group* (pp. 67–84). Gestalt Institute Press.

Feder, B., & Frew, J. (2006). A survey of the practice of Gestalt group therapy. *Gestalt Review, 10*(3), 242–248.

*Feder, B., & Frew, J. (Eds.). (2008). *Beyond the hot seat revisited: Gestalt approaches to group.* Gestalt Institute Press.

Frew, J. E. (1986). The functions and patterns of occurrence of individual contact styles during the development phase of the Gestalt group. *The Gestalt Journal, 9*(1), 55–70.

Frew, J. E. (1992). From the perspective of the environment. *The Gestalt Journal, 15*(1), 39–60.

Frew, J. E. (1997). A Gestalt therapy theory application to the practice of group leadership. *Gestalt Review, 1*(2), 131–149.

Frew, J. E. (2013). Gestalt therapy. In J. Frew & M. Spiegler (Eds.), *Contemporary psychotherapies for a diverse world* (pp. 215–257). Taylor & Francis.

Hycner, R., & Jacobs, L. (1995). *The healing relationship in Gestalt therapy.* The Center for Gestalt Development.

*Kepner, E. (2008). Gestalt group process. In B. Feder & J. Frew (Eds.), *Beyond the hot seat revisited: Gestalt approaches to group* (pp. 17–37). Gestalt Institute Press.

Kepner, J. I. (1993). *Body process: Working with the body in psychotherapy.* Jossey-Bass.

Lambert, R. (2003). *A child's view: Gestalt therapy with children, adolescents, and their families.* Gestalt Journal Press.

Latner, J. (1986). *The Gestalt therapy book.* Center for Gestalt Development.

Levitsky, A., & Perls, F. (1970). The rules and games of Gestalt therapy. In J. Fagan & I. Shepherd (Eds.), *Gestalt therapy now.* Colophon.

Melnick, J., & Nevis, S. (2005). Gestalt therapy methodology. In A. L. Woldt & S. M. Toman (Eds.), *Gestalt therapy: History, theory, and practice* (pp. 101–116). Sage.

*Oaklander, V. (1988). *Windows to our children: A Gestalt therapy approach to children and adolescents.* Center for Gestalt Development.

*Oaklander, V. (2006). *Hidden treasure: A map to the child's inner self.* Karnac Books.

Passons, W. R. (1975). *Gestalt approaches in counseling.* Holt, Rinehart & Winston.

*Perls, F. (1969a). *Gestalt therapy verbatim.* Bantam. (Reprinted 1992 by The Gestalt Journal Press)

Perls, F. (1969b). *In and out of the garbage pail.* Bantam.

*Polster, E. (1987). *Every person's life is worth a novel: How to cut through emotional pain and discover the fascinating core of life.* Norton.

*Polster, E. (1995). *A population of selves: A therapeutic exploration of personal diversity.* Jossey-Bass.

Polster, E. (1997). The therapeutic power of attention: Theory and technique. In J. K. Zeig (Ed.), *The evolution of psychotherapy: The third conference* (pp. 221–229). Brunner/Mazel.

Polster, E. (2006). *Uncommon ground.* Zeig, Tucker, and Theissen.

Polster, E. (2008). Life focus communities. In B. Feder & J. Frew (Eds.), *Beyond the hot seat revisited: Gestalt approaches to group* (pp. 345–370). Gestalt Institute Press.

*Polster, E. (2015). *Beyond therapy: Igniting life focus community movements.* Taylor & Francis.

*Polster, E. (2021). *Enchantment and Gestalt therapy: Partners in exploring life.* Routledge.

*Polster, E., & Polster, M. (1973). *Gestalt therapy integrated: Contours of theory and practice.* Brunner/Mazel.

Polster, E., & Polster, M. (1999a). *From the radical center: The heart of Gestalt therapy.* The Gestalt Institute of Cleveland Press.

Books and articles marked with an asterisk (*) are suggested for further study.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

*Polster, E., & Polster, M. (1999b). Therapy without resistance: Gestalt therapy. In E. Polster & M. Polster (Eds.), *From the radical center: The heart of Gestalt therapy* (pp. 118–142). The Gestalt Institute of Cleveland Press.

Polster, M. (1992). *Eve's daughters: The forbidden heroism of women*. Jossey-Bass.

*Polster, M. (1997). Beyond one-to-one. In J. K. Zeig (Ed.), *The evolution of psychotherapy: The third conference* (pp. 233–241). Brunner/Mazel.

Polster, M. (1999). Gestalt therapy: Evolution and application. In E. Polster & M. Polster (Eds.), *From the radical center: The heart of Gestalt therapy* (pp. 96–115). The Gestalt Institute of Cleveland Press.

Polster, M., & Polster, E. (1990). Gestalt therapy. In J. K. Zeig & W. M. Munion (Eds.), *What is psychotherapy? Contemporary perspectives* (pp. 103–107). Jossey-Bass.

Rainwater, J. (1979). *You're in charge! A guide to becoming your own therapist.* Guild of Tutors Press.

*Schoenberg, P., & Feder, B. (2005). Gestalt therapy in groups. In A. L. Woldt & S. M. Toman (Eds.), *Gestalt therapy: History, theory and practice* (pp. 219–236). Sage.

Yontef, G. (1999). Awareness, dialogue and process: Preface to the 1998 German edition. *The Gestalt Journal, 22*(1), 9–20.

*Yontef, G., Jacobs, L., & Bowman, C. (2019). Gestalt therapy. In D. Wedding & R. Corsini (Eds.), *Current psychotherapies* (11th ed., pp. 309–348). Cengage Learning.

*Wheeler, G., & Axelsson, L. (2015). *Gestalt therapy.* American Psychological Association.

*Zinker, J. (1978). *Creative process in Gestalt therapy.* Vintage.

*Zinker, J. C. (2008). The developmental process of a Gestalt therapy group. In B. Feder & J. Frew (Eds.), *Beyond the hot seat revisited: Gestalt approaches to group* (pp. 85–109). Gestalt Institute Press.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 12

Cognitive Behavioral Approaches to Groups

Learning Objectives

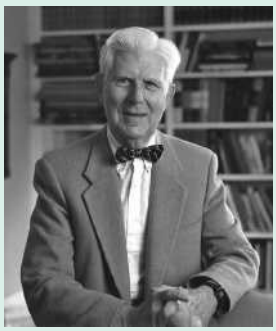
1. Identify common attributes shared by the various cognitive behavioral approaches.
2. Describe the key concepts of the approach to cognitive behavioral group therapy.
3. Understand how cognitive methods can be applied to change thinking and behavior.
4. Describe some cognitive methods used to replace negative cognitions with constructive ways of thinking.
5. Describe the role and functions of the CBT group therapist.
6. Describe the stages of a cognitive behavioral group.
7. Define and describe the following cognitive behavioral techniques used in group work: modeling, behavior rehearsal, homework, feedback, and cognitive restructuring.
8. Describe the key features of these mindfulness and acceptance approaches: dialectical behavior therapy, mindfulness-based stress reduction, mindfulness-based cognitive therapy, and acceptance and commitment therapy.
9. Identify the strengths of cognitive behavior therapy from a multicultural perspective.
10. Identify some key contributions and limitations of CBT group therapy.

Introduction

Cognitive behavior therapy (CBT) is a structured and present-oriented approach that assists clients in developing strategies to modify dysfunctional thoughts and behaviors and replace them with functional thoughts and behaviors. By the mid-1970s the term "cognitive behavior therapy" had largely replaced the term **behavior therapy**, which used a variety of techniques and procedures rooted in various theories of learning. Cognitive factors have been incorporated into the practice of behavioral group work, and behavior therapists have reformulated their techniques in cognitive and social learning terms rather than in traditional conditioning terms. Many groups are designed primarily to increase the client's degree of control and freedom in specific aspects of daily life. For example, cognitive factors are stressed in the self-control and independence of individuals in groups designed for stress management training, social skills training, and self-directed behavior change (all topics addressed later in this chapter).

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Aaron T. Beck



Courtesy Beck Institute for Cognitive Behavior Therapy, Bala Cynwyd, PA.

AARON TEMKIN BECK (b. 1921) was born in Providence, Rhode Island. His childhood, although happy, was interrupted by a life-threatening illness when he was 8 years old. As a consequence, he experienced blood injury fears, fear of suffocation, and anxiety about his health. Beck used his personal problems as a basis for understanding others and for developing his cognitive theory.

A graduate of Brown University and Yale School of Medicine, Beck initially was trained as a neurologist, but he switched to psychiatry during his residency. Beck attempted to validate Freud's theory of depression, but his research resulted in his parting company with Freud's motivational model and the explanation of depression as self-directed anger. As a result of this decision, Beck endured isolation and rejection from many in the psychiatric community for many years.

Beck developed a cognitive theory of depression that represents one of the most comprehensive conceptualizations of this disorder. He found the cognitions of depressed individuals to be characterized by errors in interpretation that he called "cognitive distortions." For Beck, negative thoughts reflect underlying dysfunctional beliefs and assumptions. When these beliefs are triggered by situational events, a depressive pattern is put in motion. Beck believes clients can assume an active role in modifying their dysfunctional thinking and thereby gain relief from a range of psychiatric conditions. His continuous research in the areas of psychopathology and the utility of cognitive therapy has earned him a place of prominence in the scientific community in the United States. Beck is the pioneering figure in cognitive therapy, one of the most influential and empirically validated approaches to psychotherapy.

He is the founder of the Beck Institute, which is a research and training center directed by one of his four children, Judith Beck. He has eight grandchildren and two great-grandchildren and has been married for more than 60 years. To his credit, Aaron Beck has focused on developing the cognitive therapy skills of thousands of clinicians throughout the world. In turn, many of them have established their own cognitive therapy centers. Beck has a vision for the cognitive therapy community that is global, inclusive, collaborative, empowering, and benevolent. He has published 21 books and more than 450 articles and book chapters and remains active in writing and research.

No single theory undergirds the practice of contemporary behavior therapy, and no single group model, strictly speaking, can be called a "behavioral group." Contemporary behavioral treatments have expanded to include cognitive strategies, mindfulness and acceptance-based approaches, and motivational

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

interviewing. Behavior therapy is best conceptualized as a general orientation to clinical practice that is based on the experimental approach to changing behavior, not just understanding it. As behavior therapy continues to expand, it increasingly overlaps with other theoretical approaches to therapy (Antony et al., 2020). *Third-generation behavior therapies* (also called *third wave* approaches) emphasize mindfulness, acceptance, the therapeutic relationship, spirituality, values, meaning and purpose in one's life, meditation, being in the present moment, and emotional expression (Hayes et al., 2004, 2011). These newer approaches are making an impact on behavior therapy, especially in treating a wide range of clinical problems (Antony et al., 2020; Spiegler, 2016).

Contemporary behavior therapy has much in common with CBT in which the mechanism of change is both cognitive (modifying thoughts to change behaviors) and behavioral (altering external factors that lead to behavior change). CBT targets problematic behaviors and maladaptive cognitions. Teaching clients skills to deal with common problems is a key component of cognitive behavior therapy (Dobson & Dobson, 2017).

The structured nature of a cognitive behavioral groups appeals to many who facilitate psychoeducational groups, and this approach is becoming increasingly popular for many client groups and work settings. Cognitive behavioral group therapy is an efficient form of treatment for a wide range of specific problems for diverse client populations (Antony, 2019; Bieling et al., 2006; White & Freeman, 2000). Cognitive behavioral practitioners use a time-limited, active, directive, transparent, collaborative, present-focused, didactic, educative, goal oriented, structured, evidence-based approach that relies on empirical validation of its concepts and techniques (Antony, 2019; Beck, 2021).

A basic assumption of the cognitive behavioral perspective is that most problematic behaviors, cognitions, and emotions have been learned and can be modified by new learning. This process is often called "therapy," but a significant component of the process is *educational*. Members of a group are involved in a teaching and learning process and are taught how to develop a new perspective on ways of learning. They are encouraged to try out more effective behaviors, cognitions, and emotions. Problems may also arise due to a skills deficit—adaptive behaviors or cognitive strategies that have not been learned—and group members can acquire coping skills by participating in this educational experience. An example would be providing social effectiveness skills to people with agoraphobia or social anxiety who need to confront their fears.

Another assumption of the cognitive behavioral orientation is that the behaviors clients express are the problem (not merely symptoms of the problem). Successful resolution of these problematic behaviors resolves the problem, and a new set of problems does not necessarily arise. The cognitive behavioral approach assumes that change can take place without emphasizing the role of insight into underlying dynamics. This orientation is in contrast to the relationship-oriented and insight-oriented approaches that assume that if clients understand the nature and causes of their symptoms they will be better able to control their lives. Behavior therapists operate on the premise that changes in behavior can occur prior to or simultaneously with understanding oneself and that behavioral changes may well lead to an increased level of self-understanding.

Group practitioners who function within a cognitive behavioral framework may develop techniques and strategies from diverse theoretical viewpoints. However, the effectiveness of these methods in meeting therapeutic goals should be scientifically demonstrated. The cognitive behavioral group leader is both a clinician and a scientist who is concerned with testing the efficacy of the techniques employed. These leaders follow the progress of group members through the ongoing collection of data before, during, and after each group session. Such an approach provides both the group leader and the members with continuous feedback about therapeutic progress.

In keeping with the developments within this field, this chapter deals more with cognitive behavior therapy than it does with *traditional behavior therapy*. Approaches such as social skills training,

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

cognitive therapy, stress management training, mindfulness, and acceptance-based practices that are discussed in this chapter all represent the cognitive behavioral tradition. The next chapter is devoted to a specific cognitive behavioral branch, rational emotive behavior therapy (REBT), which was founded by Albert Ellis.

Key Concepts

Cognitive behavior therapy has some unique characteristics that set it apart from most of the other group approaches discussed in this book. It relies on the principles and procedures of the scientific method, and these experimentally derived principles of learning are systematically applied to help people change maladaptive behaviors. The distinguishing characteristic of cognitive behavioral practitioners is their systematic adherence to specification and measurement. Concepts and procedures are stated explicitly, tested empirically, and revised continually. Assessment and treatment occur simultaneously. The specific unique characteristics of behavior therapy include (1) conducting a behavioral assessment, (2) precisely spelling out collaborative treatment goals, (3) formulating a specific treatment procedure appropriate to a particular problem, and (4) objectively evaluating the outcomes of therapy.

Behavioral Assessment

Behavioral assessment consists of a set of procedures used to obtain information that will guide the development of a tailor-made treatment plan for each client and help measure the effectiveness of treatment. According to Spiegler (2016), behavioral assessment involves five characteristics that are consistent with behavior therapy. Behavioral assessment (1) is aimed at gathering unique and detailed information about a client's problem, (2) focuses on the client's current functioning and life conditions, (3) is concerned with taking samples of a client's behaviors to provide information about how the client typically functions in various situations, (4) is narrowly focused rather than dealing with a client's total personality, and (5) is integrated with therapy.

Precise Therapeutic Goals

The most unique aspect of CBT with groups is the specific goals of change. A CBT approach to group therapy focuses more concretely on specific target areas of change than any other modality. In most CBT groups, the initial stages of group work are devoted to clients' expanding the final step of their assessment by formulating specific statements of the personal goals they want to achieve. The identification of goals determines the direction of therapeutic movement. The group leader guides the discussion of goals, but the group members are responsible for selecting their personal goals. Group members spell out concrete problematic behaviors they want to change and new skills they want to learn. It is important that goals be safe, specific, measurable, realistic, and achievable (Antony, 2019; Antony et al., 2020). Personal goals that clients might set include reducing anxiety in test-taking situations, eliminating phobias that interfere with effective functioning, coping with depression, learning communication skills, developing problem-solving strategies to cope with a variety of situations encountered in daily life, losing weight, and getting rid of addictions (to smoking, alcohol, or other drugs). At the beginning of each session, an agenda is set to prioritize members' goals and to outline how the time will be spent. This agenda is co-created by members and the group leader. A CBT group at its best is a collaborative endeavor.

The task of the group leader is to help group participants break down broad, general goals into specific, concrete, measurable goals that can be pursued in a systematic fashion. For example, if Albert says that he feels inadequate in social situations, and that he would like to change this, the leader may ask questions such as these:

- What do you mean by "inadequate"?
- What are you doing or not doing that seems to be related to your feeling of inadequacy?
- What are the conditions under which you feel inadequate?
- Can you give me some concrete examples of the situations in which you feel inadequate?
- In what specific ways would you like to change your behavior?

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The group can help Albert formulate answers to these difficult questions by giving him an opportunity to explore these questions, practice new behaviors in the group sessions, and get feedback from others in the group.

Treatment Plan

Once members have specified their goals, a treatment plan to achieve these goals is formulated. Cognitive behavioral techniques are action oriented; members are expected to take an active role with tasks, not simply engage in reflection and talk about their problems. Initially, the group leader generally develops the plans in a collaborative fashion that includes each group member. After an initial assessment, and as the members learn the necessary skills, the group participants together with the group leader brainstorm intervention strategies that might be used or specific actions that might be taken. Ultimately, the group members are the best judges of the strategy or actions they want to take. Some of the most commonly used techniques include modeling, shaping, reinforcement, behavioral rehearsal, coaching, homework, feedback, cognitive restructuring, problem solving, meditation, relaxation training, stress management, and information giving. (These are defined and discussed later in this chapter.)

Objective Evaluation

Once target behaviors have been clearly identified, treatment goals specified, and therapeutic procedures delineated, the outcomes of therapy can be objectively assessed. Because CBT groups emphasize the importance of evaluating the effectiveness of the techniques they employ, assessment of clients' progress toward their goals is ongoing. If a group meets for 10 weeks for social skills training, for example, baseline data on these skills are likely to be taken at the initial session. At every subsequent session, an assessment of behavioral changes may be made so members can determine how successfully their objectives are being met. Providing members with feedback is a vital part of cognitive behavioral group therapy.

The decision to use certain techniques is based on their demonstrated effectiveness. The range of these techniques is quite wide, and many CBT group practitioners are eclectic in their choices of treatment procedures. They are willing to draw techniques from many of the therapeutic approaches in helping members change their patterns of thinking, feeling, and acting.

Role and Functions of the Group Leader

Cognitive behavioral groups have a detailed, concrete, problem-oriented structure. They tend to utilize short-term interventions, and leaders need to be skilled in drawing on a wide variety of brief interventions aimed at efficiently and effectively solving problems and assisting members in developing new skills. Because of their short-term nature, cognitive behavioral groups are most effective when goals are limited and specific. The time limitation can provide a catalyst for members to make the best use of group time to achieve their goals.

Cognitive behavioral group leaders assume the role of teacher and encourage members to learn and practice social skills in the group that they can apply to everyday living. Group leaders are expected to assume an active, directive, and supportive role in the group and to apply their knowledge of behavioral principles and skills to the resolution of problems. Through their conduct in a group, leaders model active participation and collaboration by their involvement with members in creating an agenda, generating adaptive responses, designing homework, and teaching skills (White, 2000a). Group leaders carefully observe and assess behavior to determine the conditions that are related to certain problems and the conditions that will facilitate change. Members in cognitive behavioral groups identify specific skills that they lack or would like to enhance. They proceed through a series of training sessions that involve interventions such as modeling the skill, behavioral rehearsal and coaching, feedback, practicing skills both in the group sessions and between sessions through homework, and self-monitoring.

In discussing the social learning that occurs in therapy through modeling and imitation, Bandura (1969, 1977, 1986) suggests that most of the learning

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

that takes place through direct experience can also be acquired by observing the behavior of others. In Bandura's view, one of the fundamental processes by which clients learn new behavior is imitation of the social modeling provided by the therapist. Therefore, group leaders need to be aware of the impact their values, attitudes, and behaviors may have on group members, as well as those behaviors that members model to each other. If leaders are unaware of their power to influence and shape their clients' ways of behaving, they deny the central importance of their influence as human beings in the therapeutic process.

In addition to these broad functions, the group leader is expected to perform a number of specific educational and therapeutic functions and tasks, including the following:

- Group leaders conduct intake interviews with prospective members during which the preliminary assessment and orientation to the group takes place, and they also conduct an ongoing assessment of members' problems.
- Leaders draw on a wide array of techniques designed to achieve the members' stated goals.
- A major function of leaders is serving as a model of appropriate behaviors. Also, leaders prepare and coach members to model by role playing for one another how an individual might respond in a particular situation.
- Leaders provide reinforcement to members for their newly developing behavior and skills by making sure that even small achievements are recognized.
- Leaders teach group members that they are responsible for becoming actively involved both in the group and outside of therapy. To broaden their repertoire of adaptive behaviors, members are strongly encouraged to experiment in the group and to practice homework assignments.
- Leaders emphasize a plan for change and encourage an active stance on the part of the members, and they help members understand that verbalizations and insight are not enough to produce change.
- Leaders help members prepare for termination well ahead of the group's ending date so that members have adequate time to discuss their reactions, to consolidate what they have learned, and to practice new skills to apply at home and work.

The therapeutic relationship is the single most important variable in the now-extensive research and literature on therapy outcomes (Sperry & Sperry, 2018). A basic assumption of CBT is that a good working relationship between the leader and members is a necessary, but not sufficient, condition for change. Cognitive behavioral practitioners stress the value of establishing collaborative partnerships with members. Group practitioners can provide immediate social reinforcement for desired behaviors, model effective interpersonal skills, promote engagement in the therapy process, encourage clients to complete homework assignments, and build a sense of collaboration toward treatment goals (Antony, 2019). In short, cognitive behavioral group leaders must be skilled technicians who also possess the human qualities that lead to a climate of trust and care, which is necessary for the effective application of therapeutic techniques. From a CBT perspective, treatment cannot proceed without a strong collaborative therapeutic alliance (Beck, 2021). Dobson and Dobson (2017) state that the therapeutic enterprise involves both the client and the therapist collaborating in a joint effort to solve problems. Establishing an effective relationship and the timely use of appropriate treatment interventions are both crucial to positive outcomes.

Beck (2021) emphasizes how essential it is for a CBT practitioner to establish and maintain a quality therapeutic relationship as a prerequisite for the effective implementation of CBT methodology. Creating this quality relationship with clients is achieved by adapting treatment to the individual, using good counseling skills, forming a partnership with clients, eliciting and responding appropriately to client feedback, repairing any ruptures in the alliance, and managing countertransference reactions.

Stages of a Cognitive Behavioral Group

CBT groups often have a common theme, such as stress management, anger control, acquiring social skills, or pain management. Demonstrating change

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

within the group setting is only the first step toward the ultimate goal of transferring the change into the real world. Later group sessions are structured to make this generalization of learning more likely. How this transfer and generalization are facilitated is addressed in the section describing the final stage of a group.

The following discussion of the stages of a CBT group is based partly on the works of Antony and Roemer (2011), Ledley et al. (2018), and Reinecke and Freeman (2003). The clinical experience of Bieling et al. (2006) confirms that CBT groups evolve over time in repeatable and predictable sequences.

Initial Stage

Prospective group members generally know very little about cognitive behavioral programs, so it is important that they be given all the pertinent information about the group process before they join. Pregroup individual interviews and the first group session are devoted to exploring the prospective members' expectations and to helping them decide whether they will join the group. Those who decide to join negotiate a treatment contract, spelling out what the group leader expects from the members over the course of the group, as well as what clients can expect from the leader. Psychoeducation is a basic part of a cognitive behavioral group. Group members need to be informed about what CBT is, how it works, and what is unique about this therapeutic approach. Ledley et al. (2018) specify four key points that can be a part of the informed consent process in a group. First, group members need to understand the process of **collaborative empiricism**, the shared work of the group members and the leader in identifying thoughts and in testing them by looking for evidence to support or reject these thoughts. Second, group members should be informed that CBT is generally a time-limited form of treatment. Third, it is useful to let members know that their goals can be accomplished relatively quickly because CBT is an active, structured, directive, problem-focused, and present-focused approach to helping people deal with psychological problems. Finally, group members can be informed that cognitive behavioral practitioners rely upon techniques that have proven to be effective. Part of the informed consent process entails exploring the meaning of confidentiality and its limits in a group context.

During the initial phase of a group, the CBT group leader assumes an active role in teaching members how to get the most from the group experience. In the early stage, members learn how the group functions and how each of the sessions is structured. Key tasks at this stage deal with helping members get acquainted, orienting members, increasing the motivation of group members, providing a sense of hope that change is possible, identifying problem areas for exploration, creating a sense of safety, and establishing the beginnings of cohesion. Behavioral techniques can be especially effective during the beginning stages of therapy, not only to modify maladaptive behavior patterns but also to instill hope and provide for success in the therapy experience (Dienes et al., 2011). Building cohesion is the foundation for effective work during each stage of a group's development, and the leader has a central role in establishing trust and creating a climate of safety. Members are encouraged to express their thoughts and feelings about beginning the group experience. Generally, each session opens with group members checking in by stating significant developments during the week, reporting on their homework, and identifying topics or issues they would like to put on the agenda for the session.

A useful practice is to conclude each group meeting with a review or summary of the session. This process, which is best done by the group members, offers participants an opportunity to clarify their goals and identify insights and skills that have been explored. Homework, which ideally grows out of the group session, can be collaboratively developed before the end of a session (Dienes et al., 2011). It is a useful practice to ask members to briefly state their reactions to the session.

Working Stage: Treatment Plan and Application of Techniques

In CBT, treatment involves both the client and the therapist taking an active role. The collaborative partnership can be described as the therapist being the expert on implementing specific therapy techniques, whereas clients are the experts on their own life and experience (Cattie et al., 2020). Treatment planning involves choosing the most appropriate set of procedures from among specific strategies that have been

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

demonstrated to be effective in achieving behavioral change. Assessment and evaluation continue throughout the working stage, and group leaders must continually evaluate the degree of effectiveness of the sessions and how well treatment goals are being attained. To make this evaluation during the working stage, leaders continue to collect data on matters such as participation, member satisfaction, attendance, and completion of agreed-upon assignments between sessions. These assessments also include gathering data to determine whether problems exist within the group and the degree to which group goals are being attained. Obtaining and utilizing feedback from the members is a basic requirement for CBT groups. Throughout the course of a group, individuals monitor their behaviors and the situations in which they occur, and they can quickly determine strategies that are effective and those that are ineffective. Through this continuing evaluation process, both the members and the leader have a basis for looking at alternative and more effective strategies. Some of the strategies typically used during the working stage are discussed next.

Modeling **Modeling** refers to a process in which clients learn through observation and imitation of both the leader and the other members. Although verbal instruction is useful, by itself it is usually not sufficient to bring about behavior change. Modeling can be useful in demonstrating specific skills to be learned and in teaching and practicing life skills. Role modeling is one of the most powerful teaching tools available to the group leader. As we have seen with other approaches, an advantage of group counseling over individual counseling is that it offers members a variety of social and role models to imitate. Modeling is incorporated in a number of cognitive behavioral groups, especially in skills training groups and assertion training groups. As much as possible, models should be reinforced in the presence of the observer, and observers should be reinforced for their imitation of the behavior that is modeled.

Modeling specific behavior is carried out in role playing during the sessions and practiced in vivo. For example, Maurice has difficulty initiating contacts with men and would like to feel freer in approaching them in his college classes. He can observe another member modeling at least one way of effectively starting conversations in the group. Maurice can practice this in the sessions, using skills he has learned from the member, and he can make a contract to initiate several conversations with different men in his classes. Modeling is especially useful in social skills training groups and in teaching clients how to make more constructive self-statements and change cognitive structures.

Behavior Rehearsal Practicing a new behavior within the group that could be used in everyday situations is called **behavioral rehearsal**. The aim of behavior rehearsal is to prepare members to perform the desired behaviors outside the group, when modeling cues will not be available. Behavioral rehearsal is an integral part of modeling, and members are typically asked to participate by performing the behavior immediately after it has been modeled for them. New behaviors are practiced in a safe context that simulates the real world. The rehearsal of desirable behaviors should take place under conditions that are as similar as possible to the situations that occur in the client's environment so that maximum generalization from the group to the real world will take place.

Behavior rehearsal can be thought of as a gradual shaping process, and feedback is a useful mechanism for change during behavior rehearsals. Once members achieve successful performance in the group situation, they need to be made aware that application in real life is a basic part of behavior rehearsal. This can be accomplished by reminding members of the importance of completing homework assignments, by devoting some time in each session to deciding on appropriate out-of-group assignments, and by routinely beginning each group session by checking on the assignments of each member.

Coaching In addition to modeling and behavior rehearsal, group members sometimes require **coaching**, a process that provides the member with general principles for performing the desired behavior effectively. Coaching seems to work best when the coach sits behind the client who is rehearsing. When a member gets stuck and does not know how to proceed, another group member can whisper suggestions. After one or two coached rehearsals, the coaching is reduced in subsequent role playing.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Members rehearse independently before trying out a new role in the real world (Rose, 1998).

Homework **Therapeutic homework** (or out-of-group activities) is aimed at putting into action what members explore during a group session. Homework, or out-of-group activities, affords many opportunities for members to practice new skills in the real world. At its best, homework should integrate what goes on within the group with everyday life.

In cognitive behavioral groups, homework is an essential part of the process. One practitioner survey demonstrated that 98% of practicing psychologists use homework in their clinical practice (Kazantzis & Deane, 1999). Other research on the use of homework has shown that it has become increasingly valued as an instrument to ensure change in behavior (Kazantzis et al., 2017). The more time group members are willing to commit to working on their problems outside of the therapeutic context, the more likely it is that they will make positive gains (Ledley et al., 2018).

How can group counselors increase the chances of homework being an effective intervention? How can compliance in completing homework be fostered? Kazantzis and Lampropoulos (2002) note that compliance with homework assignments is a consistently significant predictor of treatment outcome. They write that therapists' clarity in describing the homework, providing a rationale, and enlisting client involvement are key factors that determine the effectiveness of homework.

If group leaders "assign homework" to members, positive outcomes are unlikely. Many group leaders prefer the terms *between-session activities* or *out-of-group activities* because negative connotations are often associated with homework. When group members participate in designing their own assignments, they retain a cooperative spirit and keep the motivation needed to carry out the practice activities between group sessions. This is particularly important in CBT groups because collaboration is a key element of the group experience. Guiding members in designing between-session assignments they are willing to do requires skill on the leader's part. Following up on the homework is essential, for all group members can benefit from the homework experiences of each other. Difficulty in completing out-of-group tasks needs to be addressed appropriately (Dattilio, 2002, 2003; Kazantzis et al., 2017). One way of doing this is by asking members what makes it difficult to complete their homework and to explore the degree to which they are committed to make certain changes. Leaders might also inquire about both obstacles to completing homework and ways that members may be engaging in self-sabotage.

Feedback After members practice a new behavior in a group session or report on their homework assignments in daily life, fellow group members or the group leader can provide verbal reactions to these performances. Feedback typically has two aspects: praise and encouragement for the behavior and specific suggestions for correcting or modifying errors. Feedback is a useful part of learning new behaviors, especially if it is constructive, specific, and positive.

Reinforcement **Reinforcement** refers to a specified event that strengthens the tendency for a response to be repeated. In behavioral groups, social reinforcement is a major intervention provided by the group leader and by other members. In addition to the reinforcement provided by the group leader, other members reinforce one another through praise, approval, support, and attention. It is a good idea to begin each session with members reporting their successes rather than their failures. This sets a positive tone in the group, provides reinforcement to those who did well in everyday life, and reminds the group that change is possible. Reports of success, no matter how modest, are especially important when members are improving but are still falling short of their expectations and when their changing behavior is being met with disapproval in their everyday environments. In these cases, the reinforcement and support of the group are critical if members are to maintain their gains.

Social reinforcement is a powerful method of shaping desired behaviors. In addition, self-reinforcement is a key method of helping members change. Participants are taught how to reinforce themselves to increase their self-control and become less dependent on others.

Cognitive Restructuring An individual's cognitive processes have implications for behavior change. Indeed, group members often reveal

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

self-defeating thoughts and negative self-talk when they find themselves in stressful situations. **Cognitive restructuring** is the process of identifying and evaluating one's cognitions, understanding the negative behavioral impact of certain thoughts, and learning to replace these cognitions with more realistic, appropriate, and adaptive thoughts. Members are expected to identify self-defeating cognitions and to monitor their self-talk. Cognitive restructuring is based on the theory that our thoughts are causally linked to our behavior and emotions; the route to changing behavior and emotion is to change negative or self-defeating cognitions (Wilson et al., 2012). Cormier et al. (2017) describe the basic components of the cognitive restructuring process as follows:

- Clients are given an orientation to the basic concepts of cognitive restructuring, including a rationale for the procedure.
- Clients learn to identify thoughts pertaining to problem situations.
- Coping thoughts are introduced and practiced.
- There is a shift from self-defeating to coping thoughts.
- Clients learn and practice reinforcing self-statements.
- Out-of-group activities are collaboratively designed, carried out by the group member, and then assessed in a follow-up discussion.

Early during the course of a group, group exercises may be taught that explain how to differentiate between self-defeating and self-enhancing statements. Typically, members provide one another with feedback and various models of a cognitive analysis. After clients decide on a set of realistic cognitive statements, cognitive modeling is used, in which the members imagine themselves in stressful situations and substitute self-enhancing statements for self-defeating remarks. In cognitive rehearsal, members imitate the model and get feedback from others in the group. After several trials in the group, members practice a new set of statements at home before they try out a new style in the real world. In the final step of cognitive restructuring, out-of-group activities are assigned at the end of each session and then monitored at the beginning of the following session. As members make progress, assignments can be developed at successive levels of difficulty.

Problem Solving **Problem-solving therapy** is a cognitive behavioral strategy that teaches individuals or groups to systematically work through steps in analyzing a problem: identifying and evaluating new approaches to the problem, and developing strategies for implementing these approaches (Cormier et al., 2017; Spiegler, 2016). The main goal is to identify the most effective solution to a problem and to provide systematic training in cognitive and behavioral skills so the client can generate more adaptive ways of coping with stressful problems in living and also cope effectively with future problems. Spiegler (2016) describes the seven stages in the problem-solving process:

1. *Adopt a problem-solving orientation.* Group members can be helped in assessing, defining, and understanding the problem. They need to understand that it is essential to identify problems when they occur so action can be taken. Individuals must also be convinced that skills can be acquired to cope with daily problems. Finally, it is important to carefully assess alternative courses of action when engaged in problem solving.
2. *Define the problem.* Clients are helped to understand why certain problem situations are likely to occur and are given the expectation that they can learn ways to cope.
3. *Set goals.* Client goals can focus on the problem situation, reactions to the problem situation, or both. The question clients explore is, "What must happen so that I no longer have the problem?"
4. *Generate alternative solutions.* The objective is to think of as many solutions as possible to maximize the chances of finding an adequate solution to a problem. Brainstorming can be used to generate alternative goals and a range of possible solutions.
5. *Choose the best solution.* Based on the alternatives generated in the previous stage, clients examine the potential consequences of each course of action and make their choice and develop solution plans.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

6. *Implement the solution.* This may be the most important stage because the best solutions will be effective in dealing with a problem situation only if these solutions are implemented properly.
7. *Evaluate the effectiveness of the course of action.* This verification phase consists of having clients engage in self-monitoring and evaluating the consequences of their actions in everyday life situations.

In group therapy problem-solving skills are typically introduced didactically, and the entire group may participate in working through some problems that group members are experiencing (Bieling et al., 2006). Procedures such as modeling, coaching, and reinforcement are used during problem-solving training. Throughout the therapy process, clients are taught self-control techniques, and they are encouraged to reinforce their own successful performance. Furthermore, once clients have had an opportunity to observe the therapist (or other models) demonstrate effective problem-solving procedures, they are expected to assume a more active role. Members are encouraged to practice the skills they are learning as they encounter problem situations during the week.

Problem-solving therapy is useful in teaching individuals how to solve immediate problems and can provide them with skills for solving future problems. This behavioral approach is broadly applicable in treating a wide range of problems (Spiegler, 2016). Problem-solving therapy has been successfully applied to treating depression, generalized anxiety disorder, social anxiety disorder, and other problems (for a review, see Nezu & Nezu, 2012).

Final Stage

During the final stage of a cognitive behavioral group, the leader is primarily concerned with having members transfer the changes they have exhibited in the group to their everyday environment. Practice sessions involving simulations of the real world are used to promote this transfer. Members rehearse what they want to say to significant people in their life and practice new behaviors. Feedback from others in the group, along with coaching, can be most useful at the final stage. Sessions are systematically designed so that new behaviors are gradually carried into daily life. Although preparation for generalization and maintenance of change is given a special focus in the final stage, it is a characteristic of all phases of the group.

Consolidation of learning and developing strategies for transferring what was learned in the group to daily life are key goals of the final stage. The following tasks are characteristic of the final phase of a group:

- Giving and receiving feedback
- Providing many opportunities to practice new and more effective behaviors
- Carrying learning further by developing a specific plan of action to continue applying changes to situations outside of the group
- Preparing members for dealing with possible setbacks
- Assisting members in reviewing the group experience and the meaning it holds for them

Self-responsibility is emphasized throughout the life of the group, but it is especially critical in planning for termination. As the group progresses, the members should be given increased responsibility for implementing an action plan that they have collaboratively developed with the group leader. One of the main goals of successful therapy is to teach clients the skills they will need in becoming their own therapists (Kazantzis et al., 2017; Ledley et al., 2018). The leader's role shifts from a direct therapist to a consultant in the final stage. Members are typically encouraged to apply their newly learned skills to new situations with others outside of their group. In addition, they are taught self-help cognitive skills such as self-reinforcement and problem solving as a way of preparing them for situations they have not encountered in the group. It is critical for members to know what to do if problematic symptoms reemerge. The move toward member independence from the group is essential if clients are to gain confidence in their ability to cope effectively with new problems. Ledley et al. (2018) state that a main therapeutic goal is helping members acquire new skills that will enable them to deal with residual difficulties after therapy as well as new problems that may arise in the future. As the time of termination approaches, many of the initial assessment instruments are repeated to evaluate the effectiveness of the group program.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Termination and follow-up are issues of special concern to CBT group practitioners. Short- and long-term follow-up interviews are scheduled, at which time data are collected to determine the outcomes of a group. Follow-up interviews can serve as "booster sessions" that help members maintain the changed behaviors and continue to engage in self-directed change. Follow-up group sessions provide opportunities for members to review what they have learned, to update the group on how they are doing, and to encourage members to be accountable for their changes or lack of them. Follow-up group sessions assist members in keeping up with their commitments and plans. Knowing that they will be accountable often motivates members to maintain and use their newly acquired skills.

An important advantage of scheduling follow-up sessions is that doing so provides a way to predict and plan for the setbacks members may encounter after terminating a group. *Relapse prevention* helps members think about ways to deal with the potential problems they may face when they no longer have the support of a group. This is an essential part of terminating a CBT therapy group. It is easy for members to revert to ingrained patterns of old learning, especially when they are faced with a new crisis or when stress escalates. It is important to prepare members for setbacks after termination. It is useful to ask members what automatic thoughts they may have if they experience setbacks (Beck, 2021). Group members can be encouraged to create a written relapse prevention plan that includes a summary of skills they have learned in therapy, their goals after the group ends, recommendations for follow-up work, and ways to obtain help in the future if they need it (Dobson & Dobson, 2017).

Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures

There is a growing trend toward "giving psychology away"—that is, a tendency to teach people how to apply interpersonal skills to their everyday life. This trend implies that practitioners will share their knowledge with consumers so people can lead increasingly self-directed lives and not be dependent on the experts for the effective management of the problems they encounter.

Cognitive behavioral approaches to groups offer great promise for those who want to learn the skills necessary for self-management. Areas in which one can learn to control behavior and bring about self-directed change are controlling excessive eating, drinking, and smoking and learning self-discipline at work or in school. Some people cannot accomplish certain goals in their work because their efforts are hindered by a lack of organization; they do not know where to begin with a project, how to sustain their efforts, or how to avoid the crippling discouragement they experience when they fail to attain their goals. It is in these and similar areas that behavioral groups for self-directed change can provide the guidelines and planning necessary to bring about change.

This section deals with some common behavioral and cognitive techniques that are applicable to group work. For the purpose of this discussion, the techniques have been grouped under four general approaches that can be applied to the practice of cognitive behavioral groups: (1) social skills training groups, (2) cognitive therapy groups, (3) stress management groups, and (4) mindfulness and acceptance-based cognitive behavior therapy.

Social Skills Training Groups

Good social skills enable people to communicate with others in a way that is both appropriate and effective. **Social skills training (SST)** is a broad category that teaches members how to interact effectively with others in a variety of social situations. SST is a highly structured educational approach in which group leaders serve as teachers (Strong Kinnaman & Bellack, 2012). Social skills training in groups involves the application of many of the behavioral techniques discussed earlier in this chapter, a few of which are psychoeducation, modeling, behavioral rehearsal, role playing, reinforcement, shaping, feedback, and generalization of learning to assist individuals in improving their abilities to communicate effectively and to develop better ways of interacting socially (Antony, 2019; Antony et al., 2020; Strong Kinnaman & Bellack, 2012). A large number of psychological and interpersonal problems can be addressed using this approach.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Individuals who experience psychosocial problems that are partly caused by interpersonal difficulties are good candidates for social skills training. The goal of SST is to enhance an individual's capacity to function in social situations. SST involves these phases: assessment, direct instruction, modeling, role playing, homework assignments, and follow-up (Twohig & Dehlin, 2012). Group members identify particular social skills deficits or communication-related problems they would like to change, then they target these social skills in the group sessions. This process often includes learning basic skills essential to effective communication, becoming more assertive, and performing more effectively in a job interview. Group members practice new skills through role playing, and they are given specific corrective feedback focused on what they did well in their role play. The group offers a natural place to practice social skills that can then be carried out in real-life social interactions. For a more extensive discussion of social skills training and reviews of the research, see Strong Kinnaman and Bellack (2012).

Social Effectiveness Training One model of social skills training is **social effectiveness training (SET)**, which is a multifaceted treatment program designed to reduce social anxiety, improve interpersonal skills, and increase the range of enjoyable social activities (Turner et al., 1994). The primary components of this program are exposure to reduce social anxiety and social skills training to improve general social skills and social deficits. This treatment is based on over a decade of both clinical experience and empirical literature. The social skills training component is conducted in weekly small group sessions over a 12-week period. This group experience focuses on training in three areas: (1) social environment awareness, (2) interpersonal skill enhancement, and (3) presentation skill enhancement. In these three areas, participants are taught the nuances of interpersonal interactions and conversations, including the verbal and nonverbal *dos* and *don'ts* of successful social encounters as well as the presentation of communication skills in public speaking. Didactic instruction, modeling, behavior rehearsal, corrective feedback, and positive reinforcement are utilized in the group process to achieve these outcomes.

Turner et al. (1994) emphasize that the SET program is primarily for use by mental health professionals who are either under supervision or who are trained in general clinical skills, who have a knowledge of social anxiety and phobia, and who are familiar with behavioral intervention strategies. The results of a 3-year follow-up study of social effectiveness training for children and adolescents diagnosed with social anxiety disorder conducted by Beidel et al. (2005) "indicated that the majority of posttreatment gains were maintained at 3-year follow-up, and 72% of treated children continued to be free of social phobia diagnosis 3 years later" (p. 721). These researchers suggest that these findings support the long-term efficacy of social effectiveness training for children and adolescents struggling with social anxiety disorder.

Cognitive Therapy Groups

Cognitive behavioral therapy utilizes a group dynamics format, in conjunction with standard cognitive behavioral techniques, to change maladaptive and dysfunctional beliefs, interpretations, behaviors, and attitudes. Some of the most common interventions include examining automatic thoughts, disputing beliefs, monitoring moods, developing an arousal hierarchy, monitoring activities, problem solving, Socratic questioning, relaxation methods, risk assessment, and relapse prevention (Beck, 2021; Petrocelli, 2002; White, 2000b). CBT group therapy models have demonstrated effectiveness in treating a wide range of problems, some of which are depression, social anxiety, OCD, insomnia, medication adherence, and chronic pain (Cattie et al., 2020). Two of the best-known models of cognitive behavioral group therapy are based on the theories of Albert Ellis's rational emotive behavior therapy (the subject of Chapter 13) and Aaron Beck's cognitive therapy, which is described next.

Aaron Beck (1976, 1997), a practicing psychoanalytic therapist for many years, grew interested in his clients' **automatic thoughts**—the personalized notions that are triggered by particular stimuli that lead to emotional responses. Beck asked his clients to observe negative automatic thoughts (or faulty beliefs) that persisted even though they were contrary to objective evidence, and from this he developed a comprehensive theory on depression.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Beck (1976) and J. Beck (2021) contend that people with emotional difficulties tend to commit characteristic "logical errors" that tilt objective reality in the direction of self-deprecation. **Cognitive therapy** perceives psychological problems as stemming from commonplace processes such as faulty thinking, making incorrect inferences on the basis of inadequate or incorrect information, and failing to distinguish between fantasy and reality.

The cognitive model of group therapy is based on a theory that emphasizes the interaction of thoughts, feelings, and behaviors; these components are interrelated and multidirectional (White, 2000b). The most direct way to change dysfunctional emotions and behaviors is to modify inaccurate and dysfunctional thinking. To change how we feel about events, we need to change the way we think about them (Neenan & Dryden, 2004).

In this model of group therapy, a sound therapeutic relationship that emphasizes collaboration and active participation is the foundation for effective practice. The cognitive therapist teaches group members how to identify these distorted and dysfunctional cognitions through a process of evaluation. The group leader assists members in forming hypotheses and testing their assumptions, and through a collaborative effort, group members learn to discriminate between their own thoughts and events that occur in reality. They learn the influence that cognition has on their feelings and behaviors and even on environmental events, particularly the distortions that they have acquired. In a group counseling context, members are taught to recognize, observe, and monitor their own thoughts and assumptions, especially their negative automatic thoughts.

Group members often engage in catastrophic thinking by choosing to dwell on the most extreme negative scenarios in many situations. Group leaders can assist members in detecting those times when they get stuck imagining the worst possible outcome of a situation by asking these questions: "What is the worst thing that could occur?" and "If this happens, what would make this such a negative outcome?"

Group members can learn to engage in more realistic thinking, especially if they consistently notice times when they tend to get caught up in catastrophic thinking. Guiding group members to look for evidence to support or refute some of their core beliefs and faulty thinking can also be useful. **Core beliefs** are unquestioned, rigid assumptions and beliefs about oneself, the world, and others. As individuals identify a number of self-defeating beliefs, they can begin to monitor the frequency with which these beliefs intrude in situations in everyday life. This simple question can be frequently asked, "Where is the evidence for _____?" If this question is raised often enough, members are likely to make it a practice to ask themselves this question, especially as they become more adept at spotting dysfunctional thoughts and paying attention to their cognitive patterns. Once members identify beliefs that are not accurate, they are encouraged to try out a different set of beliefs to determine whether the new beliefs are more accurate and functional (Beck & Weishaar, 2019).

After group members have gained insight into how their unrealistically negative thoughts are affecting them, they are trained to test these automatic thoughts against reality by examining and weighing the evidence for and against them. This process involves actively participating in evaluating their beliefs. One method that promotes new learning engages members in a **Socratic dialogue**, in which the therapist poses a series of purposeful questions that (1) defines the problem; (2) assists members in identifying their thoughts, images, and assumptions; (3) examines the meaning of events for clients; and (4) assesses the consequences of members retaining these maladaptive thoughts and behaviors (Beck & Weishaar, 2019).

Members in a cognitive therapy group are expected to form hypotheses about their behavior and eventually learn to employ specific problem-solving and coping skills. Through a process of guided discovery, they acquire insight about the connection between their thinking and the ways they feel and act. In **guided discovery**, the group therapist helps to illuminate the meaning of thoughts and problems in logic and also helps members acquire new information and different ways of thinking, acting, and feeling (Bieling et al., 2006). Group members, not the group leader, then determine the usefulness of their beliefs.

In a cognitive therapy group, the emphasis is on the present and the approach is time limited. Group sessions are focused on current problems, regardless

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

of diagnosis. The past may be brought into group work under certain circumstances: when the member expresses a strong desire to talk about a past situation; when work on current problems results in little or no cognitive, behavioral, and emotional change; and when the therapist considers it essential to understand how and when certain dysfunctional beliefs originated and how these ideas have a current impact on the group member. In addressing the role of the past in CBT, Ledley et al. (2018) state that clinicians using this approach have an interest in the connection between past experiences and current beliefs and behaviors. The role of the past is considered throughout treatment, especially in understanding more about a client's core beliefs. However, merely understanding the origin of a problem is not enough; clients must act on this knowledge to change dysfunctional beliefs and behaviors that are maintaining present problems. With this present-centered focus, cognitive group therapy tends to be both brief and task oriented. The therapeutic goals that guide group interventions include providing symptom relief, assisting members in resolving their most pressing problems, and teaching them relapse prevention strategies.

Stress Management Training in Groups

Stress is a basic part of contemporary life. Although it is not realistic to assume that we can eliminate stress, it is realistic for us to learn how to control how we view and cope with stressful events. Stress management training has potentially useful applications for a wide variety of problems and client populations, both for remediation of stress disorders and for prevention. Stress management training is especially useful in dealing with anger, anxiety, phobias, and medical problems; the training is appropriate for victim populations and for professional groups. Stress management groups are helping military personnel and their families cope with the stresses of war zone deployments today.

The goal of **stress management training** is to educate clients about the nature of stress and its effects and to teach them a variety of intrapersonal and interpersonal skills to deal with stress constructively (Meichenbaum, 1985). A basic assumption of stress management programs is that we are not simply victims of stress; rather, what we do and what we *think* actively contribute to how we experience stress. In other words, how we appraise events in life determines whether stress will affect us positively or negatively.

Kaplan and Laygo (2003) describe how stress management training works. The training begins with a brief assessment of the client's lifestyle, including identifying aspects that may cause stress. Participants in the program are then presented with a psychoeducational overview of stress from a psychosocial perspective and learn to use behaviors and thoughts for coping with a variety of stressful situations. Clients make a concrete behavioral plan for implementing lifestyle changes that will lead to a better quality of life.

Meichenbaum's Stress Inoculation Training Meichenbaum (1985, 1986, 1993, 1994, 2008) is concerned with more than merely teaching people specific coping skills. His program is designed to prepare clients for interventions and motivate them to change, and it deals with issues such as resistance and relapse. **Stress inoculation training (SIT)** consists of a combination of elements of information giving, Socratic discussion, cognitive restructuring, problem solving, relaxation training, behavioral and imagined rehearsals, self-monitoring, self-instruction, self-reinforcement, and environmental change. Meichenbaum (2008) contends that SIT can be used for both preventive and treatment purposes with a broad range of people who experience stress responses. This approach is designed to teach coping skills that can be applied to both present problems and future stressors when they are encountered. If clients do not have an opportunity to apply coping skills to situations other than their present problems, their coping skills may not generalize to new situations.

Meichenbaum (1985, 1993, 2008) has designed a three-stage model for SIT: (1) conceptual-educational; (2) skills acquisition, consolidation, and rehearsal; and (3) application and follow-through. During the initial stage of SIT (conceptual-educational), the primary focus is on creating a working relationship with clients by educating them to gain a better understanding of the nature of stress and to reconceptualize it in social interaction terms. During this phase,

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

clients are educated about the transactional nature of stress and coping. They learn about the role that cognitions and emotions play in creating and maintaining stress. They also learn how their reactions to stress emanate from their perception of events rather than from the events themselves. In a collaborative fashion, clients identify the determinants of their presenting problems. After an assessment process in which they take an active role, they determine specific goals that will guide treatment. Self-monitoring, which begins at this time, continues throughout the training. Clients typically keep an open-ended diary in which they systematically record their thoughts, feelings, and behaviors. Training includes teaching clients to become aware of their own role in creating their stress and to identify their coping strengths and resources. This provides clients with a rationale for treatment and a basis for learning ways to reduce the negative effects of stress.

During the second phase of SIT (skills acquisition, consolidation, and rehearsal), clients learn and rehearse coping strategies. These specific techniques include cognitive restructuring; problem solving; social skills training; time management; self-instructional training; guided self-dialogue; relaxation training; and lifestyle changes such as reevaluating priorities, developing support systems, and taking direct action to alter stressful situations. As a part of this phase of SIT, clients are introduced to a variety of methods of relaxation and are taught to use these skills to decrease arousal due to stress. Through teaching, demonstration, and guided practice, they learn the skills of progressive relaxation. Clients rehearse skills by means of imagery and behavioral practice, which they are expected to practice regularly. These activities may include meditation, yoga, tensing and relaxing muscle groups, and breath-control techniques. They can also include walking, jogging, gardening, knitting, or other physical activities. Meichenbaum stresses that it is essential that both clients and trainers understand that relaxation is as much a state of mind as a physical state.

Another method used to teach coping skills is a graded task assignment—a shaping strategy in which clients are encouraged to perform small sequential steps leading to a goal. In treating stress-related problems, SIT uses three core techniques: (1) eliciting the client's thoughts, feelings, and interpretations of events; (2) gathering evidence with the client to either support or disprove these interpretations; and (3) designing homework assignments to test the validity of the interpretations and to gather more data for discussion.

In cognitive restructuring, clients learn to identify maladaptive thoughts and learn how to dispute and restructure them so they become more adaptive. During this process, clients become aware of the role that their cognitions and emotions play in creating and maintaining stress. The cognitive restructuring approach used in SIT is based on Beck's (1976) cognitive therapy, which was described earlier. Therapists systematically use strategies such as modeling and behavior rehearsal in teaching constructive cognitive and coping skills. Through cognitive therapy techniques, clients learn to detect negative and stress-engendering thoughts and to challenge their "automatic thoughts," which compound their stress. Group members are also given self-instructional training, which teaches them to instruct themselves, often silently, in coping with problematic situations. Clients learn and practice a new set of cognitive coping strategies that they can apply when they encounter stressors. If our thinking can make us worse, it is assumed that we can adopt a different set of self-statements to reduce, avoid, or constructively use stress.

In the third phase of SIT (application and follow-through), the focus is on carefully arranging for transfer and maintenance of change from the therapeutic situation to daily life. The assumption is that coping skills that are practiced in the clinic will not automatically generalize to everyday life situations. To consolidate the lessons learned in the training sessions, group members participate in a variety of activities, including imagery and behavior rehearsal, role playing, modeling, and graduated in vivo practice. Clients are asked to write down the homework assignments, or personal experiments, that they are willing to complete. The outcomes of these assignments are carefully checked at subsequent meetings; if clients do not follow through with them, the trainer and the members collaboratively consider the reasons for these failures.

Group participants also receive training in **relapse prevention**, learning procedures for dealing with the inevitable setbacks they are likely to experience as they apply their learning to daily life. Relapse

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

prevention training assists members in maintaining the gains they made in the group and reduce relapsing during times of increased stress and high-risk situations (Sperry & Sperry, 2018).

Cormier et al. (2017) conclude that stress inoculation training is one of the more versatile cognitive behavioral strategies. They add: "Teaching clients both direct-action and cognitive coping skills that can be used in current and potential problematic situations provides skills that are under the clients' control and are applicable to future as well as current situations" (p. 450).

Mindfulness and Acceptance Approaches in Cognitive Behavior Therapy

During the 1990s, a third-generation (or the "third-wave") of behavior therapy approaches was developed to address considerations that were at one time excluded from the realm of behavior therapy. Topics such as mindfulness, acceptance, spirituality, values, commitment to a life worth living, meditation, and living in the moment were assessed in third-wave approaches that emphasized the therapeutic relationship, identification of client strengths and resources, attention to diversity and culture, and empowerment of clients (Sperry & Sperry, 2018). A host of interventions were introduced that continue to gain ground and popularity when treating a number of disorders (Bieling et al., 2006; Masuda & Rizvi, 2020). They have their roots in group practice and represent an expansion of the cognitive behavioral tradition.

Mindfulness is a process that involves becoming increasingly observant and aware of external and internal stimuli in the present moment and adopting an open attitude toward accepting *what is* rather than judging the current situation (Kabat-Zinn, 1994, 2003; Segal et al., 2013). Mindfulness is "the awareness that emerges through having attention on purpose, in the present moment, and nonjudgmentally, to the unfolding of experience moment by moment" (Kabat-Zinn, 2003, p. 145). When distractions occur, these are noticed and attention is then drawn back to one's present experience (Germer, 2013). Many of us are focused on something other than what is happening in the moment. We worry about the future, ruminate about the past, and are concerned with what is coming next rather than noticing what is right in front of us (Roemer & Orsillo, 2020).

Acceptance involves receiving one's present experience without judgment or preference, but with curiosity and kindness, and striving for full awareness of the present moment (Germer, 2013). The concept of acceptance does not imply resigning oneself to life's problems. Instead, acceptance is best viewed as a client's ability to notice, accept, and even embrace private events (Antony, 2019).

An increasing literature on mindfulness-based interventions and acceptance-based cognitive behavioral treatments as potentially powerful clinical methods has resulted in an expansion of the cognitive behavioral tradition (Hayes et al., 2004). The four major approaches are: (1) *dialectical behavior therapy* (Linehan, 1993a, 1993b; Chapman & Dixon-Gordon, 2020), which has become a well-researched treatment for borderline personality disorder; (2) *mindfulness-based stress reduction* (Kabat-Zinn, 1990), which involves an 8- to 10-week group program applying mindfulness techniques to coping with stress and promoting physical and psychological health; (3) *mindfulness-based cognitive therapy* (Segal et al., 2013), which is aimed primarily at treating depression; and (4) *acceptance and commitment therapy* (Hayes et al., 2005, 2011; Roemer & Orsillo, 2020), which is based on encouraging clients to accept, rather than to attempt to control or change, unpleasant sensations. All four of these approaches are based on empirical data, which is a hallmark of the behavioral tradition.

Therapists are increasingly recognizing that in many cases optimal treatment may require more than one behavioral approach, and the growing trend toward psychotherapeutic integration incorporates treatment strategies from two or more orientations. In keeping with this trend, CBT practitioners are now incorporating additional methods in the treatment plans they devise. Likewise, non-CBT practitioners are borrowing from and using many of the methods from mindfulness and acceptance approaches (Spiegler, 2016). For practitioners interested in teaching mindfulness skills, a useful book is *Teaching Clients to Use Mindfulness Skills: A Practical Guide* (Dunkley & Stanton, 2014).

Dialectical Behavior Therapy (DBT) This approach is a comprehensive, cognitive behavior therapy originally developed to help suicidal clients

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

create lives that are worth living. **Dialectical behavior therapy (DBT)** integrates cognitive behavioral concepts with the mindfulness training of "Eastern psychological and spiritual practices (primarily Zen practice)" (Linehan, 1993b, p. 6) to help clients regulate emotions and behavior associated with depression. Linehan (1993a, 1993b) formulated DBT for clients whose symptoms include behaviors resulting in nonfatal self-harm that are typical of an individual diagnosed as having a borderline personality disorder, but these symptoms may also be encountered with other clients. DBT emphasizes the importance of the psychotherapeutic relationship, validation of the client, and the etiologic importance of the client having experienced an "invalidating environment" as a child. The learning emphasis in DBT is an empirically validated treatment approach. Considerable research supports the efficacy of using DBT to help individuals diagnosed with borderline personality disorder (Wilson et al., 2012), and Linehan tailored elements of the theory and treatment to the complex challenges of individuals with a borderline personality disorder (Chapman & Dixon-Gordon, 2020). DBT is the most widely used and studied intervention for borderline personality disorder (Sperry & Sperry, 2018), and the basic concepts and strategies of DBT are now being applied to a wide range of problems, including anxiety disorders, depression, eating disorders, substance-use disorders, and trauma-based problems (Antony, 2019). One of the reasons for the current popularity of DBT is its ever-growing empirical base, and Chapman and Dixon-Gordon (2020) note that "the comprehensiveness, flexibility, and commonsense, practical nature of DBT, along with its incorporation of evidence-based CBT principles, has made this treatment appealing to a range of programs serving an even broader range of clients" (p.134).

DBT involves teaching clients both mindfulness and acceptance. The practice of **acceptance** requires being in the present moment, seeing reality as it is without distortions, without judgment, without evaluation, and without trying to hang on to an experience or to get rid of it. It involves entering fully into activities of the present moment without separating oneself from ongoing events and interactions.

In DBT clients are taught skills for accepting life as it is. Mindfulness skills are taught over two or three group sessions and then reviewed later. Some of these skills include focusing on breathing, staying with a present activity, identifying and describing feelings, attending to emotions without trying to avoid them when they are painful, letting thoughts flow, assuming a nonjudgmental stance, focusing on one thing at a time, and accepting all feelings.

DBT does not offer a cure for people whose lives are unbearable, rather DBT is a path to building a life worth living. This approach helps client gain acceptance of their problems, and also offers practical ways of solving their problems (Linehan, 2020).

DBT is not a quick fix approach for it generally involves a minimum of one year of treatment. The group work must be accompanied by individual therapy. In some settings, Linehan (1993b) allows for the "integration of DBT skills training with individual psychodynamic therapy" (p. 14). Clearly, to practice DBT requires intensive training and supervision. For the life and work of Marsha Linehan, see *Building a Life Worth Living* (Linehan, 2020). For a comprehensive, clear, and personal account of DBT, see *DBT Principles in Action: Acceptance, Change, and Dialectics* (Swenson, 2016).

Mindfulness-based Stress Reduction (MBSR) Jon Kabat-Zinn, at the University of Massachusetts, developed **mindfulness-based stress reduction (MBSR)** in 1979 as a training program to relieve medical patients of stress, pain, illness, and other forms of suffering. The 8-week structured group program involves training people in mindfulness meditation. MBSR was originally designed to help people increase their responsibility for their own well-being and to actively develop inner resources for treating their physical health concerns (Kabat-Zinn, 2003). The skills taught in the MBSR program, such as sitting meditation and mindful yoga, are aimed at cultivating mindfulness. The program includes a body scan meditation that helps clients to observe all the sensations in their body. This attitude of mindfulness is encouraged in every aspect of daily life including standing, walking, and eating. Those who are involved in the program are encouraged to practice formal mindfulness meditation for 45 minutes daily. The MBSR program is designed to teach participants to relate to external and internal sources of stress in constructive ways and to live more fully in the present. Clients strive to cultivate a nonjudgmental attitude through mindfulness practice. MBSR does not actively teach cognitive modification techniques, nor does it label certain cognitions as "dysfunctional."

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Acquiring a mindful way of being develops over time as clients deepen their focus through disciplined practice. It is not a simple behavioral technique but is more like an art form. Kabat-Zinn (2003) points out that mindfulness is not about getting anywhere or fixing anything: "It is an invitation to allow oneself to be where one already is and to know the inner and outer landscape of the direct experience in each moment" (p. 148).

It is likely that MBSR will evolve to address a range of psychological states, such as anxiety, stress, and depression. Numerous research reviews and meta-analyses indicate that mindfulness, acceptance, and compassion-based treatments are effective in promoting physical and psychological health and in encouraging healthy lifestyle changes (Germer, 2013).

Mindfulness-based Cognitive Therapy (MBCT) This 8-week group treatment program, adapted from Kabat-Zinn's (1990, 2003) MBSR program, was developed to treat depression (Segal et al., 2013). **Mindfulness-based cognitive therapy (MBCT)** integrates aspects of cognitive therapy with mindfulness-based stress reduction procedures. In mindfulness exercises, clients are asked to "just notice" their thoughts and emotions as they arise. As clients learn mindfulness meditation, they adopt an open and nonjudgmental posture regarding negative thinking, emotions, and bodily states (Wilson et al., 2012). MBCT teaches clients to pay attention to thoughts without engaging in them.

Segal et al. (2013) describe kindness and self-compassion as essential components of MBCT. Mindfulness is a way of developing **self-compassion**, which is a form of self-care. When we acknowledge our shortcomings without critical judgment, we can begin to treat ourselves with kindness. Mindfulness practices focus on moment-to-moment experiencing and assists clients in developing an attitude of open awareness and acceptance of what is rather than being self-critical. We can intentionally activate goodwill toward ourselves and others while experiencing emotions such as anger, anxiety, and depression.

Clients come to realize that their thoughts are not facts and that they can allow thoughts to come and go, rather than attempting to dispute them out of existence as might be done in traditional CBT. MBCT aims at changing clients' awareness of and relation to their negative thoughts (Germer, 2013). Clients are encouraged to practice mindfulness not just in the group but to bring this practice into their daily life. Initial research on the efficacy of MBCT in treating depression is promising, yet more research needs to be done. The brevity and group format of MBCT make this approach an efficient and cost-effective treatment (Spiegler, 2016).

Acceptance and Commitment Therapy (ACT) Another mindfulness-based approach is **acceptance and commitment therapy (ACT)**, which involves fully accepting present experience and mindfully letting go of obstacles (Hayes et al., 2011). In this approach, "acceptance is not merely tolerance—rather it is the active nonjudgmental embracing of experience in the here and now" (Hayes et al., 2004, p. 32). In the practice of ACT, there is a lack of evaluation and a conscious stance of openness and acceptance toward psychological events. **Acceptance** is not a specific technique; rather, it is a stance from which to conduct therapy and from which a client can conduct life. Although certain aspects of acceptance have existed in CBT for many years, there is an increased emphasis on acceptance within the CBT family of therapies (Wilson et al., 2012). ACT is designed to help clients learn that suppressing negative or unwanted thoughts or painful feelings does not work. The avoidance of negative emotions leads to greater suffering. **Commitment** refers to making decisions about what clients most value and what they are willing to do to live a meaningful life. Values are a basic part of the therapeutic process, and ACT practitioners might ask clients, "What do you want your life to stand for?" ACT involves teaching clients to become aware of what is important to them and then to begin to shift their behavior toward a way of living that is more consistent with their values (Antony, 2019). A goal of ACT is to increase clients' psychological flexibility. This approach uses concrete homework and behavioral exercises to help clients live by their values.

ACT practitioners can choose from a variety of skills that are individualized for each client. Some acceptance exercises include contemplating the Serenity Prayer, journaling about painful events, saying one's thoughts very slowly, writing difficult thoughts on a card and carrying them around, and doing something different and noting what happens. The focus of ACT is allowing experience to come and go while pursuing a meaningful life.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Hayes and Lillis (2012) report that ACT is an evidence-based treatment that is characterized by its breadth. ACT has been empirically shown to be effective in the treatment of a variety of disorders, including substance abuse, depression, generalized anxiety disorder, panic disorder, phobias, obsessive-compulsive disorder, posttraumatic stress disorder, and eating disorders. Studies in behavioral medicine and physical health have used ACT to treat chronic pain, smoking, diabetes management, weight maintenance, exercise, and worksite stress. ACT methods have been studied in many parts of the world beyond the United States and Europe.

Future Directions The new behavior therapies have brought many new ideas into the behavioral tradition. This evolution of the field reflects the commitment of cognitive behavior therapists to follow the data in their practices. Therapists are creating an increasing variety of groups to fit the special needs of a diverse clientele in schools and community mental health agencies. Antony (2019) forecasts a bright future: "Behavior therapy is well entrenched, and there is every indication that it will continue to grow and evolve for years to come" (p. 206). In a Delphi poll on the future of psychotherapy, experts predicted mindfulness approaches to increase the most in the coming decade. Other theoretical orientations predicted to increase substantially were cognitive behavior therapy, integrative therapy, multicultural therapy, motivational interviewing, and dialectical behavior therapy (Norcross et al., 2013).

All of the mindfulness and acceptance-based approaches share one important feature that enables them to fit under the general behavioral umbrella: they are all based on empirical data. The new generation of mindfulness and acceptance-based therapies has shifted behavior therapy from treating simple and discrete problems to a more complex and complete psychotherapy based in behavioral principles (Prochaska & Norcross, 2018). These third-wave therapies offer alternative treatment strategies to first- and second-generation behavior therapies.

For a more in-depth discussion of the role of mindfulness in psychotherapeutic practice, four recommended readings are *Mindfulness and Acceptance: Expanding the Cognitive-Behavioral Tradition* (Hayes et al., 2004), *Mindfulness and Psychotherapy* (Germer et al., 2013), *Acceptance-based Behavioral Therapy: Treating Anxiety and Related Challenges* (Roemer & Orsillo, 2020), and *Acceptance and Mindfulness in Cognitive Behavior Therapy: Understanding and Applying the New Therapies* (Herbert & Forman, 2011).

Group Theories in Action: A CBT Application*

In this group session, I begin by I asking each member for a brief check-in statement. I want to encourage members to identify and examine their core beliefs, so I ask for one sentence that captures the essence of one belief that influences each member's actions. Some core beliefs members identify are listed here:

- I am not enough.
- I am not smart enough.
- I need approval from everyone.
- I am lazy.
- I am not disciplined, so why pursue something I want?
- I have to do more and more. Everything I do must be 100%.
- I do not have time to relax. There is too much to be done and way too little time.

After completing this brief check-in, I ask members to identify some of their self-talk in a second check-in. For example, Kellie says that she hears a mantra of "I do not have discipline and I am not a finisher." Kellie indicates she would like to do some work on how her belief about not finishing a project gets in her way of achieving her goals. I ask Kellie if there are some projects that she has finished, and she says: "Well, I got my PhD, and I got tenure at a university, and I created some holistic wellness programs at work. I have been a good teacher, a good clinician, a good wife, and a good mother." It does seem that Kellie has finished some very important projects, yet she continues to believe that she is not a finisher.

I employ a CBT strategy of *collaborative empiricism* and ask Kellie to look for evidence that either supports or refutes this core belief. Both the members

*The group session discussed here is based on the cognitive behavioral group work segment in the video *Group Theories in Action*, which is included in the Online Student Resources.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and I comment that all the achievements Kellie just listed do not support her belief that she is not a finisher and that she lacks discipline. Kellie is then asked about a project that she would like to pursue:

> **Kellie:** I have a book project, yet I realize that there is a block within me. I want to complete my book on poetry, yet I realize I don't commit myself to finishing this poetry book because of my fear of vulnerability. I am concerned that if I put my poetry out there, I will be judged.

I continue working with Kellie using a technique called Socratic questioning. Here are some of the questions I raise for Kellie to explore:

- What is the likelihood that someone will judge your work and you?
- Imagine that you have completed your book. What is it that you are telling yourself upon completing this project?
- What do you fear the judges will say?
- What do you hope people will say about your book?
- What if you published your book and nobody reads it?
- Is it catastrophic if some people do not like your book?

As Kellie addresses my questions, she begins to challenge her self-talk. Continuing this work may help Kellie decide she is ready to make a decision that she has been putting off and create an action plan. After some work with Kellie, I ask the group members if they want to give Kellie some feedback. Others are then invited to seize some time to explore their own beliefs that are blocking them from achieving a goal that they deem to be important.

Applying the Cognitive Behavioral Approach to Group Work in Schools

The framework of present-centered, short-term, action-focused, cognitive behavioral approaches is a good fit for working with a diverse range of students. Cognitive behavioral group counseling can be adapted for work with K–12 students on a variety of topics. One of the most compelling reasons for employing CBT groups in schools is that age-appropriate exercises and education can be used for both remediation and prevention (Vernon, 2004). Vernon states that cognitive behavioral therapies are effective with school-aged populations for the following reasons:

- CBT principles are easy to understand, and they can be adapted to children of most ages and from many cultural backgrounds.
- CBT groups tend to be short term and employ brief interventions, which is a good fit for school settings where time is limited.
- The teachable concepts can be translated into acquiring life skills.
- Children and adolescents can learn emotional and behavioral self-control through understanding the connection between thoughts, feelings, and behaviors.
- CBT groups help students cope with what they can change and learn to accept what they cannot change.
- The cognitive principles empower young people to deal with both present concerns and future problems.

Group therapy is particularly useful for high school students. In individual therapy, it is solely the therapist's responsibility to help the client restructure cognitive patterns. In a group setting, a skilled leader can facilitate feedback from other group members to challenge faulty thoughts. Because social relationships play a vital role during the adolescent stage of development, appropriate peer feedback in a group setting is particularly valuable for high school students.

Applying the Cognitive Behavioral Approach With Multicultural Populations

Cognitive behavioral group therapy has some clear advantages in work with multicultural populations. Spiegler (2016) contends that CBT is inherently suited to treating diverse client populations due to its emphasis on individualized treatment and the external environment, its psychoeducational focus, and the active nature of the approach. Clients from diverse cultural backgrounds can benefit from this approach because it is problem-focused,

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

present-focused, time-limited, and cognitive and behavioral skills are taught to clients. CBT is flexible, and cognitive and behavioral techniques are tailored to fit each client (Cattie et al., 2020). CBT groups deal more with patterns of thinking and behaving than with experiencing and expressing intense feelings. Group members who might find catharsis uncomfortable, due to cultural inhibitions against displaying emotions, are less likely to be immediately put off by this approach. In addition, CBT groups are highly structured and focused on specific goals, and clients know what they are getting into when they agree to participate. Cognitive behavioral therapists typically spend time preparing members to participate in a group experience. The group process is demystified and norms are made clear. In CBT, the explicit therapy goals are jointly determined by the members and the therapist. Members determine which goals to prioritize, and the therapist ensures that these goals are safe, specific, measurable, and attainable. Progress toward individual goals is continually assessed, and members have opportunities to influence the course and direction of their therapeutic work (Antony et al., 2020). This approach tends to appeal to clients who are somewhat suspicious of the value of a group experience but are interested in learning practical ways to cope with immediate problems.

The contemporary versions of CBT are particularly well-suited for establishing a successful therapeutic relationship. The third-wave approaches are sensitive to the therapeutic relationship, client resources and strengths, and are culturally responsive (Sperry & Sperry, 2018). The importance of culturally sensitive behavioral methods in behavioral practice is increasingly being recognized in the literature. Research has demonstrated the efficacy of adapting behavior therapy for marginalized groups, and cultural adaptations of psychotherapeutic interventions have improved outcomes when applied to individuals from diverse cultural backgrounds (Antony et al., 2020). CBT tends to be culturally sensitive because it uses the individual's belief system as part of the method of self-challenge. Beck and Weishaar (2019) point out that cognitive therapy begins with an understanding of a client's beliefs and values, which exist within a cultural context. Cognitive therapists do not impose their beliefs on group members; rather, therapists help members assess the degree to which these beliefs are adaptive for members and foster emotional well-being. CBT group practitioners acknowledge the environmental contributors of problems many clients face, such as stress, inequality, and social injustice (Cormier et al., 2017). Antony's (2019) view is that behavior problems are not rooted in the individual; they originate in the environment or through individual and environment interactions. "Because behavior therapists view problem behaviors as understandable given their context, clients are not blamed for their behaviors or their problems" (p. 200). This viewpoint is certainly in keeping with a social justice perspective.

Pamela Hays developed a model of culturally responsive CBT (CR-CBT) in which CBT strategies are modified to fit the client's culture background and the cultural context. Some of the key aspects of CR-CBT include emphasizing culturally bound strengths, accepting a client's core cultural beliefs, and respecting and acknowledging clients who have experienced oppression (Hays, 2016). CR-CBT places a premium on cultural strengths and reinforces these client resources. This approach offers a useful framework for conducting a strength-oriented, culturally responsive approach to understanding and assessing the client's psychological factors and cultural factors that influence well-being and problems (Sperry & Sperry, 2018).

Hays (2009) contends that there is an "almost perfect fit" between CBT and multicultural therapy. Both perspectives share common assumptions that facilitate their integration:

- Both emphasize the need to tailor interventions to the unique needs and strengths of the individual.
- Both emphasize empowerment: CBT teaches clients specific skills that they can apply in daily life; multicultural therapy emphasizes cultural influences that contribute to a client's uniqueness.
- Both emphasize a strength model wherein the inner resources of the client are activated to bring about change.
- CBT's behavioral roots call attention to the influence of environment, which fits well with the multicultural emphasis on cultural influences.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Other factors that contribute to the usefulness of cognitive behavioral approaches to group work with diverse client populations include its specificity, task orientation, focus on objectivity, emphasis on collaboration, attention given to cognition and behavior, action orientation, dealing with the present more than the past, emphasis on brief interventions, and a problem-solving orientation. The attention given to the transfer of learning and the principles and strategies for maintaining new behavior in daily life are crucial. Because CBT fits into a short-term group format, it is applicable to a variety of practical problems that client populations may face, and the time frame makes it possible to deal with day-to-day concerns that these clients bring to therapy.

According to Organista (2000), Latinx who are a part of a cognitive behavioral therapy group are likely to find some of the interventions consistent with their expectations. The emphasis on symptom relief, guidance and advice, directiveness, the expert role of the leader, a focus on dealing with problems, brevity, and tailoring treatment to the client's particular circumstances are all facets they may appreciate and find useful. Group members from many different cultures are likely to find that this approach suits their preferences for direction and a focus on present problems.

CBT's emphasis on assertiveness, independence, verbal ability, rationality, cognition, and behavioral change may limit its use in cultures that value subtle communication over assertiveness, interdependence over personal independence, listening and observing over talking, acceptance over behavior change, and a less linear cognitive style (Hays, 2009). In addition, the focus on the present in CBT can result in neglecting the past. Cognitive behavioral assessments involve the investigation of a client's *personal* history. If therapists are unaware of a client's *cultural* beliefs, they may have difficulty interpreting a client's personal experiences. Another limitation of CBT from a multicultural perspective involves its individual orientation, which emphasizes the influence of the physical and social environment. An inexperienced therapist may overemphasize cognitive restructuring to the neglect of environmental interventions. This focus on restructuring an individual's beliefs about an oppressive societal situation may limit consideration of small changes within the environment that could benefit the client.

It is important for group leaders to help their members assess the possible consequences of their newly acquired social skills within a particular cultural context. Sue and Sue (2016) describe Asian cultural norms that may influence levels of assertiveness, such as deference to authority, interpersonal harmony, modesty, and avoidance of public shame. Chinese culture places a premium on compliance with tradition, and being assertive can lead to problems. Individuals who grow up in a traditional Chinese family may have little opportunity to develop assertiveness or decision-making skills. Instead, the parents and the elderly are invested with the power to make decisions; children are expected to be obedient and respectful. Group leaders need to be mindful of how cultural values and norms influence the behaviors of clients, and they will also do well to help these members assess the advantages and disadvantages of developing a more assertive style. Members can learn to use what they already have to their advantage. It is also important that members have opportunities to talk about the problems they encounter as they acquire new attitudes and behaviors in their home and at work.

Evaluation of the Cognitive Behavioral Approaches to Groups

Contributions and Strengths of the Approach

One of the strengths of the cognitive behavioral approaches is the emphasis given to education and prevention. CBT is precise in specifying goals, target behaviors, and therapy procedures, which are defined in unambiguous and measurable terms. This specificity allows for links among assessment, treatment, and evaluation strategies. Because of this specificity, explicit criteria for evaluating the success of treatment can be established (Spiegler, 2016). Although cognitive behavioral practitioners are characterized by a diversity of therapeutic styles, CBT is unified by its techniques being rooted in empirical research and

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

its problem-focused orientation (Antony et al., 2020; Craske, 2017).

Another unifying aspect in the practice of CBT is the attention given to replacing maladaptive cognitions, behaviors, and emotions with more adaptive ones. The cognitive behavioral tradition seeks to tailor specific strategies to each client. CBT is to be credited for conducting research to determine the efficacy of its techniques (Beck, 2021). There is a commitment to the systematic evaluation of the procedures used in a group. Those interventions that do not work are eliminated, and techniques are continually being improved. CBT practitioners are open to integrating techniques from various theoretical models into their group work. Cognitive behavioral interventions can be incorporated effectively into both heterogeneous and homogeneous groups and can be used with groups that have a wide variety of specific purposes.

CBT was developed using empirical methods, and was the first form of psychotherapy tested using the most rigorous criteria (Cattie et al., 2020). The behavioral and cognitive behavioral approaches are the most extensively researched psychotherapies, with hundreds of studies supporting their effectiveness for a wide range of emotional and behavioral problems (Antony, 2019). Hollon and Beck (2013) state that "the cognitive and cognitive-behavioral interventions have generated powerful evidence of success in a large number of sophisticated trials in fully clinical populations" (p. 424). CBT interventions are efficacious and often specific in the treatment of a broad range of disorders, and these interventions "produce an enduring effect that has yet to be found for most other psychosocial interventions and is clearly not found for medication treatments" (Hollon & Beck, 2013, p. 425). A comprehensive review of studies confirming the efficacy of CBT reveals the success of this approach in treating depression, anxiety disorders, panic disorders, social phobia, posttraumatic stress disorders, eating disorders, substance abuse, personality disorders, and childhood depression and anxiety disorders (Dienes et al., 2011; Hollon & Beck, 2013). The cognitive behavioral approaches have clearly come of age, including the study of treatment failure and its causes (Dimidjian & Hollon, 2011).

The field of cognitive behavior is broadening, and there is a context for an integration of CBT with other therapeutic approaches, including the humanistic therapies. A cognitive behavioral group is a concrete example of a humanistic approach in action. The third-generation behavior therapies that have ushered in mindfulness and acceptance-based approaches is evidence of the openness of cognitive behavioral practitioners to incorporating a broader range of techniques in their practice. Topics such as values, spirituality, relationship, focusing on the present moment, meditation, and mindfulness were all explored in humanistic psychology, and these topics are now being included in contemporary CBT.

Another way that CBT has humanistic dimensions is that group members are collaboratively involved in the selection of both goals and treatment strategies. In many groups, the leader helps members move toward independence by delegating leadership functions to them. Members in a cognitive behavioral group typically carry out part of the therapy independently of the group in homework assignments and in transferring what they are learning in the sessions to everyday living. Therapy then becomes a place where members learn how to learn and become motivated to develop the skills necessary to solve future problems.

A cognitive behavioral approach allows for evaluation of intervention methods. With the focus on research, these techniques become more precise for use with specific clients with a variety of specific problems. The cognitive behavioral approaches to group work fit well within the context of the evidence-based practice movement. More than any theoretical model in this book, CBT relies on using therapeutic strategies that have the support of empirical evidence, and its effects carry across a wide array of clinical disorders. CBT is very popular with practitioners, with some surveys showing that the majority of clinicians endorse CBT as their primary theoretical orientation (Cook et al., 2010; Craske, 2017). To a large extent, this popularity is due to strong empirical

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

support for its theoretical framework and to the large number of outcome studies with clinical populations (Beck & Weishaar, 2019). Sperry and Sperry (2018) make this claim: "Over 500 outcome studies have supported the efficacy of Cognitive Behavior Therapy, among various psychological and medical problems, making it the gold standard of talk therapy approaches" (p. 138). Regardless of which models influence our style of group leadership, the spirit of CBT can encourage us to strive for accountability rather than simply relying on faith and intuition that our practices are working.

Advantages of a Group Approach Group leaders can derive practical benefits from the use of specific behavioral techniques, regardless of their theoretical orientation. As a matter of fact, certain experiential and humanistic models can be enhanced by systematically incorporating some of the cognitive behavioral techniques into their relationship-oriented frameworks. Moreover, many behavioral principles can be applied to any kind of group. For example, modeling and reinforcement are essential factors in any successful group. Members are supported (reinforced) in their attempts to be honest, to take risks, to experiment with new behavior, to be active, to take the initiative, and to participate fully in the group. Behavioral principles are instrumental in fostering group cohesion, which enables members to feel that they are not alone with their problems. The mutual learning and exploration of personal concerns bind the members of a group in a meaningful way.

Another strength of the cognitive behavioral approaches is the wide range of techniques that participants can use to specify their goals and to develop the skills needed to achieve these goals. The specificity of the CBT approaches helps group members translate fuzzy goals into concrete plans of action, which helps members keep these plans clearly in focus. Techniques such as role playing, behavioral rehearsal, coaching, guided practice, modeling, feedback, learning by successive approximations, mindfulness skills, and homework assignments can be included in any group leader's repertoire regardless of theoretical orientation. These cognitive behavioral principles and techniques lend themselves to short-term groups, which is certainly a factor contributing to the widespread use of CBT groups.

Limitations of the Cognitive Behavioral Approach

Cognitive behavioral groups do have some disadvantages. For example, when groups are too highly structured, as cognitive behavioral groups can often become, individual clients may be prevented from meeting their personal needs. CBT groups have a didactic emphasis, which can be both a strength and a limitation. Groups have an educative function, but this didactic aspect needs to be balanced with the experiential aspects of group work. A cognitive behavioral group therapist needs to be aware of a range of group process issues, a few of which include observing connections between group members, encouraging open dialogue, promoting expression of feelings, and encouraging useful feedback between group members (Bieling et al., 2006).

When CBT is too rigidly applied, the group leader may lose sight of the people in the group by focusing exclusively on techniques or on solving specific problems. In my opinion, this focus on problems and symptoms can result in a failure to understand the meaning behind an individual's behavior. This is not to say that group therapy should focus on the "underlying causes" of behavior. However, I prefer to deal with factors both in one's external situation that may be eliciting behavioral problems and with one's internal reactions to these environmental variables.

In fairness, most cognitive behavior therapists now look at the situation and the response. They are interested in exploring cognitions and, to some extent, the affective elements in the context of the client's problem. In other words, cognitive behavior therapists are interested in more than merely eliminating symptoms of problem behaviors. Certainly, practitioners from any orientation can profit from drawing on cognitive behavioral interventions and incorporating them in their group work.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Self-Reflection and Discussion Questions

1. The CBT group leader functions in many ways as a teacher. How does this role fit with your personal style?
2. Cognitive behavioral group practitioners use a brief, active, directive, collaborative, present-focused, didactic, psychoeducational model of therapy that relies on empirical validation of its concepts and techniques. To what degree is this emphasis congruent with your beliefs about group therapy?
3. Mindfulness approaches have been incorporated into the practice of many CBT groups. How interested are you in learning about mindfulness, practicing it for personal development, and using it in groups you lead?
4. CBT provides for use of a wide range of techniques. What techniques might you apply to yourself? What techniques are you likely to incorporate in the groups you lead?
5. Cognitive restructuring is a core technique in CBT. Identify one faulty belief you have and reflect on how you could use cognitive restructuring to modify this belief. What difference would it make in your life if you could replace this faulty belief with a constructive belief?

Where to Go From Here

If you have an interest in further training in behavior therapy and cognitive behavior therapy, the Association for Behavioral and Cognitive Therapies (ABCT) is an excellent resource. This group was formerly known as the Association for Advancement of Behavior Therapy (AABT). ABCT is a membership organization of mental health professionals and students who are interested in empirically based behavior therapy or cognitive behavior therapy. ABCT's website provides information on membership services, publications, conventions, careers, resources, and much more.

Association for Behavioral and Cognitive Therapies
305 Seventh Avenue, 16th Floor
New York, NY 10001-6008
Telephone: (212) 647-1890 or (800) 685-AABT
Fax: (212) 647-1865
Email: membership@abct.org
Website: www.abct.org

The International Association for Cognitive Psychotherapy (IACP) is a professional, scientific, interdisciplinary organization whose mission is to facilitate the utilization and growth of cognitive psychotherapy as a professional activity and a scientific discipline. In addition, the association serves as a resource and information center for matters related to cognitive psychotherapy.

The *Journal of Cognitive Psychotherapy: An International Quarterly,* edited by John Riskind, also provides information on theory, practice, and research in cognitive behavior therapy. Information about the journal is available from IACP.

International Association for Cognitive Psychotherapy
Website: http://www.the-iacp.com/
Check out this psychotherapy.net website for a variety of videos on various aspects of CBT with key people in the field.

Videos: www.psychotherapy.net/videos/approach/cognitive-behavioral-cbt

Video

Watch Gerald Corey's *Group Theories in Action*, video via the Cengage eBook. The group session discussed in this chapter is based on an integrative approach to group counseling.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Recommended Supplementary Readings

Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy in Groups (Bieling et al., 2006) offers ideas on how to structure and lead cognitive behavioral groups. This comprehensive text emphasizes general principles and the practice of CBT in groups, discussion of group process concepts from a CBT perspective, cognitive and behavioral strategies useful in groups, and discussion of evidence-based approaches. There are separate chapters for specific disorders including panic disorder, obsessive-compulsive disorder, depression, eating disorders, substance abuse, and personality disorders.

Cognitive Behavior Therapy: Basics and Beyond (J. Beck, 2021) is a main text in cognitive therapy that presents a comprehensive overview of the approach. This book describes the role of the therapeutic relationship in CBT practice, therapeutic techniques, how to identify and evaluate automatic thoughts, and how to modify underlying assumptions and core beliefs.

The Clinician's Guide to CBT Using Mind Over Mood (Padesky, 2020) incorporates evidence-based practices from positive psychology, motivational interviewing, and acceptance and commitment therapy.

Contemporary Behavior Therapy (Spiegler, 2016) is a comprehensive and up-to-date treatment of basic principles and applications of the behavior therapies. Specific chapters deal with procedures that can be usefully applied to group counseling, a few of which are behavioral assessment, modeling, cognitive restructuring, cognitive coping skills, and third-generation behavior therapies.

Interviewing and Change Strategies for Helpers (Cormier et al., 2017) is a comprehensive and clearly written textbook dealing with training experiences and skill development. Its excellent documentation offers group practitioners a wealth of material on a variety of topics, such as assessment procedures, selection of goals, development of appropriate treatment programs, and methods of evaluating outcomes. There are useful chapters on a variety of cognitive behavioral strategies, including modeling, reframing, problem solving, cognitive restructuring, stress management, meditation and relaxation, exposure therapy, and self-management.

Mindfulness and Psychotherapy (Germer et al., 2013) is a practical book that provides a comprehensive introduction to mindfulness as it is applied to contemporary therapeutic practice.

Mindfulness and Acceptance: Expanding the Cognitive-Behavioral Tradition (Hayes et al., 2004) addresses a new set of behavior therapies that emphasize nontraditional themes such as mindfulness, acceptance, values, spirituality, being in relationship, living in the present moment, and emotional deepening.

Essential Psychotherapies: Theory and Practice (Messer & Kaslow, 2020) contains new chapters on CBT and third-wave CBT. This book addresses the evidence-based practice movement, psychotherapy integration, and applications to physical health care.

References and Suggested Readings

Antony, M. M. (2019). Behavior therapy. In D. Wedding & R. J. Corsini (Eds.), *Current psychotherapies* (11th ed., pp. 199–236). Cengage Learning.

*Antony, M. M., & Roemer, L. (2011). *Behavior therapy.* American Psychological Association.

*Antony, M. M., Roemer, L., & Lenton-Brym, A. P. (2020). Behavior therapy: Traditional approaches. In S. B. Messer & N. J. Kaslow (Eds.), *Essential psychotherapies: Theory and practice* (4th ed., pp. 111–141). Guilford Press.

Bandura, A. (1969). *Principles of behavior modification.* Holt, Rinehart & Winston.

Bandura, A. (1977). *Social learning theory.* Prentice Hall.

Bandura, A. (1986). *Social foundations of thought and action: A social cognitive theory.* Prentice Hall.

Books and articles marked with an asterisk (*) are suggested for further study.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

*Beck, A. T. (1976). *Cognitive therapy and the emotional disorders.* New American Library.

Beck, A. T. (1997). Cognitive therapy: Reflections. In J. K. Zeig (Ed.), *The evolution of psychotherapy: The third conference* (pp. 55–67). New York: Brunner/Mazel.

*Beck, A. T., & Weishaar, M. E. (2019). Cognitive therapy. In D. Wedding & R. J. Corsini (Eds.), *Current psychotherapies* (11th ed., pp. 237–272). Cengage Learning.

*Beck, J. S. (2005). *Cognitive therapy for challenging problems.* Guilford Press.

*Beck, J. S. (2021). *Cognitive behavior therapy: Basics and beyond* (3rd ed.). Guilford Press.

Beidel, D. C., Turner, S. M., Young, B., & Paulson, A. (2005). Social effectiveness therapy for children: Three-year follow-up. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 73*(4), 721–725.

*Bieling, P. J., McCabe, R. E., & Antony, M. M. (2006). *Cognitive-behavioral therapy in groups.* Guilford Press.

*Cattie, J. E., Buchholz, J. L., & Abramowitz, J. S. (2020). Cognitive therapy and cognitive-behavioral therapy. In S. B. Messer & N. J. Kaslow (Eds.), *Essential psychotherapies: Theory and practice* (4th ed., pp. 142–182). Guilford Press.

*Chapman, A. L., & Dixon-Gordon, K. L. (2020). *Dialectical behavior therapy*. American Psychological Association.

Cook, J. M., Biyanova, T., Elhai, J., & Schnurr, P. P. (2010). What do psychotherapists really do in practice? An internet survey of over 2,000 psychotherapists. *Psychotherapy: Theory, Research, Practice, Training, 47*(2), 260–267.

*Cormier, S., Nurius, P. S., & Osborn, C. J. (2017). *Interviewing and change strategies for helpers* (8th ed.). Cengage Learning.

*Craske, M. G. (2017). *Cognitive-behavioral therapy* (2nd ed.). American Psychological Association.

Dattilio, F. M. (2002). Using homework assignments in couple and family therapy. *Journal of Clinical Psychology, 58*(5), 570–585.

Dattilio, F. M. (2003). Family therapy. In R. L. Leahy (Ed.), *Roadblocks in cognitive behavior therapy* (pp. 236–252). Guilford Press.

Dienes, K. A., Torres-Harding, S., Reindecke, M. A., Freeman, A., & Sauer, A. (2011). Cognitive therapy. In S. B. Messer & A. S. Gurman (Eds.), *Essential psychotherapies: Theory and practice* (3rd ed., pp.143–183). Guilford Press.

Dimidjian, S., & Hollon, S. D. (2011). What can be learned when empirically supported treatments fail? Introduction. *Cognitive and Behavioral Practice, 18,* 303–305.

*Dobson, K. S. (2012). *Cognitive therapy*. American Psychological Association.

*Dobson, D., & Dobson, K. S. (2017). *Evidence-based practice of cognitive-behavioral therapy* (2nd ed.). Guilford Press.

Dobson, K. S., & Dozois, D. J. A. (Eds.). (2019). *Handbook of cognitive-behavioral therapies* (4th ed.). Guilford Press.

*Dunkley, C., & Stanton, M. (2014). *Teaching clients to use mindfulness skills: A practical guide*. Taylor & Francis.

*Germer, C. K. (2013). Mindfulness: What is it: What does it matter? In C. K. Germer, R. D. Siegel, & P. R. Fulton (Eds.), *Mindfulness and psychotherapy* (2nd ed., pp. 3–35). Guilford Press.

*Germer, C. K., Siegel, R. D., & Fulton, P. R. (Eds.). (2013). *Mindfulness and psychotherapy* (2nd ed.). Guilford Press.

Harris, R. (2019). *ACT made simple: An easy-to-read primer on acceptance and commitment therapy* (2nd ed.). New Harbinger Publications.

*Hayes, S. C., Follette, V. M., & Linehan, M. M. (Eds.). (2004). *Mindfulness and acceptance: Expanding the cognitive-behavioral tradition.* Guilford Press.

*Hayes, S. C., & Lillis, J. (2012). *Acceptance and commitment therapy*. American Psychological Association.

*Hayes, S. C., Strosahl, K. D., & Houts, A. (Eds.). (2005). *A practical guide to acceptance and commitment therapy.* Springer.

*Hayes, S. C., Strosahl, K. D., & Wilson, K. G. (Eds.). (2011). *Acceptance and commitment therapy: The process and practice of mindful change* (2nd ed.). Guilford Press.

*Hays, P. A. (2009). Integrating evidence-based practice, cognitive-behavior therapy, and multicultural therapy: Ten steps for culturally competent practice. *Professional Psychology: Research and Practice, 40*(4), 354–360.

*Hays, P. A. (2016). *Addressing cultural complexities in practice: Assessment, diagnosis, and therapy* (2nd ed.). American Psychological Association.

Herbert, J. D., & Forman, E. M. (2011). *Acceptance and mindfulness in cognitive behavior therapy: Understanding and applying the new therapies.* Wiley.

*Hollon, S. D., & Beck, A. T. (2013). Cognitive and cognitive-behavioral therapies. In M. J. Lambert (Ed.), *Bergin and Garfield's handbook of psychotherapy and behavior change* (6th ed., pp. 393–492). Wiley.

*Kabat-Zinn, J. (1990). *Full catastrophe living: Using the wisdom of your body and mind to face stress, pain, and illness.* Dell.

Kabat-Zinn, J. (1994). *Wherever you go there you are: Mindfulness meditation in everyday life.* Hyperion.

Kabat-Zinn, J. (2003). Mindfulness-based interventions in context: Past, present and future. *Clinical Psychology: Science and Practice, 10*(2), 144–156.

Kaplan, A., & Laygo, R. (2003). Stress management. In W. O'Donohue, J. E. Fisher, & S. C. Hayes (Eds.), *Cognitive behavior therapy: Applying empirically supported techniques in your practice* (pp. 411–416). Wiley.

*Kazantzis, N., Dattilio, F. M., & Dobson, K. S. (2017). *The therapeutic relationship in cognitive-behavioral therapy: A clinician's guide.* Guilford Press.

Kazantzis, N., & Deane, F. P. (1999). Psychologists' use of homework assignments in clinical practice. *Professional Psychology: Research and Practice, 30,* 581–585.

Kazantzis, N., & Lampropoulos, G. K. (2002). The use of homework in psychotherapy: An introduction. *Journal of Clinical Psychology, 58*(5), 487–488.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

*Ledley, D. R., Marx, B. P., & Heimberg, R. G. (2018). *Making cognitive-behavioral therapy work: Clinical processes for new practitioners* (3rd ed.). Guilford Press.

Linehan, M. M. (2021). *Building a life worth living: A memoir*. Random House.

Linehan, M. M. (1993a). *Cognitive-behavioral treatment of borderline personality disorder.* Guilford Press.

Linehan, M. M. (1993b). *Skills training manual for treating borderline personality disorder.* Guilford Press.

*Masuda, A., & Rizvi, S. L. (2020). Third-wave cognitive-behaviorally based therapies. In S. B. Messer & N. J. Kaslow (Eds.), *Essential psychotherapies: Theory and practice* (4th ed., pp. 183–217). Guilford Press.

Meichenbaum, D. (1985). *Stress inoculation training.* Pergamon Press.

Meichenbaum, D. (1986). Cognitive behavior modification. In F. H. Kanfer & A. P. Goldstein (Eds.), *Helping people change: A textbook of methods* (3rd ed.). Pergamon Press.

Meichenbaum, D. (1993). Stress inoculation training: A 20-year update. In P. M. Lehrer & R. L. Woolfolk (Eds.), *Principles and practice of stress management* (2nd ed., pp. 373–406). Guilford Press.

Meichenbaum, D. (1994). *A clinical handbook/practical therapist manual for assessing and treating adults with posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD).* Institute Press.

*Meichenbaum, D. (2008). Stress inoculation training. In W. O'Donohue & J. E. Fisher (Eds.), *Cognitive behavior therapy: Applying empirically supported techniques in your practice* (2nd ed., pp. 529–532). Wiley.

*Meichenbaum, D. (2017). *The evolution of cognitive behavior therapy: A personal and professional journey with Don Meichenbaum.* Taylor & Francis.

*Messer, S. B., & Kaslow, N. J. (2020). (Eds.), *Essential psychotherapies: Theory and practice* (4th ed.). Guilford Press.

*Neenan, M., & Dryden, W. (2004). *Cognitive therapy: 100 key points and techniques.* Taylor & Francis.

Nezu, A. M., & Nezu, C. M. (2012). Problem solving. In W. T. O'Donohue & J. E. Fisher (Eds.), *Cognitive behavior therapy: Core principles for practice* (pp. 159–182). Wiley.

*Norcross, J. C., Pfund, R. A., & Prochaska, J. O. (2013). Psychotherapy in 2022: A Delphi poll on its future. *Professional Psychology: Research and Practice, 44*(5), 363–370.

Organista, K. (2000). Latinos. In J. R. White & A. Freeman (Eds.), *Cognitive-behavioral group therapy for specific problems and populations* (pp. 281–303). American Psychological Association.

*Padesky, C. A. (2020). *The clinician's guide to CBT using mind over mood* (2nd ed.). Guilford Press.

Petrocelli, J. V. (2002). Effectiveness of group cognitive-behavioral therapy for general symptomatology: A meta-analysis. *Journal for Specialists in Group Work, 27*(1), 92–115.

*Prochaska, J. O., & Norcross, J. C. (2018). *Systems of psychotherapy: A transtheoretical analysis* (9th ed.). Oxford University Press.

Reinecke, M. A., & Freeman, A. (2003). Cognitive therapy. In A. S. Gurman & S. B. Messer (Eds.), *Essential psychotherapies: Theory and practice* (2nd ed., pp. 224–271). Guilford Press.

*Roemer, L., & Orsillo, S. M. (2020). *Acceptance-based behavioral therapy: Treating anxiety and related challenges.* Guilford Press.

*Rose, S. D. (1998). *Group therapy with troubled youth: A cognitive-behavioral interactive approach.* Sage.

*Segal, Z. V., Williams, J. M. G., & Teasdale, J. D. (2013). *Mindfulness-based cognitive therapy for depression* (2nd ed.). Guilford Press.

*Sperry, J., & Sperry, L. (2018). *Cognitive behavior therapy in counseling practice*. Routledge.

*Spiegler, M. D. (2016). *Contemporary behavior therapy* (6th ed.). Cengage Learning.

*Sue, D. W., & Sue, D. (2016). *Counseling the culturally diverse: Theory and practice* (7th ed.). Wiley.

Strong Kinnaman, J. E., & Bellack, A. S. (2012). Social skills. In W. O'Donohue & J. E. Fisher (Eds.), *Cognitive behavior therapy: Core principles for practice* (pp. 251–272). Wiley.

Swenson, C. R. (2016). *DBT principles in action: Acceptance, change, and dialectics*. Guilford Press.

*Turner, S., Beidel, D., & Cooley, M. (1994). *Social effectiveness therapy.* Turndel.

Twohig, M. P., & Dehlin, J. P. (2012). Skills training. In W. O'Donohue & J. E. Fisher (Eds.), *Cognitive behavior therapy: Core principles for practice* (pp. 37–73). Wiley.

Vernon, A. (2004). Using cognitive behavioral techniques. In B. T. Erford (Ed.), *Professional school counseling: A handbook of theories, programs & practices* (pp. 91–99). CAPS Press.

White, J. R. (2000a). Depression. In J. R. White & A. Freeman (Eds.), *Cognitive-behavioral group therapy for specific problems and populations* (pp. 29–61). American Psychological Association.

White, J. R. (2000b). Introduction. In J. R. White & A. Freeman (Eds.), *Cognitive-behavioral group therapy for specific problems and populations* (pp. 3–25). American Psychological Association.

*White, J. R., & Freeman, A. (Eds.). (2000). *Cognitive-behavioral group therapy for specific problems and populations.* American Psychological Association.

Wilson, K. G., Flynn, M. K., Bordieri, M., Nassar, S., Lucas, N., & Whiteman, K. (2012). Acceptance and cognitive behavior therapy. In W. O'Donohue & J. E. Fisher (Eds.), *Cognitive behavior therapy: Core principles for practice* (pp. 377–398). Wiley.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 13

Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy in Groups*

Learning Objectives

1. Describe what is involved in the A-B-C theory as it applies to an REBT group.
2. Explain how identifying and disputing irrational beliefs is a core aspect of REBT group work.
3. Understand how irrational beliefs can be identified, monitored, challenged, and modified.
4. List the key goals of an REBT group.
5. Describe the role and functions of the REBT group therapist.
6. Describe the cognitive methods used in REBT groups to dispute faulty beliefs and replace them with realistic beliefs.
7. Describe the emotive methods used in REBT groups.
8. Describe the behavioral methods used in REBT groups.
9. Explain how REBT principles and methods can be used in multicultural groups.
10. Identify some key contributions and strengths of REBT groups.

Introduction

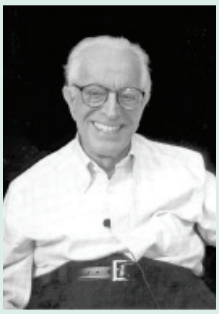
Albert Ellis created rational therapy in the early 1950s and was one of the first therapists to emphasize the influential role of cognition on emotion and behavior. In the early 1960s Ellis changed the name of his approach to rational emotive therapy (RET), and in 1993 Ellis settled on the term **rational emotive behavior therapy (REBT)** because this approach stresses the reciprocal interactions among cognition, emotion, and behavior. REBT heralded in the cognitive revolution in psychotherapy, and today it continues to be a major cognitive behavioral approach. Both Ellis and Beck agreed that REBT focused more on the core philosophical beliefs of people than the other cognitive approaches did (Ellis, 2003, 2005b; Padesky & Beck, 2003).

The rational emotive behavior approach to group therapy considers the relationship between the group leader and the members to be important mainly as a means of achieving and maintaining results. The best

*I would like to acknowledge Dr. Debbie Joffe Ellis for her review and additional input in bringing this chapter up to date.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Albert Ellis


Courtesy Debbie Joffe Ellis

ALBERT ELLIS (1913–2007) was born in Pittsburgh and lived most of his life in New York. He was hospitalized many times as a child and developed renal glycosuria at the age of 19 and diabetes at the age of 40. Despite his many physical challenges, Ellis lived an active and productive life until his death at age 93. As he would often say, "I am busy spreading the gospel according to St. Albert."

Trained in the psychoanalytic approach at Columbia University Teachers College, Ellis was analyzed and supervised by a training analyst. He then practiced psychoanalytically oriented psychotherapy but was disillusioned by the slow progress of his clients. He observed that clients improved more quickly once they took responsibility for creating their emotions and changed their ways of thinking about themselves and their problems. Ellis developed active-directive ways of working with people in his clinical practice. He combined humanistic and behavior therapy, and his pioneering efforts dating from 1955 earned him the right to be known as the father of rational emotive behavior therapy (REBT) and the grandfather of cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT).

The constructive and effective ways Ellis coped with and addressed adversities he had experienced during his youth also became a unique aspect of his approach. For example, during his teen and college years, he felt intense fear of speaking in public, and he was also extremely shy around young women. At age 19 he forced himself to talk to 100 different women in the Bronx Botanical Gardens over a period of 1 month. Although he only made one date from these brief encounters—and she did not show up for the date—he did overcome his fear of rejection by women. By applying rational cognitive, emotive, and behavioral methods, he managed to conquer some of his strongest emotional blocks (Ellis, 1994, 1997).

People who heard Ellis lecture often commented on his abrasive, humorous, and flamboyant style. In his workshops, he took delight in expressing himself in outrageous ways, such as peppering his speech with four-letter words. This was not done indiscriminately; his intention was to get people to pay attention and to jolt them out of any rigid and unhelpful thinking. He greatly enjoyed his work and teaching REBT, which was his passion and primary commitment in life. For many years, he conducted REBT groups as well as seeing people individually. Ellis gave workshops wherever he went in his travels, and he often proclaimed, "I wouldn't go to the Taj Mahal unless they asked me to do a workshop there!"

In November 2004 Ellis married Australian psychologist Debbie Joffe, whom he called "the greatest love of my life" (Ellis, 2010). They shared similar life goals and ideals and worked as a team presenting workshops. Debbie Joffe Ellis, an adjunct professor at Columbia University Teacher's College, continues to teach and present on REBT throughout the United States and also across the globe, as he entrusted her to do, and she is known as the leading REBT expert on this approach. She makes the approach applicable for the here-and-now, and in addition to teaching and writing about each of the traditional elements of REBT, she vigorously emphasizes the benefits of developing greater unconditional acceptance and the importance of gratitude. If you are interested in learning more about the life and work of Albert Ellis, I recommend two of his books: *Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy: It Works for Me—It Can Work for You* (Ellis, 2004a) and *All Out! An Autobiography* (Ellis, 2010).

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

way to bring about lasting emotional and behavioral change is for group members to change their way of thinking. REBT emphasizes the group therapist's ability and willingness to encourage or challenge the members to practice activities (both in and outside of the group) that will lead to constructive changes in thinking, feeling, and behaving. The approach stresses action—*doing* something based on the insights members gain in the therapy group. Change, it is assumed, will come about mainly by a commitment to practice new behaviors consistently over time.

Ellis and Ellis (2019b) contend that REBT is particularly applicable to group therapy and is frequently the treatment of choice. The group leader helps members learn how to apply the principles and procedures of REBT in group sessions. Group work affords many opportunities to agree on homework assignments, to practice assertiveness skills, to practice both *unconditional other acceptance* and *unconditional self-acceptance*, to take risks by practicing different behaviors, to explore self-defeating thinking, to learn from the experiences of others, to interact therapeutically and socially with each other in after-group sessions, and to have their behavior observed by the group therapist and the other members. REBT lends itself to short-term group-oriented procedures, and group members are often able to make significant changes with brief therapy (10 to 20 sessions). Some of the basic features of REBT that fit well with brief therapy include its focus on specific goals, the emphasis on rapid and positive alliance, an expectation of change, a present and future orientation, and the emphasis on assuming responsibility for taking the actions necessary to bring about change. Group participants learn self-therapy techniques that they can continue to apply throughout their own ongoing work and practice (Ellis & Ellis, 2019a).

Key Concepts

Some Hypotheses and Assumptions of REBT

The basic assumptions of REBT can be categorized under these main postulates (Ellis, 2004a, 2004b; Ellis & Ellis, 2019a, 2019b):

- Thinking, feeling, and behaving continually interact with and influence one another. We can disturb ourselves cognitively, emotionally, and behaviorally. REBT uses various techniques to show us how to minimize our self-sabotaging thoughts, feelings, and behaviors.
- When unfortunate events occur, we tend to create irrational beliefs about these events that are characterized by absolutist and dogmatic thinking. Unfortunate events by themselves do not cause emotional disturbance; rather, it is the irrational beliefs we create about these events that often lead to psychological problems.
- If we hope to change, we need to (1) acknowledge that we are mainly responsible for our own disturbed thoughts, emotions, and actions; (2) look at how we are thinking, feeling, and behaving when we disturb ourselves; and (3) commit ourselves to the persistent and hard work of identifying irrational beliefs, disputing them, and replacing them with healthy rational beliefs.

Origins of Emotional Disturbance

A central concept of REBT is the role that absolutist "shoulds," "oughts," and "musts" play in needlessly disturbing ourselves. According to Ellis (2001a, 2001b), feelings of anxiety, depression, hurt, shame, rage, and guilt are largely initiated and perpetuated by a belief system based on irrational ideas that were uncritically embraced, often during early childhood. In addition to accepting the dysfunctional beliefs of others, Ellis stresses that we also invent "musts" on our own. Ellis (1994, 1997; Ellis & Ellis, 2019a) contends that most of our dysfunctional beliefs can be reduced to three main forms of "*must*urbation":

1. "I *absolutely must* do well and be approved of by significant others. I *must* win their approval or else I am an inadequate, worthless person."
2. "You *must* under all conditions and at all times treat me considerately, kindly, lovingly, and fairly. If you don't, you are no damned good and are a rotten person."
3. "Conditions under which I live *absolutely must* be comfortable so that I can get what I want without too much effort. If not, it is *awful*; I *can't* stand it and life is no good."

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

The A-B-C Theory

The A-B-C theory of personality and emotional disturbance is central to REBT theory and practice. The **A-B-C theory** maintains that when we have an emotional reaction at point C (the emotional Consequence), after some Activating event that occurred at point A, it is not the event itself (A) that causes the emotional state (C), although it may contribute to it. It is the Belief system (B), or the beliefs that we have about the event, that mainly creates C. For example, if you feel depressed (C) over not getting a promotion at work (A), it is not the fact that you weren't promoted that causes your depression; it is your belief (B) about the event. By believing that you absolutely should have been promoted and that not receiving it means that you are a failure, you "construct" the emotional consequence of feeling depressed. Thus we are largely responsible for creating our own emotional disturbances through the beliefs we associate with the events of our lives.

Ellis and Ellis (2019b) maintain that we have the capacity to significantly change our cognitions, emotions, and behaviors. We can best accomplish this goal by avoiding preoccupying ourselves with the activating events at A and by acknowledging the futility of dwelling endlessly on the emotional consequences at C. We can choose to identify, examine, challenge, and dispute the B's—the irrational beliefs we hold about the activating events at A.

Learning to Dispute Irrational Beliefs

REBT group leaders begin by teaching group members the A-B-C theory. When they have come to see how their irrational beliefs are contributing to their emotional and behavioral disturbances, they are ready to Dispute (D) these beliefs. D represents the application of scientific principles to challenge self-defeating philosophies and to dispose of unrealistic and unverifiable hypotheses. **Cognitive restructuring**, a central technique of REBT therapy, teaches people how to make themselves less disturbed by actively and forcefully *disputing* these irrational beliefs until they surrender them. There are three main forms of disputing: (1) *realistic disputing* involves looking at factual reality and asking "where is the evidence" behind the irrational beliefs; (2) *logical disputing* questions the validity of the irrational beliefs through applying logic; and (3) *pragmatic disputing* considers the practical outcome of holding irrational ideas and contemplates the benefits (if any) of sticking to them (Ellis, 1994, 1996; Ellis & Ellis, 2019a).

After D comes E: Effective new philosophies—this requires relinquishing self-destructive ideologies, acquiring effective new beliefs, and accepting oneself, others, and the inevitable frustrations of everyday life. This new philosophy of life has, of course, a practical side—a concrete E, if you wish. In the previous example, E would translate into a rational statement such as this: "I'd like to have gotten the job, but there is no reason I have to get what I want. I would prefer to get what I want, but I can stand it when I don't." According to REBT theory, the ultimate desired result is that the person experiences a healthy negative emotion, in this case disappointment and sadness, rather than depression.

Goals of a REBT Group

REBT is a collaborative effort on the part of both the group leader and the members in choosing realistic and self-enhancing outcome goals. REBT group leaders strive to educate and encourage members to think in rational ways, to make an ongoing effort to act in life-enhancing ways rather than in self-sabotaging or harmful ways, and to practice unconditional self-acceptance and unconditional other acceptance of other group members. REBT group practitioners do their best not only to teach members the REBT principles but also to model them. According to Ellis (2001b; Ellis & Ellis, 2019b), a main goal of REBT is to assist clients in the process of achieving greater unconditional acceptance in three forms: *unconditional self-acceptance* (USA), *unconditional other acceptance* (UOA), and *unconditional life acceptance* (ULA), and to see how these are interrelated. To the degree that group members are able to accept themselves, they are able to accept others. A famous saying of Albert Ellis (Ellis & Ellis, 2019a) is that "life has inevitable suffering as well as pleasure. By realistically thinking, feeling, and acting to enjoy what you can, and unangrily and unwhiningly accepting painful aspects that cannot be changed, you open yourself to much joy" (p. 55).

REBT provides group members with tools for experiencing healthy emotions (such as sadness and concern) about negative activating events rather

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

than unhealthy and debilitating emotions (such as depression and anxiety) about these events so that they can live richer and more satisfying lives. To accomplish this basic objective, group members learn practical ways to identify their underlying irrational beliefs, to critically evaluate these beliefs, and to replace them with rational beliefs.

Group members are taught that they are largely responsible for their own emotional reactions; that they can minimize their emotional disturbances by paying attention to their self-verbalizations and by changing their irrational beliefs; and that if they acquire a new and more realistic philosophy, they can cope effectively with most of the unfortunate events in their life. Group members learn to replace rigid demands with flexible preferences. Although the therapeutic goals of REBT are essentially the same for both individual and group therapy, the two differ in specific techniques employed, as you will see in the discussion that follows.

Role and Functions of the Group Leader

The therapeutic activities of REBT groups are carried out with a central purpose: to help participants internalize a rational philosophy of life, just as they internalized a set of dogmatic and extreme beliefs derived from their sociocultural environment and from their own invention. REBT group counselors educate group members about the origin of their disturbance and how they can make constructive changes. Psychoeducation is a key component of this theory (Ellis & Ellis, 2019a). In working toward this educational aim, the group therapist has several specific functions and tasks. The first task is to show group members how they have largely created their own emotional and behavioral disturbances. The leader helps group members identify and critically evaluate the irrational beliefs they originally unquestioningly accepted, demonstrates how they are continuing to keep these beliefs alive, and teaches members how to modify their thinking by developing rational alternative beliefs. One of the group leader's tasks is to teach members how to stop the vicious circle of the self-blaming and other-blaming process.

REBT asserts that people's irrational beliefs can be so deeply ingrained that they may not change easily, and leaders employ a variety of active cognitive, behavioral, and emotive techniques to bring about cognitive changes (Ellis, 1996, 2001b; Ellis & Ellis, 2019a). REBT group practitioners favor interventions such as questioning, disputing, negotiating homework assignments, and helping members try new ways of thinking, feeling, and doing. REBT group leaders are active in teaching the theoretical model, proposing methods of coping, and teaching members strategies for testing hypotheses and solutions. Ellis and Ellis (2019b) state that "REBT therapists are highly active, give their own views without hesitation, usually answer direct questions about their personal lives, are quite energetic and often directive in group therapy, and do a good deal of speaking, providing psychoeducation, particularly during early sessions" (p. 186).

REBT group leaders assume the role of psychological educators and encourage members to commit to practicing their group learning in everyday situations. They view what goes on during the group as important, but they realize that the hard work and practice between sessions and after therapy is terminated are even more crucial. The group context provides members with tools they can use to become self-reliant and to accept themselves unconditionally as they encounter new problems in daily living.

Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures

From the origin of the approach, REBT has utilized a wide range of cognitive, emotive, and behavioral methods with most clients. REBT focuses on specific techniques for changing a client's self-defeating thoughts in concrete situations. In addition to modifying beliefs, this approach helps group members see how their beliefs influence how they feel and what they do. There is also a strong focus on encouraging members to change their feelings and the behaviors that flow from these rigid and extreme beliefs. REBT practitioners are flexible and creative in their use of methods and tailor their techniques to the unique needs of individual group members (Ellis & Ellis, 2019a).

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Cognitive Methods of REBT in Groups

From a cognitive perspective, REBT demonstrates to clients that their irrational beliefs and their self-talk derived from these beliefs create emotional disturbances. Various techniques are used to dispel these self-defeating cognitions and teach people how to acquire a rational approach to living. Some of the cognitive methods often used in REBT groups are described next.

Teaching the A-B-Cs of REBT The A-B-C theory is taught to clients undergoing individual or group therapy. Group members are taught that no matter how or where they originally acquired their absolute "shoulds," "oughts," and "musts," they have the power now to begin to surrender these dysfunctional and irrational beliefs by disputing them and replacing them with rational beliefs. They are shown ways to apply the A-B-C theory to practical problems they encounter in everyday life. The A-B-Cs of their problems can be clearly and simply shown, easily grasped, and quickly put to use in therapy.

Active Disputation of Irrational Beliefs Group participants are taught how to check and modify their rigid beliefs about themselves, others, and life conditions. For example, members may cling to the extreme belief that everyone must think well of them or their self-esteem will be damaged beyond repair. In their active and didactic role, REBT leaders focus on disputing these faulty beliefs. For best results, very vigorous and ongoing disputation is required. Members evaluate their faulty thinking, and they also engage in a number of emotive methods (described later) as a way of deepening the impact of disputing beliefs.

Teaching Coping Self-Statements Group members are taught how to counter self-destructive beliefs and replace them with sensible, rational, coping self-statements. They are encouraged to monitor their manner of speaking by writing down and analyzing the nature of their language (i.e., whether it is rational or irrational). For example, Wilma might tell herself: "I *must* perform well, which means being perfect. People will give me approval and love only when I'm perfect, and I need this acceptance from others to feel worthwhile." By becoming aware of the demanding manner of her internal and external speech, Wilma can learn how what she tells herself is setting her up for failure. Wilma can replace these self-defeating statements with coping statements: "I choose to accept myself in spite of my imperfections. I don't have to do everything perfectly well to feel worthwhile as a person."

Psychoeducational Methods REBT and most cognitive behavior therapy programs take an educational approach with clients. Therapists educate group members about the nature of their problems and how treatment is likely to proceed. In REBT groups the members acquire skills in generalizing what they are learning in the group, so they can use these skills to solve present and future problems. Group leaders are interested in teaching members how to become their own therapists. Group members are more likely to cooperate with a treatment program if they understand how the group therapy process works and if they understand why particular techniques are being used (Ledley et al., 2018). REBT offers many resources for dealing with general emotional problems and specific concerns such as overcoming addictions, dealing with depression, managing anger, and becoming assertive.

Cognitive Homework Those who participate in REBT groups are given cognitive homework assignments that focus on ways to apply the A-B-C theory to many of the problems in daily life. Members may be given the "REBT Self-Help Form" (reproduced in the *Student Manual* in the Online Student Resources), on which they list their irrational beliefs. In an adjoining column they write down a disputing statement for each irrational belief. In another column they record an effective rational belief to replace the irrational belief. Finally, they record the feelings and behaviors that they experienced after arriving at an effective rational belief. During the week, group members record and think about how their beliefs contribute to their personal problems, and they work hard at uprooting these self-defeating cognitions. When they return to the group, members may bring up specific situations in which they did well or in which they experienced difficulty.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Emotive Methods in REBT Groups

As we have seen, REBT is a multimodal approach that uses several cognitive, behavioral, and emotive methods to bring about change (Ellis, 1994; Ellis & Ellis, 2019a). Emotive techniques include unconditional acceptance, rational-emotive imagery, the use of humor, and shame-attacking exercises (Ellis, 2005a). Emotive techniques tend to be vivid and evocative in nature, and their main purpose is to encourage clients to dispute their irrational beliefs. Group leaders teach members that once they have achieved intellectual insight a variety of other methods can be used to change their thoughts, behavior, and feelings. These methods are explored in more detail in the following sections.

Unconditional Acceptance Group members often burden themselves with fears of not being "good enough" and of being "discovered" for what they think they really are and then being rejected. Group leaders can model an accepting attitude that goes beyond what members have done or felt. This kind of REBT-flavored unconditional acceptance creates a group atmosphere that enables members to feel personally accepted. In addition, group leaders teach clients the how-to's of identifying and challenging their irrational beliefs and thereby change self-defeating behaviors.

Rational-Emotive Imagery In the technique of **rational-emotive imagery (REI)**, group members are asked to vividly imagine one of the worst things that might happen to them and are shown how to train themselves to develop healthy emotions in place of disruptive ones. Members work actively to implicitly exchange their irrational beliefs for rational ones, thereby changing their behavior in the situation. The group therapist's role is to verify that these emotional changes are in fact produced by implicit belief changes. For example, leaders can encourage group members to vividly imagine that they keep failing and keep getting criticized and to recognize the extreme feelings of inadequacy these images create. Then members are shown how to change their feelings to regret and disappointment instead of feelings of worthlessness. Members practice this process for at least 30 days in a row until they have trained themselves to feel regretful and disappointed automatically when they experience failure instead of feeling devastated. Members might imagine some of their worst fears coming true. Within the group, they can share these fears, gain some emotional insight into how such fears control much of what they do and say, and eventually learn to respond in different ways. Imagery work is a safe prelude to actually confronting one's fears in daily life (Ellis, 2001a).

Use of Humor Humor has both cognitive and emotional benefits in bringing about change. When people disturb themselves, Ellis (2001a) believes they tend to lose their sense of humor and take themselves far too seriously. One of the main ways REBT combats the kind of exaggerated thinking that leads people into trouble is by using a good deal of humor. Group members are encouraged to laugh—not at themselves but at their self-defeating beliefs. Leaders use humor to show group members how self-defeating some of their irrational ideas actually are (Ellis & Ellis, 2019a). Although introducing humor inappropriately or too soon in a group can present problems, once trust has been established, the members are generally far more ready to see the folly of some of their ways and can enjoy laughing at some of their behaviors. (For a more detailed discussion of humor and comical songs, see Ellis, 2001a, and Ellis & Ellis, 2019a.)

Shame-Attacking Exercises The rationale underlying **shame-attacking exercises** is the belief that emotional disturbances related to the self are often characterized by feelings of shame, guilt, anxiety, and depression. The more that people directly face and deal with the irrational beliefs behind these feelings, the less likely they are to remain emotionally disturbed. Group members frequently admit that they are inhibiting themselves from doing many things they would like to do because of their fear of what others might think and their need for approval (Ellis, 2005a). Members in REBT groups are often encouraged to participate in risk-taking activities as a way to challenge their fears of looking foolish, but leaders discourage members from doing anything that is illegal, immoral, or that will unduly alarm other people. For example, clients may wear "loud" clothes designed to attract attention, sing loudly, or ask a silly question at a lecture. Practitioners employ shame-attacking exercises to teach group participants

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

to accept themselves in spite of reactions from others. These exercises are aimed at increasing unconditional self-acceptance, and they help members see that much of what they think of as being shameful has to do with the way they define reality for themselves. The main thing clients learn from shame-attacking exercises is that disapproval does not have to affect their worth or change them, nor does the fear of disapproval have to prevent them from doing things they consider right or enjoyable.

Behavioral Methods in REBT Groups

REBT group practitioners can choose from and employ the entire range of cognitive behavioral techniques. According to Ellis (1996, 2001a), the behavioral methods of REBT work best when they are used in combination with emotive and cognitive methods. Also, self-management methods work best when clients choose to control their own behavior rather than allowing themselves to be controlled by the leader.

Role Playing There are emotional, cognitive, and behavioral components in role playing. One way of assisting group members to experience and cope with feelings of fear is to ask them to reverse roles. For example, if Michael is experiencing anxiety over an upcoming job interview, he can assume the role of the interviewer. Michael can also play himself in both a fearful stance and in a confident manner. Rather than having members simply talk about their problems or think about their beliefs, members become emotionally involved when they participate in a role-playing exercise. Not only can role playing bring objective insights and ease members' emotional disturbances, but it also provides opportunities for members to experiment with a host of new behaviors. In an REBT group, role playing also involves a cognitive evaluation of the feelings and beliefs that are experienced. Indeed, role playing can result in modifying a member's way of thinking, feeling, and behaving.

Homework Assignments Members of REBT groups are encouraged to practice and work hard outside of the therapy sessions as a pathway to personal change. Activity-oriented homework assignments are frequently negotiated to help group participants make the changes they desire. Negotiating and collaborating on choosing homework assignments is more effective than a leader unilaterally prescribing tasks to carry out. Between-session assignments are carefully designed and agreed upon, and these assignments are aimed at getting members to carry out productive actions that will contribute to emotional and attitudinal change. It is also important to ask members to clarify what they are going to do and how often they will do tasks. Working outside of the group sessions can be even more valuable for clients than the work done during the sessions (Ledley et al., 2018). Group leaders assist members in rehearsing these assignments by asking them to imagine they are doing the assignment, and then leaders encourage members to carry these ideas into real life.

Group participants engage in the **PYA (Push Your Ass)** technique, deliberately forcing themselves to confront difficult tasks until they learn how to cope when encountering fearful situations. Partly by doing the fearful thing many times in carrying out their homework assignments, they eventually conquer their fears. These assignments, which are often suggested by the leader, may be carried out in the group itself or outside of it; in the latter case, the person reports the results to the group at the next session.

A typical group session often begins with members checking in on their homework assignments during the week. After homework is reviewed and discussed, members generally bring up some problem they want to explore, discuss their goals and plans, or report on their progress. During a group session, members' dysfunctional core beliefs are identified, they dispute these beliefs, and they learn rational coping statements. Then members formulate another homework assignment to continue practicing new beliefs and behaviors in everyday life.

Reinforcement Reinforcers can include reading a novel, watching a movie, going to a concert, or eating a favorite food. People can be taught to reinforce themselves with something they like after they have carried out a specific homework assignment that they have promised to do but tend to avoid doing. One of REBT's goals is to teach individuals better methods of self-management; compliance of members is essential to the success of this technique. Members' ultimate success depends on how effectively they can take

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

charge of their life beyond the group sessions. Using principles of reinforcement often helps members develop consistency in applying rational principles to the new problems they encounter. In this sense, they become their own therapists and continually teach themselves how to manage their lives.

Group Theories in Action: REBT Application*

I open the group by asking the eight members to participate in a check-in process as a way to design an agenda for the group session. I ask members to identify an irrational belief that they are aware of that gets in the way of them functioning as they would like. Faulty beliefs expressed by group members included the following:

- I must always make perfect interventions as a counselor.
- I must work all of the time because there is so much to be done. I cannot afford to take time to relax.
- I must have the approval of everyone. I will not feel confident if I meet with any lack of approval.
- I should not reach out to others. Instead, I need to take care of others.
- I am not a good wife, and for this I deserve to feel guilty.
- I must think and act rationally at all times or I will disappoint my family.
- I must be perfect in everything I do. There is no room for making mistakes.
- I should not call attention to myself.

I ask group members to take a few moments and imagine that they have replaced their faulty belief with a functional and rational belief. Members are asked to reflect on how their life would be different if they made this cognitive shift. Then I ask if anyone wants to do some work on the belief they hold. Lupe says she wants to work on her belief that she can never let down and that she must always be on call. I ask if Lupe is willing to carry out an experiment in the group that involves disputing her beliefs. She agrees, and I set up a role-playing exercise. I ask Lupe to express the part of her that she is so familiar with—the side that relentlessly pushes her to work more and more. I take on another side in this role play, and I do my best to convince her that work does not have to be the only thing in her life. We have a number of exchanges, and then I suggest a reverse role play in which she expresses more rational, kinder beliefs and challenges my persistent irrational belief that she must work harder. The aim of this technique is to enable Lupe to become more aware of her beliefs and to examine her self-talk. We then talk about any new insights and how to implement a new way of thinking in her daily life. I encourage other members to step up and do some work disputing beliefs that get in the way of their effective functioning. Role playing typically brings more vitality into the work and is far more impactful than a member simply talking about a problematic belief. Doing this kind of work in a group session is a catalyst for members to begin thinking more often about how certain beliefs they hold can get in the way of effective functioning in their everyday life. REBT teaches group members how they can dispute beliefs that no longer serve them. Once members become aware of how some of their beliefs contribute to their distress, we begin the work of cognitive restructuring, creating new and more functional beliefs.

*The group session discussed here is based on the REBT group work segment in the video *Group Theories in Action*, which is included in the Online Student Resources.

Applying Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy to Group Work in Schools

REBT uses a variety of methods to reeducate clients that have direct applications to group counseling with students from grades K–12. REBT has been applied with children to address a wide spectrum of problems, including anxiety, anger, depression, school phobia, acting out, perfectionism, and underachievement (Vernon, 2004). Knaus (2014) believes schoolchildren can be taught rational principles to help them develop life skills they can apply when coping with emotional distress as well as skills that lead to health, happiness, and accomplishment. The principles and

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

methods of REBT are aimed at preventing emotional and behavioral problems, which makes it an ideal model for structuring psychoeducational groups in schools.

Groups oriented around key concepts in REBT are useful in dealing with problems at school, but they can also address problems students face in interpersonal relationships and in their home environment. A main benefit in a school setting is helping children and adolescents deal with situations that are beyond their control. Using the A-B-C framework, group leaders can help students identify their problematic beliefs and replace them with more functional beliefs. Group leaders teach students coping skills for daily living and assist students in modifying certain cognitions, emotions, and behaviors. In these educational groups, students soon learn that change is the result of practice and hard work outside of the group meetings.

One of the challenges of using REBT in school settings is assigning cognitive homework. Although deepening the work outside of the group setting can be particularly helpful, students are often already overwhelmed with homework from their teachers. School counselors should be thoughtful when assigning homework, and they should consider assigning cognitive homework that is accessible for students.

Applying Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy With Multicultural Populations

REBT has certain advantages in working with multicultural populations. If members are not challenged too quickly, they can be invited to examine the premises underlying their behavior. Consider a group composed of members from a culture that stresses doing one's best, cooperation, interdependence, respect for the family, and working hard. Some members of this group may be struggling with feelings of shame and guilt if they believe that they are not living up to the expectations set for them by their parents and families. Leaders who confront members' cultural values too directly and forcefully are likely to see counterproductive results. In fact, these clients may drop out of therapy, based largely on feeling misunderstood. A sensitive REBT group practitioner can support clients when they question how they may have uncritically accepted as truth all of the messages from their culture. Without encouraging them to abandon respect for their cultural heritage, the therapist can still encourage members to examine their beliefs and to understand the consequences of continuing in this way.

The REBT group leader functions in the role of a teacher. This image would seem ideal for certain cultural groups because it detracts from the stigma of being mentally ill and focuses on problems of living. Life can be more fulfilling if group participants learn better ways to think about the issues that confront them. With the help of the leader and other group members, participants learn new ways of thinking and behaving, which result in new feelings. Effective REBT practitioners encourage group members, as well as individual clients, to focus daily on what they can feel grateful for (D. Ellis, 2015). Focusing on the good in life, especially during tough times, can reduce or eliminate depression and other debilitating emotions. If leaders deem it helpful, they may disclose their experience of applying daily gratitude and the consequential benefits of doing so.

REBT can be a forceful approach, and the group leader must exert caution in interpreting certain beliefs as being irrational. Some active-directive practitioners had best be mindful that they don't adopt an overly authoritarian style, which is likely to result in neglecting important individual and multicultural influences and may result in resistance from group members (Ellis, 2001b). What may seem like an irrational belief to therapists may be a long-cherished value that influences the individual. It is critical that group leaders not err by imposing their own standards and values on group members.

Ellis (2001b) encourages social interest and believes that an essential part of life involves getting along with others because happiness can be influenced by the quality of their functioning within their community. REBT stresses the relationship of individuals to the family, community, and other systems. This orientation is consistent with valuing diversity and the interdependence of being an individual and a productive member of the community.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Evaluation of Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy in Groups

Contributions and Strengths of the Approach

Although I believe that events and significant people in our past play a critical role in shaping our present beliefs about ourselves, I agree with the REBT perspective that we have a role in maintaining faulty convictions. The fact that at one time we uncritically accepted certain premises does not have to stop us now from critically evaluating these faulty assumptions and replacing them with more effective beliefs, which will lead to different and more functional behavior. In this sense, REBT is based on the existential assumption that ultimately we can choose to feel free and responsible rather than being controlled by our past conditioning. Groups are a particularly useful format for both exploring the ways in which we have bought into self-defeating beliefs and providing a climate in which we can try out new and constructive beliefs and behaviors.

I often ask group members to identify and explore the beliefs or assumptions that underlie the problems they are experiencing. I am likely to raise some of these questions: "Does this belief really make sense to you now?" "What would your life be like if you continued to live by these assumptions?" "How do you think you would be different if you could change some of these basic beliefs?" "What actions can you take now, in this group and in your everyday life, that will help you change some of the beliefs you hold?"

Another contribution of REBT relates to training group leaders. REBT can be used effectively in helping trainees learn how to identify and challenge their internal dialogue, which sometimes creates self-doubt and blocks optimal functioning. Corey et al. (1998) provide some examples of the self-talk that blocks the effectiveness of students who are learning how to facilitate groups:

- I *must* have love and approval from all the members in my group and from my coleader and my supervisor. My worth as a counselor and as a person is dependent on the affirmation of all of these people.
- As a group facilitator, I *must* always perform competently and perfectly. There is no room for mistakes, for this implies failing, and notable failure always means that I am a failure.
- If I do not get what I want from each member, it is terrible and I *cannot stand it.* The group *must* act the way I want when I want it.
- I absolutely *should* always know what to say, and it is *essential* that I have the right answers.
- I *must* be the perfect role model for all my group members.
- I fear that I may look foolish, and this *must* never happen!
- I *must* have the right technique for each situation, or else everything might fall flat, and the consequences would be a disaster.

In your work as a group leader, it is likely that you will discover a core of dysfunctional beliefs that affect both your personal life and the manner in which you lead your groups. By using some of the concepts and methods of REBT, you can learn how to transform dysfunctional thinking into more productive beliefs. The more capable you are of exploring your own self-limiting thoughts, the more able you will be to challenge the thought patterns of the members of your groups (Corey et al., 1998).

Like any other action-oriented approach, REBT emphasizes the importance of putting our newly acquired insights into action. REBT's use of the homework method is an excellent avenue for translating insights into concrete action programs. These assignments do not have to be "given" by the leader; members can be encouraged to set personally meaningful tasks for themselves. From my perspective, it is essential that homework assignments be tailored to members' specific problems and that these activities be collaboratively developed by both the leader and the member.

Once members have identified unsupported conclusions and faulty beliefs, they can be encouraged to record and think about how their beliefs contribute to their personal problems. In this way, members can work diligently at critically examining their self-defeating cognitions. When members come to the next group session, they can bring up specific situations in which they did

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

well or in which they experienced difficulty. As members consistently question the actual evidence for situations they encounter, they become more effective in evaluating their beliefs and behavior. By working outside of the group, members are using the group as a means to an end. Members learn how to generalize their learning from one problem to another and how to apply what they are learning in the group to everyday life.

Limitations of the Approach

A major reservation I have with regard to REBT concerns the dangers inherent in an inexperienced or ineffective therapist's persuasive stance and the possibility of imposing the leader's values on the members. Coercion of members may be more likely to occur in REBT than in less directive approaches. An effective leader using REBT enlists members' input in making determinations about what they consider to be constructive or problematic beliefs. The effective leader guides the process so that members can question certain beliefs and assume an active role in the therapeutic process. Members may be subjected to group pressure from an ineffective group leader and from other members to change their thinking, even if they are not yet convinced that they hold faulty beliefs. An effective REBT group leader is alert and guards against this happening. REBT is easy to practice poorly, which means that there is no substitute for adequate training and supervision in this approach. The therapist's level of knowledge, training, perceptiveness, and accuracy of judgment are particularly important.

Ellis and Ellis (2019b) state that "REBT practitioners often employ a rapid-fire active-directive-persuasive philosophical methodology. In most instances, they quickly pin clients down to a few basic dysfunctional beliefs" (p. 176). However, the effective therapist will adopt a more gentle style if this will enhance the client's receptivity. A possible disadvantage of an indiscriminate active-directive approach is that clients may feel pressured to adopt goals and values that the therapist puts forth as opposed to operating within the framework of their own value system. Furthermore, active-directive therapy can result in the therapist exercising excessive amounts of power and responsibility, which disrupts the collaborative and cooperative client-therapist relationship. Some ineffective group leaders may make it their task to decide what specific beliefs of members are irrational and what needs to be changed, and doing so can be unethical. The therapeutic alliance is essential for the effective practice of REBT. Present-day REBT counselors place value on establishing rapport and maintaining a strong working alliance (Ellis & Ellis, 2019a).

It is well to underscore that REBT can be done by many people in a manner different from Ellis's style, as he himself encouraged (Ellis & Ellis, 2019a, p. 51). It is worth distinguishing between the principles and techniques of REBT and Ellis's somewhat confrontational way of using them. A therapist can be soft-spoken and gentle and still use REBT concepts and methods. REBT is not prescriptive when it comes to adopting a therapeutic style. Different group members will require different therapeutic styles. Even with the same individual it is often necessary to tailor the approach differently at times.

Self-Reflection and Discussion Questions

1. If you were leading a group composed of members with culturally diverse backgrounds, what REBT techniques might be particularly effective? What aspects of this approach would be most appropriate for working with culturally diverse clients?
2. Think of an event in your life that you found disturbing. Apply the A-B-C model and reflect on how you could interpret this event differently by changing your beliefs (B) about the event. What personal applications of this way of thinking can you use to put a problem into perspective?
3. What is one cognitive technique you would like to employ in a group you are leading? To what degree do you agree with the premise that if people change their thinking it is likely that emotional and behavioral changes will follow?

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4. REBT group practitioners use active cognitive methods such as disputing, teaching, and persuading to get group members to substitute a rational belief system for an irrational one. How comfortable are you in assisting members in disputing their faulty beliefs?

5. Homework assignments are a basic part of REBT group counseling. How can you collaboratively create assignments that members can carry out both in the group and in daily life? What value do you place on homework as a part of group work?

Where to Go From Here

Debbie Joffe Ellis teaches REBT at Columbia University Teachers College in New York City, and she also offers REBT workshops and trainings throughout the United States and around the globe. Her website includes articles, videos, and a Self-Care Form. In addition to her book on REBT, the APA produced a DVD titled *Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy* (D. Ellis, 2014) as part of their Systems of Psychotherapy series, in which she describes and demonstrates this approach.

Debbie Joffe Ellis
Website: www.debbiejoffeellis.com
For information about REBT, check out the following resources:

Ellis REBT
Website: www.ellisrebt.co.uk

REBT Network
Website: www.rebtnetwork.org

Videos on REBT
Videos: www.psychotherapy.net/videos/approach/rebt

Recommended Supplementary Readings

Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy (Ellis & Ellis, 2019a) is a concise presentation of the basic concepts, philosophy, and methods of the approach.

All Out! An Autobiography (Ellis, 2010) captures glimpses of Ellis's personal and professional life. The book describes the way he coped with life's difficulties, his work in developing REBT, and his personal reflections.

The Myth of Self-Esteem (Ellis, 2005a) focuses on unconditional acceptance and highlights REBT's views along with the philosophical views on that topic by other eminent thinkers and writers.

Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy: It Works for Me—It Can Work for You (Ellis, 2004a) is a personal book that describes the many challenges Ellis has faced in his life and how he has coped with these realities by applying REBT principles.

The Road to Tolerance: The Philosophy of Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy (Ellis, 2004b) is a companion book to the book listed above. Ellis demonstrates that tolerance is a deliberate, rational choice that we can make, both for the good of ourselves and for the good of others.

Video

Watch Gerald Corey's *Group Theories in Action*, video via the Cengage eBook. The group session discussed in this chapter is based on an integrative approach to group counseling.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

References and Suggested Readings

Corey, G., Ellis, A., & Cooker, P. G. (1998). Challenging the internal dialogue of group counselors. *Journal of the Mississippi Counseling Association, 16*(1), 36–44.

Ellis, A. (1994). *Reason and emotion in psychotherapy* (Rev. ed.). Citadel.

Ellis, A. (1996). *Better, deeper, and more enduring brief therapy: The rational emotive behavior therapy approach*. Brunner/Mazel.

Ellis, A. (1997). The evolution of Albert Ellis and rational emotive behavior therapy. In J. K. Zeig (Ed.), *The evolution of psychotherapy: The third conference* (pp. 69–82). Brunner/Mazel.

*Ellis, A. (2001a). *Feeling better, getting better, and staying better*. Impact.

*Ellis, A. (2001b). *Overcoming destructive beliefs, feelings, and behaviors*. Prometheus Books.

Ellis, A. (2003). Similarities and differences between rational emotive behavior therapy and cognitive therapy. *Journal of Cognitive Psychotherapy, 17*(3), 225–240.

*Ellis, A. (2004a). *Rational emotive behavior therapy: It works for me—It can work for you*. Prometheus Books.

*Ellis, A. (2004b). *The road to tolerance: The philosophy of rational emotive behavior therapy*. Prometheus Books.

Ellis, A. (2005a). *The myth of self-esteem*. Prometheus Books.

Ellis, A. (2005b). Discussion of Christine A. Padesky and Aaron T. Beck, "Science and philosophy: Comparison of cognitive therapy and rational emotive behavior therapy." *Journal of Cognitive Psychotherapy, 19*(2), 181–185.

*Ellis, A. (2010). *All out! An autobiography*. Prometheus Books.

*Ellis, A., & Ellis, D. J. (2019a). *Rational emotive behavior therapy* (2nd ed.). American Psychological Association.

*Ellis, A., & Ellis, D. J. (2019b). Rational emotive behavior therapy. In D. Wedding & R. J. Corsini (Eds.), *Current psychotherapies* (11th ed., pp. 157–198). Cengage Learning.

Ellis, D. J. (2014). *Rational emotive behavior therapy* [video]. American Psychological Association.

*Ellis, D. J. (2015). Reflections: The profound impact of gratitude in times of ease and times of challenge. *Journal of Spirituality in Clinical Practice, 2*(1), 96–100.

Knaus, W. (2014). Group rational emotive and cognitive behavioral therapy. In J. Carlson & W. Knaus (Eds.), *Albert Ellis revisited* (pp. 86–89). Taylor & Francis.

*Ledley, D. R., Marx, B. P., & Heimberg, R. G. (2018). *Making cognitive-behavioral therapy work: Clinical processes for new practitioners* (3rd ed.). Guilford Press.

Padesky, C. & Beck, A. T. (2003). Science and philosophy: Comparison of cognitive therapy and rational emotive behavior therapy. *Journal of Cognitive Psychotherapy, 17*(3), 211–224.

Vernon, A. (2004). Using cognitive behavioral techniques. In B. T. Erford (Ed.), *Professional school counseling: A handbook of theories, programs & practices* (pp. 91–99). CAPS Press.

Books and articles marked with an asterisk (*) are suggested for further study.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 14

Choice Theory/Reality Therapy in Groups*

Learning Objectives

1. Understand the concept and clinical implications of the principles of total behavior.
2. Identify the role and functions of the reality therapy group leader.
3. Examine the basic assumptions, unique characteristics, and goals of reality therapy.
4. Explain how the WDEP model can be applied to the practice of group work.
5. Describe the elements of a realistic and effective action plan.
6. Understand how to evaluate an action plan in a group setting.
7. Describe how a reality therapy group is particularly appropriate with mandated group members.
8. Explain the rationale for designing relapse prevention strategies in a group.
9. Identify the strengths and limitations of reality therapy group work in a multicultural context.
10. Examine the contributions and strengths of choice theory/reality therapy to group work.

Introduction

Like many of the founders of therapeutic approaches described in this book, William Glasser was immersed in Freudian psychology during his training. He quickly became disenchanted with this approach, however, and began to experiment with alternative methods, which later came to be called reality therapy. The essence of choice theory/reality therapy, now taught all around the world, is that we are responsible for what we choose to do. Because problems express themselves in the present, reality therapy emphasizes discussions about current wants, perceptions, and behaviors. Glasser believed we can only control what we are presently doing. We may be the product of our past, but we are not the victims of our past unless we so choose.

Choice theory/reality therapy is based on the assumption that people strive to gain control of their lives to fulfill their needs. Like cognitive behavioral therapy, rational emotive behavior therapy, and solution-focused brief therapy, reality therapy is empathic, active, directive, structured, psychoeducational, and focuses on *doing*

*I appreciate Robert Wubbolding's review and additional commentary to keep this chapter current.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

William Glasser

Ernie Leyba/The Denver Post/Getty Images

WILLIAM GLASSER (1925–2013), initially a chemical engineer, turned to psychology and then to psychiatry, attending medical school with the intention of becoming a psychiatrist. By 1957 he had completed his psychiatric training at the Veterans Administration and the University of California–Los Angeles, and in 1961 Glasser was board certified in psychiatry.

Very early Glasser rejected the Freudian model, partly due to his observation that psychoanalytically trained therapists did not seem to be implementing Freudian principles. Rather, they tended to hold people responsible for their behavior. Early in his career, Glasser was a psychiatrist at the Ventura School, a prison and school for girls operated by the California Youth Authority. He became convinced that his psychoanalytic training was of limited utility in counseling these young people. Glasser concluded that it is best to talk to the sane part of clients rather than to their disturbed side. In his biography of Glasser, Jim Roy (2014) states that Glasser believed that even mental patients needed to be "nudged and invited and pulled toward success. Glasser was convinced that a positive relationship in their lives must be a part of this nudging and inviting" (p. 103).

Glasser's (1965) groundbreaking book, *Reality Therapy*, created a stir among professional people. Through his experience and research in a mental hospital and a correctional institution, Glasser came to believe that people choose their behavior and thus are able to alter it. His colleagues in psychiatry did not readily accept his work, but counselors, social workers, and educators welcomed his contributions enthusiastically and began implementing his approach in schools, clinics, and correctional institutions. A consistent theme for Glasser was the idea that human relationships are central for effective mental health programs. Reality therapy continues to be applied in education and to virtually all other human relationships, especially intimate relationships.

Glasser was married to Naomi for 47 years, and she was very involved with the William Glasser Institute until her death in 1992. In 1995 Glasser married Carleen, who is an instructor at the institute. On August 23, 2013, Glasser died peacefully in his home with his wife Carleen and his son Martin by his bedside.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Robert E. Wubbolding

Courtesy Robert E. Wubbolding

ROBERT E. WUBBOLDING (b. 1936), born and raised in Cincinnati, Ohio, is the youngest of six children. He received his doctorate in counseling from the University of Cincinnati and holds licenses as a counselor, a psychologist, and a board certified coach. He taught high school history, worked as a high school and elementary school counselor, and served as a consultant to drug and alcohol abuse programs for the U.S. Army and Air Force. Wubbolding also had a career in the Catholic priesthood. He resigned from the clergy "freely and honorably" while retaining his religious commitment, which provided the foundation for a life characterized by his service to others.

Upon completing his doctorate, Wubbolding sought to achieve a deeper knowledge of various counseling theories. He attended training sessions representing a wide range of counseling approaches, but he found reality therapy was best suited to his interests. Wubbolding attended many intensive training workshops conducted by William Glasser in Los Angeles, and in 1987 Glasser appointed Wubbolding director of training for the William Glasser Institute, a position he held until 2011. Wubbolding has extended the theory and practice of reality therapy with his formulation of the WDEP system, which is a summary of reality therapy.

Wubbolding served as visiting professor at the University of Southern California in their overseas programs in Japan, Korea, and Germany, fulfilling his lifelong desire to travel and to live in other countries. He is an internationally known teacher, author, and practitioner of reality therapy and has introduced choice theory and reality therapy in Europe, Asia, and the Middle East. Among his specialties is adapting choice theory and reality therapy to various cultures and ethnic groups. He received the Gratitude Award for Initiating Reality Therapy in the United Kingdom in 2009. At that same time, the European Association of Psychotherapy awarded him the Certificate of Reality Therapy Psychotherapist.

He is now the director of the Center for Reality Therapy in Cincinnati and professor emeritus at Xavier University, where he taught counselor education for 32 years. He is married to Sandra Trifilio, a former French teacher, who shares his passion for his work. She is the administrator of the Center for Reality Therapy in Cincinnati and is the editor of his writings. Wubbolding has written 18 books and more than 150 articles and 40 chapters in textbooks.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and *action plans.* Attitudes, feelings, insight, transference, one's past, or unconscious motivations receive little attention. Reality therapy helps clients address problems and cope with the demands of the world around them and deal with their inner conflicts by making more effective choices. People can improve the quality of their life through honestly examining their wants, needs, perceptions, and choices. Group members are challenged by the leader and other members to evaluate their current behavior, formulate plans for change, commit themselves to their plans, and follow through with their commitments.

From the 1960s to the late 1970s, reality therapy was aimed at putting a few basic concepts of the approach to work in a variety of settings, such as correctional institutions, schools, private practice, marital and family therapy, group work, and counseling in community clinics. In the early 1980s Glasser utilized control theory, or control systems theory, as an explanation for human behavior, which served as the foundation for the practice of reality therapy. In March 1996, he renamed this approach **choice theory**, the view that people are internally motivated, choose almost all of their own behavior in life, and create their own destiny.

The basic premise of Glasser's (2001, 2005, 2011) choice theory is that the source of almost all clients' problems is the lack of satisfying present relationships. In short, Glasser believed the core problem most of us experience is an inability to get along with others. Furthermore, because the core of choice theory is that most of our actions have at least an element of choice in them, we can learn to make better choices. **Reality therapy** applies key concepts of choice theory to help individuals take more effective control of their life. This chapter focuses on how the key concepts of choice theory are implemented in the practice of reality therapy in groups.

Key Concepts

Human Needs and Purposeful Behavior

Choice theory is built on the notion that human behavior is purposeful and originates from within the individual rather than from external forces. We are motivated by innate forces, and all of our behavior is aimed at fulfilling basic needs. Glasser (1998, 2001, 2005) and Wubbolding (2011, 2013, 2017) identify five essential human needs: survival, love and belonging, power, freedom, and fun. *Survival*, or self-preservation, is concerned with maintaining life and good health. *Love and belonging* is the need for involvement with people and the need for loving others and being loved. *Power*, or inner control, is the need for achievement and accomplishment, or the need for a sense of being in charge of one's own life. *Freedom*, or independence, is the need to make choices. *Fun*, or enjoyment, involves the need to enjoy life, to laugh, and to experience humor. Choice theory is based on the premise that all of our behavior is basically an attempt to control the world around us for the purpose of satisfying these five basic needs, which are built into our genetic structure. Individuals often inquire about the possibility of additional needs. In discussing this issue, Wubbolding (2017) states that "choice theory is best viewed as an open system, flexible enough to incorporate additions. Some counselors add the need for faith or for a higher power. Viktor Frankl saved his own life with the belief that the most fundamental human need is a sense of meaning and purpose" (p. 9).

We each fulfill the five basic needs in our own way. For example, we all have a need for love, but some people need more love than others. We develop an inner **picture album** (or quality world) of specific wants related to our needs as well as precise ways to satisfy these wants. We choose to behave in a way that we believe gives us the most effective control over our lives, which means being able to behave in a way that reasonably satisfies the pictures in our quality world (Glasser, 1998, 2011; Wubbolding, 2017).

People behave with purpose, molding their environment as a sculptor molds clay, to match their own inner pictures of what they want. An essential part of choice theory and reality therapy is teaching people about their needs and how they can more effectively meet these needs. These goals are achievable only through consistent effort and hard work (Wubbolding, 2013, 2017). We have a significant degree of control over our lives, and the more effectively we put this control into action, the more fulfilled we will be. The essence of reality therapy in groups

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

consists of teaching members to help each other to accept responsibility through effective choices.

Choice theory explains that we do not satisfy our needs directly. What we do, beginning shortly after birth and continuing all our lives, is to keep close track of anything we do that feels good and to store this knowledge in a special place in our brain called our **quality world**. This world is our personal Shangri-La—the world we would like to live in if we could. Although based on the general needs we all share, this world is very specific. We need love, and we put images or pictures of the actual people we want to love in our quality world. People are, by far, the most important components of this world, and these are the people with whom we most want to connect. We also insert pictures related to our other needs: power, freedom, and fun.

Choice theory provides an explanation for human motivation; reality therapy is the delivery system. In fact, Wubbolding prefers to describe the needs as "human motivators" (personal correspondence, February 15, 2021). If choice theory is the highway, reality therapy is the vehicle delivering the product (Wubbolding, 2011). In explaining the relationship between choice theory and reality therapy, Glasser and Glasser (2008) stated, "Choice theory is the train track and reality therapy is the train" (p. 1). Choice theory and reality therapy emphasize connection and interpersonal relationships and are well suited for various kinds of group counseling. Groups provide members with many opportunities for exploring ways to meet their needs through the relationships formed within the group.

Existential/Phenomenological Orientation

Choice theory is grounded on phenomenological and existential premises. We perceive the world in the context of our own needs, not as it really is. It is important for group counselors to teach members the difference between the world as they perceive it and the world as other people perceive it. Choice theory is based on the existential assumption that it is possible for people to learn to replace external control psychology with internal control psychology.

In addition to the focus on internal control and on the subjective world, contemporary choice theory continues to have a strong existential orientation. We are viewed as choosing our own goals and as being responsible for the kind of world we create for ourselves. We are not helpless victims; we can create a better life. Reality therapists do not accept the notion that misery simply happens to us; rather, it is something that we sometimes choose, not because we want to suffer but because suffering may give us more control over our lives. Suffering often appears to be the only choice available, and people are quick to complain that they are upset because others are not behaving as they would like them to behave. It is a powerful lesson for people to recognize that they choose their behaviors, including feeling miserable and thinking that they are victims. Some psychological pain can be lessened by making more effective choices, such as selecting friends who do not argue, blame, or criticize but accept us unconditionally.

Glasser (1998, 2001, 2003) speaks of people *depressing* or *angering* themselves rather than being depressed or being angry. By adding the "ing" word ending, Glasser replaces a static state with an active one and emphasizes that feelings are behaviors that are generated. With this perspective, depression can be explained as an active choice that we make rather than the result of being a passive victim. This process of "depressing" keeps anger in check, and it also allows us to ask for help. As long as we cling to the notion that we are victims of depression and that misery is something that happens to us, Glasser contends that we will not change for the better. If we want to stop choosing a painful behavior such as depressing, we can change what we want, change what we are doing, or change both. Wubbolding (personal correspondence, February 15, 2021) explains that using "ing" words separates the behavior from the person by placing it outside the individual and therefore facilitating alternative choices. He says, "I am not identical with my feelings or my thoughts. I am a person who thinks and who feels and therefore can generate feelings and thoughts different from and more helpful than what I am experiencing now."

Total Behavior

A basic assumption of choice theory is that we always have control over what we do (Glasser, 1998, 2001, 2005). Wubbolding (personal correspondence,

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

February 15, 2021) adds that we have more control over what we do than we at first *think* we have. In addition, there are degrees of control over our actions. This premise is clarified in the context of understanding our **total behavior**, which includes four inseparable, but distinct, components: *acting* (things we do such as talking or jogging), *thinking* (voluntary thoughts and self-statements), *feeling* (such as anger, joy, depression, anxiety), and *physiology* (such as sweating, "headaching," or developing other psychosomatic symptoms). Although these behaviors are interrelated, one of them is often more prominent than the others (Wubbolding, 2017).

If we think of our behavioral choices as analogous to a car, the motor represents the basic needs; the steering wheel allows us to steer the car in the direction of our quality world; acting, thinking, feeling, and physiology are the wheels. Acting and thinking, both more explicitly chosen, are the front wheels; they steer the car. Feeling and physiology are the back wheels, which have to follow the front wheels. They cannot be independently or directly steered any more than we can directly choose how we feel or our physiology.

Choice theory is grounded on the assumption that it is impossible to choose a total behavior and not choose all of its components. Although all total behavior is chosen, we have direct control over only the *acting* and *thinking* components. If we hope to change a total behavior (such as experiencing the emotional and physiological consequences of depressing ourselves), it is necessary to change what we are doing and what we are thinking. Reality therapists accept that people feel badly or that their physiology may not be healthy, as in a psychosomatic disease. However, they do not focus on these components because they cannot be directly changed. For example, we might feel upset and then depress ourselves if we fail to get a job for which we applied. We do not have the ability to directly change how we are feeling independently of what we are doing or thinking. But we can change what we are doing, and we have some ability to change what we are thinking, in spite of how we might be feeling. Therefore, the best way to change a total behavior lies in choosing to change how we are acting, for these are the behaviors we can control. If we markedly change what we are doing, then it is more likely that the thinking, feeling, and physiological components will change as well (Glasser, 1998, 2001, 2011).

The Essence of Choice Theory

Choice theory teaches that the only person whose behavior we can control is our own. The only way we can control events in our environment is through what we choose to do. How we feel is not controlled by others or by events. We are not psychological slaves to others, nor are we trapped by our past or present—unless we choose to be. By focusing on the past or on their symptoms, clients can avoid talking about their present unhappy relationships. Although the past may have contributed to a current problem, an axiom of choice theory is that the past is less a problem than current dysfunctional relationships. Wubbolding (personal correspondence, February 15, 2021) cites William Faulkner, the great American novelist, who stated that the past is never dead. In fact, it is not even past. Oftentimes cognition and emotions are present even though the event that assaulted the client took place in the past. Regardless of what occurred in the past, to function effectively we need to live and plan in the present.

Glasser (2005) contends that almost all symptoms are caused by a present unhappy relationship. Our task is to do what we can to correct our present relationships. For example, if we have had an unsatisfying relationship in the past—perhaps due to being abandoned by a parent as a child—what actually happened cannot be changed. All we have control over is our own behavior, and all we can do is try to change our present actions so that we can get along with people we now need. Reality group therapists often say this to members: "Because the past is over, it can't be changed. Instead of talking about the past, it is more helpful to discuss your current situation and search for effective ways to deal with it."

What are the implications of choice theory for the practice of reality therapy group counseling? Group leaders can help members recognize that what they are doing is not working for them, help them accept themselves as they are, and guide them in making realistic plans to do better and to help others in the group to do the same. Practitioners provide help through skillful questioning that is aimed at getting members to assess what they want. If group leaders

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

are not skillful enough to get clients to see that their total behavior is not getting them what they want, therapy will not be effective.

Leaders need to confront, or challenge, members frequently with this basic reality therapy question: "Is what you are now choosing to do (your actions and thoughts) getting you what you want?" Here are some other questions often posed to members:

- Do you want to change?
- How would you most like to change your life?
- What do you want in your life that you are not getting?
- Is your current behavior getting you closer or further from people in your environment?
- If you changed, how would you feel better?
- What would you have in your life if you were to change?
- What do you have to do now to make the changes happen?

Members can more easily choose better behavior if they come to realize that what they are doing, thinking, and feeling is not simply happening to them but that they are, indeed, making choices.

Role and Functions of the Group Leader

Group leaders strive to establish an empathic and trusting therapeutic alliance, which is the foundation for the effective use of reality therapy. Once an effective therapeutic relationship has been established, reality therapists teach clients the basics of choice theory and its applications to their lives (Wubbolding, 2011, 2013, 2017). Reality therapy teaches that people are most able to gain effective control of their lives when they recognize and accept accountability for their own chosen behaviors and make better choices. The group leader helps participants understand that they have some control over their feelings by choosing to act and think differently (Wubbolding, 2019). The leader functions as a mentor by encouraging members to consider different choices in the following ways:

- Promotes discussion of members' current behavior and actively discourages excuses for irresponsible or ineffective behavior
- Assists members in exploring their perceptions, especially what they can and cannot control
- Helps members make an evaluation of their present behavior
- Introduces and fosters the process of evaluating which wants are realistically attainable
- Teaches members to formulate and carry out plans to change their behavior
- Helps members evaluate their level of commitment to their action plans
- Encourages members to identify how to continue making the changes they want once the group ends

Reality therapy group leaders assume a verbally active and directive role in the group. In carrying out their functions, they focus on the strengths and potentials of the members rather than on their misery. They assume that dwelling on limitations, problems, and failures tends to reinforce clients' low self-esteem and ineffective control. Therefore, they challenge members to look at their unused potential and to discover how to work toward more effective choices and, thus, more effective control.

Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures

The practice of reality therapy consists of two major components: (1) the counseling environment and (2) specific procedures that lead to changes in behavior. The art of counseling is to weave these components together in ways that encourage clients to evaluate their lives and decide to move in more effective directions. Wubbolding (2000, 2020) describes these two elements as the "cycle of counseling." The cycle illustrates that there is an overall sequence for translating choice theory into practice. The counseling environment, which consists of specific guidelines for implementing interventions, is the foundation upon which the procedures are built.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Several points are important to keep in mind. First, although the concepts discussed here may seem clear and simple as they are presented in written form, they are difficult to translate into therapeutic practice. It takes skill and creativity to apply these concepts successfully in group work. Although the principles will be the same when used by any certified reality therapist, the manner in which they are applied does vary depending on the therapist's style, skill, personal characteristics, and which part of reality therapy the therapist chooses to emphasize.

Reality therapy is a process, and it is a mistake to apply these methods in a rigid, step-by-step or "cookbook" fashion. There are no absolute patterns, questions, techniques, or timing that the therapist must follow. Guided by the principles of choice theory, group counselors tailor their interventions to what the group members present as topics they want to discuss. Although the leader does not operate with preordained techniques, moving in the direction of satisfying relationships is kept in the foreground.

The discussion that follows is an integrated summary and adaptation of material from various sources (Glasser, 1992, 1998, 2001; Wubbolding, 1988, 1991, 2000, 2009, 2011, 2013, 2017). In addition, the *Student Manual*, which is included in the Online Student Resources, contains a chart by Wubbolding (2020) that highlights issues and tasks to be accomplished at each of the stages of a reality therapy group.

Stages of a Reality Therapy Group

The stages of group development discussed earlier are quite applicable to reality therapy groups (see Chapters 4 and 5). During the *initial stage* of a reality therapy group, key leader functions include developing a safe psychological atmosphere, discussing informed consent, and exploring rules and boundaries. The practice of reality therapy begins with the group counselor's efforts to establish a safe climate as the basis for the effective use of interventions. To create this therapeutic climate, group counselors need to establish good working relationships with the members of the group by taking an interest in their lives and creating the rapport that will be the foundation of the therapeutic relationship. It is essential for the leader to see the world as the members see it. In a sense, this is the most important and demanding aspect of a group; in the absence of personal involvement there can be no effective therapy. When reality group therapy is ineffective, it is usually because genuine involvement has not been established. Caring on the part of the group leader can go a long way toward building the bonds of trust that are needed for clients to commit themselves to the challenges of making positive changes. When a working relationship is established, members are generally able to evaluate both what they want and the total behavior they are presently choosing.

When a group is in a *transition stage*, the leader will have to be prepared to deal effectively with anxiety, conflict, control issues, and ambivalence. At the *working stage*, the role of the leader includes encouraging feedback among members, helping members evaluate their level of commitment, assisting members in reframing failure, and encouraging the development of action plans. As is the case during the *final stage* of any group, important functions of the reality therapy group leader center around consolidation of learning and termination issues, such as dealing with feelings and thoughts about the ending of the group, completing unfinished business, and carrying learning further. Other aspects of the leader's role during the final stage involve helping members evaluate their action program, developing a future map that will help members deal with new problems, and assisting members in summarizing their perceptions of the future.

The Counseling Environment

Counselor Attitudes and Behaviors That Promote Change

Some of the approaches to establishing a therapeutic environment include using attending behavior, showing empathy, suspending judgment, doing the unexpected, using humor appropriately, being oneself as a counselor, engaging in facilitative self-disclosure, listening for metaphors in the client's mode of self-expression, listening for themes, summarizing and focusing, and being an ethical practitioner. The basis for effective therapeutic interventions rests on a fair, firm, friendly, and trusting environment.

In addition to the positive attributes counselors bring to establish a climate conducive to positive

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

change, group counselors who hope to create a therapeutic alliance avoid arguing, attacking, accusing, blaming, criticizing, coercing, condemning, demeaning, demanding, encouraging excuses, finding fault, and giving up easily (Wubbolding, 2017). Instead, the emphasis is on accepting group members as they are and encouraging them to focus on what they *can* control.

Group counselors hope to teach the members to value the attitude of accepting responsibility for their total behaviors. Thus they do not accept excuses for ineffective choices such as not doing what they said they would do. If members do not follow through with their plans for change, leaders do not ask fruitless questions about why the plan failed. Instead, they teach members that excuses are a form of self-deception that may offer temporary relief but will ultimately lead to failure and to the cementing of a failure identity. Counselors allow members to learn the consequences of their choices but never give up on the group members or on the WDEP system.

Procedures in a Reality Therapy Group: The WDEP System

Wubbolding (2000, 2009, 2011, 2013, 2017, 2020) uses an acronym—WDEP—to illustrate key procedures that can be applied in the practice of reality therapy groups. Grounded in choice theory, the **WDEP** system assists people in satisfying their basic needs. Each of the letters refers to a cluster of strategies designed to promote change: W = wants; D = direction and doing; E = self-evaluation; and P = planning. The WDEP framework involves a collaborative approach in which therapist and client join together in determining goals and plans of action.

Wants (W) Reality therapists assist clients in discovering their wants, needs, perceptions, hopes, and dreams. They ask, "What do you want?" Through the therapist's skillful questioning, clients are encouraged to recognize, define, and refine how they wish to meet their needs. The use of questioning is basic to the practice of this form of therapy. Well-timed and strategic questions can get members to think about what they want and to evaluate whether their behavior is leading them in the direction they want to go. Because reality therapy makes use of questioning to a greater degree than many other counseling approaches, it is important for group leaders to develop extensive questioning skills. The art of group counseling requires that leaders know *what* questions to ask, *how* to ask them, and *when* to ask them.

Questioning is often misused by group leaders. Some leaders' questions appear to have no point other than to keep the members talking. Those leaders use the question-and-answer technique mainly because they do not know what else to do. Excessive questioning can result in resistance and defensiveness on the part of group members. If questioning becomes the main technique a leader uses, it tends to create distance and keep the leader anonymous. Relationships are enhanced when questioning is combined with reflective thinking, checking perceptions, and other techniques.

Part of counseling consists of an exploration of clients' quality worlds and the ways in which their behavior is aimed at moving the external world closer to their inner world of wants. It is essential that this exploration continue throughout the entire group counseling process because the client's pictures change. Group members are given the opportunity to explore every facet of life, including what they want from their family, friends, and work. Furthermore, it is useful for members to define what they expect and want from the counselor and from themselves (Wubbolding, 2013, 2017).

Wubbolding believes that behavior is a language whose purpose is to help us get what we want from the world. A group leader can ask members what messages they are sending into the world by way of their actions with questions like these:

- What message do you want others to get?
- What message are others getting whether you want them to or not?

In a group, members explore what they want, what they have, and what they are not getting. Throughout the process, the focus is on getting members to make a self-evaluation to determine the direction in which their behavior is taking them. This assessment provides a basis for making specific changes that will enable the members to reduce their frustrations. Useful questions can help them pinpoint what they want: "What kind of person do you wish you were?"

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

"What would your family be like if your wants and their wants matched?" "What would you be doing if you were living the way you wished?" "Is this choice to your best short- and long-term advantage, and is it consistent with your values?" Wubbolding and Brickell (2009) now also include questions that focus on perceptions: "How do you look at the situation? Where do you see your control?" (p. 51). The purpose of these questions is to help clients move from a sense of external control to a sense of internal control. This line of questioning sets the stage for the application of other procedures in reality therapy.

Doing and Direction (D) After members explore their quality world (wants) and needs, they are asked to look at their current behavior to determine if what they are doing is getting them what they want. The group therapist assists members in describing in detail their total behavior (doing, thinking, feelings, and physiology). This heightened awareness and self-insight is a key step toward making changes.

The leader encourages discussion of past behaviors only if these events can be easily related to present situations or to help them plan for a better tomorrow. Although problems may originate in the past, they all occur in the present. Therefore, problems must be solved either in the present or through a plan for the future. When problems are solved, it is the result of clients learning how to modify their thinking and choosing better ways of acting than when they began therapy.

Reality therapists avoid endless discussions of clients' feelings or their physiological reactions as though these were separate from their total behavior. It is actions that result in an alteration of total behavior. Members are encouraged to discuss feelings in tandem with actions and thinking because reality therapists believe changing ways of acting and thinking is easier than changing feelings and of greater value in the therapeutic process. When members change their actions, their feelings and their thoughts often tend to change.

Part of this exploration involves a discussion of the internal self-talk that often relates to the choices an individual has made (Wubbolding, 2013, 2017). The group counselor relates members' feelings or physical symptoms to their concurrent actions and thoughts, over which they have more direct control. Although the counselor might encourage members to discuss feelings, the focus would clearly be on encouraging them to identify actions that accompany or support the feelings.

The aim of the emphasis on current behavior is to help group members understand their responsibilities for their own feelings. As a way of encouraging clients to look at what they are actually doing to contribute to their feelings, these questions might be asked:

- What are you doing now?
- What did you actually do this past week?
- What did you want to do differently this past week?

By having members focus on what they are doing, leaders are teaching members that they can gain conscious control over their behavior, can make choices, and can change their lives. Talk about how others are not living up to their expectations or how, if only the world would change, they could be happy, only solidifies members' victimlike position. Reality therapists listen to this talk for hints from clients indicating at least some sense of inner control and try to build on those actions (Wubbolding et al., 2012).

Self-Evaluation (E) It is the group leader's task to assist members in exploring their total behavior. Leaders confront members with the consequences of their behavior and get them to judge the quality of their actions. Members will not change their behaviors or make better choices until they evaluate their own behavior and make the determination that their current course of action is not helpful (Wubbolding, 2017). **Self-evaluation** requires clients to assess their current behavior to determine whether it is meeting their needs. This is the cornerstone of reality therapy procedures. "Will this choice get you where you want to go?" is a question often asked by reality therapists. After group members make an evaluation about the quality of their behavior, they can determine what may be contributing to their failures and what changes they can undertake to promote success.

It is important that group leaders remain nonjudgmental about members' behavior and do not assume responsibility for the individual in making these value judgments. Therapists best serve members

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

when they challenge them to stop, look, and listen. If therapists can stimulate client self-questioning, members will be more likely to begin to make changes. Asking members to evaluate each component of their total behavior is a major task in reality therapy. The skillful group leader directs and instructs members to help them learn how to evaluate their own behavior. Members might be asked questions such as these: "Is what you are doing helping or hurting you?" "Is your current behavior satisfying or unsatisfying to you?" "To what degree is what you are doing enhancing your relationships?"

Planning (P) Much of the work in reality therapy consists of helping members identify specific ways to change their failure choices into success choices. Once an individual has made an evaluation about his or her behavior and decided to change it, the group counselor is in a position to assist the member in developing a plan for behavioral changes. The best plan is one that is initiated by the client. The second best plan is one that is developed collaboratively by the therapist and the individual client. And the third best plan is one that is initiated by the therapist (Wubbolding, 2000, 2009). Regardless of who initiates the plan, the art of planning is to establish practical short-term goals that have a high probability of being successfully attained; these successes will positively reinforce the member's efforts to achieve long-range goals.

Planning for responsible behavior is an essential part of the process of a reality therapy group. This is clearly a teaching phase of therapy. Therefore, therapy is best directed toward providing members with new information and helping them discover more effective ways of getting what they want. A large portion of the therapy time consists of making plans and then checking to determine how these plans are working. In a group context, members learn how to plan realistically and responsibly through contact with both the other members and the leader. Members are encouraged to experiment with new behaviors, to try out different ways of attaining their goals, and to carry out an action program. It is important that these plans not be too ambitious because people need to experience success. The purpose of the plan is to arrange for successful experiences. Once a plan works, feelings of self-esteem will increase. Helpful plans are modest in the beginning and specific about what is to be done, when it will be done, and how often. In short, plans are meant to encourage clients to translate their talk and intentions into actions. Moreover, effective planning fits the requirements of mental health counseling. Fulkerson (2019) states, "In today's managed health care system, the clinician needs to ensure that treatment goals and objectives are related to the DSM Diagnoses, which describe the client's total behavior" (p. 7).

A plan that fulfills wants and needs is central to effective group counseling. The process of creating and carrying out plans enables people to gain effective control over their lives. Wubbolding (2017) summarizes the characteristics of a good plan as being simple, attainable, measurable, immediate, consistently implemented, controlled by the planner, and committed to. Wubbolding (2011, 2017) describes the characteristics of effective planning:

- Good plans are simple and easy to understand, realistically doable, positive rather than negative, dependent on the planner, specific, immediate, and repetitive.
- Effective planning involves process-centered activities. For example, members may say that they can do any of the following: pay their child three compliments, jog 30 minutes a day, devote 2 hours a week to volunteer work, or take a vacation that they have been wanting.
- In groups, the plan can be brought to the here-and-now by practicing a new way to relate to someone, by practicing saying "no," by practicing assertive behavior, or by learning to speak more courteously.
- Before members carry out a plan, it is a good idea to evaluate the plan in the group and get feedback from other members and the leader. After the plan has been carried out in real life, it is useful to evaluate it again. Members can return to the group and talk about the degree to which their plan has been successful. With input from the group, they can figure out what the plan might be lacking, how it needs to be more specific, or how it might need to be modified in some other way.
- For members to commit themselves to their plan, it is useful for them to firm it up by writing it down. Both the group leader and other members can help by providing reinforcement for an effective plan.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Most members do not formulate an ideal plan like the one just described. The better the plan, however, the better the chances are that members will attain their wants. Toward this end, it is essential that they commit themselves to following through with their plans.

Commitment Formulating even the most reasonable and practical plan is not of much value if the client lacks the willingness to implement it. Plans can be put in the form of a contract that will assist group members in holding themselves and others accountable for carrying them out.

Once individual members make plans and announce them, the group is in a position to help members evaluate and review these plans and to offer support and encouragement when needed. If individual members fall short of their commitments or in any way fail to implement their plans, that fact cannot be hidden from others or, more important, from themselves. Members who are able to follow through with their plans serve as models for the rest of the group. If their peers can do what they have set out to do, others may realize that they can succeed too.

Asking group participants to determine what they want for themselves, to make a self-evaluation, and to make a commitment to follow through with action plans includes assisting them in determining how intensely they are willing to work to attain the changes they desire. **Commitment** is the act of sticking to a realistic plan. This is not an all-or-nothing matter; commitment exists in degrees. Leaders can encourage members who have a low level of commitment to move in the direction of increasing their level of commitment to do what it takes to bring about change. It is essential that members who are reluctant to make a commitment be helped to express and explore their fears of failing. Members can be encouraged to begin each group session by reporting on the activities of the week, including the difficulties they encountered in sticking with their plans as well as the successes they had in trying out new behaviors in the real world. Just as in behavioral groups, where the buddy system is used, reality therapy can encourage members to make contacts with each other during the week if they have trouble sticking by their commitments.

Some group members may be unwilling to make any commitments. Therapists cannot force change, but they can help such group members look at what is stopping them from making a commitment to change. Sometimes people are convinced that they cannot change, that they cannot stick to any decision, and that they are destined to remain a failure. In such cases, it is important that the group member be helped to see clearly the consequences of not changing and then be guided to formulate very short-range, limited plans with goals that are easy to reach.

Commitment places the responsibility for changing directly on the clients. If members say over and over that they want to change and hope to change, they can be asked the question, "Will you do it, and when will you do it?" The downside, of course, is that the member's plan may not be carried out, which leads to an increase of frustrations and adds to the person's failures. Reality therapy tries to avoid this problem by not asking for any commitment that is unreasonable or impossible.

Group Theories in Action: A Reality Therapy Application*

Once the members evaluate what they are doing and decide they want to make some changes, reality therapy provides the structure for them to formulate specific plans for action. In most of my groups, I have found it useful to employ action-oriented procedures to help members carry what they are learning in the group into their everyday life. I also ask members to develop action plans and to report the outcome of their efforts to fulfill their plans in group sessions. This planning can be a key part of groups from the beginning through the termination phase.

In this session I am asking members to create a plan for change that will enable them to reach their goals. I open the session with a request for members to identify a specific area they want to change, and we then design a plan with several of the members.

*The group session discussed here is based on the reality therapy group work segment in the video *Group Theories in Action*, which is included in the Online Student Resources.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Here are some comments of various members in the check-in process:

Melissa: I want to engage in self-care.

Randy: I want to not always think about others first and would like to take better care of my own needs.

Dana: I want some more time to do something other than work.

Lupe: I would love to be able to eat my meals in a more mindful way, instead of multitasking.

Kellie: I want to write that poetry book that has been so important to me.

Jeff: I would hope to become more organized in all aspects of my life.

Galo: My goal is to live more in the present, rather than worrying about the past or thinking about the future.

Julius: I want to create a plan where I limit my accessibility to people and not feel that I always have to be on call.

After these members have checked in, I invite members to ask for time in exploring a plan that will help them to realize the changes they want. Dana tells us that she wants to spend one day a week doing something other than working without feeling guilty about this. I suggest that Dana look at each person in the group and tell that person one thing she would do with that free day. Some of her comments include being outside, being with my children, exercise, do nothing, resting, and doing fun activities. I ask Dana to go through the specifics of her plan with us and to talk about how she can commit herself to carrying out her plan. It is most important for Dana to identify what she wants to change and what would help her stick to her plan. I ask Dana how she could use the members in the group to help her be accountable, which she finds useful. Dana participates in a role play with several members to express how she intends to implement her plan. This work does not have to stop with Dana, and several members may step up and begin to design a plan they are willing to implement. Planning is instrumental in getting members to translate their insights into action. Members' reactions to their peers regarding their plans can be useful as well. Support and encouragement are critical components that will help members put their plans into action.

Applying Reality Therapy to Group Work in Schools

Glasser has been well received by educators interested in applying the basic ideas of reality therapy to the classroom. Educators found the principles of reality therapy helpful, and he was asked to apply them to the classroom and to the school as an organization. As a result of this experience, he wrote *Schools Without Failure* in 1969, which had a major impact on the administration of schools, the training of teachers, and the way learning is conducted in schools. Glasser believed schools should be structured in ways that help students achieve a *success identity* as opposed to a *failure identity*. He advocated for a curriculum geared to the lives of learners. Glasser has made significant contributions to education through in-service workshops for teachers and administrators.

Roy (2014) states that the quality world, or world of internal wants, lies at the heart of Glasser's formulation of the Quality School Consortium. Currently about 18 schools worldwide qualify as Glasser Quality Schools and structure their school programs using choice theory and reality therapy (Wubbolding & Brickell, 1999). The quality school models a democratic structure rather than an autocratic structure. Glasser (1998) believes a quality school will reduce the problems that characterize so many schools today. He states: "In a quality school, where students are led instead of bossed, they acquire a lot of knowledge by using what they learn, and they retain it" (p. 239). Wubbolding (1997, 2007) writes about ways to improve the school environment and empower students by (1) creating a curriculum that aims to fulfill the basic needs of survival, belonging, power, freedom, and fun; (2) emphasizing the rights of students to make choices for themselves and to accept the consequences that result from their choices; (3) teaching students the art of self-evaluation; (4) conducting class meetings that encourage students to provide input in the formulation of class rules; and (5) creating and consistently enforcing schoolwide rules and policies that are clear, simple, reasonable, and known by all students.

Although much of what has been written about applying choice theory and reality therapy to schools pertains to classroom dynamics and the overall

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

structure of a school system, the basic philosophy of choice theory is highly applicable to group work with both children and adolescents. Any counseling group can be designed to assist students in exploring the degree to which they are meeting their needs for love and belonging, power, freedom, and fun. Much of the time in a counseling group can be devoted to assisting students in designing useful action plans to change their behavior.

Using the WDEP system described in this chapter, children and adolescents can be invited to explore their wants, needs, and perceptions. They can be asked to take an honest look at what they are doing and to clarify whether their behavior is getting them what they say they want. The emphasis on present behavior is a plus when it comes to school counseling because groups are generally time limited in the school context. Depending on their developmental level, children and adolescents can be taught how to make evaluations of what they are doing and how to use self-evaluation to determine if they want to behave in any different ways. Once young people get a clearer picture of what they want, they can begin to make plans that will help them attain their goals. In summarizing the application of reality therapy to school counseling, Wubbolding (2015) states that "the artistic interweaving of the WDEP procedures results in heightened motivation on the part of the students, as well as behavioral and academic improvements" (p. 184).

The key concepts of choice theory and the interventions used in reality therapy can be effectively used for counseling students of varying ages in many different kinds of groups. Passaro et al. (2004) found reality therapy to be effective for adolescent oppositional defiant students who improved their daily behavioral rating by an average of 42%. Participation in general education courses increased to more than 62% for these students, and their suspensions from school decreased by 12%.

Hey Sook Kim (2016) studied the effects of reality therapy with South Korean mothers of children with emotional-behavioral problems. She found that the parents were able to significantly lower their stress levels within a 10-week period. The multicultural nature of this study adds significance to the merit of using reality therapy with parents of children who demonstrate acting-out behaviors.

It is crucial for group counselors who work in school settings to create a trusting climate within their groups. The personal characteristics of the group leader really matter in creating an open climate and in establishing and maintaining a safe atmosphere that will facilitate productive work in school groups.

Applying Reality Therapy With Multicultural Populations

Wubbolding (2000, 2017) and Wubbolding et al. (2004) have expanded the practice of reality therapy to both group counseling and multicultural situations. Wubbolding believes reality therapy needs to be modified to fit the cultural context of people from areas other than North America. After a 7-year effort, in 2008 the European Association for Psychotherapy, representing 120,000 psychotherapists in 41 European countries, endorsed reality therapy as a scientifically based theory, and they renewed this endorsement in 2015. Wubbolding (2011) asserts that this as one reason for believing that reality therapy has a bright multicultural future.

Wubbolding's experiences in conducting reality therapy workshops in many parts of the world have taught him the difficulty of making generalizations about other cultures. Based on these experiences, Wubbolding (1990, 2000) adapted the cycle of counseling to working with Japanese clients. He points to some basic language differences between Japanese and Western cultures. North Americans are inclined to say what they mean, to be assertive, and to be clear and direct in asking for what they want. In Japanese culture, assertive language is not appropriate between a child and a parent or between an employee and a supervisor. Ways of communicating are less direct. Because of this indirect style, some specific adaptations are needed to make the practice of reality therapy relevant to Japanese clients.

First, it is not necessary to have clients verbally define their specific wants or express their goals. Also, the reality therapist's tendency to ask direct questions may need to be softened. Questions could be posed more elaborately and indirectly and

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

confrontation used less frequently. For example, in counseling American students the counselor might ask, "Is what you are doing helping or hurting you?" However, in counseling an Asian youth in Singapore, more emphasis would be placed on questions such as "What does your family think about your actions?" or "Do your actions bring shame or honor on your parents?" Ideally, the teaching and the practice of reality therapy are adjusted to people's values, wants, and manner of expression.

Second, there is no exact Japanese translation for the word *plan*, nor is there an exact word for the term *accountability*, yet both of these are key dimensions in the practice of reality therapy. Finally, as counselors present dimensions such as the wants of the client, the evaluation process, making plans, and committing to them, it is useful to employ a more indirect style of communication than is typically practiced in the Western version of reality therapy. For example, in working with Western clients, counselors would not settle for a response of "I'll try." In Japan, however, the counselor is likely to accept "I'll try" as a firm commitment.

These are but a few illustrations of ways in which reality therapy might be adapted to non-Western clients. Although reality therapy assumes that the basic needs (survival, belonging, power, freedom, and fun) are universal, the ways in which these needs are expressed depend largely on the cultural context. When working with culturally diverse clients, it is essential that group leaders allow latitude for a diverse range of acceptable behaviors to satisfy these needs.

It is a sign of respect that the group leader refrains from deciding what behavior should be changed. Through skillful and sensitive questioning, the leader can help members determine the degree to which they have acculturated into the dominant society. Members can then make a personal assessment of the degree to which their wants and needs are being satisfied by having made this decision. It is possible for them to find their own balance of retaining their ethnic and cultural identity and at the same time integrating some of the values and practices of the dominant group. Again, the group leader does not determine this for these clients but challenges them to arrive at their own answers based on their own value system. This focus clearly empowers clients.

Practitioners who lead groups composed of culturally diverse members may find such clients reluctant to share their feelings during the early phase of the group. Because of their cultural values, some clients are likely to react more positively and to cooperate to a greater degree if the focus is on what they are doing and wanting rather than on what they are feeling. For example, some clients may be experiencing depression and anxiety or shame and embarrassment, and they may hope to gain relief from these symptoms by being in a group. Thinking of these symptoms from a reality therapy perspective, the leader could guide the members to look at what they are doing (or not doing) that is contributing to their emotional state. There is no pressure to experience a catharsis and to do emotional work within the group. Yet members eventually realize that they are "depressing" and "anxietying" rather than having these things simply happen to them. Once they realize that certain behaviors are not functional for their purposes, they are in a better position to make changes that will lead to different outcomes.

Reality therapy group counseling is typically cast in the framework of a teaching-learning process, which appeals to many ethnically diverse client groups. A specific focus—namely, a certain behavioral pattern—becomes the target for intervention. The reality therapy group leader is interested in helping members discover better ways to meet their needs. Choice theory and reality therapy provide group members with tools for making the desired changes, especially during the planning phase. With the support and help of other members and the group leader, clients can develop specific and workable plans for action. Within this context, members can be assisted in taking specific steps to move the external world closer to the inner world of their wants. If their plans do not meet with success in everyday reality, these members can then bring concrete situations back to the group sessions. This type of specificity, and the direction provided by an effective plan, is certainly an asset in working with most group members.

Wubbolding et al. (2004) note that reality therapy is based on universal principles and is practiced and taught in many cultures and countries. Effective reality therapists learn to adapt the methodology to individuals and groups from many cultures. Reality therapy is not a rigid and closed system that is applied

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

in the same manner to everyone or to every cultural group; it is an open system that allows for flexibility in application based on the needs of diverse groups.

Evaluation of Choice Theory/Reality Therapy in Groups

Contributions and Strengths of the Approach

A characteristic of reality therapy that I especially favor is its stress on accountability. When a group participant indicates a desire to change certain behaviors, for example, the leader confronts the member with a question about what is keeping the person from doing so. I appreciate the fact that it is the members, not the leader, who evaluate their own behavior and decide whether they want to change. It seems to me that many group leaders meet with resistance because they have suggestions and plans for how the members should best live their lives. To their credit, reality therapists keep asking the members to evaluate for themselves whether what they are doing is getting them what they want. If the members concede that what they are doing is not working for them, their resistance is much more likely to melt, and they tend to be more open to trying different behaviors. Skillful questioning by reality therapist group leaders is one of the major strengths of this approach. Of course, it is important for leaders to ask open-ended questions that get members to search inwardly and to avoid the "district attorney" style of questioning.

I like reality therapy's insistence that change will not come by insight alone; rather, members have to begin *doing* something different once they determine that their behavior is not working for them. In the groups that I facilitate, I encourage members to look at the futility of waiting for others to change. I ask them to assume that the significant people in their life may never change, which means that they will have to take a more active stance in shaping their own destiny. Their own changes may, in fact, influence another's change, but I appreciate the emphasis of reality therapy on teaching group members that the only life they can control is their own.

Choice theory/reality therapy encourages clients to look at the range of freedom they do possess, along with the responsibilities of this freedom. In this sense, reality therapy is congruent with existential therapy. As it is currently practiced, the emphasis is on the inner needs, wants, self-evaluation, and choices made by clients (Wubbolding, 2011, 2017). Because of this focus on the perceptual and behavioral systems, reality therapy can also be considered to be a cognitive behavioral approach. A strength of this approach is its emphasis on understanding the subjective inner world of individuals. This phenomenological view helps the group counselor understand more fully how group members perceive their world. A group leader who consistently maintains a sense of hope that people can change is often the catalyst for instilling and activating a sense of optimism.

One of the appealing aspects of reality therapy is that it is a straightforward and clear approach. Although its key principles are simple and basic, applying these methods in group counseling situations requires skill and practice. Using the methods effectively in groups requires training and supervision—the kind that is provided by the resources listed at the end of this chapter.

Reality therapy has much to offer groups of parents, groups composed of children and adolescents who are having behavioral problems and who continually get in trouble at school, and groups of teachers who work with a variety of students (Wubbolding, 2010). It is also applicable to groups of people who recognize that their way of living is not working for them. The approach is well suited to brief interventions in crisis counseling situations. Because reality therapy deals with what clients are presently doing—and asks clients to make an evaluation of what they want to change—the approach fits into various settings that restrict the number of sessions.

Groups based on choice theory can be useful in working with clients who see themselves as the victims of the abusive actions of others. Reality therapy has been effectively used in addiction treatment and recovery programs for over 30 years (Wubbolding & Brickell, 2005). Reality therapy focuses on making changes in the present and is an effective, short-term approach that fits into the structure of many kinds of psychoeducational groups in a variety of settings.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Choice theory and reality therapy work effectively for a variety of practitioners in a diversity of groups, and this approach has been successfully used in educational settings, in correctional institutions, drug addiction clinics, rehabilitation centers, public health settings, and in private practice. Choice theory can be used by parents, social workers, counselors, marriage and family therapists, school administrators, the clergy, health practitioners, and youth workers. Choice theory/reality therapy can help clients increase their inner sense of control and self-determination as they learn to satisfy their own needs (Wubbolding, 2013, 2016).

Limitations of the Approach

A potential problem with the practice of reality therapy is the tendency of inexperienced group leaders to take it upon themselves to evaluate members and determine how they should change. Clearly, if group members accept the leader's standards of behavior instead of questioning and making their own evaluation, they do not have to look within themselves to discover their own values, which is a very undesirable outcome. People need more than advice or solutions to problems; they need to learn how to draw upon their own resources to find creative ways of living fully.

One of the limitations of using choice theory and reality therapy with ethnic minorities, gay and lesbian individuals, and women is that these clients may not feel that real environmental forces operating against them in everyday life are being taken into consideration. Discrimination, racism, sexism, homophobia, heterosexism, ageism, and negative attitudes toward disabilities are unfortunate realities, and these forces do limit many people in getting what they want from life. If the group leader does not accept these environmental restrictions or is not interested in social change as well as individual change, members are likely to feel misunderstood. There is a danger that some reality therapists may overstress the ability of these clients to take charge of their lives and not pay enough attention to systemic and environmental issues. These clients may interpret the group leader's line of questioning as "If you try hard enough, you can pull yourself up by your bootstraps and become anything you choose." Group members who get such messages may prematurely leave the group in the belief that the leader and other members do not fully appreciate their everyday struggles. Rather than being a fault of choice theory and reality therapy, this is more a limitation of some who practice it.

Reality therapy emphasizes self-evaluation, which is a cognitive function. My personal preference is to give more attention to the realm of expressing and exploring feelings than is found in choice theory and reality therapy. Many problems that show up behaviorally have a connection to the self-defeating statements that we often repeat to ourselves. In addition to encouraging members to come into full contact with the range of their feelings, I also try to get them to look at the thoughts and beliefs that are contributing to their emotional and behavioral problems. Choice theory and reality therapy do not pay great attention to these experiential modes and, instead, focus on changing behavior first, which may then lead to changes in feelings.

From my perspective, Glasser's view of the past is flawed. Glasser (1998) maintained that we should discard the notion that it is important to know our past before we can deal with the present. Glasser stated that "it is good to revisit the parts of our past that were satisfying, but leave what was unhappy alone" (p. 334). However, some reality therapists do make it a practice to talk about the past if it is tied to the present (Wubbolding, 2011, 2017). For example, they are likely to help an adult who was abandoned by a parent as a child to talk about it, for this is not purely a past event, even though it happened many years ago. If a group member has never discussed this rejection with anyone, it may still be influencing behavior. The event results in a present source of pain, and therefore it is present behavior rather than past behavior, which means it can be discussed in the here-and-now.

Most of the principles of choice theory/reality therapy can be fruitfully integrated into several of the other systems that have been discussed in this book. As a group counselor, you will need to examine the concepts of choice theory and the procedures of reality therapy to determine what elements can be effectively incorporated into your own therapeutic style of facilitating groups.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Self-Reflection and Discussion Questions

1. Grounded in choice theory, the WDEP system assists people in satisfying their basic needs. What ideas from this system can you apply to better understand yourself? How can you apply some principles of choice theory and reality therapy to your personal life? How can this approach assist you in making changes in your behavior?
2. What are some ways you can apply the WDEP model in groups you facilitate? What ideas do you have about encouraging members of your groups to evaluate their current behavior and decide what they may want to change?
3. Reality therapy focuses on what we are doing. To what extent do you find that when you begin to *act* differently you also change what you are thinking and feeling? Can you provide any personal examples?
4. Once group members decide on changing a specific current behavior, it is essential to implement an action plan. What are some guidelines you can use in assisting members in designing an effective action plan?
5. What are the major contributions and strengths of choice theory/reality therapy when applied to group work? What are some of the limitations of this approach?

Where to Go From Here

The programs offered by the William Glasser Institute–US, a branch of William Glasser International, are designed to teach the concepts of choice theory and the practice of reality therapy. The institute offers a certification process, which starts with a 3-day introductory course known as "basic training" in which participants are involved in discussions, demonstrations, and role playing. For those wishing to pursue more extensive training, the institute offers a five-part sequential course of study leading to certification in reality therapy, which includes basic training, a basic practicum, advanced training, an advanced practicum, and a certification week.

The William Glasser Institute
Website: www.wglasser.com

The Center for Reality Therapy in Cincinnati provides training in the principles of choice theory/reality therapy applied to counseling, coaching, classroom management, addictions, corrections, and families. Robert Wubbolding is a frequent presenter at state, national, and international conferences.

Center for Reality Therapy
Robert Wubbolding, Director
5490 Windridge Court
Cincinnati, OH 45243-2967
Telephone: (513) 886-2233
Fax: (513) 561-3568
Email: wubsrt@fuse.net
Website: www.realitytherapywub.com

The *International Journal of Choice Theory and Reality Therapy* publishes manuscripts concerning research, theory development, and specific descriptions of the successful application of reality therapy principles in field settings.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

International Journal of Choice Theory and Reality Therapy
Thomas Parish, PhD, Editor
4606 SW Moundview Drive
Topeka, Kansas 66610
Telephone: (785) 862-1379
Email: parishthomas@yahoo.com or parishts@gmail.com

Watch Robert Wubbolding demonstrate reality therapy in a therapy session in this three-part video.

Videos on Reality Therapy:
www.psychotherapy.net/videos/approach/reality-therapy

Recommended Supplementary Readings

Reality Therapy (Wubbolding, 2011) updates and extends previous publications on choice theory and reality therapy. This book contains additions to choice theory and applications of reality therapy to cross-cultural situations.

Reality Therapy and Self-Evaluation: The Key to Client Change (Wubbolding, 2017) takes the practice of reality therapy to a new level by demonstrating the wide-ranging application of client self-evaluation as a prerequisite for behavioral change. The author demonstrates with detailed interventions how to help clients evaluate their actions, goals and wants, self-talk, perceived locus of control, and level of commitment. If you were to select only one book to extend your understanding of reality therapy, this would be my choice. The practical formulation of the WDEP system of reality therapy is highlighted, much of which can be adapted to group counseling.

Video

Watch Gerald Corey's *Group Theories in Action*, video via the Cengage eBook. The group session discussed in this chapter is based on an integrative approach to group counseling.

References and Suggested Readings

Fulkerson, M. (2019). *Treatment planning from a reality therapy perspective* (2nd ed.). iUniverse.

Glasser, W. (1965). *Reality therapy: A new approach to psychiatry.* Harper & Row.

Glasser, W. (1969). *Schools without failure.* Harper & Row.

Glasser, W. (1986). *Control theory in the classroom.* Harper & Row.

Glasser, W. (1990). *The quality school: Managing students without coercion.* Harper & Row.

Glasser, W. (1992). Reality therapy. *New York State Journal for Counseling and Development, 7*(1), 5–13.

Glasser, W. (1993). *The quality school teacher.* Harper & Row.

*Glasser, W. (1998). *Choice theory: A new psychology of personal freedom.* HarperCollins.

*Glasser, W. (2001). *Counseling with choice theory: The new reality therapy.* HarperCollins.

Glasser, W. (2003). *Warning: Psychiatry can be hazardous to your mental health.* HarperCollins.

Books and articles marked with an asterisk (*) are suggested for further study.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Glasser, W. (2005). *Defining mental health as a public health issue: A new leadership role for the helping and teaching professions*. William Glasser Institute.

*Glasser, W. (2011). *Take charge of your life*. iUniverse.

Glasser, W., & Glasser, C. (2008). Procedures: The cornerstone of institute training. *The William Glasser Institute Newsletter* (Summer). The William Glasser Institute.

Kim, H. S. (2016). *Development and effect of psychological well-being promoting program to reduce parenting stress for mothers of children with emotional behavioral problems* [Unpublished doctoral dissertation]. Inje University, Pusan, South Korea.

Passaro, P., Moon, M., Wiest, D., & Wong, E. (2004). A model for school psychology practice: Addressing the needs of students with emotional and behavioral challenges through the use of an in-school support room and reality therapy. *Adolescence, 39*(155), 503–517.

Roy, J. (2014). *William Glasser: Champion of choice*. Zeig, Tucker, Theisen.

Wubbolding, R. (1988). *Using reality therapy*. Perennial.

Wubbolding, R. (1990). *Expanding reality therapy: Group counseling and multicultural dimensions*. Center for Reality Therapy.

Wubbolding, R. (1991). *Understanding reality therapy*. Perennial.

Wubbolding, R. (1997). The school as a system: Quality linkages. *Journal of Reality Therapy, 16*(2), 76–79.

*Wubbolding, R. (2000). *Reality therapy for the 21st century*. Taylor & Francis.

Wubbolding, R. (2007). Glasser quality school. *Group Dynamics: Theory, Research and Practice, 11*(4), 253–261.

Wubbolding, R. (2009). *Reality therapy training manual* (15th rev.). Center for Reality Therapy.

Wubbolding, R. (2010). Professional school counselors and reality therapy. In B. Erford (Ed.), *Professional school counseling: A handbook of theories, programs & practices* (pp. 338–351). CAPS Press.

*Wubbolding, R. (2011). *Reality therapy*. American Psychological Association.

Wubbolding, R. (2013). Reality therapy. In J. Frew & M. Spiegler (Eds.), *Contemporary psychotherapies for a diverse world* (1st rev. ed., pp. 339–372). Taylor & Francis.

Wubbolding, R. (2015). Reality therapy and school practice. In R. Witte & G. S. Mosley-Howard (Eds.), *Mental health practice in today's schools* (pp. 169–192). Springer.

Wubbolding, R. (2016). Reality therapy. In H. E. A. Tinsley, S. H. Lease, & N. S. Giffin Wiersma (Eds.), *Contemporary theory and practice in counseling and psychotherapy* (pp. 173–200). Sage.

*Wubbolding, R. (2017). *Reality therapy and self-evaluation: The key to client change*. American Counseling Association.

Wubbolding, R. (2019). *A choice theory guide to depression: Lift your mood*. Amazon.

Wubbolding, R. (2020). *Cycle of counseling, therapy, coaching, managing, supervising, and parenting* [chart] (21st rev.). Center for Reality Therapy.

Wubbolding, R., & Brickell, J. (1999). *Counselling with reality therapy*. Winslow.

Wubbolding, R., & Brickell, J. (2001). *A set of directions for putting and keeping yourself together*. Educational Media Corporation.

Wubbolding, R., & Brickell, J. (2005). Reality therapy in recovery. *Directions in Addiction Treatment and Prevention, 9*(1), 1–10.

Wubbolding, R., & Brickell, J. (2009). Perception: The orphaned component of choice theory. *International Journal of Reality Therapy, 28*(2), 50–54.

Wubbolding, R., Brickell, J., Burdenski, T., & Robey, P. (2012). Implementing one caring habit: Listening with reality therapy procedures, Part I. *International Journal of Reality Therapy, 32*(2), 22–26.

Wubbolding, R., Brickell, J., Imhof, L., In-za Kim, R., Lojk, L., & Al-Rashidi, B. (2004). Reality therapy: A global perspective. *International Journal for the Advancement of Counseling, 26*(3), 219–228.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 15

Solution-Focused Brief Therapy and Motivational Interviewing in Groups

Learning Objectives

Solution-Focused Brief Therapy

1. Examine the distinguishing features and key concepts of solution-focused brief group therapy.
2. Define the role and functions of the group leader in solution-focused brief therapy.
3. Identify five of the techniques often used by solution-focused brief therapists.
4. Define the concept of exception questions and explain the purpose of this kind of questioning in a group.
5. Define the technique of the miracle question and explain what it is supposed to accomplish.
6. Explain how solution-focused group leaders use the scaling question technique.
7. Explain the rationale for the feedback solution-focused therapists provide to group members.
8. Explain the role of questioning from a solution-focused brief therapist's perspective.
9. List the strengths and limitations of the solution-focused group approach from a multicultural perspective.
10. Describe some of the contributions of solution-focused brief group therapy.

Motivational Interviewing

1. Examine the key concepts and principles of motivational interviewing.
2. Describe the concept of the motivational interviewing spirit.
3. Explain how ambivalence is interpreted by therapists to better understand resistance.
4. Explain how working with ambivalence can lead to increased motivation to change.
5. List some of the key principles and clinical strategies of motivational interviewing.
6. Describe some of the concepts that are shared by solution-focused brief therapy and motivational interviewing.
7. Explain why motivational interviewing can be identified as an integrative approach.
8. Identify some of the contributions and strengths of motivational interviewing as a group approach.
9. List some of the limitations of motivational interviewing.
10. Explain how motivational interviewing techniques and concepts can be used in other therapeutic modalities in a group setting.

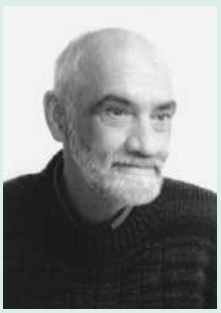
Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Insoo Kim Berg

INSOO KIM BERG (1934–2007) was a Korean-born American psychotherapist and a pioneer of solution-focused brief therapy (SFBT). In 1978 she and her husband, Steve de Shazer, cofounded the Brief Family Therapy Center in Milwaukee, Wisconsin. As a leader in the practice of SFBT, she consulted with a diverse range of institutions, including human service agencies, mental health centers, substance abuse treatment facilities, homeless shelters, correction departments, battered women's shelters, schools, and universities. She provided workshops in the United States, Japan, South Korea, Australia, Denmark, England, and Germany. Berg published 10 groundbreaking books that elucidated the application of SFBT in a wide variety of clinical settings, among them are *Family Based Services: A Solution-Focused Approach* (1994), *Working With the Problem Drinker: A Solution-Focused Approach* (Berg & Miller, 1992), and *Interviewing for Solutions* (De Jong & Berg, 2013).

Berg was very generous with her time in talking to other professionals; she listened carefully to her clients, demonstrated a high degree of patience, and was always very respectful. Her colleagues described her as inspiring, humble, and passionate. Berg was committed to her work and rarely took time off, but she did enjoy a wide range of physical activities: stretching exercises, yoga, walking, and gardening. In January 2007 Berg died unexpectedly as she relaxed in a steam room after exercising—just 16 months after the death of her husband and colleague, Steve de Shazer.

Steve de Shazer



STEVE de SHAZER (1940–2005) was one of the pioneers of solution-focused brief therapy. For many years, he was the director of research at the Brief Family Therapy Center in Milwaukee, Wisconsin, where he and his wife, Insoo Kim Berg, developed solution-focused brief therapy. He wrote several books on SFBT, including *Keys to Solutions in Brief Therapy* (1985), *Clues: Investigating Solutions in Brief Therapy* (1988), *Putting Difference to Work* (1991), and *Words Were Originally Magic* (1994).

Along with Berg, de Shazer developed a keen interest in what clients were already doing to solve their problems. He was interested in hearing their ideas about how life could be different and what it would take to bring about the desired changes. De Shazer viewed clients as being the experts in their own lives, and he did not believe it was important to learn about the origins of problems to bring about change. De Shazer focused on how change can occur in the present, and he used a number of SFBT techniques to help clients create a better future.

De Shazer loved baseball, was a gourmet cook, and made time for long daily walks. Some of his leisure pursuits included reading philosophy tracts in the original German or French, listening to jazz, and perusing esoteric cookbooks. He was trained as a classical musician and played several instruments at a professional level. During his youth he made his living as a jazz saxophonist. He presented workshops, trained, and consulted widely in North America, Europe, Australia, and Asia. While on a teaching tour in Europe, de Shazer went to a hospital in Vienna for medical help; he died several hours after being admitted.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

William R. Miller

WILLIAM R. MILLER (b. 1947) is emeritus distinguished professor of psychology and psychiatry at the University of New Mexico, where he joined the faculty in 1976 after receiving his PhD in clinical psychology from the University of Oregon. He served as director of Clinical Training for UNM's APA-approved doctoral program in clinical psychology and as codirector of UNM's Center on Alcoholism, Substance Abuse and Addictions (CASAA). Miller and Stephen Rollnick are the cofounders of motivational interviewing.

Miller's professional interests include the treatment of addictive behavior, self-regulation, and motivation for change, and he has written 40 books and more than 400 articles and chapters on these topics. He has served as principal investigator for numerous research grants and contracts, founded a private practice group, and served as a consultant to many organizations including the United States Senate, the World Health Organization, the National Academy of Sciences, and the National Institutes of Health. In recognition of his research contributions, Miller is a recipient of the international Jellinek Memorial Award, two career achievement awards from the American Psychological Association, and an Innovators in Combating Substance Abuse award from the Robert Wood Johnson Foundation. He maintains an active interest in pastoral counseling and the integration of spirituality and psychology.

Introduction

Solution-focused brief therapy (SFBT) is a future-focused, goal-oriented therapeutic approach to brief therapy. This approach was developed initially by Steve de Shazer and Insoo Kim Berg at the Brief Family Therapy Center in Milwaukee, Wisconsin, in the early 1980s. SFBT emphasizes the strengths and resiliencies of the individual by focusing on exceptions to their problems and listening to their ideas about solutions. Through a series of interventions, therapists encourage clients to increase those behaviors that have worked for them in the past (de Shazer & Dolan, 2007). Ratner et al. (2012) summarize the essence of SFBT as "a time-sensitive approach to exploring with clients how they would like their lives to be as a result of the therapy, and examining the skills and resources they have for getting there" (p. 4).

Having grown dissatisfied with the constraints of existing therapy models, de Shazer collaborated with a number of therapists in the 1980s, including Eve Lipchik, John Walter, Jane Peller, and Michele Weiner-Davis, who each wrote extensively about solution-focused therapy and started their own solution-focused training institutes. Later Scott Miller joined forces with Insoo Kim Berg, and Michele Weiner-Davis later joined Bill O'Hanlon, who had been trained by Milton Erickson. Together this group of practitioners expanded the foundation originated by de Shazer (Nichols & Davis, 2017, 2020) and applied their ideas to diverse client populations in a variety of settings. As a result, various terms are currently used when referring to this therapeutic approach.

De Shazer credits the American psychiatrist Milton Erickson for significantly influencing the development of solution-focused therapy. Erickson is considered to be one of the most innovative psychotherapists, and his contributions to the field of psychotherapy have continued to live on long after his death in 1980. Erickson did

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

not put much stock in diagnostic labels and did not view individuals as being sick; rather, he saw them as being stuck. He believed that clients are the best teachers of what works and what does not work in therapy, and he recognized that small changes individuals make often result in larger changes. Erickson was convinced that solutions to the problems clients bring to therapy can be found in a brief time without detailed information about problems. From his perspective, the quickest route to solutions is to build on a client's strengths and resources. Erickson did not believe therapy had to be a lengthy process to be effective. Both de Shazer and Berg incorporated many of Erickson's principles and therapeutic methods in solution-focused brief therapy.

Motivational interviewing (MI) is a deliberately directive approach that focuses on reducing clients' ambivalence about change and increasing intrinsic motivation. MI shares a number of factors with solution-focused brief therapy. Group practitioners can combine principles and techniques from solution-focused brief therapy with motivational interviewing when working with a variety of groups. An effective integration of these two approaches facilitates change through a collaborative and respectful therapeutic relationship. By honoring client stories, recognizing client strengths and preferences, and enhancing intrinsic motivation, SFBT and MI provide multiple ways to address the impasses clients often experience during the change process (Cormier et al., 2017; Lewis & Osborn, 2004). Solution-focused brief therapy is addressed first in the following sections; a later section of this chapter is devoted to motivational interviewing.

Key Concepts of SFBT

Positive Orientation

Solution-focused brief therapy, or "solution-focused counseling" as it is sometimes called, is grounded on the optimistic assumption that people are resourceful and competent and have the ability to construct solutions that can change the direction of their life. The role of the counselor is to help clients recognize the resources they already possess, such as resilience, courage, and ingenuity. Solution-focused counselors engage in conversations with their clients about what is going well, future possibilities, and what will likely lead to a sense of accomplishment.

This respectful and hopeful counseling orientation builds on existing positive dimensions such as the strengths of the person and solutions under construction that are already working for the person in other circumstances. Solution-focused counseling has parallels with **positive psychology**, which concentrates on what is right and what is working for people rather than dwelling on deficits, weaknesses, and problems (Murphy, 2015). By emphasizing positive dimensions, clients quickly become involved in resolving their problems, which makes this a very empowering approach.

Clients often come to therapy in a "problem-oriented" state, and even the few solutions they have considered are wrapped in the power of the problem orientation. Clients often tell a story rooted in a deterministic view, concluding that what has happened in their past will certainly shape their future. They reinforce this problem orientation by reliving their story over and over. Solution-focused practitioners counter this negative client presentation with optimistic conversations that highlight a belief in clients' abilities to discover their own achievable and usable goals. One of the goals of SFBT is to shift clients' perceptions by reframing what White and Epston (1990) refer to as clients' *problem-saturated stories* through the counselor's skillful use of language. Solution-focused practitioners are mainly concerned with eliciting a rich description of the client's solution rather than listening to the client's detailed account of the problem. Together client and counselor construct solutions, which can result in clients writing a different story that can lead to a new ending. Solution-focused counselors can be instrumental in assisting people in making a shift from a static problem state to a world with new possibilities that lead to creative solutions.

Focus on Solutions, Not Problems

Solution-focused brief therapy differs from traditional therapies by eschewing the past in favor of both the present and the future (Franklin et al., 2012). Information about the past is primarily used to identify times when the presenting problem occurred less

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

often or to acknowledge the client's struggle. Murphy (2013, 2015) states that it is within the scope of SFBT practice to allow for some discussion of presenting problems to validate clients' experience and to let them describe their pain, struggles, and frustrations. However, this brief exploration is different from the lengthy discourse into the causes of problems or exploring problem history common to some other types of therapy. Solution-focused counseling differs from traditional therapies by minimizing the past and focusing on the future. Solution-focused practitioners are interested in what is possible now and in the future and have little interest in understanding the presenting problem or exploring past issues (Bitter, 2021).

The solution-focused philosophy rests on the assumption that people can become mired in unresolved past conflicts and blocked when they focus on past or present problems rather than on future solutions. De Shazer (1988, 1991) suggests that it is not necessary to know the cause of a problem to solve it and that there is no necessary relationship between problems and their solutions. Gathering information about a problem is not necessary for change to occur. If knowing and understanding problems are unimportant, so is searching for "right" solutions. Any person might consider multiple solutions, and what is right for one person may not be right for another. Clients choose the goals they wish to accomplish, and little attention is given to diagnosis, history taking, analysis of dysfunctional interactions, or exploration of the problem (Bertolino & O'Hanlon, 2002; Bitter, 2021; Murphy, 2015; O'Hanlon & Weiner-Davis, 2003).

Looking for What Is Working

Individuals bring stories to their counseling sessions. Some are used to justify their belief that life can't be changed or, worse, that life is moving them further and further from their goals. Counselors assist clients in paying attention to the *exceptions* to their problem patterns, or their *instances of success*. In a similar vein, Metcalf (1998) often begins a group session by saying, "Look back over your week and tell me what seemed to go slightly better for each of you." Solution-focused counseling emphasizes finding out what people are doing that is working and then helping them apply this knowledge to eliminate problems in the shortest amount of time possible. A key concept is, "Once you know what works, do more of it." If something is not working, clients are encouraged to try something different (Guterman, 2013; Hoyt, 2011).

There are various ways to assist clients in thinking about what has worked for them. De Shazer (1991) prefers to engage clients in conversations that lead to progressive narratives whereby people create situations in which they can make steady gains toward their goals. He might say, "Tell me about times when you felt a little better and when things were going your way." It is in these stories of life worth living that the power of problems is deconstructed and new solutions are manifested and made possible.

Basic Assumptions Guiding Practice

SFBT is more preventive than remedial and is especially useful for therapy groups that stress developmental concerns. Walter and Peller (1992, 2000) think of solution-focused therapy as a model that explains how people change and how they can reach their goals. Here are some of their basic assumptions about the solution-focused approach as modified for the context of group counseling:

- There are advantages to a positive focus on solutions and on the future. If group members can reorient themselves in the direction of their strengths using solution-talk, there is a good chance group counseling can be brief. By concentrating on successes, beneficial changes are likely to occur.
- Individuals who come to a counseling group have the capability of behaving effectively, even though this effectiveness may be temporarily blocked by negative cognitions and negative language. Problem-focused thinking prevents people from recognizing effective ways they have dealt with problems.
- Participants often present only one side of themselves. Solution-focused group leaders invite members to examine another side of the story they are presenting.
- No problem is constant, and change is inevitable. Small changes pave the way for larger changes,

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

and such changes are often all that is needed to resolve the problems clients bring to counseling (Guterman, 2013). Any problem is solved one step at a time.

- People want to change, have the capacity to change, and are doing their best to make change happen. Group leaders should adopt a cooperative stance with members rather than devising strategies to control resistive patterns.
- Group members can be trusted in their intention to create solutions to their problems. There are no universal solutions to specific problems that can be applied to all people. Each individual is unique and so, too, is each solution.

Role and Functions of the Group Leader

A Not-Knowing Position

Much of the therapeutic process involves clients thinking about their future and what they want to be different in their life. Solution-focused group counselors adopt a "not-knowing" position (Anderson & Goolishian, 1992) as a route to putting group members into the position of being the experts on their own life. In this approach, the therapist-as-expert is replaced by the client-as-expert, especially when it comes to what the client wants in life. Group counselors continuously deflect questions asked of them to the other group members and follow the lead of the members. Although group participants are viewed as experts on their own life, they are often stuck in patterns that are not working for them. Solution-focused practitioners prefer a more collaborative or consultative stance and see their job as creating the opportunity for clients to see themselves as the experts.

It is the group counselor's willingness to enter the therapeutic conversation from a not-knowing position that facilitates a caring relationship with group members. In the **not-knowing position**, group leaders still retain all of the knowledge and personal, experiential capacities they have gained over years of living, but they allow themselves to enter the conversation with curiosity and with an intense interest in discovery. The aim here is to enter a group member's world as fully as possible and to elicit the perspectives, resources, strengths, and unique experiences of each group member.

This model casts the role and functions of a counselor in quite a different light from traditionally oriented mental health practitioners who view themselves as experts in assessment, diagnosis, and treatment. Empathy and the collaborative partnership in the therapeutic process are seen as more important than assessment or technique. Functions such as diagnosis and assessment often grant priority to the practitioner's "truth" over clients' knowledge about their own lives. Solution-focused counselors tend to avoid using language that embodies diagnosis, assessment, and intervention. Instead, they believe that the way problems and solutions are talked about makes a difference. Using language can assume major importance in how problems are conceptualized; indeed, language *creates* reality.

Creating a Therapeutic Partnership

Solution-focused therapists emphasize working with emotions and creating a therapeutic relationship (Lipchik, 2002). The qualities of the therapeutic relationship are at the heart of the effectiveness of SFBT. The therapeutic outcome is significantly related to the alliance formed between group members and the group facilitator (Bertolino, 2010; Murphy, 2013). One way of creating an effective therapeutic partnership is for the group facilitator to show members how they can use the strengths and resources they already have to construct solutions. Bertolino (2010) stresses that clients have a good sense of what has or has not worked in the past as well as what might work in the future. Murphy (2013, 2015) believes counseling works best when clients are actively involved in the therapeutic process, when they experience a positive relationship with the counselor, and when counseling addresses what clients see as being important. Identifying problems and goals is a collaborative process of negotiation between the group facilitator and the group members. Clients are the best people to choose the goals they want to achieve in counseling (Bitter, 2021). If group members are involved in the therapeutic process from beginning to end, the chances are increased that therapy will be successful.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Metcalf (1998) maintains that the solution-focused group practitioner believes people are competent, and given a climate in which they can experience their competency, they are able to solve their own problems, which will enable them to live a richer life. The group leader might begin the first group session by saying, "This group is different. Although we may discuss your reason for being here, we will shift our focus to what you want to accomplish rather than why you are here." Alternatively, a leader might say, "We will focus on what you hope to get out of this group."

The concepts of care, interest, respectful curiosity, openness, empathy, contact, and even fascination are seen as relational necessities. Group leaders create a climate of mutual respect, dialogue, inquiry, and affirmation in which clients are free to create, explore, and coauthor their evolving stories (Walter & Peller, 1996). It is the counselor's role to create opportunities for the members to experience themselves as being resourceful. Because solution-focused counseling is designed to be brief, the leader has the task of keeping group members on a *solution track* rather than a *problem track*. If members concentrate on telling *problem-saturated stories*, it is difficult for them to move in a positive direction.

A group counselor's main task involves helping the participants imagine how they would like life to be different and what it would take to bring about these changes. One of the functions of the group leader is to ask questions of members and generate further questions based on their answers. The group counselor helps clients construct a preferred story line. The therapist adopts a stance characterized by respectful curiosity and works with clients to explore both the impact of the problem on them and what they are doing to reduce the effects of the problem (Winslade & Monk, 2007).

The Process of the Solution-Focused Group

Steps in the Change Process

Walter and Peller (1992) describe four steps that characterize the process of SFBT, which can also be applied to group counseling:

1. Find out what group members want rather than searching for what they do not want.
2. Do not look for pathology, and do not attempt to reduce members' abilities by giving them a diagnostic label. Instead, look for what they are doing that is already working and encourage them to continue in that direction.
3. If what members are doing is not working, encourage them to experiment with doing something different.
4. Keep therapy brief by approaching each session as if it were the last and only session.

Although these steps seem fairly obvious, the collaborative process of the group members and the leader constructing solutions is not merely a matter of mastering a few techniques. The solution-focused group model requires a philosophical stance of accepting people where they are and assisting them in creating solutions. The attitudes of group leaders are crucial to the effectiveness of a group.

From de Shazer's (1991) perspective, clients can generally build solutions to their problems without any assessment of the nature of their problems. Given this framework, the structure of solution building differs greatly from traditional approaches to problem solving. I have briefly summarized the steps involved based on Metcalf's (1998) book on solution-focused group therapy.

Setting the Tone for the Group The facilitator sets the mood for focusing on solutions from the beginning. Group members are given an opportunity to describe their problems briefly. The group facilitator listens respectfully and carefully as members answer the question, "How can I be useful to you?" Another leader intervention is, "I would like each of you to introduce yourself. As you do, give us a sense of what you are here for." Facilitators help members keep the problem external in conversations, which tends to be a relief to members because it gives them an opportunity to see themselves as less problem-saturated.

Beginning to Set Goals The group leader works with members in developing well-formed goals as soon as possible. Questions that might be posed include, "What will be different in your life when this

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

problem is no longer prominent, has become irrelevant, or has even disappeared?" and "What will be going on in the future that will tell you and the rest of us in the group that things are better for you?" Sometimes members talk about what others will be doing or not doing and forget to pay attention to their own goals or behavior. At times such as these they can be asked, "And what about yourself? What will *you* be doing differently in that picture?" The process of creating member goals is discussed more fully later in the chapter.

Searching for Exceptions to the Problem The facilitator asks members about times when their problems were not present or when the problems were less severe. The members are assisted in exploring these exceptions, and special emphasis is placed on what they did to make these events happen. One leader intervention might be, "I've been listening to each of you talk about why you are here today. I appreciate you for taking the step in coming to this group to make things better for you. For a change of pace, let's talk about the times before your problem started to interfere in your life. What were you doing at those times that kept the problem at bay?"

The group members engage in identifying exceptions with each other. This improves the group process and promotes a solution focus, which can become quite powerful. For instance, in sexual abuse survivor groups, when group members focus on their resilience skills, the "former victims" see themselves differently, which tends to dramatically increase their confidence and their belief in themselves as being competent. The search for exceptions is discussed in more detail later in this chapter.

Encouraging Motivation Hope is a powerful source of motivation, which is a key therapeutic factor in groups. Facilitators may pose questions like these: "Someday, when your concerns are less problematic to you, what will you be doing?" "As each of you listened to others today, is there someone in our group who could be a source of encouragement for you to do something different?" "In this group session, who did you notice who became less preoccupied with the problem and appeared to be more problem free?"

Assisting Group Members With Task Development At the end of each solution-building conversation, the leader offers members summary feedback, provides encouragement, and suggests what they might observe or do before the next session to further solve their problems. The leader encourages members to give one another feedback, especially on small steps members may have taken. A leader could say, "Many of you have talked about times when the problem bothered you less. Now let's consider what you might do before we meet next time to keep these problems smaller."

If goals have not been established, the facilitator could say, "As we close for today, I want to suggest that each of you monitor your daily activities until our next session. Pay particular attention to situations that are not bothering you as often. Note these instances of success and bring them with you to the next group session."

Before the close of the meeting, the group leader and members can evaluate the progress being made in reaching satisfactory solutions using a rating scale. Members are also asked what needs to be done before they see their problem as being solved and also what their next step will be.

The Next Group Session At the next group meeting the leader might ask, "Who wants to begin today by telling us what has gone better for you since our last meeting?" If some members do not have many improvements to report and want to talk about what did not work, the facilitator could assist them in getting on a solution track. One possible intervention is this: "Let's suppose that more of this continues to happen. What will this be like for you by the time we see you next time? What would you like to have happen that is different?"

Creating Member Goals

SFBT reflects some basic notions about change, about interaction, and about reaching goals. The facilitator believes people have the ability to define meaningful personal goals and that they are in the best position to choose the goals they want to accomplish in the group because they know themselves better than anyone else does. It is essential that members address what they want and what concerns they are willing

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

to explore. The group leader moves members toward goal setting during the initial session, based on the assumption that clients come for change rather than to talk about dismal events. In group therapy, if this does not occur, the group can too easily slip into a problem focus.

Leaders concentrate on clear, specific, observable, small, realistic, achievable changes that may lead to additional positive outcomes. Because success tends to build upon itself, modest goals are viewed as the beginning of change. Solution-focused practitioners join with the language of their clients, using similar words, pacing, and tone. Group leaders use questions such as these that presuppose change, posit multiple responses, and remain goal-directed and future-oriented: "What did you do differently since we last met?" "What has changed?"

Murphy (2015) emphasizes the importance of assisting clients in creating clear, well-defined goals that are (1) stated in the positive in the client's language; (2) process or action oriented; (3) structured in the here-and-now; (4) attainable, concrete, and specific; and (5) controlled by the client. However, it is important that leaders avoid rigidly imposing an agenda pushing for precise goals before clients have a chance to express their concerns. Members need to first feel that their concerns have been heard and understood so they will be willing to formulate meaningful personal goals. Sharing concerns assists the group in developing cohesiveness, and that sense of belongingness encourages engagement within the group.

In SFBT there are several forms of goals: *changing the viewing* of a situation or a frame of reference, *changing the doing* of the problematic situation, and tapping into clients' strengths and resources (Murphy, 2015; O'Hanlon & Weiner-Davis, 2003). Members are encouraged to engage in solution-talk, rather than problem-talk, on the assumption that what we talk about most will be what we produce. Talking about problems empowers ongoing problems, and talking about change will empower change. When individuals learn to speak in terms of what they are able to do competently, what resources and strengths they have, and what they have already done that has worked, they are well on their way toward solutions (Murphy, 2015; Nichols & Davis, 2020).

Terminating

From the very first solution-focused group session, the facilitator is mindful of working toward termination. The initial goal-formation question that a group leader often asks is, "What needs to be different in your life as a result of coming here for you to say that being in this group was worthwhile?" Establishing clear goals from the beginning of a group lays the groundwork for effective termination (Murphy, 2015). The group leader assists group members in monitoring their progress and eventually determining when they have accomplished their personal goals. Prior to ending a group experience, leaders assist members in identifying things they can do to continue the changes they have already made into the future (Bertolino & O'Hanlon, 2002). Members can also be helped to identify hurdles or perceived barriers that could get in the way of maintaining the changes they have made. If such barriers are recognized, the group leader can ask the other group members for solutions, thereby empowering the group members to see past barriers.

Because this model of therapy is brief, present, and future centered, and addresses specific complaints, participants in a group may experience other developmental concerns at a later time. Group members can ask for individual sessions if they feel a need to get their life back on track or to update their story, or if the group is an open one, they can return to the group for some sessions.

Application: Therapeutic Techniques and Procedures

Some of the key techniques that solution-focused group practitioners are likely to employ include looking for differences in doing, exception questions, scaling questions, and the miracle question. Murphy (2015) reminds us that these solution-focused techniques should be used flexibly and tailored to the unique circumstances of the members. The group counseling process is best guided by the members' goals, perceptions, resources, and feedback.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Techniques should never be given prominence over the work of members in a group.

Pretherapy Change

Pretherapy change addresses any changes made before the initial session. Simply scheduling an appointment often sets positive change in motion. During the initial therapy session, it is common for solution-focused counselors to ask, "What changes have you noticed that have happened or started to happen since you called to make the appointment for this session?" (de Shazer & Dolan, 2007, p. 5). By asking about such changes, the therapist can elicit, evoke, and amplify what clients have already done by way of making positive changes. These changes cannot be attributed to the therapy process itself, so asking about them tends to encourage clients to rely less on their therapist and more on their own resources to accomplish their treatment goals (de Shazer & Dolan, 2007).

Questioning

Questions become the primary communication tool and main intervention. Solution-focused group leaders use questions as a way to better understand a group member's experience rather than simply to gather information. Group leaders do not raise questions to which they think they know the answer. Questions are asked from a position of respect, genuine curiosity, sincere interest, and openness. These questions are guided by the group members. In the SFBT approach, the questions counselors ask are always informed by the answers the client-expert has provided. The group member's answers provide information that stimulates the interest of the leader, and another question proceeds from each answer given. Other group members are encouraged to respond along with the group leader to promote group collaboration. Creating a collaborative group process is critical to the success of a group. As the leader helps members identify exceptions and begin to recognize personal resiliency and competency, group members begin to feel the context shift away from that of a problem-focused group. This keeps the group process more solution-focused and on track. Creating a group context in which members can learn more about their personal strengths and resources is key to assisting members in solving their own concerns.

Exception Questions

SFBT is based on the notion that there were times when the problems individuals identify were not problematic. These times are called *exceptions*. Bateson (1972) argued that we learn by comparing one phenomenon with another and discovering what he called "the news of difference." **Exception questions** direct members to times when the problem does not occur, or occurs less often or less intensely. Exceptions are those past experiences in a member's life when it would be reasonable to have expected the problem to occur, but somehow it did not (de Shazer, 1985; Murphy, 2015). Once identified by a group member, these instances of success can be useful in making further changes. **Change-focused questions** explore what group members believe to be important goals and how they can tap their strengths and resources to reach their goals (Murphy, 2015). This exploration reminds people that problems are not all-powerful and have not existed forever; it also provides a field of opportunity for evoking resources, engaging strengths, and positing possible solutions. Exceptions are actual events that take place outside of the problem context. Solution-focused counselors listen attentively for signs of previous solutions, exceptions, and goals (de Shazer & Dolan, 2007). They believe that life is about change and that change is inevitable.

The intent of solution-focused counselors is to guide clients in a self-chosen direction based on what has worked previously. Conversations are shaped to help clients create situations in which they can make steady gains toward their goals (de Shazer, 1991). In doing this, a counselor might say, "Tell me about times when you feel good, when things are going your way, and when you enjoy your family and friends." It is in these stories of life worth living that the power of problems is deconstructed and new solutions are manifested and made possible.

The Miracle Question

In many groups the participants will come with a "problem-oriented" frame of mind. Even the few solutions they have considered are wrapped in the power of the problem orientation. Group leaders who draw on ideas from a solution-focused perspective tend to intervene by asking people to create optimistic

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

conversations that highlight the belief that it is possible to quickly achieve usable goals. These goals are developed by using what de Shazer (1985, 1988) calls the **miracle question**, which is generally presented as follows: "If a miracle happened and the problem you have disappeared overnight, how would you know it was solved, *and what would be different*?" Group members are then encouraged to enact "what would be different" in spite of perceived problems. The miracle question is aimed at enabling group members to visualize what life would look like if their problem did not exist. If a group member asserts that she wants to feel more confident and secure, the facilitator might say something like this: "Let yourself imagine that you leave the group today and that you are on track to acting more confidently and securely. What will you be *doing* differently?" This process of considering hypothetical solutions reflects O'Hanlon and Weiner-Davis's (2003) belief that change can occur in three ways: (1) by changing what we are doing, (2) by changing how we view the problem situation, and (3) by engaging in a conversation of resources and strengths that we can use to create solutions. In solution-focused counseling, problems are not "solved" as much as solutions are constructed. The eventual solutions group members construct may not have anything to do with the problem that they described when they entered the group.

It can be most helpful for group counselors to encourage the members to dream, for dreams say a great deal about where people want to go and the kind of life they want. Indeed, members can be invited to dream the impossible dream. If they have the courage to pursue their dreams, they are more likely to meet with success than if they limit their imagination. The miracle question is one example of a future-oriented exception question and is a goal-setting technique that is useful when a member has no clue what a miracle might look like. The miracle question is a way to discover the client's goal that conveys respect for the client's situation and assists the individual in identifying smaller, more manageable goals (de Shazer & Dolan, 2007). The miracle question shifts the discourse by disrupting an individual's persistent negative narrative and stimulating the imagination toward creative solutions (Hoyt, 2011). Other group members can be asked to brainstorm with those members who are unclear about their goals by speculating what a miracle might look like. This question has a future focus in that the members can begin to consider a different kind of life that is disentangled from or emancipated from the problem-saturated story they described at the beginning of group counseling. This intervention shifts the emphasis from both past and current problems toward a more satisfying life in the future.

Scaling Questions

Solution-focused therapists use **scaling questions**, asking clients to rate a behavior on a scale when changes in human experiences are not easily observed, such as feelings, moods, or communication. For example, a group member reporting feelings of panic or anxiety might be asked, "On a scale of zero to 10, with zero being how you felt when you first came to this group and 10 being how you feel the day after your miracle occurs and your problem is gone, how would you rate your anxiety right now?" Even moving away from zero to 1 shows improvement, and counselors may ask, "How did you do that?" and "What do you need to do to move another number up the scale?" Scaling questions enable clients to pay closer attention to what they are doing and how they can take steps that will lead to the changes they desire. Scaling is a useful technique for making complex dimensions of a client's life more concrete and accessible to both the client and the counselor (De Jong & Berg, 2013). This technique can be creatively applied to tap clients' perceptions about a wide range of experiences, including "self-esteem, pre-session change, self-confidence, investment in change, willingness to work hard to bring about desired changes, prioritizing of problems to be solved, perception of hopefulness, and evaluation of progress" (Berg, 1994, pp. 102–103).

Metcalf (1998) writes about the importance of group therapists evaluating how much leading they are doing in a given group session. She asks group leaders to reflect on this question: "On a scale of 0 to 10, with 0 meaning I did nothing and 10 meaning I did all of the work for the group, where was I when the session was over? Where was the group as a whole?" If leaders become aware that they are at the 10 mark and the group members are on the low

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

end of the scale, leaders should consider changing the degree of responsibility they are assuming for keeping a group session moving. Group leaders can get feedback by asking participants to rate their leadership performance on the scale, ideally at the end of each group session. This is an example of how group leaders can incorporate practice-based evidence in their group work (see Chapter 2, *Group Leadership*).

Formula First Session Task

The **formula first session task (FFST)** is a homework assignment a group leader might give members to complete between their first and second sessions. The leader might say, "Between now and the next time we meet, I would like for each of you to observe, so that you can describe to all of us next time, what happens in your (family, life, marriage, relationship) that you want to continue to have happen" (de Shazer, 1985, p. 137). At the second session, members can be asked what they observed and what they would like to have happen in the future. They can also respond to each other's observations as group colleagues. De Shazer believes this intervention tends to increase individuals' optimism and hope about their present and future situation. The FFST technique puts the emphasis on future solutions rather than on past problems (Murphy, 2015). The FFST intervention might be used after clients have had a chance to express their present concerns, views, and stories. It is important that group members feel understood before they are directed to make changes.

Group Leader Feedback to Group Members

At the end of a session, the solution-focused group leader often gives feedback to group members in the form of compliments and suggestions. The feedback is based on information group members have revealed in their interactions in the group and what they need to do more of or what they need to do differently to increase their chances of successfully meeting their goals (De Jong & Berg, 2013). This summary feedback assists members in carrying their learning outside of the group sessions and into daily living. De Jong and Berg describe three basic parts to the structure of the summary feedback: compliments, a bridge, and suggesting a task. *Compliments* are genuine affirmations of what clients are already doing (exceptions) that are leading toward effective solutions. These compliments, which are a form of encouragement, create hope and convey the expectation to clients that they can achieve their goals by drawing on their strengths and successes. Compliments can take the form of positive and sincere feedback about exceptions throughout a group session. In working with an assertiveness training group, for example, the leader might say, "I was very impressed with the courage each of you showed this week by speaking up and being heard (an exception) instead of remaining silent." Second, a *bridge*, which is based on identified exceptions, links the initial compliment to the suggested tasks to carry outside of the group. The bridge provides the rationale for the suggestions. A bridge to the compliment might go something like this: "We also talked about how important it is to learn as much as we can about those times when we speak up." The third aspect of feedback consists of *suggesting tasks* to clients, which can be considered as homework. Observational tasks ask clients to simply pay attention to some aspect of their lives: "Between now and our next meeting, pay close attention to the times when you speak up, and make note of anything that is different about your approach to those times compared to the times when you don't speak up." This self-monitoring process helps clients note the differences when things are better, especially what was different about the way they thought, felt, or behaved. Behavioral tasks may be assigned when group members are uncertain of what they want to be different or what they will be doing when things are better. These tasks require that members actually do something that would likely be useful to them in constructing solutions. SFBT group leaders prefer ending a session by suggesting possible experiments for members based on something the members are already doing (exceptions), thinking, or feeling that is moving them in the direction of their goals. It is best if *change ideas* and assignments emanate from the group member rather than from the therapist. Oftentimes leaders encourage members to design their own experiments that they are willing to do before the next group session (de Shazer & Dolan, 2007).

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Group Theories in Action: A Solution-Focused Brief Therapy Application*

In this session, I ask group members to focus on their strengths rather than dwelling on their problems. I invite members to identify some of the shifts they have made in the group and to take credit for these changes, no matter how small. I also provide a space for members to talk about further changes they would like to make. Asking group members to imagine how their life will be once they have succeeded in making these changes is also helpful.

- Kellie identifies how she worked on her dissertation and earned a doctoral degree. She can accept the fact that she drops the ball at times, but this is acceptable. She is reminding herself of this mantra, "Show up and be who you are!"
- Randy thinks about exceptions to telling himself "I am not enough." He recalls how many times he has done something that illustrates that he is a competent person.
- Jeff often zeros in on times when he lacks self-confidence. He thinks of a time when he did well and what he was doing when he felt confident. This is in contrast to feeling he was a failure. He is giving himself credit for being able to accept feeling good about himself rather than dwelling on times when he felt like a failure.
- Lupe reports that she was able to take a 2-week vacation and felt that she earned this vacation. She said that many times when she would take time off work she would feel guilty. She proudly reports going on a vacation and realizing the world did not fall apart.
- Julius identifies how he often feels that he must always be available. He took the challenge of imagining that he could change this attitude of feeling he must be able to manage everything. He reports that he has made a shift in his attitude: "There is only one of me and I can only do so much." He feels relieved that he does not have to assume full responsibility for all of his students all of the time.
- Dana realizes that she will not get everything done if she takes any time for herself. She reports, "It has helped me to think about all that I have done and what I have accomplished." She also is coming to accept herself more fully and not to expect that she will gain everyone's approval.
- Melissa is thinking of all the times she is able to listen to her child and be present. She is challenging her self-doubts about not being an adequate mother. She is enjoying showing more of herself in the group and not feeling that she has to isolate herself.
- Galo struggles with needing to do everything perfectly. What helped him was reflecting on his accomplishments and the pride he feels in what he is becoming. He realizes that he generally does his best and is learning that this is good enough.

I operate on the premise that there are exceptions to every problem, or times when the problem was minimal or even absent. By inviting members to talk about these instances of success, they can gain control over what had seemed to be pressing problems. The climate of these exceptions allows for the possibility of creating solutions. When I ask "What have you done in the past that worked?," the members of the group develop a new perspective on their situation. I am asking members to notice the changes they are making and what they are doing to bring about these changes. In addition, I am encouraging them to consider how they can put their new insights into action in their daily life.

Applying SFBT to Group Work in Schools

Solution-focused counseling offers a great deal of promise for practitioners who want a practical and time-effective approach to interventions in school settings. As mentioned earlier, SFBT shifts the focus from what's wrong to what's working (Murphy, 2015; Sklare, 2005). Rather than being a cookbook of techniques for removing students' problems, this approach

*The group session discussed here is based on the SFBT group work segment in the video *Group Theories in Action*, which is included in the Online Student Resources.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

offers school counselors a collaborative framework aimed at achieving small, concrete changes that enable students to discover a more productive direction. This model has much to offer to school counselors and others who are responsible for serving large caseloads of students with a range of problems from preschool through high school (Murphy, 2015; Sklare, 2005). Gingerich and Wabeke (2001) report that a number of writers have provided case examples and discussions of successfully employing solution-focused brief counseling (SFBC) in the schools.

Charlesworth and Jackson (2004) view solution -focused counseling as appropriate for school settings for these reasons:

- Counselors are able to provide effective counseling to more students in less time.
- The model underscores the importance of small changes and co-constructed goals.
- The approach helps students develop positive goals rather than negative "stop doing it" goals.
- This approach is effective and practical because it emphasizes "what works" rather than "why" something is a problem.
- SFBC encourages the acceptance and accommodation of diverse opinions and beliefs, which is appropriate for many school counselors who work in schools with diverse student groups.
- SFBC is based on clear concepts and is relatively easy to learn.
- It is a strength-based approach rather than a model based on psychological disorders and dysfunctional behaviors.

Sklare (2005) describes fives steps in SFBC that can be applied to counseling students, both individually and in groups:

- Students identify a well-defined goal that has meaning to them.
- Students then say what their lives would be like without the problem that gets in the way of attaining their goals.
- The counselor facilitates students' recognition of times when their problem did not exist and how they brought about exceptions to a problem.
- The counselor asks students to establish a baseline rating that reflects the severity of their situation at the present time, which can be accomplished by asking scaling questions. The counselor then encourages students to think of how they might move slowly up the scale. Tasks are very specific so that students have a clear direction toward change.
- The counselor constructs written messages to students that compliments their efforts and identifies a task to complete.

For a detailed description of 15 steps that can be used to lead group participants through a solution-focused journey, see Sklare (2005, pp. 147–156).

Sklare (2005) gives special attention to the process of goal setting and provides many concrete examples of how counselors can assist students in identifying well-established goals. Positive goals involve what students want to achieve and are stated in observable, specific, measurable, and attainable language. Counselors assist students in changing negative goals, which are couched in words that imply the absence of something, into positive ones by focusing on desired behaviors. One cannot, for example, describe what "not angry" looks like. Davis and Osborn (2000) suggest using the "great instead" question to help students identify a positive future: "So when you are not angry, what are you doing instead?" (p. 64).

The concepts and techniques in the solution-focused approach are applicable to both group and individual counseling (Murphy, 2015). Students in a counseling group can be asked to identify exceptions to their problematic situations and to identify resources that can be useful to them in achieving their goals. In these groups, the students can rate their progress toward their goals and provide feedback to the leader on the usefulness of each session. For more information on the tasks and techniques of solution-focused counseling in schools, see Murphy (2015). For examples of solution-focused groups in schools, refer to Tollison and Synatschk (2007).

Applying Solution-Focused Brief Therapy With Multicultural Populations

Sklare (2005) contends that many characteristics of solution-focused brief counseling make it an ideal counseling approach with diverse populations: the

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

emphasis on the experience of clients rather than working from the counselor's framework, the discussion of solutions rather than problems, the use of the client's words rather than the counselor's terms and phrases, and the focus on strengths rather than weaknesses.

Murphy (2015) claims that the emphasis on strengths and resources in solution-focused counseling supports culturally competent services regardless of ethnicity and cultural background. Some specific aspects of solution-focused counseling that lend themselves to culturally competent practice include treating each client as a unique individual; collaborating on the goals of counseling; tailoring services to each client; and obtaining ongoing feedback from clients on the usefulness of interventions and adjusting them accordingly.

Meyer and Cottone (2013) applied solution-focused therapy with American Indian populations. Concepts particularly useful for this population were working from the client's frame of reference, emphasizing wellness, and acknowledging that clients are the experts on their past and present. Meyer and Cottone suggest that the miracle question may need to be adapted in counseling American Indians. Because the miracle question is geared to the future, it may conflict with the present focus of American Indian culture. To conform to the clients' time orientation, the miracle question could be stated like this: "Remember a time when you experienced harmony with all people and all things. What would need to be different for you to feel that way now?" Because humility is valued in the American Indian community, scaling questions also may need to be adapted to focus on what clients describe as their resources and strengths.

Bertolino and O'Hanlon (2002) do not approach clients with a preconceived notion about their experience. Instead, they learn from their clients about their experiential world. Bertolino and O'Hanlon practice multicultural curiosity by listening respectfully to their clients, who become their best teachers. Here are some questions they suggest as a way to more fully understand multicultural influences on a client:

- Tell me more about the influence that [some aspect of your culture] has played in your life.
- What can you share with me about your background that will enable me to more fully understand you?
- What challenges have you faced growing up in your culture?
- What, if anything, about your background has been difficult for you?
- How have you been able to draw on strengths and resources from your culture? What resources can you draw from in times of need?

Questions such as these can shed light on specific multicultural influences that have been sources of support or that contributed to a client's problem.

Bitter (2021) asks practitioners who support a multicultural perspective to reflect upon these solution-focused questions:

- What were some times when you felt empowered?
- If a miracle happened and the world in which you live no longer oppressed or marginalized people, what would you be able to do differently with your life?
- If there were improvement in the community in which you live with regard to racism, sexism, and other forms of discrimination, what differences would you notice?

The not-knowing stance the group leader assumes, and the assumption that the client is the expert, can limit the effectiveness of SFBT counseling for some individuals. In some cultural groups the professional is seen as the expert who will offer direction and solutions for the person seeking help. A group counselor is likely to engender a lack of confidence in group members by asserting, "I am not really an expert; you are the experts; I trust your ability to find solutions to your problems." To avoid this situation, group counselors need to convey to those in the group that they have expertise in the group process but will not direct members to engage in behaviors that are contrary to their underlying goals. When group members ask for ideas from the leader because this is proper in their culture, the facilitator could engage members in a discussion of what those ideas might be.

Motivational Interviewing

Motivational Interviewing (MI) is a humanistic, client-centered, directive counseling approach

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

developed by William R. Miller and Stephen Rollnick in the early 1980s. Clinical and research applications of motivational interviewing have grown at a remarkable pace, which is reflected in the more than 800 publications and 200 random clinical trials on motivational interviewing over the past 40 years (Arkowitz & Westra, 2009). This research has shed light on the applications and limitations of MI.

MI was initially designed as a brief intervention for problem drinking (Miller, 1983), and it has been established as an evidence-based practice in the treatment of individuals with substance use disorders. Subsequently, this approach has been applied to a wide range of problems, including compulsive gambling, eating disorders, anxiety disorders, depression, suicidality, chronic disease management, and health-related practices (Arkowitz & Miller, 2008; Arkowitz & Westra, 2009). MI has been applied more often to individual counseling than to group work, but the practice of group MI (and group motivational enhancement therapy, an adaptation of MI) is gaining momentum as an efficient and cost-effective preventive method and an intervention for court-mandated individuals and college students referred to campus educational programs because of alcohol violations (LaChance et al., 2009). In *Motivational Interviewing in Groups*, Wagner and Ingersoll (2013) provide the evidence base for motivational interviewing in groups, and various contributors describe how MI group work can be applied to work with many different client populations.

This section highlights ways that group counselors can integrate principles of MI with a number of approaches, especially solution-focused brief therapy/solution-focused counseling, person-centered therapy, cognitive behavioral therapy, and reality therapy.

The MI Spirit

Motivational interviewing is rooted in the philosophy of client-centered therapy, but with a "twist." The twist is that, unlike the nondirective person-centered approach, MI is deliberately directive and has the specific goals of reducing ambivalence about change and increasing intrinsic motivation (Arkowitz & Miller, 2008). MI emphasizes being purposeful and getting to the point—the direction, purpose, and point is to guide group members toward positive change. MI has become a well-established and well-respected approach to assisting people in making the changes they desire (Cormier et al., 2017). Motivational interviewing is a living, evolving method. Greater emphasis is now being given to the underlying spirit of MI, and the ways clinicians are trained has changed significantly over the years (Miller & Rollnick, 2009).

Like solution-focused brief therapy, MI involves more than a set of technical interventions; it emphasizes the relational context of therapy, which is known as the "MI spirit." When this MI spirit is applied to group counseling, it involves the group leader establishing collaborative partnerships with members, drawing on the ideas and resources of group members, and preserving the autonomy of the members (recognizing that all choices ultimately rest with the members rather than with the leader's authority). Both MI and SFBT emphasize the internal frame of reference of clients, their present concerns, and discrepancies between values and behavior. Rollnick et al. (2008) suggest that MI is a "refined form of guiding." MI works by activating clients' own motivation for change and adherence to treatment. Miller and Rollnick (2013) believe that "MI is about arranging conversations so that people talk themselves into change, based on their own values and interests" (p. 4). Group leaders avoid imposing their ways of thinking on group members and assist members in becoming their own advocates for change and the primary agents of change in their lives. "Motivational interviewing is a collaborative conversational style for strengthening a person's own motivation and commitment to change" (p. 29).

Wagner and Ingersoll (2013) note that MI is therapeutically valuable because it increases a client's energy for change, eases reluctance, and lessens natural defenses that hinder change. The readiness to change begins when people recognize and accept a gap between where they are and where they would like to be. "MI helps people change in the directions they prefer, rather than be pressed or pulled by external influences—MI helps them to change rather than be changed" (p. 31).

The Principles and Clinical Strategies of Motivational Interviewing

In the following list, I have adapted Miller and Rollnick's (2013) principles of MI to fit within the context of group counseling.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

1. Group leaders strive to experience the world from the members' perspective without judgment or criticism. MI emphasizes reflective listening, which is a way for group practitioners to better understand the subjective world of members. This emphasis on understanding the members' subjective world is not unique to MI as this is a core concept in most of the relationship-oriented therapies.
2. Group counselors using MI reflect discrepancies between the behaviors and the values of members to increase the motivation to change. MI is designed to evoke, explore, and resolve ambivalence. Leaders pay particular attention to members' arguments for changing compared to their arguments for not changing. By listening to members' speech as they address both sides of ambivalence, group leaders assist members in emphasizing the argument for change. Leaders employ a wide variety of strategies to elicit and reinforce *change talk* and strengthen the discussion about change. Because MI is directive and purposeful, leaders steer the conversation in the direction of considering change without persuading members to change. MI group leaders encourage members to determine whether change will occur, and if so, what kinds of changes will occur and when.
3. Group facilitators operating from an MI orientation support members' self-efficacy, mainly by encouraging members to use the resources they already have to take necessary actions and succeed in changing. MI therapists strive to enhance client agency about change and are interested in the group members' ideas about change. Emphasis is on the ability of clients to make their own decisions.
4. The concept of resistance is constructively reframed in MI and is identified as dissonance in the counseling relationship (Miller et al., 2006). Resistance is exemplified when client and counselor do not agree on goals. Reluctance or ambivalence to change is viewed as normal and is an expected part of the therapeutic process. Ambivalence reflects an internal struggle and is intrapersonal, whereas resistance is between people (including group members) and is interpersonal in nature. During the early phase of MI therapy it is common for members to express ambivalence about changing, and the group leader attempts to understand both sides of this ambivalence from the member's perspective. Group leaders encourage members to explore their ambivalence and strive to build intrinsic motivation.
5. When clients show signs of readiness to change through decreased resistance to change and increased talk about change, a critical phase of MI begins. In this stage, clients may express a desire and an ability to change, show an interest in questions about change, experiment with possible change actions between sessions, and envision a future picture of their life once the desired changes have been made. At this time, therapists shift their focus to strengthening clients' commitments to change and helping them implement a change plan.
6. Marshall and Nielsen (2020) note that the planning process varies depending on the nature of the change, but in general, good plans have certain characteristics: (1) they are specific, rewarding, observable, and measurable; (2) goals are clear, concrete, and achievable; (3) the client is responsible for making the plan to bring about change; (4) specific steps are identified to aid the change; (5) support from others is of value; (6) it must be the client's plan; and (7) the individual must commit to carrying out the plan. Marshall and Nielsen suggest that a key aspect of MI is the fact that it is a gentle yet powerful way of communicating with individuals who are experiencing ambivalence. An aim of MI is to assist clients in resolving ambivalence to determine whether a change is worth the effort. Once individuals decide they want to change, the plan provides a road map to follow when implementing the change.

In both person-centered therapy and MI, the counselor provides the conditions for growth and change by communicating attitudes of accurate empathy and unconditional positive regard. In MI, the therapeutic relationship is as important in achieving successful outcomes as the specific theoretical model or school of psychotherapy from which the

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

therapist operates (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). The attitudes and skills in MI are based on a person-centered philosophy and include using open-ended questions, employing reflective listening, affirming and supporting the client, summarizing and linking at the end of sessions, and eliciting and reinforcing *change talk*. Once clients show signs of wanting or needing to change, the therapist guides individuals in taking the steps necessary to bring about the changes they want (Arkowitz & Miller, 2008). In MI the group leader assumes the role of a guide or change consultant and encourages a change plan that comes primarily from the members themselves.

Stages of Change The stages of change model is based on the assumption that people progress through a series of five identifiable stages in the counseling process (Krebs et al., 2019). In the *precontemplation stage*, there is no intention of changing a behavior pattern in the near future. For example, people who are mandated to attend group therapy often feel coerced to attend and are likely to display resistance in recognizing that they have a problem. In the *contemplation stage*, people are aware of a problem and are considering overcoming it, but they have not yet made a commitment to take action to bring about the change. At this stage, people struggle with deciding whether to maintain the status quo or put time and energy into making behavioral changes. In the *preparation stage*, individuals intend to take action in the immediate future and report some small behavioral changes. In the *action stage*, individuals are taking steps to modify their behavior to solve their problems. This action involves making overt behavioral changes and requires a commitment. During the *maintenance stage*, people work to consolidate their gains and prevent relapse.

People do not pass neatly through these five stages in a linear fashion, and if change is initially unsuccessful, individuals may return to an earlier stage (Prochaska & Norcross, 2018). MI therapists strive to match specific interventions with whatever stage of change clients are experiencing. It is important to match relationships of choice as well as treatment strategies of choice. If there is a mismatch between process and stage, movement through the stage will be impeded and is likely to be manifested in reluctant behavior. MI focuses on present and future conditions and empowers clients to find ways to achieve their goals.

Concepts Common to Solution-Focused Brief Therapy and Motivational Interviewing

Motivational interviewing and solution-focused therapy have many common factors, and both counseling styles have gained recognition and increased popularity over the past two decades (Lewis & Osborn, 2004). A confluence between these two approaches can enhance clinical practice, which has implications for group practitioners, regardless of their primary theoretical orientation. Some of these commonalities are discussed in the following sections.

Nonpathological, Health-Promoting Emphasis Both SFBT and MI emerged as a reaction against the prevailing medical model that focuses on problems. Neither approach gives much credence to diagnostic labels because of the dehumanizing aspect of attaching a label to a client. SFBT and MI practitioners believe in clients' abilities, strengths, resources, and competencies. The assumption is that clients want to be healthy and desire positive change. Group practitioners are mainly interested in exploring what is working well for participants in the group rather than dwelling on members' problems.

Multiple Perspectives Lewis and Osborn (2004) state that both MI and SFBT reflect a social constructionist, postmodern philosophy that argues for the existence of multiple social realities. MI exemplifies a phenomenological approach in which the counselor attempts to see life from the client's perspective and to identify goals from that vantage point. In MI clients are not persuaded to adopt advice from the counselor but are invited to consider a menu of alternative interventions or options.

Reframing "Resistance" Resistance is typically viewed as a phenomenon that resides within the client, and traditional therapy approaches often assume that clients who are "stuck" are resistant to change. If an impasse in therapy is reached, clients are frequently blamed and labeled as "unmotivated." MI and SFBT hold that labeling clients "resistant" gets in the

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

way of understanding clients' behavior and impedes development of a collaborative partnership with clients. MI encourages counselors to reflect on their style of interacting with clients to better understand their own part in creating relationships where there is resistance or dissonance. By viewing resistance as something that emerges from the interactions between clients and counselors, the functions resistance serves are illuminated and counselors can adapt their approach to it. People who seek therapy often are ambivalent about making life changes, and their motivation may ebb and flow during the course of therapy. Counseling is about exploring an individual's values and goals. When we are able to understand what people value, we have a key to what motivates them. A central goal of MI is to increase internal motivation to change that is based on the personal goals and values of the client (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). Likewise, SFBT therapists engage clients in choosing goals and strategies for success. Both MI and SFBT group leaders take a respectful view of resistance and work with it therapeutically.

Cooperation Is Key MI was initially developed as a way of working with people with addictions that avoided the confrontational style used by many addictions counselors (Miller & Rollnick, 2013). MI stresses client self-responsibility and promotes an invitational style for working cooperatively with clients to generate alternative solutions to behavioral problems. MI therapists avoid arguing with clients; instead they roll with resistance, express empathy, and listen reflectively. In SFBT therapists also work cooperatively and collaboratively with clients; clients experience support from therapists, which facilitates openness toward future possibilities and new directions. MI and SFBT therapists do not view clients as opponents to be defeated but as allies who play a major role in their present and future success.

Use of Client Strengths and Resources

Both MI and SFBT rest on the premise that people have strengths and resources that can be tapped in their efforts to bring about positive change. They emphasize that the responsibility for change lies with clients, not with the counselor. Individuals have within themselves the capacity to generate intrinsic motivations to change, and therapists and clients share a sense of hope and optimism that change is possible. Once clients believe that they have the capacity to change and heal, a host of exciting possibilities opens up. This hope can lead to enhanced motivation to reach personal goals.

Temporal Sensitivity Both SFBT and MI are time-sensitive counseling approaches, with their respective ties to brief interventions in addiction counseling and to brief therapy. MI was designed from the outset to be a brief intervention aimed at producing results. SFBT also tends to be brief, but it is both present- and future-oriented. SFBT and MI practitioners use time efficiently, keeping themselves and their clients focused without rushing the process (Lewis & Osborn, 2004).

Strategies for Bringing About Change

Both SFBT and MI share techniques aimed at helping clients make changes. A few of the interventions frequently employed by both SFBT and MI group practitioners are reflective listening and demonstrating empathy, using summaries to highlight key aspects of a session, using open-ended questioning, employing scaling or ruler questions to measure progress, exploring client goals and values, and asking clients to look forward to the kind of future they want.

Motivational Interviewing as an Integrative Approach

Motivational interviewing can be integrated with cognitive behavioral and other therapies (Arkowitz et al., 2008). Constantino et al. (2009) believe that the ability of MI to work with ambivalence and to address a client's hopes, fears, desires, and possible ambivalence about the therapist are among its main strengths as an integrative psychotherapy approach. Westra and Arkowitz (2011) state that MI can be used as a prelude to cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT), and can lead to enhanced results. MI assists clients in making a commitment to the therapeutic process, which leads to increased client engagement, adherence, and retention in cognitive behavioral and other action-oriented therapies.

Many of MI's principles are compatible with cognitive behavioral therapy techniques. The purposeful or directive approach of MI (its "twist") is to shape client

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

behavior. CBT group practitioners also use a structured approach and have an agenda for helping group members make behavioral changes. Borrowing more fully from MI strategies, especially in exploring ambivalence and in working with clients to increase intrinsic motivation, could enhance the functioning of cognitive behavioral groups. MI also can be considered as a precursor to more formal treatment, for example, helping to prepare individual clients for cognitive behavioral group therapy (Westra & Arkowitz, 2011).

There are many possibilities for integration of MI and reality therapy. Reality therapy emphasizes the importance of group members making their own evaluation of their current behavior. Members are asked to determine for themselves the degree to which what they are doing in the present is working for them and is meeting their needs. Once members in a reality therapy group decide that they want to change some of their behaviors, they are ready to create an action plan. Both reality therapy and MI share common notions of how to best establish and implement a change plan.

Evaluation of Solution-Focused Brief Therapy and Motivational Interviewing in Groups

Contributions and Strengths of Solution-Focused Brief Therapy

I especially value the optimistic orientation of SFBT that rests on the assumption that people are competent and can be trusted to use their resources in creating better solutions and more life-affirming stories. Rather than focusing on limitations, the emphasis is on possibilities. Many solution-focused practitioners and writers have found that clients are able to make significant moves toward building more satisfying lives in a short period of time (De Jong & Berg, 2013; de Shazer & Dolan, 2007; Guterman, 2013; Metcalf, 1998; Murphy, 2015; O'Hanlon & Weiner-Davis, 2003; Sklare, 2005; Walter & Peller, 1992, 2000).

The nonpathologizing stance characteristic of solution-focused practitioners is a major contribution to the counseling profession. Group counselors assist members in developing a new level of awareness of aspects of themselves that are often underappreciated and overlooked. By emphasizing what group members are doing when they are not stuck rather than focusing on what they are doing when they are stuck, the therapist guides members toward developing a fuller appreciation and utilization of their own abilities (Hoyt, 2011).

Regardless of the specific theoretical orientation of the counselor, brief therapy has been shown to be effective for a wide range of problems. De Jong and Berg (2013) claim that solution-focused counseling is one of the most researched, evidence-based approaches. Research that supports the successful outcomes of solution-focused brief therapy approaches is increasing (Franklin et al., 2012; Gingerich & Peterson, 2013). Gingerich and Peterson (2013) reviewed controlled outcome studies of SFBT and found that 74% of the studies reported a significant positive benefit from SFBT and an additional 23% reported positive trends. "Overall, evidence from the 43 studies suggests that SFBT consistently produces positive benefits to clients across fields of practice" (p. 279).

SFBT is widely accepted among mental health practitioners working in a managed care environment due to its focus on strengths and solutions and because it offers a framework for practicing brief therapy (Gingerich & Peterson, 2013). Making each session count and helping clients understand that what happens after a therapy session is critical are strengths of SFBT. "The simple truth is that most therapy *is* brief therapy and will be increasingly so; for the sake of our patients and our profession, we should learn to practice it well" (Hoyt, 2011, p. 419). Gingerich and Peterson (2013) report that clients prefer the practical, time-limited, strengths-based aspects of SFBT.

A major strength of the solution-focused approach to group work is the use of questioning, which is the centerpiece of this approach. Asking open-ended questions about group member's attitudes, thoughts, feelings, behaviors, and perceptions during the times when the problem occurs less or is

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

less intense is one of the main interventions. Skilled group counselors do not barrage clients with questions; instead, a combination of respectful listening and appropriate questioning by counselors helps group participants make progress. Especially useful are future-oriented questions that encourage group members to think about how they are likely to solve potential future problems. An assumption of this approach is that the future is both created and negotiable. The future is a hopeful place, where people are the architects of their own destiny (de Shazer & Dolan, 2007). It is the role of the solution-focused group counselor to create the landscape within which members construct their future together.

Contributions and Strengths of Motivational Interviewing

A major strength of motivational interviewing is the vast research that has been conducted, which confirms that MI is an effective treatment for a wide range of clinical problems. Miller and Rose (2009) describe MI as a psychotherapeutic method that is evidence-based, relatively brief, specifiable, applicable across a wide variety of problem areas, complementary to other active treatment methods, and useful for a broad range of mental health professionals. Cormier et al. (2017) note that MI enjoys an extensive and impressive record of well-conducted and compelling research. Reviews of MI suggest that this counseling style has broad applications across behavioral domains, and the practice of MI (including combining elements of MI with other therapy methods) results in positive client outcomes. MI can be a significant factor in assisting clients in making a commitment to the therapy process, thus improving client involvement, adherence, and retention in cognitive behavioral and other action-oriented therapies. MI has earned appeal and relevance among clinicians because of its scholarly and research commitments.

Motivational interviewing can also be employed to produce change in organizations. In *Motivational Interviewing for Leaders in the Helping Professions*, Marshall and Nielsen (2020) emphasize the importance of the attitudes and values of helpers as they express the MI spirit when approaching individuals and organizations. MI is built on a person-centered foundation, but it is essential that practitioners master skills embodied in the four MI processes—engaging, focusing, evoking, and planning—if they are to assist individuals or organizations in successfully making changes.

Limitations of Solution-Focused Brief Therapy

Some inexperienced or untrained group leaders may be enamored with particular techniques of the solution-focused approach and may glorify a technique and make it an end in itself. Murphy (2015) emphasizes that there are no set formulas or recipes to follow in effectively practicing SFBT. Effective group work is not simply a matter of utilizing any of these interventions. Instead, it is the atmosphere created by the group facilitator that moves the group from a problem-focused stance to the belief that all members have the capacity to find solutions to their own problems.

To effectively practice SFBT, group practitioners need to possess a range of group and clinical skills and use them in a timely way. In a relative short time, group practitioners must be able to convey the importance of formulating specific goals and then effectively use appropriate interventions to assist members in attaining their goals. The attitude of group counselors and their ability to use questions that are reflective of genuine respectful interest are crucial to the process and outcomes of a group, and it may be difficult for some counselors to generate this level of collaboration with members.

Some solution-focused therapists now acknowledge the problem of relying too much on a few techniques, and they are placing increased importance on the therapeutic relationship and the overall philosophy of the approach (Lipchik, 2002; Murphy, 2015; Nichols & Davis, 2017, 2020). Currently, solution-focused therapists are encouraged to think in a possibility-oriented way, allowing the questions stirred by their curiosity to guide the process. These findings have implications for group counselors who apply solution-focused methods.

Some key figures of solution-focused therapy present the theory as something revolutionary and new, but the similarities between the Adlerian approach and SFBT are striking (Carlson et al., 2006). Many solution-focused writers have criticized

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

traditional theories for their focus on pathology, deficits, exploring the past, and ignoring clients' competencies and resources. However, Adlerians have long objected to the medical model, promoted the values of brief therapy, talked more about growth than curing clients' problems, given more attention to the present and the future than to a client's past, and have made encouragement central in therapy. Watts and Pietrzak (2000) make a case for the similarities between SFBT and Adlerian therapy, especially in the area of the encouragement process. They contend that theorists and practitioners of SFBT tend not to give Adler credit for the foundations of their approach.

SFBT has much to offer group practitioners. Many of the basic ideas and techniques of SFBT can be integrated with motivational interviewing and the other therapeutic orientations addressed in this book. This model offers a framework for group practitioners, regardless of their theoretical orientation, to critically examine the basic assumptions that guide the interventions they make in their groups.

Limitations of Motivational Interviewing

Miller and Rollnick (2009) make it clear that MI is not a panacea, nor was it designed to be a comprehensive approach to treatment. It is a method for addressing reluctance or ambivalence within a person who is considering dealing with a specific problem. Miller and Rollnick claim, "People who are already ready for change do not need MI, and there is some evidence that it may slow down their progress relative to action-oriented treatment" (p. 136). MI is clearly not designed to address all problems that people bring to counseling, nor is it meant to help clients explore existential choices.

Observing a skilled MI practitioner may give the appearance that the method is easy to learn, but "MI involves quite a complex set of skills that are used flexibly, responding to moment-to-moment changes in what the client says" (Miller & Rollnick, 2009, p. 135). MI is not a technique that is easily mastered through self-study or by attending a workshop. However, with deliberate practice and feedback both technical skills and interpersonal therapeutic skills that influence client outcomes can improve (Miller & Moyers, 2021). For practitioners to acquire and refine the skills that will facilitate clients being able to move in the direction they desire requires deliberate practice. Miller and Moyers explain that deliberate practice means intentionally engaging in activities designed to improve therapists' competence through repetition and successive refinement.

Miller and Moyers (2021) state that it is important for counselor educators to teach and model the interpersonal skills that are crucial to inviting clients to move in the direction of making changes in their life. MI involves the disciplined use of specific communication principles and skills designed to evoke an individual's own motivation for change. It takes a great deal of skill for therapists to guide a client to engage in change talk and to make a commitment to change. Miller and Moyers state that both evidence-based treatment procedures and the therapeutic relationship are related to successful therapy outcomes.

Self-Reflection and Discussion Questions

1. SFBT focuses on solutions rather than on exploration of problems. Group members are viewed as the experts on their life and have the resources within themselves to change. How could you use this present and future focus on solutions in your approach as a group leader?

2. The miracle question is often asked by the SFBT group leader. What applications do you see for this technique? What are some potential barriers to asking this kind of question?

3. In what ways can you apply the key concepts of SFBT to your own life? What one or two concepts or techniques would you want to apply to your work as a group leader?

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

4. In motivational interviewing, ambivalence is explored rather than judged, and reluctance to change is viewed as an expected part of the therapeutic process. Reflect on a specific behavior you would like to change but are hesitant to change. What would be most helpful to you in resolving your conflicting feelings or fears about making this change? How could you apply what might work for you personally to your role as a group leader?

5. What are some common factors of solution-focused brief therapy and motivational interviewing? In what ways are these approaches different from other theoretical approaches you have studied thus far? What contributions have SFBT and MI made in accelerating positive therapy outcomes? What are the limitations of SFBT and MI?

Where to Go From Here

The *Journal of Brief Therapy* is devoted to developments, innovations, and research related to brief therapy with individuals, couples, families, and groups. The articles deal with brief therapy related to all theoretical approaches, but especially to social constructionism, solution-focused therapy, and narrative therapy:

Springer Publishing Company
11 West 42nd Street, 15th Floor
New York, NY 10036
Telephone: (877) 687-7476
Email: contactus@springerpub.com
Website: www.springerpub.com

Several organizations provide training in solution-focused brief therapy:

Center for Solution-Focused Brief Therapy
John Walter and Jane Peller
1620 W. Thome
Chicago, Illinois 60660
Telephone: (847) 475-2691
Email: j-peller@neiu.edu or walterpeller@aol.com

Bill O'Hanlon and Possibilities
551 Cordova Rd., #715
Santa Fe, NM 87501
Telephone: (800) 381-2374
Fax: (505) 983-2761
Email: PossiBill@aol.com
Website: www.billohanlon.com

Therapeutic Collaborations: Consultation and Training (TCCT)
Bob Bertolino
P. O. Box 1175
St. Charles, MO 63302
Telephone/Fax: (314) 852-7274
Email: tcctinfo@cs.com

The Center for Change-Focused Practice in Schools (CCPS) at the University of Central Arkansas provides training, consultation, and supervision to school psychologists and counselors on solution-focused and client-directed/outcome-informed (CDOI) practice in schools. Services include onsite and offsite training, supervision, and consultation:

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Center for Change-Focused Practice in Schools (CCPS)
John Murphy, PhD
Department of Psychology & Counseling
University of Central Arkansas
Conway, AR 72035
Telephone: (501) 450-5450
Email: jmurphy@uca.edu
Website: www.drjohnmurphy.com

The Solution Focused Institute (SFI) at Texas Wesleyan University was founded in January 2009 in Fort Worth, Texas, to provide training to mental health practitioners and school teachers and counselors who want to implement a solution-focused approach in their work. The institute provides training onsite and offsite and offers supervision to individuals and groups:

Solution Focused Institute
Linda Metcalf, PhD
3001 Avenue D
Fort Worth, TX 76105
Telephone: (817) 690-2229
Fax: (817) 531-4935
Email: lmetcalf@txwes.edu

The Motivational Interviewing Network of Trainers (MINT) provides general information about motivational interviewing as well as links, training resources, and information on reprints and recent research on motivational interviewing. For more information and training resources, visit their website:

Motivational Interviewing
Website: www.motivationalinterviewing.org

Check out the psychotherapy.net website to see Insoo Kim Berg demonstrate SFBT:

Solution-Focused Brief Therapy
Video: www.psychotherapy.net/videos/approach/solution-focused

Recommended Supplementary Readings

Interviewing for Solutions (De Jong & Berg, 2013) is an excellent practical text aimed at teaching and learning solution-focused skills. It is written in a conversational and informal style and contains many examples to solidify learning skills.

Solution-Focused Counseling in Schools (Murphy, 2015) is a clearly written and practical book providing user-friendly strategies for dealing with a range of problems from preschool through high school. The focus is on the foundations of solution-focused counseling and on the tasks and techniques of this approach.

Conducting Student-Driven Interviews: Practical Strategies for Increasing Student Involvement and Addressing Behavior Problems (Murphy, 2013) equips mental health professionals with practical skills and techniques for conducting therapeutic conversations that invite students of all ages to take charge of school behavior problems and build customized solutions based on their unique strengths and resources.

Solution-Focused Group Therapy: Ideas for Groups in Private Practice, Schools, Agencies, and Treatment Programs (Metcalf, 1998) deals with the practical applications of solution-focused group therapy in various settings.

Motivational Interviewing: Helping People Change (Miller & Rollnick, 2013) explains current thinking about the process of behavior change, present the principles of MI, and provides detailed guidelines for putting these principles into practice. Case examples illustrate key points and demonstrate the benefits of MI in addictions treatment and other clinical contexts. The authors also discuss the process of learning MI.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Effective Psychotherapists: Clinical Skills That Improve Client Outcomes (Miller & Moyers, 2021) is a clear and practical work that describes attitudes and therapeutic skills that are basic to motivational interviewing: accurate empathy, acceptance, positive regard, genuineness, focus, hope, evocation, and offering advice. The authors identify and explore clinical skills that improve client outcomes.

Motivational Interviewing in Groups (Wagner & Ingersoll, 2013) provides an in-depth treatment of how motivational interviewing and group practice can be blended with various approaches. The stages in the evolution of MI groups and the evidence base for MI groups are described. Various contributors provide chapters that apply MI to a wide range of client populations.

Motivational Interviewing for Leaders in the Helping Professions (Marshall & Nielsen, 2020) highlights the key concepts of motivational interviewing and applies MI strategies to bringing about change in both individuals and organizations.

Video

Watch Gerald Corey's *Group Theories in Action*, video via the Cengage eBook. The group session discussed in this chapter is based on an integrative approach to group counseling.

References and Suggested Readings

Anderson, H., & Goolishian, H. (1992). The client is the expert: A not-knowing approach to therapy. In S. McNamee & K. J. Gergen (Eds.), *Therapy as social construction* (pp. 25–39). Sage.

*Arkowitz, H., & Miller, W. R. (2008). Learning, applying, and extending motivational interviewing. In H. Arkowitiz, H. A. Westra, W. R. Miller, & S. Rollnick (Eds.), *Motivational interviewing in the treatment of psychological disorders* (pp. 1–25). Guilford Press.

Arkowitz, H., & Westra, H. A. (2009). Introduction to the special series on motivational interviewing and psychotherapy. *Journal of Clinical Psychology, 65*(11), 1149–1155.

*Arkowitz, H., Westra, H. A., Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (Eds.). (2008). *Motivational interviewing in the treatment of psychological problems*. Guilford Press.

Bateson, G. (1972). *Steps to an ecology of mind*. Ballantine.

Berg, I. K. (1994). *Family-based services: A solution-focused approach*. Norton.

Berg. I. K., & Miller, S. D. (1992). *Working with the problem drinker: A solution-focused approach*. Norton.

*Bertolino, B. (2010). *Strengths-based engagement and practice: Creating effective helping relationships*. Pearson Education.

*Bertolino, B., & O'Hanlon, B. (2002). *Collaborative, competency-based counseling and therapy*. Allyn & Bacon.

*Bitter, J. R. (2021). *Theory and practice of couples and family counseling* (3rd ed.). American Counseling Association.

*Carlson, J., Watts, R. E., & Maniacci, M. (2006). *Adlerian therapy: Theory and practice*. American Psychological Association.

Charlesworth, J. R., & Jackson, M. (2004). Solution-focused brief counseling: An approach for professional school counselors. In B. T. Erford (Ed.), *Professional school counseling: A handbook of theories, programs & practices* (pp. 139–148). CAPS Press.

Constantino, M. J., DeGeorge, J., Dadlani, M. B., & Overtree, C. E. (2009). Motivational interviewing: A bellwether for context-responsive psychotherapy integration. *Journal of Clinical Psychology, 65*(11), 1246–1253.

*Cormier, S., Nurius, P. S., & Osborn, C. J. (2017). *Interviewing and change strategies for helpers* (8th ed.). Cengage Learning.

*Davis, T. E., & Osborn, C. J. (2000). *The solution-focused school counselor: Shaping professional practice*. Taylor & Francis.

*De Jong, P., & Berg, I. K. (2013). *Interviewing for solutions* (4th ed.). Cengage Learning.

*de Shazer, S. (1985). *Keys to solutions in brief therapy*. Norton.

*de Shazer, S. (1988). *Clues: Investigating solutions in brief therapy*. Norton.

Books and articles marked with an asterisk (*) are suggested for further study.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

*de Shazer, S. (1991). *Putting difference to work*. Norton.

*de Shazer, S. (1994). *Words were originally magic*. Norton.

*de Shazer, S., & Dolan, Y. (with Korman, H., Mccollum, E., Trepper, T., & Berg, I. K.). (2007). *More than miracles: The state of the art of solution-focused brief therapy*. Haworth.

Franklin, C., Trepper, T. S., Gingerich, W. J., & McCollum, E. E. (Eds.). (2012). *Solution-focused brief therapy: Research, practice, and training*. Oxford University Press.

*Gingerich, W. J., & Peterson, L. T. (2013). Effectiveness of solution-focused brief therapy: A systematic qualitative review of controlled outcome studies. *Research on Social Work Practice, 23*(3), 266–283.

Gingerich, W. J., & Wabeke, T. (2001). A solution-focused approach to mental health intervention in school settings. *Children & Schools, 23*, 33–41.

*Guterman, J. T. (2013). *Mastering the art of solution-focused counseling* (2nd ed.). American Counseling Association.

Hoyt, M. F. (2011). Brief psychotherapies. In S. B. Messer & A. S. Gurman (Eds.), *Essential psychotherapies: Theory and practice* (3rd ed., pp. 387–425). Guilford Press.

*Krebs, P. M., Norcross, J. C., Nicholson, J. M., & Prochaska, J. O. (2019). Stages of change. In J. C. Norcross & B. E. Wampold (Eds.), *Psychotherapy relationships that work: Evidence-based responsiveness* (3rd ed., Vol. 2, pp. 296–328). Oxford University Press.

LaChance, H., Ewing, S. W. F., Bryan, A. D., & Hutchison, K. E. (2009). What makes group MET work: A randomized controlled trial of college student drinkers in mandated alcohol diversion. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors, 23,* 598–612.

*Lewis, T. F., & Osborn, C. J. (2004). Solution-focused counseling and motivational interviewing: A consideration of confluence. *Journal of Counseling and Development, 82*(1), 38–48.

*Lipchik, E. (2002). *Beyond technique in solution-focused therapy: Working with emotions and the therapeutic relationship*. Guilford Press.

*Marshall, C., & Nielsen, A. S. (2020). *Motivational interviewing for leaders in the helping professions.* Guilford Press.

*Metcalf, L. (1998). *Solution-focused group therapy: Ideas for groups in private practice, schools, agencies, and treatment programs.* Free Press.

Meyer, D. D., & Cottone, R. R. (2013). Solution-focused therapy as a culturally acknowledging approach with American Indians. *Journal of Multicultural Counseling and Development, 41*(1), 47–55.

Miller, W. R. (1983). Motivational interviewing with problem drinkers. *Behavioural Psychotherapy, 11*, 147–172.

*Miller, W. R., & Moyers, T. B. (2021). *Effective psychotherapists: Clinical skills that improve client outcomes.* Guilford Press.

Miller, W. R., Moyers, T. B., Amrhein, P., & Rollnick, S. (2006). A consensus statement on defining change talk. *MINT Bulletin, 13*(2), 6–7. http://www.motivationalinterviewing.org/sites/default/files/MINT13.2.pdf

Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (2009). Ten things that motivational interviewing is not. *Behavioural and Cognitive Psychotherapy, 37*, 129–140.

*Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (2013). *Motivational interviewing: Helping people change* (3rd ed.). Guilford Press.

Miller, W. R., & Rose, G. S. (2009). Toward a theory of motivational interviewing. *American Psychologist, 64*(6), 527–537.

*Murphy, J. J. (2013). *Conducting student-driven interviews: Practical strategies for increasing student involvement and addressing behavior problems.* Routledge.

*Murphy, J. J. (2015). *Solution-focused counseling in schools* (3rd ed.). American Counseling Association.

*Nichols, M. P., & Davis, S. (2017). *Family therapy: Concepts and methods* (11th ed.). Pearson Education.

*Nichols, M. P., & Davis, S. (2020). *The essentials of family therapy* (7th ed.). Pearson Education.

*O'Hanlon, W. H., & Weiner-Davis, M. (2003). *In search of solutions: A new direction in psychotherapy* (Rev. ed.). Norton.

Prochaska, J., & Norcross, J. (2018). *Systems of psychotherapy: A transtheoretical analysis* (9th ed.). Oxford University Press.

Ratner, H., George, E., & Iveson, C. (2012). *Solution-focused brief therapy: 100 key points and techniques.* Taylor & Francis.

*Rollnick, S., Miller, W. R., & Butler, C. C. (2008). *Motivational interviewing in health care: Helping patients change behavior.* Guilford Press.

*Sklare, G. B. (2005). *Brief counseling that works: A solution-focused approach for school counselors and administrators* (2nd ed.). Corwin Press.

Tollison, P. K., & Synatschk, K. O. (2007). *SOS: A practical guide for leading solution-focused groups with kids K–12.* PRO-ED.

*Wagner, C. C., & Ingersoll, K. S. (2013). *Motivational interviewing in groups.* Guilford Press.

*Walter, J. L., & Peller, J. E. (1992). *Becoming solution-focused in brief therapy.* Brunner/Mazel.

*Walter, J. L., & Peller, J. E. (1996). Rethinking our assumptions: Assuming anew in a postmodern world. In S. D. Miller, M. A. Hubble, & B. L. Duncan (Eds.), *Handbook of solution-focused brief therapy* (pp. 9–26). Jossey-Bass.

*Walter, J. L., & Peller, J. E. (2000). *Recreating brief therapy: Preferences and possibilities.* Norton.

Watts, R. E., & Pietrzak, D. (2000). Adlerian "encouragement" and the therapeutic process of solution-focused brief therapy. *Journal of Counseling and Development, 78*(4), 442–447.

Westra, H. A., & Arkowitz, H. (2011). Introduction to the special series: Integrating motivational interviewing with cognitive behavioral therapy for a range of mental health problems. *Cognitive and Behavioral Practice, 18,* 1–4.

White, M., & Epston, D. (1990). *Narrative means to therapeutic ends.* Norton.

*Winslade, J., & Monk, G. (2007). *Narrative counseling in schools: Powerful and brief* (2nd ed.). Corwin Press.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Part 3

Integration and Application

Chapter 16 Comparisons, Contrasts, and Integration

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Chapter 16

Comparisons, Contrasts, and Integration

Learning Objectives

1. Understand the framework for comparing the various theoretical models to specific aspects of group counseling.
2. Understand how the leader's theoretical orientation influences the process of goal setting.
3. Identify the key roles and function of the group leader from the various approaches.
4. Understand how the degree of structuring and division of responsibility is dependent on one's theoretical orientation.
5. Explain how the application of techniques in group work is related to one's theoretical position.
6. Appreciate the multicultural context of group work.
7. List some of the contributions to multicultural group counseling from specific theories.
8. List some of the limitations of multicultural group counseling from specific theories.
9. Describe the integrative model from the perspective of the stages of a group.
10. Identify the pros and cons of an integrative model of group work.

Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is fourfold: (1) to compare and contrast the various models as they apply to issues special to group work; (2) to raise some basic questions that you'll need to answer now and throughout the course of your practice; (3) to assist you in conceptualizing and integrating the various theoretical perspectives that most appeal to you; and (4) to stimulate your thinking about ways of developing and refining group techniques that reflect your leadership style. This chapter will help you answer these questions:

- Is it possible to achieve some integration of the diverse group models by focusing on their commonalities?
- How would an integrated view of the various perspectives help me define my own goals of group counseling?
- How do I go about blending concepts and techniques from several approaches to achieve my own definition of the leader's role and my own unique group leadership style?

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

- How can I best develop collaborative relationships with members so that responsibility for the group is a shared function?
- What kind of structuring do I want to provide for a group? How do I determine how much structure is appropriate?
- How do I develop techniques that fit with my personality and style that are appropriate for the kinds of groups I lead and the settings in which I work?
- How can the techniques of the theoretical approaches be modified to fit the cultural backgrounds of various clients?
- What are the advantages and the disadvantages of an integrative approach to group practice?

The Goals of Group Counseling: Various Perspectives

To impart meaningful direction to their groups, leaders need to address themselves to the issue of goals. What should be the specific goals of a given group, and who should determine them? How can the leader help group members develop meaningful goals for themselves? How does the leader's theoretical orientation influence the process of goal setting? Is it possible to set group goals based on a variety of theoretical orientations? To help you find common denominators among the goals stressed by the various theoretical models and to guide you in your attempt to integrate these models, Table 16.1 (p. 356) lists the essential therapeutic goals of each of the group approaches discussed in Part Two. As you read the table, keep in mind that the diversity of goals can be simplified by seeing the goals as existing on a continuum from general, global, long-term objectives to specific, concrete, short-term objectives. Existential and relationship-oriented group approaches tend to deal with broad goals that are formulated by the members, whereas cognitive behavioral approaches focus on short-term, observable, and precise goals that are formulated collaboratively by the members and the leader. The goals at opposite ends of the continuum are not necessarily contradictory; a convergence is possible if practitioners view concrete, short-term goals as components of broad, long-range goals.

Table 16.1 Comparative Overview of Group Goals

Model	Goals
Psychoanalytic	To provide a climate that helps clients reexperience early family relationships. To uncover repressed feelings associated with past events that carry over into current behavior. To facilitate insight into the origins of faulty psychological development and stimulate a corrective emotional experience.
Adlerian	To create a therapeutic relationship that encourages participants to explore their basic life assumptions and to achieve a broader understanding of lifestyles. To help members recognize their strengths and their power to change. To encourage clients to acquire a sense of social interest and to find purpose in life.
Psychodrama	To facilitate the release of pent-up feelings, to provide insight, and to help clients develop new and more effective behaviors. To encourage clients to live in the present. To develop openness, honesty, and spontaneity. To open up unexplored possibilities for solving conflicts and for living more creatively.
Existential	To provide conditions that maximize self-awareness and reduce blocks to growth. To help members discover and use freedom of choice and assume responsibility for their own choices. To make it possible for members to encounter others in the here-and-now and to use the group as a place to overcome feelings of alienation.
Person-centered	To provide a safe climate wherein members can explore the full range of their feelings and their experiencing. To help members become increasingly open to new experiences and develop confidence in themselves and their own judgments.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Model	Goals
Gestalt	To enable members to pay close attention to their moment-to-moment experiencing so they can recognize and integrate disowned aspects of themselves.
Cognitive behavior therapy	To assist members in evaluating how their thinking influences how they are behaving. To help group members eliminate maladaptive behaviors and learn new and more effective behavioral patterns. (Broad goals are broken down into a series of narrower specific goals.)
Rational emotive behavior therapy	To assist group members in achieving both unconditional self-acceptance and unconditional other-acceptance. To eliminate the members' self-defeating outlook on life and replace it with a more tolerant and rational one.
Choice theory/reality therapy	To guide members toward learning realistic and responsible behavior. To assist group members in evaluating their behavior and in deciding on a plan of action for change.
Solution-focused brief therapy and motivational interviewing	To help members adopt an attitudinal and language shift from talking about problems to talking about solutions. To encourage members to choose the goals they want to accomplish in the group. To assist members in identifying their competencies and strengths that will lead to new possibilities. To assist members in identifying, examining, and resolving ambivalence about changing a lifestyle pattern or specific behavior. To strengthen members' motivation for and a commitment to change.

Most theoretical perspectives stress the importance of group members' formulating their own specific goals. Leaders who decide that they know what is best for participants and force their own goals on members typically encounter a lack of cooperation from members. To be sure, leaders need to have some overall goals for the group, and these should be openly disclosed to the members. These general group goals should in no way infringe on the members' freedom to select personal goals that will give direction to their work in the group. Individual goal setting is an ongoing collaborative process that needs to be constantly reevaluated. The leader can be of invaluable assistance in this regard by encouraging members to formulate clear and specific goals and by helping members determine how they can best achieve these goals.

A Snapshot of the Goals Associated With Various Theories

In Argosy University's counseling program (in Atlanta), Mary Kate Reese and her colleagues ask this question: "How would you describe this group in a screening interview, in your advertisement, or to the group in the first session?" They developed the following "snapshot" views for each theory from the perspective of the leader.

Psychoanalytic: "In this group I'll be paying a lot of attention to what is going on in the here-and-now, with particular attention on your reactions to one another. I'll look for patterns in the way you relate, and my job is to help you see how your earlier experiences often influence the way you perceive others and react to them. Part of our process will be to focus on re-creating, analyzing, discussing, and interpreting past experiences and on working through defenses and resistances that operate at the unconscious level."

Adlerian: "This group will be a place to experience belonging and connection and to receive encouragement toward desired change, to increase self-esteem and self-acceptance, and to work on social relationships. We will explore your perceptions of your childhood family, recognize assumptions you live by now that may relate to those perceptions, and explore alternative perceptions and choices."

Psychodrama: "This group will assist you in examining choices you've made about how you are living. In this group I'll be encouraging you to enact—not just talk about—your conflicts and the problems you'd like to explore. By releasing your feelings about a particular reenactment of an event in your life, you are likely to come to a different understanding of that event. You will be encouraged to experiment with different ways of behaving that may help to increase your creativity and spontaneity."

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Existential: "This is a group for people who want to become honest with themselves and clarify what gives meaning to their present life and for their future. Members can openly share their fears related to living in unfulfilling ways and come to see how they have compromised their integrity. The group offers many opportunities for tackling life's challenges. Members can gradually discover ways in which they have lost their direction and can begin to be more true to themselves."

Person-centered: "We will determine together what kind of group this will be. My role is to create a climate that facilitates growth more than that of the expert that structures and decides for the group or uses techniques to make growth happen. I strongly believe that, within a safe setting, your own sense of what you need will guide you to make the desired changes in your life."

Gestalt: "We will pay particular attention to the here-and-now and deal with whatever prevents you from maintaining a present-centered awareness. The focus will be on the *what* and *how*, rather than the *why* of behavior. One of my functions is to assist you in identifying your unfinished business from the past, bringing it into the present, and achieving more understanding of how your past may be impeding your present experiencing. I may at times suggest various exercises and experiments that could help increase awareness."

Cognitive behavioral: "My main goal in this group is to assist you in determining whether your current behavior meets your needs adequately. If you discover that it doesn't and if you decide to change, we will work collaboratively to identify specific goals, to gather baseline data on the current level of relevant behaviors, and to formulate a plan of action designed to promote change. The group will offer you a place to practice this plan for change."

Rational emotive behavior therapy: "Our thinking patterns and behavior strongly influence our emotions. In this group we will explore an educational model that will help group members reduce troubling emotions through paying attention to and changing unhelpful self-talk. Group members will be expected to engage in the process of change through active participation in group meetings and through the completion of homework."

Choice theory/reality therapy: "All of our behavior is our best attempt to control the world around us in order to satisfy certain basic needs. In this group, my role is to help members make self-evaluations and to formulate and carry out plans to change behavior. Essentially, this group focuses on solving current problems through changes in thinking and behavior and will provide a supportive environment of accountability for group members to contract and complete desired change."

Solution-focused brief therapy and motivational interviewing: "In this group, we will focus on solutions instead of problems. There is a strong emphasis on identifying goals and emphasizing your competencies. As a group leader, I will ask questions that will encourage you to focus on the language that you use, the prior solutions that you have used in other situations, and the *exceptions* (examples of times in which you have *not* had the identified problem)."

Role and Functions of the Group Leader: Various Perspectives

As a group leader, what is your role: facilitator, therapist, teacher, catalyst, coach, consultant, generator of solutions, problem solver, guide, fellow explorer, technician, director, tour guide, mentor, or evaluator? How you answer this question will depend in part on your theoretical perspective, but ultimately your answer will be based on your own definition of the leader's role and on your evaluation of what the most significant functions of the leader are. Certain criteria also cut across all the theoretical approaches: for example, the type of group and its goals, the setting, the nature of the participants, and the demands of your job.

Before discussing the various perspectives on the group leader's role and functions, let us briefly review some of the tasks that are essential to successful group leadership:

1. Group leaders initiate and promote interaction by the way they structure the group and model behaviors. They demonstrate how to share, take risks, relate honestly, and involve others in interactions.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

2. Group leaders orient members to the group process, teaching them how to get the most from their group and helping them become aware of the group dynamics.
3. Group leaders must be capable of sensitive, active listening. Only by paying full attention to the members' verbal and nonverbal communication can they help participants move toward a deeper level of self-exploration and self-understanding.
4. Group leaders are responsible for creating a safe and supportive climate conducive to exploring personally significant issues.
5. Group leaders have the tasks of setting limits, establishing group rules, informing members of their rights and responsibilities, and protecting members.

As we have seen, each therapeutic approach stresses different roles and functions for the group leader. For example, the person-centered approach emphasizes the role of facilitator. In this model the group is seen as having the resources to direct itself, and the leader strives to facilitate rather than to direct group process. In solution-focused brief therapy, the group leader disavows the role of expert, preferring a more collaborative stance; the leader-as-expert is replaced by the group member-as-expert. Other approaches view the leader as a teacher; rational emotive behavior therapy, choice theory/reality therapy, and cognitive behavior therapy are all based on the assumption that group counseling is largely an educational and learning process. In these models the leader's key function is teaching skills and providing a cognitive framework that will lead to reeducation and behavioral changes.

Other models, such as psychodrama and the existential, person-centered, and Gestalt approaches, stress the leader's role in helping members gain an experiential awareness of their conflicts through meaningful relationships with the leader and others in the group. As we have seen, your roles and functions as a group leader are many; which of them you choose to emphasize is partly determined by your theoretical orientation. As groups move through the various developmental stages, the needs of group members will change, and your role will change as well as you accommodate the needs of the group. As you review the different perspectives summarized in Table 16.2 (p. 359), consider what elements you want to incorporate from each of them in defining your own role as group leader.

Table 16.2 Comparative Overview of Leader's Role and Functions

Model	Leader's Roles
Psychoanalytic	Facilitates group interaction by helping create an accepting and tolerant climate. Focuses on transferences and multiple transferences within the group. Signals indications of resistance and transference and interprets their meanings. Helps members become conscious of and work through unfinished business. Sets limits for the group by developing a therapeutic frame.
Adlerian	Assists members in gaining insight into their patterns through lifestyle assessment. Models attentive caring. Helps members accept and utilize their assets. Encourages members to develop the courage needed to translate what is learned in the group to behavior outside of the group.
Psychodrama	Has the job of warming up the group, helping set up a psychodrama, directing the enactment, and then processing the outcomes with the participants. Specific tasks include facilitating, observing, directing, and producing.
Existential	Has the central role of being fully present and available to individuals in the group and of grasping their subjective being-in-the-world. Functions by creating a person-to-person relationship, by self-disclosure, and by confronting members in a caring way.
Person-centered	Facilitates the group (as opposed to directing it); deals with barriers to communication, establishes a climate of trust, and assists the group in functioning effectively. Central task is to be genuine in the sessions and demonstrate caring, respect, and understanding. Has the primary role of helping members follow their inner direction.

(*continued*)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Table 16.2 (*Continued*)

Model	Leader's Roles
Gestalt	Suggests experiments designed to help participants intensify their experience and be alert to their body messages. Assists members in identifying and working through unfinished business from the past that interferes with current functioning. Focuses on whatever is in the foreground of members' awareness.
Cognitive behavior therapy	Functions as an expert in modifying clients' thinking and behavior. Tends to be directive and often functions as a teacher. Imparts information and teaches coping skills and methods of modifying behavior so that members can practice outside the group sessions.
Rational emotive behavior therapy	Functions didactically: explains, teaches, and reeducates. Helps members see and rigorously confront their illogical thinking and identify its connection with self-defeating behavior. Teaches members to change their patterns of thinking and behaving.
Choice theory/reality therapy	Teaches members the basics of choice theory as a way to help them understand why they behave as they do. Encourages members to evaluate their current behavior and make more effective choices. Helps members to formulate and implement a plan for change.
Solution-focused brief therapy and motivational interviewing	Elicits the perspectives, resources, and unique experiences of members. Creates opportunities for members to see themselves as competent and resourceful. Assists members in functioning as cofacilitators who support and encourage each other and keep the focus on exceptions rather than problems. Assists members in perceiving the discrepancy between where they are presently and where they would like to be. Instills hope about making difficult changes. Encourages self-efficacy by focusing on previous successes and highlighting strengths that members already possess.

Degree of Structuring and Division of Responsibility: Various Perspectives

Group leaders are often concerned with the question of what constitutes the optimum degree of structure in a group. It should be clear that all groups have a structure. Even the least directive group leaders, who avoid imposing a format on the group, do make the choice of having an open structure and letting the participants determine the course of the group.

Group structuring exists on a continuum, from extremely nondirective to highly directive. On the nondirective end of the continuum are psychoanalytic groups, person-centered groups, and some existential groups. In these groups the leader tends to assume a less directive stance and encourages group members to assume much of the responsibility for the direction the group takes.

At the opposite end of the continuum are those leaders who provide a high degree of structure for the group. Some of these leaders tend to use structured exercises to open the group sessions; also, they often employ techniques to focus members on specific themes or problem areas. Many cognitive behavior therapy groups are characterized by a very active, structured, and directive group leadership. This is also true of choice theory/reality therapy groups, rational emotive behavior therapy groups, solution-focused groups, and motivational interviewing groups. Typically, there is a progression from session to session, the meetings are organized in accordance with a predetermined agenda, and certain procedures are used to direct the group toward exploration and resolution of specific problem areas or attainment of members' goals.

Like structuring, division of responsibility can be conceptualized in terms of a continuum. At one end are those group leaders who see themselves as experts and who believe they should actively intervene to keep the group moving in productive ways. These leaders believe the group's outcomes are largely dependent on their expertise and skills. Because therapy is considered an educative process, the group leader is seen as a teacher in charge of the reeducation of group members. For effective results, group leaders use a methodology aimed at cognitive restructuring and behavioral change. Practitioners who embrace this perspective include those with orientations such as cognitive behavior therapy, rational emotive behavior therapy, choice theory/reality therapy, solution-focused brief

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

therapy, and motivational interviewing. However, despite the active and directive role assigned to the leader, these approaches also place a considerable share of responsibility for directing the group on the members, who are expected to be active in the sessions and to practice between group sessions.

At the other end of the continuum are group leaders who inform participants at the beginning of a group that the members are responsible to define the direction the group takes. This type of leadership is characteristic of the person-centered leader, who sees the participants as knowing what is best for them. Rather than assuming the role of directing the course a group takes, the therapist functions as a facilitator by creating a trusting climate in which members can safely explore significant personal issues and search for the necessary resources within themselves.

Somewhat in the middle of the continuum are Gestalt group leaders. They are typically active and make interventions that provide the group with structure, but they also expect members to participate in the creation of experiments that will heighten their awareness. Group leaders are responsible for being aware of their own experience throughout the group process and for suggesting appropriate experiments to intensify group work. Members are responsible for bringing up personal concerns that they want to investigate in the group and for making their own interpretations. Solution-focused and motivational interviewing group leaders are active, yet they strive to create a collaborative therapeutic partnership with the members. Facilitators of solution-focused and motivational interviewing groups do their best to show members how they can use the strengths and resources already available to them to construct solutions to their concerns. Table 16.3 (p. 361) gives you an idea of the variety of theoretical positions on structuring and division of responsibility.

From my perspective, group leaders need to achieve a balance between assuming too much responsibility for the direction of the group and assuming too little. If leaders believe group members do not have the capacity to take care of themselves, members soon begin to live up to this expectation. In addition to undermining members' independence, leaders who assume an inordinate amount of responsibility burden themselves greatly. For example, if members do little productive work, these leaders view this as a reflection of their own lack of skill. This style of leadership is draining, and the leaders who use it may soon lose the energy required to lead groups.

In contrast, leaders who place all the responsibility for the direction and outcomes of a group on the participants may be minimizing their own role in the outcomes of their groups. When a group seems to flounder and is not engaged in productive work, these leaders ignore their role in ensuring a successful outcome of the group process.

Table 16.3 Comparative Overview of Degree of Structuring and Division of Responsibilities

Model	Structuring and Responsibilities
Psychoanalytic	*Leader* shies away from directive leadership and allows the group to determine its own course; interprets the meaning of certain behavioral patterns. *Members* raise issues and produce material from the unconscious; assume increasing responsibility for interacting spontaneously, making interpretations, and sharing insights about others; become auxiliary therapists for one another.
Adlerian	*Leader*, at the outset, works toward goal alignment; takes active steps to establish and maintain a therapeutic relationship, to explore and analyze the individual's dynamics, and to communicate a basic attitude of concern and hope. *Members* develop insight about themselves; assume responsibility for taking positive measures to make changes; and consider alternative beliefs, goals, and behaviors.
Psychodrama	*Director/leader* suggests specific techniques designed to intensify feelings, re-create past situations, and provide increased awareness of conflicts; makes sure that the protagonist is attended to and that other members of the group have a chance to share what they experienced during the psychodrama. *Members* produce the material for psychodramas and, when in the role of protagonist, direct their own psychodramas.

(*continued*)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Table 16.3 (*Continued*)

Model	Structuring and Responsibilities
Existential	*Leader* may structure the group along the lines of certain existential themes such as freedom, responsibility, anxiety, and guilt; shares here-and-now feelings with the group. *Members* are responsible for deciding the issues they want to explore, thus determining the direction of the group.
Person-centered	*Leader* provides very little structuring or direction and allows members to determine how time is spent in the group. *Members* are seen as having the capacity to find a meaningful direction, of being able to help one another, and of moving toward constructive outcomes.
Gestalt	*Leader* is responsible for being aware of present-centered experience and for using it in the context of the group; brings structure to the group by introducing appropriate experiments to intensify whatever the member is experiencing. *Members* must be active and make their own interpretations.
Cognitive behavior therapy	*Leader* is responsible for active teaching and for having the group proceed according to a predetermined and structured agenda. *Members* are expected to be active, to evaluate their thinking, to apply what they learn to everyday life situations, and to practice new behaviors outside the group.
Rational emotive behavior therapy	*Leader* is responsible for confronting any signs of member behavior based on faulty thinking; structures the group experience so that members stay with the task of making constructive changes in thinking and behaving. *Members* are responsible for exploring their own self-defeating thinking; they are expected to continue this work outside the group.
Choice theory/reality therapy	*Leader* teaches members to assume responsibility for how they are living. Assists members in evaluating the degree to which what they are presently doing is getting them what they want. Helps members assess the quality of their interpersonal relationships, both in daily life and in the group. *Members* decide on specific changes they want to make and design an action plan for implementing these changes.
Solution-focused brief therapy and motivational interviewing	*Leader* moves the group from a problem focus to a solution focus; creates a collaborative partnership with members to show how they can use the strengths and resources they have to construct solutions. *Members* focus on a solution track; pay attention to what is working in daily life and continue doing more of this; observe what they are doing when things are going better.

The Use of Techniques: Various Perspectives

Techniques are quite useful both as catalysts for group action and as devices to keep the group moving. But techniques are just tools, and like all tools they can be used effectively or ineffectively. When leaders fall into a pattern of employing methods mechanically, they become technicians and are not responding to the needs of the members of the group they are leading. Also, indiscriminate use of techniques can increase the resistance level of the group instead of facilitating deeper communication and exploration. Some leaders, overly eager to use new methods, rely too much on techniques to bring energy to the group and provide it with a direction. Others, out of anxiety over not knowing how to deal with certain problems that arise in a group, may employ techniques without understanding their purpose. Group leaders should have a sound rationale for using particular methods of intervention. Techniques need to be an extension of who the leader is as a person, and group leaders should not force themselves to use methods that do not suit their personality and their unique leadership style.

My basic assumption is that techniques ought to facilitate group process, not artificially create action in a group. Group techniques are most effective when the group leader pays attention to what is going on within a group or what a given member is experiencing.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

I like the notion of leaders and members collaboratively creating experiments that grow out of what is happening presently within a group, which is a perspective shared by Gestalt therapists. Although I tend to use techniques to introduce material at the initial stage of a group and often use them to integrate what members have learned at the final stage, I generally do not have a preset agenda. I take my cues from what is occurring within the group and flow with that rather than attempting to direct the group to pursue a specific theme. For example, if I notice that there is little energy in the room and that few members appear willing to be engaged in significant work, I do not introduce an exercise designed to elicit feelings or promote interaction. Instead, I tend to let the group know what I am thinking or feeling, and I try to get an assessment of what each person is experiencing.

In choosing techniques to facilitate group process, you need to consider several factors. Your theory, of course, will influence what methods you employ. If your theory of choice focuses on cognitive dimensions, your techniques are likely to encourage members to look for the connection between their thought patterns and their actions. If you have an experiential orientation, your techniques will tend to promote an awareness of present feelings and an intensification of these feelings. If you adhere to a solution-focused orientation, you will be asking members to talk about exceptions to their problems and encouraging them to generate possibilities. If you are behaviorally oriented, many of your techniques will be geared to getting members to monitor their actions and experiment with specific behaviors. If you are cognitively oriented, your techniques are likely to be aimed at assisting members to identify their beliefs and self-talk and to create functional beliefs. Your style of leadership also has much to do with what methods you will use. Finally, the population with whom you are working, the purpose of your group, and the stage of development of the group are all factors to consider in the selection of techniques. Regardless of your theory, you need to understand the relationship between techniques and theoretical concepts and be fully aware of why you are using certain methods. Of course, it is important to continually assess the effects of these techniques.

As illustrated by Table 16.4 (p. 363), the various group models offer a variety of strategies for initiating and maintaining group interaction. As a group leader, there is no reason for you to restrict yourself to the techniques of a single approach simply because that may be the approach you favor. If you have an existential orientation, for example, you can draw on techniques from the cognitive behavioral approaches or from the solution-focused model. In summary, you can discover ways to creatively adapt techniques from various theoretical models to the specific type of group you lead, and you can modify these techniques to suit your leadership style and the needs of your group members.

Table 16.4 Comparative Overview of Group Techniques

Model	Techniques
Psychoanalytic	Interpretation, dream analysis, free association, analysis of resistance, and analysis of transference—all designed to make the unconscious conscious and bring about insight.
Adlerian	Analysis and assessment, exploration of family constellation, reporting of earliest recollections, confrontation, interpretation, cognitive restructuring, challenging of one's belief system, and exploration of social dynamics and of one's unique style of life.
Psychodrama	Self-presentation, presentation of the other, interview in the role of the other and interview in the role of the self, soliloquy, role reversal, double technique and auxiliary egos, mirroring, and future projection.
Existential	Understanding is primary focus. Techniques can be borrowed from other therapies to better understand the member's world and to deepen the level of therapeutic work, but focus remains on a subjective understanding of the member's world.
Person-centered	The stress is on the facilitator's attitudes and behavior, and structured or planned techniques are generally not used. In place of techniques, attitudes include active listening, reflection of feelings, clarification, support, empathy, and "being there" for the client.

(*continued*)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Table 16.4 (*Continued*)

Model	Techniques
Gestalt	Many action-oriented techniques are available to the leader, all of which intensify immediate experiencing and awareness of current feelings. Techniques include empty chair, game of dialogue, fantasy approaches, rehearsal techniques, exaggerating a behavior, staying with feelings, dialogues with self or significant others in the present, and dream work. Experiments are designed to enable participants to gain increased awareness. Experiments are best done in a collaborative way between the leader and a member.
Cognitive behavior therapy	Techniques are based on behavioral and learning principles and are aimed at behavioral changes and cognitive restructuring. Techniques include Socratic dialogue, self-monitoring, self-help activities, reinforcement and supportive measures, behavior rehearsal, coaching, modeling, feedback, and procedures for evaluating and changing cognitions.
Rational emotive behavior therapy	Leaders use a wide range of cognitive, behavioral, and emotive interventions to bring about change. Leaders teach, model, probe, confront, challenge, and actively direct. Cognitive methods include disputation of faulty beliefs, use of coping self-statements, psychoeducational work, and cognitive homework. Behavioral methods include role playing, behavior rehearsal, homework assignments, and skills training.
Choice theory/reality therapy	A wide range of techniques is used, such as role playing, modeling, use of humor, contracts, using the WDEP model, and designing specific plans for action.
Solution-focused brief therapy and motivational interviewing	Main techniques of solution-focused brief therapy include raising questions, asking clients to look for exceptions to a problem, the miracle question, scaling questions, focusing on strengths, use of metaphors, and carrying out homework assignments. Main techniques of motivational interviewing include raising open-ended questions about reasons for the status quo and the possibility of change, affirming strengths within the client, reflective listening, summarizing or recapping what has gone on in a session, and encouraging clients to explore their ambivalence over changing.

Group Work in a Multicultural Context: Various Perspectives

Each of the theories presented in this book has been briefly examined for its relevance to culturally diverse populations. As can be seen in Table 16.5 (p. 365), each perspective has certain concepts or techniques that can contribute to effective multicultural group counseling. Yet they all have some limitations, and caution is needed in using certain techniques that flow from a given theory (see Table 16.6, p. 365). Technical eclecticism seems especially necessary in working with a diverse range of cultural backgrounds. Harm can come to group participants who are expected to fit all the specifications of a given theory, whether or not the values espoused by the theory are consistent with their own cultural values. Rather than stretching the group members to fit the dimensions of a single theory, you have the task of adapting your practices to fit the unique needs of the members of your groups. To do this you must possess some knowledge of various cultures, awareness of your own cultural heritage, and skills to assist diverse clients in meeting their needs within the realities of their culture.

It is essential for you to be able to assess the special needs of the members of your groups. Depending on the group member's ethnicity and culture and also on the individual concerns that bring a member to a group, you need to show flexibility in utilizing diverse therapeutic strategies. At times, some members will need more direction. Others will be very hesitant in talking about themselves in personal ways, especially during the early phase of a group. Be patient and avoid quickly pushing members to engage in deep work. Furthermore, recognize that what may appear to be resistance is very likely to be the client's response to years of cultural conditioning and respect for certain values and traditions.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Table 16.5 Comparative Overview of Contributions to Multicultural Counseling

Model	Contributions
Psychoanalytic	Focus on family dynamics is appropriate for working with many minority groups. Therapist formality appeals to clients who expect professional distance. Notion of defense is helpful in understanding inner dynamics and dealing with environmental stresses.
Adlerian	Culture is viewed as a perspective and background from which meaning in life can be derived. Individuals will make a different meaning out of their personal cultural experience.
Psychodrama	For reserved clients, this approach invites self-expression in the present. Culturally sensitive scenes can be created to assist members in understanding the impact of their culture on them. Through enactment, nonverbal clients have other means of communication. Opportunities arise for developing spontaneity and creativity within the framework of one's culture.
Existential	A core value is the emphasis on understanding the member's phenomenological world, including cultural background. This approach leads to empowerment. It can help members examine their options for change within the context of their cultural realities.
Person-centered	Main strengths are respect for client's values, active listening, welcoming of differences, nonjudgmental attitude, understanding, willingness to allow clients to determine what will be explored in sessions, and prizing cultural pluralism.
Gestalt	Focus on expressing oneself nonverbally is congruent with those cultures that look beyond words for messages. Approach provides many ways of working with group members who have cultural injunctions against freely expressing feelings.
Cognitive behavior therapy	Focus on thinking and behavior, rather than on feelings, is compatible with many cultures. Strengths include preparation of members by teaching them purposes of group, assisting members in learning practical skills, educational focus of groups, and stress on self-management strategies. Expertise of leader, structure of the group, and practical slant are viewed positively by participants from many cultures.
Rational emotive behavior therapy	This approach provides ways of questioning one's beliefs and identifying values that may no longer be functional. Its focus on thinking and rationality (as opposed to expressing feelings) is likely to be acceptable to participants from many cultures. Emphasis on teaching/learning process tends to avoid the stigma of mental illness. Many members may value the leader's directive stance, structured approach, and stress on homework.
Choice theory/reality therapy	Focus is on members making their own evaluation of behavior (including how they respond to their culture). Through personal assessment they can determine the degree to which their needs and wants are being satisfied; they can find a balance between retaining their own ethnic identity and integrating some of the values and practices of the dominant society.
Solution-focused brief therapy and motivational interviewing	This approach works best with individuals and cultures with preferences for engaging in direct behavior change rather than approaches that deal mainly with feelings. The emphasis on the experience of clients rather than on working from the therapist's framework is an advantage. This approach appeals to people who want a practical way to make things better as soon as possible.

Table 16.6 Comparative Overview of Limitations in Multicultural Counseling

Model	Limitations
Psychoanalytic	Focus on insight, intrapsychic dynamics, and long-term treatment is often not valued by clients who seek coping skills in dealing with pressing environmental concerns. Internal focus can conflict with cultural values that stress an interpersonal and environmental focus.
Adlerian	This approach's detailed interview about one's family background can conflict with cultures that have injunctions against disclosing family matters. Leader needs to make certain that the goals of members are respected and that these goals are congruent with the goals of the group.
Psychodrama	Emphasis on experiencing and expressing feelings, on catharsis, and on enacting past problems in the present can be highly threatening for some clients. Caution is needed in encouraging clients to display intense emotions in the presence of others.

(*continued*)

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Table 16.6 (*Continued*)

Model	Limitations
Existential	Its values of individuality, freedom, autonomy, and self-realization often conflict with cultural values of collectivism, respect for tradition, deference to authority, and interdependence. Some may be deterred by absence of specific techniques. Others will expect more focus on surviving in their world.
Person-centered	Some of the core values of this approach may not be congruent with the group member's culture. Lack of leader direction and structure are unacceptable for many clients who are seeking direction, help, and solutions from a knowledgeable leader.
Gestalt	Members who have been culturally conditioned to be emotionally reserved may not embrace Gestalt techniques. Some may not see how "being aware of present experiencing" will lead to solving their problems.
Cognitive behavior therapy	Leaders need to help members assess the possible consequences of making behavioral changes. Family members may not value clients' newly acquired assertive style, so individuals must be taught how to cope with resistance by others.
Rational emotive behavior therapy	If leader has a forceful and directive leadership style, members may retreat. It is necessary to understand client's world before forcefully confronting beliefs perceived as irrational by leader.
Choice theory/reality therapy	Approach stresses taking charge of one's own life, yet some members hope to change their external environment. Leader needs to appreciate the role of discrimination and racism and help members deal with social and political injustices.
Solution-focused brief therapy and motivational interviewing	The "not-knowing stance" of the group leader, along with the expectation of the "client-as-expert," may not be welcomed by group participants who are looking for directions and solutions from the expert leader.

It is useful for you to be familiar with a variety of theoretical approaches and to be able to employ and adapt your techniques to fit the person-in-the-environment. It is not enough to merely assist members in gaining insight, expressing suppressed emotions, or making certain behavioral changes. Your task is to find practical strategies for adapting the techniques you have developed to enable group members to question the impact their culture continues to have on their life and to make decisions about what facets of their life they want to change. Being an effective group leader involves reflecting on how your own culture influences you and your interventions in the group. This awareness will be a critical factor in your becoming more sensitive to the cultural backgrounds of the members in your groups.

Applications of an Integrative Model

The term *integrative model* refers to a perspective based on concepts and techniques from various theoretical approaches. It is the model I use in my own practice of group work. In this section I describe how I apply my synthesis at each stage of a group's development. This model is designed to address the three factors of thinking, feeling, and doing. As you have seen, some of the 10 theories discussed in Part Two focus on cognition, others on experiencing feelings, and others on behavior. My goal is to blend the unique contributions of these theories so that all three dimensions of human experiencing are given attention at each phase of a group. At the same time, it is important to avoid the trap of emerging with a hastily thrown together hodgepodge of approaches and techniques. Your goal should be to develop a consistent conceptual framework that you can use as a basis for selecting from the multiple techniques that you have studied. Developing your own integrative approach is a long-term project, and doing this soon after graduation is probably an unrealistic goal. It takes considerable study of many different theories to form a basis for making intelligent choices of what to use from these various approaches. All of the approaches discussed in this book have something of value to offer, and students and practitioners do well to remain open to thinking from an integrative perspective.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Regardless of your theoretical orientation, you must decide *what* techniques or intervention methods to utilize, *when* to use them, and with *which* clients. You will most likely encounter a diverse range of client populations. For counseling to be effective, it is necessary to utilize techniques in a manner that is consistent with clients' values, worldview, life experiences, and cultural background. It is useful to assess how the cultural context has a bearing on your clients' problems. Some techniques may be contraindicated because of clients' socialization. The responsiveness of your clients to certain techniques is a critical barometer in judging the effectiveness of these methods.

Theories Applied to the Pregroup Stage

The preparatory period in the formation of a group may be the most critical of all. If the group's foundation is weak, the group may never get out of the starting gate. Effective groups do not simply "happen." The hard work and careful organization that go into planning a group are bound to have payoffs once the group gets underway.

The cognitive behavioral theories are particularly relevant at the pregroup stage; they emphasize assessing both the need for a particular kind of group and the participant's readiness and appropriateness for a group. As a group leader, you must have clear expectations, a rationale for why and how a group is an effective approach, and a sense of how to design a specific group tailored to the unique needs and interests of the members. If you have a clear understanding of how a group can benefit prospective members, you will be better able to help people decide whether or not to join. If members know what they are getting into, the chances are increased that they will become active and committed participants.

In this regard, the therapeutic approaches that structure a group on a contractual basis have much to offer. A contract can help demystify the group process, can increase members' sense of responsibility to become active agents in their own change, and can structure the course a group takes. Contracts set forth the division of responsibility between the members and the leader, and they provide the leader with some therapeutic leverage.

Theories Applied to the Initial Stage

Drawing on Theories During the initial stage, there is a certain tentativeness within the group. Perhaps the most basic issue pertains to creating and maintaining trust. The attitudes and behaviors of the group leader are directly related to the creation of a level of trust that will promote significant interaction. The relationship-oriented approaches (especially person-centered therapy, existential therapy, Gestalt therapy, and psychodrama) provide an excellent foundation for building a community characterized by trust and the willingness to take the risks that are necessary for change. The leader's modeling is especially important because members learn more from what the leader does than from what the leader says. Here is where enthusiasm about groups can be communicated to the members by a dedicated, competent, and caring group leader. A basic sense of respect for what the members are experiencing as they approach a new group can best be demonstrated by a leader's willingness to allow members to express what they are thinking and feeling in the here-and-now. Typically, members do have some initial anxieties. They may fear an unfamiliar situation, rejection, or closeness. Some may fear opening up more than they will be able to manage, disrupting their life outside the group, or incurring the disapproval of others in the group. A genuine interest in listening to these feelings sets the tone for caring, attentiveness, and compassion and goes a long way toward creating a climate in which members can be free to share what they feel and think.

Defining Personal Goals It is during the initial stage that the *cognitive behavioral* approaches have special relevance. I like the cognitive behavioral emphasis on helping members identify concrete aspects of their behavior that they most want to change. The leader may do some teaching to show members how involvement in the group can be instrumental in attaining their goals. It is counterproductive for leaders to impose on members specific goals that they should work toward, for unless the members really want to change, there is little hope that change can be forced on them. For this reason I value the Adlerian concept of goal alignment. Adlerians make special efforts to negotiate

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

a congruence of goals between the client and the therapist. In a reality therapy group the members are asked to evaluate their wants and to determine whether their needs are realistic. Reality therapy also invites members to look at their behavior and decide whether it is working for them. If members make the evaluation that their current behavior is not working, the process of making specific behavioral changes can begin. Solution-focused group facilitators assist members in identifying their goals by asking them the miracle question: "If a miracle were to occur and your problem were solved, what would be different in your life?" The group leader works with members in developing well-formed goals as soon as possible. Questions that lead to goal setting include "What will be different in your life when your problems are solved?" and "What will be going on in the future that will tell you and the rest of us in the group that things are better for you?"

If members are not aided in making an evaluation of their wants, needs, and current behavior, they find it very difficult to know where to begin. Careful consideration of this personal evaluation is a way to engage the group members and to motivate them to do something different. Of course, the skill in facilitating a group involves showing members how a group can help them get what they say they want. I cannot overstress the importance of challenging members to decide if they really want to change some of their thoughts, feelings, and behaviors.

Although I am sympathetic toward the existential goal of learning how to live more creatively by accepting freedom and responsibility, I think such broad goals need to be narrowed down so that members have a clear idea of what thoughts, feelings, and actions they are willing to change and how to bring this change about. A way to help members specify their goals is to ask them to write them down.

Theories Applied to the Transition Stage

Learning to Deal With Conflict and Ambivalence

One of the most challenging periods in the life of a group is the transition phase. Before a group can progress to the working stage, it typically must learn to recognize and deal with anxiety, defensiveness, reluctance, ambivalence, conflict, the struggle for control, challenges to the leader, and various other problematic behaviors. Some groups reach the transitional period only to remain stuck there. This impasse can be traced either to an earlier failure to establish norms or to ineffectual handling of defensive behavior and conflict within the group. It is essential that conflict be both recognized and then dealt with therapeutically if the group is to move forward. One way to recognize potential problems in a group is to regularly assess the group members' level of satisfaction with their participation in the group. This can be done in a brief written evaluation, which can then be tabulated and brought back to the group. It is useful to get members accustomed to regular assessments, for in this way problems within the group can be detected and then worked on in the sessions. Specific questions can be asked about each member's level of investment, satisfaction with the sessions, trust level, and willingness to take risks. Refer to the *Student Manual* (included in the Online Student Resources) for ideas about inventories that can be used to assess group process. Of course, this type of assessment is consistent with behavioral approaches that stress specificity of behavior, outcomes, and regular feedback about the process as a way to determine whether the group interventions are effective.

Again, the role of leader modeling is critical when it comes to accepting and dealing with avoidance or resistance. At times, leaders create defensive behavior on the part of members by what they do or don't do. If leaders take problems that occur within the group personally, they burden themselves and tend to become defensive. It is essential to give members some room to maneuver; to avoid responding sharply or defensively; and, most certainly, to avoid sarcasm. The manner in which the group leader deals with the inevitable reluctance that manifests itself in various avoidances and defensive behaviors will determine how well the group meets the developmental tasks at the transition phase. It is useful to view ambivalence as a normal and healthy sign of a group's movement toward autonomy. Rather than viewing member hesitation or any form of problematic behavior as a nuisance to be gotten around, members can be helped to understand and deal with the sources of their behavior in a therapeutic way.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

A Thinking, Feeling, Behaving Perspective When a group is in transition, I appreciate the freedom given by the person-centered approach to express any feelings and have this expression accepted. My hope is that members will allow themselves to *feel* the ways in which they are resisting and to intensify those feelings. Here is where I draw on some of the action-oriented techniques of Gestalt therapy and psychodrama so that clients will have a way to experience as fully as possible whatever they feel. It is important to assess what members need, however, and to work within the framework of their cultural background. Some members, because of their cultural injunctions, would have a difficult time getting involved in the emotional aspects of Gestalt experiments or emotionally intense psychodramas. It is certainly not therapeutically productive to push individuals to experience emotions, but it could be helpful to explore with them their beliefs associated with expressing emotions.

Rational emotive behavior therapy and other cognitive behavior therapies are useful in helping members challenge self-defeating beliefs that lead to an entrenchment of their defensiveness in the group. Some members may say very little because of their fear of disapproval or because they are convinced that they must say things "perfectly" if they hope to be understood. Once members allow themselves to experience their hesitations on a feeling level, they are better able to genuinely challenge their cognitions associated with defensive behavior. If members are encouraged to keep a journal of their thoughts (and how these thoughts lead to some unwanted behaviors and feelings), they can then do some in-depth exploration of certain self-talk that is not productive. Members can learn new and more functional cognitions, and they can practice them both in and outside of the group. Related to this is the willingness of members to begin to behave in different ways. I like the emphasis of both choice theory/reality therapy and solution-focused brief therapy on paying attention to what one is *doing* and rational emotive behavior therapy's emphasis on *practicing* new behaviors as the basis for making lasting changes. Solution-focused therapy, motivational interviewing, and reality therapy provide some particularly useful questions that can lead members to make plans for change. This planning can be one way for members to actually begin to act differently.

Theories Applied to the Working Stage

In the working stage, members commit to exploring the significant problems that they bring to the sessions and express their reactions to what is taking place within the group. I find that this stage requires the least degree of structuring. In part this is because members bring up issues they want to work on, freely interact with one another, have the feeling of being a group rather than a bunch of strangers, and assume responsibility to keep the sessions moving.

Concepts and Techniques My preference is to let the members raise the issues they are willing to pursue seriously rather than taking the responsibility for calling on them, drawing them out, or telling them what they should talk about. I find it helpful to ask members to create their own agenda for each meeting, and I like to begin a group session by asking members to declare as clearly as possible what they want from the session. This does not imply a passive stance, however, for during the working stage I am very willing to suggest experiments and to invite members to take part in a technique that is designed to heighten whatever it is that they are experiencing. Again, my concern is with the thinking, feeling, and doing dimensions, and the techniques I suggest reflect this type of integration. Once members declare that they do want to work and decide what it is they want to accomplish, I typically ask them if they are willing to participate in an experiment.

Generally, I start by asking members to pay attention to what they are experiencing or what they are aware of in the here-and-now. Gestalt experiments are most useful in focusing on present-centered awareness and bringing any unfinished business from the past to the surface. I favor asking members to bring any past issue into the present, as is true of both psychodrama and Gestalt approaches. There is a lively quality to the work, and members rather quickly begin to experience what they feel rather than talking abstractly about feelings and thoughts. For example, if a woman becomes aware that she is afraid of growing up to be just like the mother she resents, a good place to begin is to ask her to "bring your mother into the group" symbolically. Again, Gestalt therapy and psychodrama offer a variety of techniques to help her focus on and intensify

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

her experience. She might assume her mother's identity and actually speak to others in the group "as her mother." Although I value the contact with feelings, I think it is of limited value to stop with catharsis or the mere expression of her feelings. I am likely to suggest that she identify some of the beliefs that she has picked up from her mother. Perhaps she has uncritically accepted some self-defeating beliefs and is keeping herself upset by not challenging these beliefs.

Coupled with her emotional work, some exploration of her cognitions is likely to reveal how her daily behavior is limiting her. Therefore, I see debates as productive in a group. Especially valuable are debates that members can learn to have among themselves. They can challenge untested assumptions, argue the pros and cons of a given issue, and think about how they sometimes set themselves up for defeat. Finally, working at a cognitive behavioral level is an excellent way to correct faulty thinking and emotional disturbances.

My particular emphasis during the working phase is to focus on what members are doing outside of the sessions. Therefore, I like to allow time toward the end of each session to ask every member to respond to questions such as these: "What did you learn about yourself in today's session?" "What kind of behaviors can you practice during the week?" "What is one specific homework assignment that you are willing to give yourself and carry out?" This approach reinforces in-group learning, and it helps members continually think about how to apply new ways of thinking and behaving in everyday situations.

Theories Applied to the Final Stage

Review of Tasks The final stage of the group's evolution is critical. During this stage, members have an opportunity to clarify the meaning of their experiences in the group, to consolidate the gains they have made, and to revise their decisions about what newly acquired behaviors they want to transfer to their daily life. The major task facing members during this consolidation stage is to learn ways of maintaining these changed behaviors in the outside world. My focus is on getting the members to review the nature of any changes on a thinking, feeling, and behaving level. What resources and strengths did they discover in themselves? Have they learned the value of expressing their feelings? Have they learned that repressing their feelings results in some indirect expression of them? What cognitions have they modified? Have they let go of some dysfunctional cognitions that lead to emotional upsets? Have they critically evaluated their beliefs and values and made them their own? What concrete behavioral changes have they made that they value? How did they make these changes? How can they continue to behave in ways that are productive? What plan for action can they devise now that the group is coming to an end so that they can continue to make progress?

Theoretical Perspectives I tend to use the most structure during the beginning and ending phases of a group. I do not believe members will automatically transfer specific cognitive, emotional, and behavioral changes from the group to the outside world. Therefore, I provide a structure that I hope will promote this transfer of learning. I have mentioned that in ongoing groups I do whatever I can to promote action on the part of the members by getting them to create their own homework assignments and then to report on their progress at the next group meeting. This is a way of continually using the group as a place to learn how to be different and then of carrying this new behavior into real life. The group is a means to an end and should never become an end in itself.

Whereas I tend to use experiential therapies and exploration of feelings during the working phase, during the final stage I lean toward the cognitive behavioral therapies and toward putting one's learning into some type of conceptual framework. From the cognitive behavioral therapies I draw techniques such as rehearsal for leaving a group, self-monitoring procedures, building a support system beyond the group, and learning methods of self-reinforcement. I see therapy as a psychoeducational process, and I try to help members devise a conceptual framework that will ensure that they make sense of what they have experienced. During the final stage I frequently ask, "What did you learn in this group that you value, and how did you learn it?" I want members to attribute their changes to specific actions that they took to change rather than crediting the magic of the group. Cognitive behavior therapy, rational emotive behavior

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

therapy, choice theory/reality therapy, solution-focused brief therapy, and motivational interviewing are relevant models at this point in a group's history because they stress the importance of developing specific plans for change, making a commitment to do what is needed to bring about change, and evaluating the outcomes of the therapeutic process.

Although members are urged to try out a plan of action during the working phase, it is during the final stage that these plans assume top priority. It is also important to help members find ways to continue to build on their newly acquired skills. Members can promote their change by deciding toward the end of the group on other paths for growth. They can make decisions about specific activities that will keep challenging them. They can make contracts to behave in certain ways once the group ends.

I emphasize cognitive work and behavioral plans for action during the final stage, but I do not assume that feelings are unimportant at this time. It is critical that members deal with their feelings about separation and termination, that they express any fears or reservations they may have about making it in the world without the support of the group, and that they learn how to say good-bye. Also, the opportunity to complete any unfinished business is paramount at this time.

Toward the end of a group's sessions leaders can provide members with practical strategies for dealing with setbacks once they leave a group. Members need to realize that the path toward growth is bumpy and uneven. At this time, they can be taught how to evaluate the impact of the group on themselves as well as assess the progress they have made as a group.

Theories Applied to Postgroup Issues

After the group comes to an end, the members' main task is applying their in-group learning to an action program in their daily life so that they can function in self-directed ways. I value setting aside time for individual interviews with each member, if possible, along with arranging for a follow-up group session. These procedures build in accountability and enable both the members and the leader to more accurately assess the impact of the group. Again, the cognitive behavioral approaches stress this accountability and evaluation, which enable the leader to make modifications in future groups based on what seemed to work. Follow-up procedures also provide a safety valve. If members left the group with unresolved issues or negative reactions, they can at least discuss them with the group leader.

The Pros and Cons of an Integrative Model

As I have said many times, I am convinced that as a group practitioner you need to find a style that fits you as a person; the model I have described is the result of my own search for an approach to groups that fits me both professionally and personally. It reflects my view of groups as entities that express in an integrated fashion the thinking, feeling, and doing dimensions of individual members. It also combines the didactic with the experiential because I believe what we experience in a group needs to be supported by a conceptual framework. Without such a framework, it would be difficult for us to make sense of the experience and to understand its implications for our daily existence. My model brings together action-oriented, insight-oriented, and experientially oriented approaches—that is, the cognitive, affective, and behavioral dimensions—to pursue more effectively the basic goal of any therapeutic group: change.

I believe an integration of therapeutic perspectives provides the best way to develop your interventions in a group, but creating an integrative stance is an ongoing project that comes with experience and reflection. You cannot simply pick bits and pieces from theories in a random and fragmented manner. In forming an integrative perspective, it is important to ask yourself these questions: "Which theories provide a basis for understanding the cognitive dimensions? the feeling aspects? the behavioral dimension?" Most of the 10 therapeutic orientations I have presented focus on a primary dimension of human experience. Although the other dimensions are not necessarily ignored, they receive less attention.

As I mentioned earlier, developing an integrative perspective requires much reading, thinking, and actual counseling experience. Unless you have

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

an accurate and in-depth knowledge of these theories, you cannot formulate a true synthesis. A central message of this book has been to encourage you to remain open to each theory, to do further reading, and to reflect on how the key concepts of each theory fit your personality. Building your personalized theory of counseling, based on what you consider to be the best features of several theories, is a long-term project. Becoming an effective group leader involves a process of defining and refining a personalized group theory that will guide you in your practice and allow you to make sense of what occurs in groups. Of course, the specific type of group that you are leading and the makeup of the people in your group are critical variables in deciding what strategies are most appropriate. Be open to modifying your techniques so that they fit the needs of the members of the group, including their social and cultural background.

Having said all that, I wish to add that there are potential drawbacks to encouraging the development of an integrative approach, as opposed to sticking primarily with one theory. At its worst, an integrative approach can be an excuse for sloppy practice—a practice that lacks a systematic rationale for what you actually do in your work. If you merely pick and choose according to whims, it is likely that your selections will just reflect your biases and preconceived ideas. At its best, however, integration can be a creative synthesis of the unique contributions of diverse approaches, dynamically integrating concepts and techniques that fit the uniqueness of your personality and style.

Summary and Review Tables

At this point it would be useful for you to reflect on the major insights you have gained through taking this course and reading this book. Most of all, think about what theories seemed to have the most practical application in helping you understand your present life situation. You might consider what changes you are interested in making and which approaches could provide you with strategies to modify specific thoughts, feelings, and behaviors. This is a good time to review what you may have learned about your ability to establish effective relationships with other people. Especially important is a review of any personal characteristics that could either help or hinder you in developing solid working relationships with the members in your groups.

After you make this review of significant personal learning, I suggest that you also review and reflect upon what you have learned about group process. Between the first and the last day of an introductory course in group counseling, students generally realize that what seems at first to be an overwhelming mass of knowledge and a bewildering array of theories eventually becomes a manageable store of understanding about the basics of group counseling. Moreover, I hope you will be patient enough to recognize that much of the theoretical foundation you have received in this book will take on new meanings when you gain more practical experience in leading various groups. The same is true for the many professional and ethical issues that were discussed in the book. I think it is essential that you reflect on these basic issues, that you begin to formulate your own position on them, and that you discuss them with fellow students and instructors. Even though experience will teach you many new lessons, you will be far better equipped to deal with these and related issues when you meet them if you reflect on them now.

As you review the tables (Tables 16.1 through 16.6) summarizing the 10 theories, consider which particular approaches you would be most inclined to draw from with respect to these dimensions: (1) goals of group counseling, (2) group leader's role and function, (3) degree of structuring and division of responsibility, (4) group techniques, (5) the contributions, and (6) limitations in adapting these theories to the practice of multicultural group counseling.

Video

Watch Gerald Corey's *Group Theories in Action*, video via the Cengage eBook. The group session discussed in this chapter is based on an integrative approach to group counseling.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Name Index

Abbott, M. K., 33
Abramowitz, J. S., 271, 277, 286, 288
Adams, M., 185, 186, 189–191, 194, 197–200, 202, 203
Adler, A., 130, 132, 135
Al-Rashidi, B., 321
Albert, L., 146
Alexander, E. F., 4, 29
Alonso, J., 78
Alves, P., 153
American Counseling Association (ACA), 37, 38, 41, 57
American Group Psychotherapy Association (AGPA), 38, 48
American School Counselor Association (ASCA), 39
Amrhein, P., 344
Anderson, H., 333
Ansbacher, H. L., 137
Antony, M. M., 267, 268, 270, 271, 275, 276, 278, 281–284, 286, 288, 289
APA Presidential Task Force on Evidence-Based Practice, 31, 32
Arkowitz, H., 337, 343, 345–347
Arredondo, P., 27
Association for Specialists in Group Work, 15, 27, 28, 30, 34, 37, 38, 45, 48, 49, 58, 67, 92
Atkinson, D. R., 10
Aviv, A., 108
Axelsson, L., 238, 239, 242, 245, 262

Baggerly, J., 173, 227
Baim, C., 175, 176
Bandura, A., 269, 270
Bannister, A., 173
Barber, J. P., 106, 108
Barbour, A., 172
Barkham, M., 30, 31
Barlow, S. H., 5
Barnett, L., 192
Bateson, G., 337
Beck, A. T., 266, 277, 278, 280, 286, 288, 289, 294
Beck, J. S., 267, 270, 276–278, 288
Beecher, M. E., 33
Beidel, D., 277
Beisser, A. R., 239
Bellack, A. S., 276, 277
Bemak, F., 46, 62, 81, 83, 84, 106, 107, 160
Berg, I. K., 329, 338, 339, 347
Bertolino, B., 332, 333, 336, 342
Bertram, B., 37, 39
Beutler, L. E., 4, 32
Bieling, P. J., 267, 271, 275, 278, 281, 289
Bitter, J. R., 132–138, 140, 142–144, 149, 332, 333
Biyanova, T., 208, 213, 288
Blatner, A., 154, 156–159, 161, 163, 165, 167–169, 171, 173–178
Blomkvist, L. D., 158, 159, 166, 169, 170
Bohart, A. C., 32, 184, 196, 211, 218, 228–230
Bond, L., 86
Booker, B., 4
Bordieri, M., 274, 282, 283
Bowman, C., 239, 245, 246, 259
Bozarth, J. D., 211, 213, 224, 225
Bozdemir, T., 177
Brabender, V., 5, 112, 119
Brenninkmeyer, L., 51
Brickell, J., 317, 320, 321, 323
Brown, S., 27
Bryan, A. D., 343
Buchholz, J. L., 271, 277, 286, 288
Bugental, E. K., 193
Bugental, J. F. T., 185, 186, 196, 203
Burdenski, T., 317
Burlingame, G. M., 5, 58, 78

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Burmeister, J., 175, 176
Butler, C. C., 343

Cain, D. J., 209–211, 213, 214, 216, 218, 220, 224, 225, 227–230
Callanan, P., 47, 174
Cannon, J. A. N., 33
Captari, L. E., 43
Carlson, J., 132–139, 142–144, 147–149, 348
Carnabucci, K., 161
Carter, R. T., 27
Casas, J. M., 27
Cashwell, C. S., 43, 44
Castonguay, L., 30, 31
Cattie, J. E., 271, 277, 286, 288
Chang, S., 52, 68, 85, 86
Chapman, A. L., 281, 282
Charlesworth, J. R., 341
Christensen, O. C., 131, 137
Christmas, C., 43
Chung, R. C.-Y., 46, 62, 83, 84
Claiborn, C. D., 86
Clarkin, J., 120
Classen, C. C., 119
Coker, J. K., 257
Coleman, V. D., 44
Comas-Diaz, L., 10, 26, 28, 46, 106
Constantino, M. J., 346
Cook, J. M., 208, 213, 288
Cooker, P. G., 304
Cooley, M., 277
Cooper, M., 182, 185, 188, 197
Corey, C., 6, 8, 55
Corey, G., 6, 8, 22, 28, 42, 47, 54, 55, 69, 72, 174, 190, 195, 304
Corey, M., 6, 8, 47, 55, 72, 174, 190, 195
Cormier, S., 274, 281, 286, 291, 331, 343, 348
Cornish, M. A., 43, 44
Correia, E. A., 182, 188, 197
Cottone, R. R., 342
Council for Accreditation of Counseling and Related Educational Programs (CACREP), 49, 51
Coyne, J. C., 208
Craig, M., 182, 188, 197
Crane, J. M., 173
Craske, M. G., 288
Cruz, A., 153
Curtis, R. C., 105, 106, 108, 110, 111

Dadlani, M. B., 346
Dattilio, F. M., 273, 275
Davis, D. E., 43
Davis, S., 330, 336, 348
Davis, T. E., 341
Dayton, T., 176
De Jong, P., 329, 338, 339, 347
de Shazer, S., 329, 330, 332, 334, 337–339, 347, 348
Deane, F. P., 273
Debiak, D., 45
DeGeorge, J., 346
Dehlin, J. P., 277
DeLucia-Waack, J. L., 9, 10
Deniz, C., 177
Deurzen, E. van, 184–186, 189–191, 194, 197–203
Di Pietro, R., 140–141
Dienes, K. A., 271, 288
Dies, R. R., 68
Dimidjian, S., 288
Dixon-Gordon, K. L., 281, 282
Dobson, D., 90, 267
Dobson, K. S., 90, 267, 270, 273, 275, 276
Doğaner, İ., 177
Dolan, Y., 330, 337–339, 347, 348
Donigan, J., 8
Donigian, J., 10
Dreikurs, R., 132, 137, 139, 140, 146
Drewes, A. A., 173, 176
Drum, D. J., 7
Dryden, W., 278
Duncan, B. L., 32, 33, 197
Dunkley, C., 281
Durkin, H., 104

Earley, J., 121
Elhai, J., 213, 288

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Elkins, D. N., 197, 200, 208, 209, 229
Elliott, R., 197, 202, 228
Ellis, A., 295–301, 303–305
Ellis, D. J., 296–300, 303, 305
Englar-Carlson, M., 132–139, 142, 143, 147–149
Epp, L., 106, 107
Epp, L. R., 81
Epston, D., 331
Erikson, E. H., 100, 112, 113
Ewing, S. W. F., 343

Falls, L., 9
Farber, B. A., 214
Farber, E. W., 121, 122
Feder, B., 238, 239, 241, 242, 245, 248, 260, 262
Felsman, P., 176, 177
Feniger-Schaal, R., 177
Fitch, T., 119
Flores, P. J., 119
Flynn, M. K., 274, 282, 283
Foley, V. K., 105
Follette, V. M., 281, 283, 284, 291
Forman, E. M., 284
Fouad, N. A., 27
Foulkes, S. H., 109
Francis, P. C., 43
Frankl, V., 188, 190, 192, 194, 202
Franklin, C., 331
Freeman, A., 267, 271, 288
Freiberg, H. J., 226
Freire, E., 197, 202
Freud, A., 118
Freud, S., 111
Frew, J., 238–241, 243–245, 247, 248, 250, 258, 259, 262
Frier, E., 51
Fulkerson, M., 318
Fulton, P. R., 284, 291
Furr, S., 9

Gabbard, G. O., 120
Garofalo, A., 177
Geller, J. D., 50
Gelso, C. J., 106, 107, 229
George, E., 330
Germer, C. K., 281, 283, 284, 291
Gershoni, J., 176
Gingerich, W. J., 331, 341, 347
Gladding, S. T., 117, 229
Glasser, C., 312
Glasser, W., 309, 311–313, 315, 320, 324
Gökengin, D., 177
Gökengin, G., 177
Gökkaya, F., 177
Gold, J., 107, 124
Goldberg, S. B., 106, 107
Goldfried, M. R., 4
Golightly, T. R., 33
Goodyear, R. K., 86
Goolishian, H., 333
Gow, K., 167
Green, E. J., 173, 176
Greenberg, L. S., 197, 202, 211
Griffith, J., 136, 137
Griner, D., 33
Gross, J. M., 7
Guterman, J. T., 332, 333, 347

Haub, A. L., 4
Hayden-Seman, J., 176
Hayes, J. A., 106, 107
Hayes, S. C., 267, 281, 283, 284, 291
Haynes, R., 72, 174
Hays, P. A., 286, 287
Heidegger, M., 191
Heimberg, R. G., 271, 273, 275, 279, 299, 301
Henderson, D., 117, 146
Hendricks, W. A., 46, 62
Henfield, M. S., 4
Herbert, J. D., 284
Herlihy, B., 42, 43
Hewitt, P. L., 101, 112
Hill, C. E., 17, 84, 192, 193
Himle, J. A., 176, 177
Hockersmith, W., 62
Hogan, T. P., 31
Hollon, S. D., 288

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Homeyer, L. E., 227
Hook, J. N., 43
Horner, P. A., 86
Horvatin, T., 176
Houts, A., 281
Hoyt, M. F., 9, 122, 332, 338, 347
Hoyt, W., 43
Hubble, M. A., 32, 33, 197
Hulse-Killacky, D., 8
Huntington, A., 173
Hutchison, K. E., 343
Hycner, R., 246

Ieva, K. P., 49, 50
Imhof, L., 321
In-za Kim, R., 321
Ingersoll, K. S., 343
Işık, ī., 177
Iveson, C., 330
Ivey, A. E., 10, 27, 28
Ivey, M. B., 10, 28

Jackson, M., 341
Jacobs, L., 239, 245, 246, 259
Jennings, L., 15
Jensen, D. R., 33
Jensen, M., 27
Johnson, I. H., 44
Jones, J., 27
Joseph, S., 229
Josselson, R., 183, 185, 188, 191, 195, 197, 201
Joyce, A. S., 30, 31, 88

Kabat-Zinn, J., 281–283
Kaplan, A., 279
Karabilgin, Ö., 177
Kaslow, N. J., 291
Kauff, P. F., 105
Kazantzis, N., 273, 275
Keefe, J. R., 106, 108
Keenan, K., 211
Kepner, E., 239, 246, 247
Kepner, J. I., 259
Kernberg, O. F., 107, 119, 120
Killacky, J., 8
Kim, H. S., 321
Kinnier, R. T., 191
Kipper, D., 161, 173
Kirschenbaum, H., 213, 224, 227, 230
Kivlighan, D. M., 229
Kivlighan, M., 106, 107
Kızıltan, R., 177
Klein, R. H., 32, 88
Kleinstauber, M., 86
Knaus, W., 302
Knott, J. E., 7
Knox, S., 17, 84
Kocet, M. M., 43
Kohut, H., 119, 121
Koocher, G. P., 31, 177
Krebs, P. M., 345
Kriss, A., 105
Krug, O. T., 184, 185, 188, 196, 200
Kutash, I. L., 101, 109

LaChance, H., 343
LaFromboise, T., 27
Lambert, M. J., 31, 86
Lambert, R., 257
Lampropoulos, G. K., 273
Landreth, G. L., 227
Lasky, G. B., 38
Latner, J., 240
Lau, M. A., 30, 31
Laygo, R., 279
Ledley, D. R., 271, 273, 275, 279, 299, 301
Lee, C. C., 10, 45
Lenton-Brym, A. P., 267, 268, 276, 286, 288
Leszcz, M., 17, 32, 33, 40, 42, 50, 51, 59, 64, 79, 81–84, 86, 120, 121, 183
Levant, R. F., 32
Levenson, H., 121, 122
Leveton, E., 164, 167, 168, 170, 171, 172, 177
Levitsky, A., 250
Lewis, T. F., 331, 345, 346
Lietaer, G., 211, 213, 229
Lillis, J., 284
Linehan, M. M., 120, 281–284, 291

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Lipchik, E., 333, 348
Lippitt, R., 170
Locke, D., 27
Locke, N., 104, 105, 111
Lojk, L., 321
Lowe, R., 167
Lucas, N., 274, 282, 283
Lutz, W., 30, 31
Lynch, D. A., 214
Lyon, H., 227

Maciel, M., 175, 176
MacKenzie, K. R., 5
MacNair-Semands, R. R., 37, 41, 44
Mahler, M. S., 118, 119
Malcolm, D., 227
Manese, J. E., 27
Maniacci, M. P., 133, 136–138, 144, 147, 148, 348
Markin, R. D., 229
Marshall, C., 344, 348
Marshall, J. L., 119
Marx, B. P., 271, 273, 275, 279, 299, 301
Masterson, J. F., 119
Masuda, A., 281
May, R., 184–186
McAleavey, A., 30, 31
McCabe, R. E., 267, 271, 275, 278, 281, 289
McCarthy, K. S., 106, 108
McCeneaney, A. M. S., 7
McClendon, D. T., 58, 78
McCollum, E. E., 331
McDavis, R. J., 27
McElroy, S. E., 43
McVea, C. S., 167
Meichenbaum, D., 279, 280
Melnick, J., 247, 248
Messer, S. B., 291
Metcalf, L., 332, 334, 338, 347
Meyer, D. D., 342
Mıh, C., 177
Mikail, S. F., 101, 112
Miller, S. D., 32, 33, 197, 329
Miller, W. R., 213–215, 337, 343–346, 348, 349
Moita, G., 153
Monk, G., 334
Moon, M., 321
Moreno, J. D., 154
Moreno, J. L., 154, 159, 161, 168
Moreno, Z. T., 157–159, 162, 163, 166, 167, 169, 170, 171, 177
Morran, D. K., 30, 31, 33, 86
Morran, K., 52, 68, 85, 86
Mosak, H. H., 140–141
Moyers, T. B., 213–215, 344, 349
Muller, R. T., 119
Muran, J. C., 106, 108
Muratori, M., 190, 195
Murphy, D., 215, 228, 229
Murphy, J. J., 331–333, 336, 337, 339–342, 347, 348

Nassar, S., 274, 282, 283
Neenan, M., 278
Neville, H. A., 27, 46
Nevis, S., 247, 248
Nezu, A. M., 275
Nezu, C. M., 275
Nicholas, M., 158
Nichols, M. P., 330, 336, 348
Nicholson, J. M., 345
Nicoll, W. G., 140, 144
Nielsen, A. S., 344, 348
Nolan, E., 24
Nolte, J., 153, 169, 172, 177
Norcross, J. C., 4, 29, 31, 32, 50, 177, 214, 215, 284, 345
Nurius, P. S., 274, 281, 286, 291, 331, 343, 348

Oaklander, V., 257
Ogrodniczuk, J. S., 30, 31, 88
O'Hanlon, B., 332, 336, 342
O'Hanlon, W. H., 332, 336, 338, 347
Ohrt, J. H., 49, 50, 51
Önkür, B., 177
Organista, K., 287
Orkibi, H., 177
Orlinsky, D. E., 50

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Orsillo, S. M., 281, 284
Ortiz, C., 51
Osborn, C. J., 274, 281, 286, 291, 331, 341, 343, 345, 346, 348
Overtree, C. E., 346

Padesky, C., 294
Padesky, C. A., 291
Page, R. C., 211, 213, 229
Parker, M., 227
Passaro, P., 321
Passons, W. R., 250
Paulson, A., 277
Pedersen, P. B., 10, 28, 45
Peller, J. E., 332, 334, 347
Pelonis-Peneros, P. P., 140
Perls, F., 235, 236, 238, 250, 255, 259
Peterson, L. T., 347
Petrocelli, J. V., 277
Pew, W. L., 132
Pfund, R. A., 284
Pietrzak, D., 349
Pinto-Coelho, K. G., 84
Piper, W. E., 31, 88
Polster, E., 236, 237, 239, 241–243, 246–248, 250, 255
Polster, M., 236, 237, 238, 240, 242, 243, 246–248, 250, 255
Ponterotto, J. G., 27
Porter, J., 51
Post, B. C., 43, 44
Powers, R. L., 136, 137
Prochaska, J. O., 284, 345

Rainwater, J., 256
Rasmussen, P. R., 133, 142
Ratner, H., 330
Reese, M. K., 357
Reindecke, M. A., 288
Reinecke, M. A., 271
Rice, L. N., 211
Riva, M. T., 4, 38
Rizvi, S. L., 281
Robey, P., 317
Robison, F. F., 86
Roemer, L., 267, 268, 271, 276, 281, 284, 286, 288
Rogers, C., 210, 212–215, 217–222, 225, 226, 227
Rogers, N., 220–224
Rollnick, S., 343–346, 349
Rose, C. A., 191
Rose, G. S., 348
Rose, S. D., 273
Roy, J., 309, 320
Rubin, S., 211
Ruetzel, T., 158, 159, 166, 169, 170
Russell, D. E., 210
Russell, J. M., 47, 174
Rutan, J. S., 88, 101, 104–111, 120, 122

St. Clair, M., 118, 119
Sackett-Maniacci, L., 133, 147, 148
Safran, J. D., 105
Sahker, E., 44
Sales, C. M. D., 153
Salıkyüz, S., 177
Sanchez, J., 27
Santos Torres, J., 44
Sartre, J. P., 187
Sauer, A., 271, 288
Schneider, K. J., 184–186, 188, 196, 200
Schnurr, P. P., 213, 288
Schoenberg, P., 241, 260
Schreiber, E., 176
Schuyler, E. J., 142
Schwartz, E. K., 105
Segal, Z. V., 281, 283
Seifert, C. M., 176, 177
Shapiro, J. L., 9
Sharp, J. G., 186, 203
Shay, J. J., 88, 101, 105, 108, 110, 111, 120, 122
Shi, Q., 62
Shumaker, D., 51
Siegel, R. D., 284, 291
Sklare, G. B., 340, 341, 347
Skovholt, T. M., 15
Smith, L., 27, 46, 126

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Smith, M. C., 44
Sochting, I., 30, 31
Sonstegard, M. A., 132–138, 140, 142–144
Sparks, J. A., 32
Sperry, J., 270, 281, 282, 286, 289
Sperry, L., 270, 281, 282, 286, 289
Spiegler, M. D., 267, 268, 274, 275, 281, 283, 285, 287
Stadler, H., 27
Stanton, M., 281
Steen, S., 4, 62
Stockton, R., 30, 31, 33, 52, 68, 85, 86
Stone, W. N., 88, 101, 105, 108, 110, 111, 120, 122
Strauss, B., 5
Stricker, G., 107, 124
Strong Kinnaman, J. E., 276, 277
Strosahl, K. D., 267, 281, 283
Strupp, H. H., 108, 126
Sue, D., 27, 46, 287
Sue, D. W., 27, 46, 287
Suziki, J. Y., 214
Swank, J. M., 49, 50
Sweeney, D. S., 227
Sweeney, T. J., 143
Swenson, C. R., 282
Synatschk, K. O., 341

Tallman, K., 218, 228
Tasca, G. A., 101, 112
Tausch, R., 211, 213, 224, 225, 227
Teasdale, J. D., 281, 283
Terner, J., 132
Thompson, C. L., 146
Tillich, P., 194
Timulak, L., 197, 202
Tollison, P. K., 341
Toporek, R., 27
Torres Fernandez, I., 46, 62
Torres-Harding, S., 271, 288
Torres-Rivera, E., 46, 62
Toth, P. L., 33
Trepper, T. S., 331
Tribbensee, N. E., 191
Tucker, J. R., 44
Turner, S., 277
Tuttman, S., 101
Twohig, M. P., 277

Van Horn, S. M., 43
Vaughan, S. M., 191
Vazquez-Nutall, E., 27
Vernon, A., 285, 302
Vontress, C. E., 189, 191, 192, 201, 202
Vos, J., 182, 188, 197

Wabeke, T., 341
Wade, A. G., 32, 184, 196, 228
Wade, N. G., 43, 44
Wagner, C. C., 343
Walter, J. L., 332, 334, 347
Wampold, B. E., 32, 33, 197
Watson, J., 197, 202
Watson, J. C., 211, 228–230
Watts, R. E., 133, 136–138, 144, 348, 349
Weinberg, H., 40
Weiner-Davis, M., 332, 336, 338, 347
Weishaar, M. E., 278, 286, 289
Weiss, J. F., 211, 213, 229
Westra, H. A., 337, 343, 346, 347
Wheeler, G., 238, 239, 242, 245, 262
Wheeler, N., 37, 39
Whipple, J. L., 86
White, J. R., 267, 269, 277, 278
White, M., 331
Whiteman, K., 274, 282, 283
Whittingham, M. H., 86
Wieser, M., 177
Wiest, D., 321
Williams, J. M. G., 281, 283
Wilson, K. G., 267, 274, 282, 283
Winslade, J., 334
Wolf, A., 101, 104, 105, 107, 109, 111
Wolitzky, D. L., 104, 105, 107, 108, 124
Wong, E., 321
Worthington, E. L., 43
Wrenn, C. G., 45
Wubbolding, R., 311, 312–318, 320–324

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Yalom, I. D., 17, 32, 33, 40, 42, 50, 51, 59, 64, 79, 81–84, 86, 120, 121, 183, 185, 188, 191, 192, 195, 197, 201, 205
Yalom, M., 205
Yang, C., 58
Yeomans, F., 120
Yontef, G., 238, 239, 245, 246, 259
Young, B., 277
Young, J. S., 43, 44
Young, M. E., 160
Young, T., 49, 50, 51
Zaretsky, S., 123
Zimring, F. M., 211, 213, 224, 225
Zinker, J. C., 239, 240, 244–246, 247, 248, 250, 256, 259
Zorluoğlu, E., 177
Zorzella, K. P. M., 119
Zur, O., 203

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Subject Index

A-B-C theory, 297
Acceptance, 80, 214–215, 281
Acceptance and commitment therapy, 283–284
Action phase, 165–166
Active listening, 18, 23
Actualization tendency, 210
Adlerian group counseling, 130–152, 356, 357, 359, 361, 363, 365, 367–368
  action, group theories in, 145
  applications, 144
  applying to group work in school, 145–146
  applying with multicultural populations, 147
  contributions and strengths, 147–148
  evaluation, 147–149
  integration with other approaches, 148–149
  key concepts, 132–138
  limitations, 149
  role and functions of group leader, 138
  self-reflection and discussion questions, 149–150
  stages, 138–144
  therapeutic techniques and procedures, 144
Adlerian view of person, 132–133
Adolescents, counseling groups, 6
Agreements, 139
Aloneness and relatedness, 195–196
Ambivalence, conflict and, 70, 368
Analysis and assessment, 139–141
Announcing a group, 57
Anxiety, 15–16, 70, 72, 102, 109, 125
Anxiety, existential, 189–190
Approaches, therapeutic
  Adlerian group counseling, 130–152
  Choice theory/reality therapy, 308–327
  Cognitive behavioral, 265–293
  Existential approach, 182–207
  Gestalt therapy, 235–264
  Motivational interviewing, 328–353
  Person-centered approach, 208–234
  Psychoanalytic, 99–127
  Psychodrama, 153–181
  Rational emotive behavior therapy, 294–307
  Solution-focused brief therapy, 328–353
Assessment, analysis and, 139–141
Attachment theory, 119
Attitudes, beliefs and, 46
Audience, 163
Authenticity, search for, 194–195
Authenticity, sincerity and, 14
Automatic thoughts, 277
Autonomy versus shame and doubt, 113–114
Auxiliary egos, 162–163
Awareness, 235, 241
Awareness and insight, 141–142

Barriers to effective therapy, 216–217
Behaving perspective, thinking, feeling, 369
Behavior rehearsal, 272–273
Behavior therapy, 265
Behavior, total, 312–313
Behavioral assessment, 268
Behavioral practice, 166
Beliefs and attitudes, 27
Belonging, 135–136
Blocking, 19, 21, 23
Blocks to energy, energy and, 244–245
Borderline personality disorder, 119–121
Brief group work, 9

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Brief psychodynamic therapy, 121–122
Brief therapy, 144

Caring, empathy and, 80–81
Catching oneself, 143
Catharsis, 82, 160, 175
Challenging group leader, 71–72
Change, commitment to, 82–83
Character, personality and, 13–15
Children, counseling groups, 6
Choice, creativity and, 134–135
Choice theory/Reality therapy, 308–327, 357, 358, 362, 364, 368, 369
  applying to group work in school, 320–321
  applying with multicultural populations, 321–323
  contributions and strengths, 323–324
  evaluation, 323–324
  key concepts, 311–314
  limitations, 324
  role and functions of group leader, 314
  self-reflection and discussion questions, 325
  therapeutic techniques and procedures, 314–319
Clarifying, 18, 23
Clients' rights, 35–36
Closed groups, open versus, 59–60
Closing group sessions, opening and, 22–26
Closure, 167
Coaching, 272–273
Cognitive behavior therapy, 265
Cognitive behavioral approaches, 265–293, 357, 358, 362, 364, 365, 367, 369, 370–371
  action, group theories in, 284–285
  advantages of group approach, 289
  applying to group work in school, 285
  applying with multicultural populations, 285–287
  contributions and strengths, 287–289
  evaluation, 287–289
  key concepts, 268–269
  limitations, 289
  role and functions of group leader, 269–270
  self-reflection and discussion questions, 290
  stages, 270–276
  therapeutic techniques and procedures, 276–284
Cognitive restructuring, 82, 273–274, 279, 280, 297
Cognitive therapy, 278
Cognitive therapy groups, 277–279
Cohesion and productivity, 77–87
Cohesive relationship, establishing and maintaining, 138–139
Collaborative empiricism, 271, 284
College students, counseling groups, 6–7
Commentary, 86
Commitment, 319
Community feeling and social interest, 135–136
Comparisons, contrasts, and integration, 355–372
Competence, 47–52
Confidentiality, 36, 37–40, 53
  breaches of, 40
  exceptions to, 38
  limitations of, 35
  with minors, 38–39
Conflict and ambivalence, 368
Conflict, recognizing and dealing with, 70–71
Confluence, 244
Confrontation, 19, 41, 65, 72, 74, 75, 84–85
Confronting, 19, 23
Congruence, 212
Consciousness, 132
Consolidation and termination, 87–90
Consolidation stage, 57
Contact and disturbances to contact, 242–244
Contracts, 367
Contrasts, and integration, comparisons, 355–372
Contributions and strengths of approaches
  Adlerian group counseling, 147–148
  Choice theory/Reality therapy, 323–324

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Cognitive behavioral approaches, 287–289
Existential, 201–203
Gestalt therapy, 259
Motivational interviewing, 348
Person-centered approach, 228
Psychoanalytic, 124–125
Psychodrama, 175
Rational emotive behavior therapy, 304–305
Solution-focused brief therapy, 347
Cooperation, 136
Coronavirus pandemic, 40
Counseling environment, 315–316
Counseling groups
adolescents, 6
children, 6
college students, 6–7
older people, 7
other types, 7–9
Countertransference, 13, 43, 50, 55, 106–107, 125
Courage, 13
Creative expression in groups, 223
Creativity, 157, 221–222
Creativity and choice, 134–135
Creativity, inventiveness and, 14
Cultural competence, 26
Cultural empathy, 28
Cultural encapsulation, 45–46
Cultural values, 44–45
Culturally competent, 10
Culturally encapsulated counselor, 26, 45

Death and nonbeing, 190–192
Deflection, 244
Degree of structuring and division of responsibility, 360–362
Adlerian, 361
Choice theory/Reality therapy, 362
Cognitive behavior therapy, 362
comparative overview of, 361–362
Existential, 362
Gestalt, 362
Person-centered, 362
Psychoanalytic, 361
Psychodrama, 361
Rational emotive behavior therapy, 362
Solution-focused brief therapy and motivational interviewing, 362
Denial, 103
Despair, integrity versus, 117
Development of a group
early stages, 56–76
later stages, 77–103
Developmental stages, psychoanalytic approach, 112–117
Dialectical behavior therapy (DBT), 120, 281–282
Dialogue experiments, 252
Disclosing oneself, 21, 23
Disclosures, pregroup, 35
Discussion phase, sharing and, 166–168
Discussion questions, self-reflection and
Adlerian group counseling, 149–150
Choice theory/Reality therapy, 325
Cognitive behavioral approaches, 290
Existential, 203–204
Gestalt therapy, 260
Motivational interviewing, 349–350
Person-centered approach, 230–231
Psychoanalytic approach, 126
Psychodrama, 178
Rational emotive behavior therapy, 305–306
Solution-focused brief therapy, 349–350
Displacement, 103
Dispute irrational beliefs, 297
Disturbances to contact, contact and, 242–244
Diversity-competent group counselor, 26–28
Double roles, 169–170
Double roles, multiple, 170
Dream analysis, 111
Dream work, 254–256

Early recollections, 141, 148
Early stages in group development, 56–76
Ego-defense mechanisms, 102–104, 125
Emotional disturbance, 296
Empathic understanding, 215
Empathizing, 20, 23

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Empathy, 215–216, 228
Empathy and caring, 80–81
Empty chair technique, 170–171
Enactments, 153
Encounter, 157–159
Encouragement, 143
Energy and blocks to energy, 244–245
Enthusiasm, 14
Ethical and professional issues, 34–55
Ethical bracketing, 43
Ethical issues
  multicultural group counseling, 44–46
  training group counselors, 51–52
Ethics of group leaders' actions, 41–42
Evaluation, 20, 23, 57
Evaluation and follow-up, 91–92
Evaluation of approaches
  Adlerian group counseling, 147–149
  Choice theory/Reality therapy, 323–324
  Cognitive behavioral approaches, 287–289
  Existential, 201–203
  Gestalt therapy, 259–260
  Person-centered approach, 228–230
  Psychoanalytic, 124–126
  Psychodrama, 175–178
  Rational emotive behavior therapy, 304–305
  Solution-focused brief therapy, 347–349
Evidence-based practice, 31–33
Exaggeration technique, 254
Exception questions, 337
Existential approach, 182–207, 356, 358, 360, 362, 363, 367, 368
  action, group theories in, 199
  applying to group work in school, 199–200
  applying with multicultural populations, 200–201
  contributions and strengths, 201–203
  evaluation, 201–203
  historical background, 184–185
  key concepts, 186–196
  limitations, 203
  phases of group, 198–199
  role and functions of group leader, 196–197
  self-reflection and discussion questions, 203–204
  therapeutic techniques and procedures, 197–198
Existential group, 185–186
Existential guilt, 194
Existential neurosis, 192
Existential tradition, 184
Existential vacuum, 192
Existential/Phenomenological orientation, 312
Experiential Training Workshops, 51
Experiments, 247–250
Exploration, orientation and, 64–69
Expressive arts therapy, 271

Facilitating, 20, 23
Facilitator, 217
Family atmosphere, 136
Family constellation, 136
Fantasy approaches, 253
Feedback, 20, 23, 59, 61, 66, 74, 85–86, 273
Feeling, behaving perspective, thinking, 369
Feelings, dealing with, 89
Fellow travelers, 197
Fictional finalism, 137
Field theory, 240
Figure-formation process, 240–241
Final stage, 87–90
  leader functions, 91
  member functions, 91
  stage characteristics, 90–91
  summary, 90–91
Follow-up, 57
Follow-up, evaluation and, 91–92
Follow-up session, 92–93
Formation stage, 57–64
Formation stage, practical concerns, 59–61
Formative tendency, 210
Formula first session task, 339
Free association, 109–110
Freedom, existential, 187–189
Freedom from coercion and undue pressure, 37
Freedom to experiment, 81

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Freedom to leave a group, 36–37
Frequency and length of meetings, 61
Friendship, 136
Future directions, 284
Future projection, 171

Generativity versus stagnation, 116–117
Genital stage, 115
Genuineness, 213–214
Gestalt therapy, 235–264, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 367, 369
  action, group theories in, 256–257
  applying to group work in school, 257
  applying with multicultural populations, 258
  contributions and strengths, 259
  evaluation, 259–260
  evolution, 238–239
  key concepts, 239–245
  limitations, 259–260
  role and functions of group leader, 245–246
  self-reflection and discussion questions, 260
  stages, 246–247
  therapeutic goals, 239–240
  therapeutic techniques and procedures, 247–256
Go-around, 22
Goal of analytic group, 100–101
Goals, creating solution-focused member, 335–336
Goals, group counseling, 5–6, 20, 23, 268–269
  Adlerian, 356
  Choice theory/Reality therapy, 357
  Cognitive behavior therapy, 357
  comparative overview of group goals, 356–357
  Existential, 356
  Gestalt, 357
  Person-centered, 356
  Psychoanalytic, 356
  Psychodrama, 356
  Rational emotive behavior therapy, 357
  Solution-focused brief therapy and motivational interviewing, 357
  various perspectives, 356–357
Goals, snapshot of, 357–358
Group cohesion, 68
  development, 78–80
  nature, 78–79
Group counseling, 3, 5
  advantages, 6
  goals, 5–6
  versus group therapy, 7
  in multicultural context, 9–11
  overview, 5–7
  specific populations, 6–7
Group counselor, 5, 26–28
  experiential and didactic training, 51–52
Group experiment, 248
Group leader
  challenging, 71–72
  as person, 12–15
  skills, 18–22, 23–24
  self-exploration groups for, 50–51
  special problems and issues for beginning, 15–17
Group leader competence, 47–52
Group leader, role of
  Adlerian group counseling, 138
  Choice theory/Reality therapy, 314
  Cognitive behavioral approaches, 269–270
  Existential approach, 196–197
  Gestalt therapy, 245–246
  identify goals, 66–67
  initial stage, 66–68
  modeling, 66
  Motivational interviewing, 333–334
  Person-centered approach, 217–218
  Psychoanalytic approach, 107–108
  Rational emotive behavior therapy, 298
  Solution-focused brief therapy, 333–334
Group leaders, self-exploration groups for, 50–51
Group leadership, 12–33
Group leadership skills, 18–22
Group leadership style, 28–30
Group members, screening and selecting, 57–59
Group members, socializing among, 42
Group, open, 24
Group participants, rights of, 35–40

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Group process, belief in, 14
Group psychotherapy, 7
Group session, 22–26
  procedures for closing, 24–25
  procedures for opening, 22, 24
Group size, 61
Group techniques, uses and misuses, 47
Group therapist, 7
Group therapy, group counseling versus, 7
Group work
  increased interest in, 4–5
  introduction to, 3–11
  multicultural context of, 364–366
Group work research, 30–33
  evidence-based practice, 31–33
  group practitioners' perceptions, 31
  history of, 30–31
  research orientation, 33
Group work specialist, 53–54
Guardedness, reluctance and, 72–73
Guided discovery, 278
Guilt, initiative versus, 114

Here-and-now, 5, 8, 63, 66, 68, 69, 75, 78, 79, 241–242
Heterogeneous groups, homogeneous versus, 60–61
Hidden agenda, 24
Highly effective therapists, 15
Holism, 133, 240
Holistic view, 133
Homework assignments, 20, 24, 25, 273, 301
Homogeneous versus heterogeneous groups, 60–61
Hope, 81
Humor, 300

Identity confusion, identity versus, 115
Identity, inclusion and, 64–65
Identity, sense of, 14
Identity versus identity confusion, 115
Inclusion and identity, 64–65
Individual psychology, 133, 147
Industry versus inferiority, 115
Inferiority feelings, 136
Inferiority, industry versus, 115
Informed consent, 35–36
Initial session, 61–62
Initial stage, 64–69
  primary tasks, 64–65
  role of group leader, 66–68
  stage characteristics, 64, 68
  summary, 68–69
Initiating, 20, 23
Initiative versus guilt, 114
Insight, 111–112, 160
Insight, awareness and, 141–142
Integration, comparisons, contrasts, and, 355–372
Integration of approaches
  Adlerian group counseling, 147–149
  Psychodrama, 175–176
Integrative model, 366–372
  final stage, 370–371
  initial stage, 367–368
  postgroup issues, 371
  pregroup stage, 367
  pros and cons, 371–372
  transition stage, 368–369
  working stage, 369–370
Integrity versus despair, 117
Interactive group therapy, 121
Internal dialogues, 251–252
Internal locus of evaluation, 222
Interpretation, 110–111, 142, 198
Interpreting, 19, 23
Intersubjectivity, 108
Intervention strategies, skills and, 27–28
Intimacy, 81
Intimacy versus isolation, 116
Introjection, 243
Inventiveness and creativity, 14
Involuntary groups, 36
Involuntary membership, voluntary versus, 60
Isolation, intimacy versus, 116

Journal, 63

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Key concepts
Adlerian group counseling, 132–138
Choice theory/Reality therapy, 311–314
Cognitive behavioral approaches, 268–269
Existential, 186–196
Gestalt therapy, 239–245
Motivational interviewing, 331–333
Person-centered approach, 212–217
Psychoanalytic, 100–107
Psychodrama, 157–161
Rational emotive behavior therapy, 296–298
Solution-focused brief therapy, 331–333
Knowledge, 27

Language patterns, 250
Latent content, 111
Leader functions
Adlerian group counseling, 138
Choice theory/Reality therapy, 314
Cognitive behavioral approaches, 269–270
Existential approach, 196–197
Final stage, 91
Gestalt therapy, 245–246
initial stage, 69
Motivational interviewing, 333–334
Person-centered approach, 217–218
pregroup issues, 64
Psychoanalytic approach, 107–108
Rational emotive behavior therapy, 298
Solution-focused brief therapy, 333–334
working stage, 87
Leader's values, impact of, 42–43
Length of meetings, frequency and, 61
Liability and malpractice, 54–55
Life-changing psychotherapy, 185
Limitations of approaches
Adlerian group counseling, 149
Choice theory/Reality therapy, 324
Cognitive behavioral approaches, 289
Existential, 203
Gestalt therapy, 259–260
Motivational interviewing, 349
Person-centered approach, 229–230
Psychoanalytic, 126
Psychodrama, 176–177
Rational emotive behavior therapy, 304–305
Solution-focused brief therapy, 348–349
Linking, 21, 23
Logotherapy, 188
Long-term groups, short-term versus, 61
Love/marriage task, 135

Magic shop technique, 172
Making the rounds, 252–253
Malpractice, liability and, 54–55
Manifest content, 111
Meaning, search for, 192–194
Meeting place, 61
Meichenbaum's stress inoculation training, 279–281
Member functions
final stage, 91
initial stage, 68–69
pregroup issues, 63–64
transition stage, 69–76
working stage, 87
Mindfulness, 281
Mindfulness-based cognitive therapy, 283
Mindfulness-based stress reduction, 282–283
Minors, confidentiality with, 38–39
Miracle question, 337–338
Mirror technique, 171
Mistrust, trust versus, 113
Modeling, 21, 23, 66, 272
Motivational interviewing, 328–353, 360, 364, 365, 369, 371
contributions and strengths, 348
evaluation, 347–349
key concepts, 331–333
limitations, 349
principles and clinical strategies, 343–345
role and functions of group leader, 333–334
self-reflection and discussion questions, 349–350
therapeutic techniques and procedures, 336–339

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Multicultural considerations, 62
Multicultural context of group work, various perspectives, 364–366
  comparative overview of contributions to multicultural counseling, 365
  comparative overview of limitations in multicultural counseling, 365–366
Multicultural counseling, 10–11, 27
Multicultural populations, 11
Multicultural populations, applying approaches
  Adlerian group counseling, 147
  Choice theory/Reality therapy, 321–323
  Cognitive behavioral approaches, 285–287
  Existential, 200–201
  Gestalt therapy, 258
  Person-centered approach, 227–228
  Psychoanalytic, 124
  Psychodrama, 174–175
  Rational emotive behavior therapy, 303
  Solution-focused brief therapy, 341–342

Narcissistic personality disorder, 119–121
Nonbeing, death and, 190–192
Nonverbal language, 251

Object-relations theory, 118–119
Objective evaluation, 269
Occupational task, 135
Oedipus complex, 115
Older people, counseling groups, 7
Online group counseling, 52–53
Online therapy groups, 40
Open group, 24
Open versus closed groups, 59–60
Opening and closing group sessions, 22–26
Openness to experience, 224
Oral stage, 113
Organismic self-regulation, 241
Orientation and exploration, 64–69
Orientation and preparation of members, 62–63
Orientation phase, 57
Overpreparation, 62–63

Paraphrasing, 18, 23
Past, influence of, 101
Person-centered approach, 208–234, 356, 358, 360, 362, 363, 365, 367, 369
  action, group theories in, 225–226
  applying to group work in school, 226–227
  applying with multicultural populations, 227–228
  contributions and strengths, 228–229
  evaluation, 228–230
  focus of humanistic psychology, 211–212
  historical background, 210–211
  key concepts, 212–217
  limitations, 229–230
  Person-centered expressive arts, 220–224
  role and functions of group leader, 217–218
  self-reflection and discussion questions, 230–231
  stages, 219–220
  therapeutic techniques and procedures, 277–279
Person-centered expressive arts, 220–224
Personal counseling for group leaders, 50
Personal power, 13
Personal responsibility, existential, 187–189
Personality and character, 13–15
Phases of psychodrama process
  action, 165–166
  sharing and discussion, 166–168
  warm-up, 163–165
Phenomenological orientation, 134
Phenomenology, 134
Picture album, 311
Poor candidates, 59
Positive orientation, 331
Positive psychology, 331
Postgroup issues, 91–92
Practice-based evidence, 32–33
Pregroup disclosures, 35
Pregroup issues, 57–64
  leader functions, 64
  member functions, 63–64
Pregroup meeting, 61–62, 63
Preparation of members, orientation and, 62–63

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Presence, 13
Pretherapy change, 337
Privacy, 53
Privacy issues, 39
Private logic, 137
Problem-solving therapy, 274–275
Problematic behaviors, reactions to, 74–75
Procedures, therapeutic techniques and
  Adlerian group counseling, 144
  Cognitive behavioral approaches, 276–284
  Existential approach, 197–198
  Gestalt therapy, 247–256
  Motivational interviewing, 336–339
  Person-centered approach, 224–225
  Psychoanalytic approach, 108–112
  Psychodrama, 168–172
  Rational emotive behavior therapy, 298–302
  Solution-focused brief therapy, 336–339
Productivity, cohesion and, 77–87
Professional issues, ethical and, 34–55
Professional negligence, 54
Professional training standards, 49–50
Projection, 103, 243
Protagonist, 161–162
Protecting, 21, 23
Psychoanalytic approach, 99–127, 356, 357, 359, 361, 363, 365
  applying to group work in school, 123–124
  applying with multicultural populations, 124
  contemporary trends, 118
  contributions and strengths, 124–125
  developmental stages, 112–117
  evaluation, 124–126
  key concepts, 100–107
  limitations, 126
  modifications, 125–126
  role and functions of group leader, 107–108
  self-reflection and discussion questions, 126
  therapeutic techniques and procedures, 108–112
Psychoanalytic group theory, 118
Psychodrama in groups, 153–181, 357, 359, 362, 364, 367, 369
  action, theories in, 172–173
  applying to group work in school, 173–174
  applying with multicultural populations, 174–175
  basic elements, 161–163
  contributions and strengths, 175
  evaluation, 175–178
  integration with other approaches, 175–176
  key concepts, 157–161
  limitations, 176–177
  phases of process, 163–168
  role and functions of group leader, 161
  self-reflection and discussion questions, 178
  therapeutic techniques and procedures, 168–172
  training as safeguard, 177–178
Psychoeducational groups, 8
Psychological freedom, 222
Psychological risks, 40–41
Psychological safety, 222
Psychosexual development, 100
Psychosocial influences, 100
Psychosocial theory, 112
PYA (Push Your Ass), 301

Quality world, 312
Questioning, 18–19, 23, 337

Rational Emotive Behavior Therapy, 294–307, 357, 358, 360, 364, 365, 369, 370-371
  action, group theories in, 302
  applying to group work in school, 302–303
  applying with multicultural populations, 303
  contributions and strengths, 304–305
  evaluation, 304–305
  goals, 297–298
  hypotheses and assumptions, 296
  key concepts, 296–298
  limitations, 305
  role and functions of group leader, 298
  self-reflection and discussion questions, 305–306
  therapeutic techniques and procedures, 298–302
Rational emotive imagery, 300
Rational emotive therapy, 294
Rational therapy, 294

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Rationalization, 104
Reaction formation, 103–104
Reality testing, 160
Reality therapy/Choice theory, 308–327, 357, 358, 360, 364, 365, 369, 371
  action, group theories in, 319–320
  applying to group work in school, 320–321
  applying with multicultural populations, 321–323
  contributions and strengths, 323–324
  evaluation, 323–324
  key concepts, 311–314
  limitations, 324
  role and functions of group leader, 314
  self-reflection and discussion questions, 325
  therapeutic techniques and procedures, 314–319
Recruiting members, 57
Reeducation, reorientation and, 142–144
Reflection, 19
Regression, 103
Rehearsal, 253–254
Reinforcement, 273, 301–302
Relapse prevention, 280
Relatedness, aloneness and, 195–196
Relational analysis, 108
Religious and spiritual values, 43–44
Reluctance and guardedness, 72–73
Reluctance, dealing with, 69–76
Reorientation and reeducation, 142–144
Reorientation stage, 142
Replay technique, 172
Repression, 103
Research orientation, 33
Research, role of, 30–33
Resistance, 64, 72, 104–105
Responsibility, division of, 67
Restating, 18, 23
Retroflection, 243–244
Rights of group participants, 35–40
Role and function of group leader, various perspectives, 358–360
  Adlerian, 359
  Choice theory/Reality therapy, 360
  Cognitive behavior therapy, 360
  comparative overview of leader's role and functions, 359–360
  Existential, 359
  Gestalt, 360
  Person-centered, 359
  Psychoanalytic, 359
  Psychodrama, 359
  Rational emotive behavior therapy, 360
  Solution-focused brief therapy and motivational interviewing, 360
Role of group leader
  Adlerian group counseling, 138
  Choice theory/Reality therapy, 314
  Cognitive behavioral approaches, 269–270
  Existential approach, 196–197
  Gestalt therapy, 245–246
  identify goals, 66–67
  initial stage, 66–68
  Motivational interviewing, 333–334
  Person-centered approach, 217–218
  Psychoanalytic approach, 107–108
  Psychodrama, 161
  Rational emotive behavior therapy, 298
  Solution-focused brief therapy, 333–334
Role playing, 301
Role reversal, 169, 174
Role theory, 161
Role training, 172

Scaling questions, 338–339
School counseling, 4
Schools, applying approaches to group work
  Adlerian group counseling, 145–146
  Choice theory/Reality therapy, 320–321
  Cognitive behavioral approaches, 285
  Existential, 199–200
  Gestalt therapy, 257
  Person-centered approach, 226–227
  Psychoanalytic, 123–124
  Psychodrama, 173–174
  Rational emotive behavior therapy, 302–303
  Solution-focused brief therapy, 340–341

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Screening and selecting group members, 57–59
Search for authenticity, 194–195
Search for meaning, 192–194
Selecting group members, screening and, 57–59
Self-awareness, 13, 46, 50, 186–187
Self-care, 14–15
Self-determination, 132, 187–189
Self-disclosure, 16–17, 63, 83–84, 168–169
Self-exploration groups for group leaders, 50–51
Self-fulfilling prophecies, 62
Self-presentation technique, 168–169
Self-reflection and discussion questions
  Adlerian group counseling, 149–150
  Choice theory/Reality therapy, 325
  Cognitive behavioral approaches, 290
  Existential, 203–204
  Gestalt therapy, 260
  Person-centered approach, 230–231
  Psychoanalytic approach, 126
  Psychodrama, 178
  Rational emotive behavior therapy, 305–306
Self-worth, 136
Shame and doubt, autonomy versus, 113–114
Shame attacking exercises, 300–301
Sharing and discussion phase, 166–168
Short-term versus long-term groups, 61
Sincerity and authenticity, 13–14
Skills and intervention strategies, 27–28
Social effectiveness training, 277–279
Social interest, 147
Social interest, community feeling and, 135–136
Social justice issues, 44
Social media in group work, 39–40
Social skills training groups, 276–277
Social task, 135
Socializing among group members, 42
Socioteleological approach, 134–135
Socratic dialogue, 278
Soliloquy, 170
Solitude, 195
Solution-focused brief therapy, 328–353, 357, 358, 360, 362, 364, 369
  action, group theories in, 340
  applying to group work in school, 340–341
  applying with multicultural populations, 341–342
  basic assumptions, 332–333
  contributions and strengths, 347–348
  evaluation, 347–349
  goals, 335–336
  historical background, key concepts, 331–333
  limitations, 348–349
  process of solution-focused group, 334–336
  role and functions of group leader, 333–334
  self-reflection and discussion questions, 349–350
  therapeutic techniques and procedures, 336–339
Solution-focused counseling, 331
Spiritual values, religious and, 43–44
Spontaneity, 157–158
Stage characteristics
  final stage, 90–91
  initial stage, 64, 68
  working stage, 87
Stage, in psychodrama, 163
Stages of group
  consolidation stage, 57
  early stages, 56–76
  formation stage, 57–64
  initial stage, 64–69
  orientation stage, 57
  transition stage, 57, 69–76
  working stage, 57
Stagnation, generativity versus, 116–117
Stamina, 14
Stress management training, 279
Strive for superiority, 136
Structuring, 62, 67–68
Style of life, 137–138
Style of living, 132
Suggesting, 20–21, 23
Summarizing, 18, 23, 25
Supporting, 19–20, 23
Surplus reality, 159–160

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s). Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Task facilitation groups, 8–9
Techniques, 247, 362–364
  Adlerian, 363
  Choice theory/Reality therapy, 364
  Cognitive behavior therapy, 364
  comparative overview of, 363–364
  Existential, 363
  Gestalt, 364
  Person-centered, 363
  Psychoanalytic, 363
  Psychodrama, 363
  Rational emotive behavior therapy, 364
  Solution-focused brief therapy and motivational interviewing, 364
Tele, 159
Teleology, 133–134
Terminating, 22, 23, 336
Termination, consolidation and, 87–90
Therapeutic alliance, 108
Therapeutic approaches
  Adlerian group counseling, 130–152
  Choice theory/Reality therapy, 308–327
  Cognitive behavioral approaches, 265–293
  Existential approach, 182–207
  Gestalt therapy, 235–264
  Motivational interviewing, 328–353
  Person-centered approach, 208–234
  Psychoanalytic, 99–127
  Psychodrama, 153–181
  Rational emotive behavior therapy, 294–307
  Solution-focused brief therapy, 328–353
Therapeutic conditions for growth, 212–213
Therapeutic factors, 80–87
Therapeutic process, Psychoanalytic approach, 108–109
Therapeutic techniques and procedures
  Adlerian group counseling, 144
  Cognitive behavioral approaches, 276–284
  Existential approach, 197–198
  Gestalt therapy, 247–256
  Motivational interviewing, 336–339
  Person-centered approach, 224–225
  Psychoanalytic approach, 108–112
  Psychodrama, 168–172
  Rational emotive behavior therapy, 298–302
  Solution-focused brief therapy, 336–339
Thinking, feeling, behaving, perspective, 369
Total behavior, 313
Training group counselors, ethical issues in, 51–52
Transference, 50, 105–106, 125
  multiple, 105
Transition stage, 57, 69–76
  characteristics of, 70–73
Treatment plan, 269
Trust, 65–66, 68, 72, 80, 212, 223
Trust versus mistrust, 113

Unconditional acceptance, 300
Unconditional positive regard, 214–215
Unconscious, 101–102
Unfinished business, 90, 242
Universal life tasks, 135

View of the person, Adlerian, 132–133
Voluntary versus involuntary membership, 60

Warm-up phase, 163–165
WDEP system, 316–319
Working group, characteristics of, 80
Working in present moment, 157
Working stage, 57, 77–87
  leader functions, 87
  member functions, 87
  stage characteristics, 87
  summary, 87
Working through technique, 112

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.

Copyright 2016 Cengage Learning. All Rights Reserved. May not be copied, scanned, or duplicated, in whole or in part. Due to electronic rights, some third party content may be suppressed from the eBook and/or eChapter(s).
Editorial review has deemed that any suppressed content does not materially affect the overall learning experience. Cengage Learning reserves the right to remove additional content at any time if subsequent rights restrictions require it.